

ROBOTICS

# Product manual

## IRB 920





Trace back information:  
Workspace 25A version a16  
Checked in 2025-03-10  
Skribenta version 5.6.018



## **Product manual**

**IRB 920-6/0.55**

**IRB 920-6/0.65**

**IRB 920T-6/0.45**

**IRB 920T-6/0.55**

**IRB 920T-6/0.65**

**OmniCore**

**Document ID: 3HAC075721-001**

**Revision: Q**



The information in this manual is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by ABB. ABB assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this manual.

Except as may be expressly stated anywhere in this manual, nothing herein shall be construed as any kind of guarantee or warranty by ABB for losses, damage to persons or property, fitness for a specific purpose or the like.

In no event shall ABB be liable for incidental or consequential damages arising from use of this manual and products described herein.

This manual and parts thereof must not be reproduced or copied without ABB's written permission.

Keep for future reference.

Additional copies of this manual may be obtained from ABB.

Original instructions.

© Copyright 2025 ABB. All rights reserved.  
Specifications subject to change without notice.



# Table of contents

Overview of this manual .....	9
Product documentation .....	12
How to read the product manual .....	14
<b>1 Safety</b> .....	<b>15</b>
1.1 Safety information .....	15
1.1.1 Limitation of liability .....	15
1.1.2 Requirements on personnel .....	16
1.2 Safety signals and symbols .....	17
1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual .....	17
1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels .....	19
1.3 Robot stopping functions .....	25
1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning .....	26
1.5 Safety during operation .....	29
1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair .....	30
1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair .....	30
1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes .....	33
1.6.3 Brake testing .....	34
1.7 Safety during troubleshooting .....	35
1.8 Safety during decommissioning .....	36
<b>2 Manipulator description</b> .....	<b>37</b>
2.1 About IRB 920 .....	37
2.2 Technical data .....	38
2.3 Robot dimensions .....	42
2.4 Working range .....	45
2.5 The unit is sensitive to ESD .....	49
<b>3 Installation and commissioning</b> .....	<b>51</b>
3.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning .....	51
3.2 Unpacking .....	52
3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure .....	52
3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability .....	53
3.2.3 Transportation bracket .....	55
3.3 On-site installation .....	56
3.3.1 Brief installation procedure .....	56
3.3.2 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair .....	57
3.3.3 Lifting the robot .....	58
3.3.3.1 Lifting the robot by two people .....	58
3.3.3.2 Lifting robot with lifting accessories .....	60
3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes .....	64
3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot .....	66
3.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances .....	69
3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions) .....	70
3.4 Restricting the working range .....	77
3.4.1 Adjusting the working range .....	77
3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range .....	78
3.5 Electrical connections .....	80
3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points .....	80
3.5.2 Customer connections .....	83
3.6 Start of robot in cold environments .....	86
3.7 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair .....	87
<b>4 Maintenance</b> .....	<b>89</b>
4.1 Introduction .....	89



## Table of contents

4.2	Service Information System (SIS) .....	90
4.3	Maintenance schedule and expected component life .....	91
4.3.1	Specification of maintenance intervals .....	91
4.3.2	Maintenance schedule .....	92
4.3.3	Expected component life .....	94
4.4	Inspection activities .....	95
4.4.1	Inspecting the information labels .....	95
4.4.2	Inspecting the robot cabling .....	99
4.4.3	Inspecting the ball screw spline unit .....	100
4.4.4	Inspecting axis-3 mechanical stops .....	103
4.4.5	Inspecting timing belts .....	106
4.5	Replacement/changing activities .....	110
4.6	Lubrication activities .....	111
4.6.1	Lubricating the ball screw spline unit .....	111
4.7	Cleaning activities .....	113
4.7.1	Cleaning the IRB 920 .....	113
<b>5</b>	<b>Repair .....</b>	<b>117</b>
5.1	Introduction .....	117
5.2	General procedures .....	118
5.2.1	Mounting instructions for bearings .....	118
5.2.2	Mounting instructions for sealings .....	120
5.2.3	Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts .....	124
5.3	Cable harness .....	126
5.3.1	Replacing the main harness .....	126
5.3.2	Replacing the process hub .....	181
5.3.3	Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit .....	199
5.4	Base .....	209
5.4.1	Replacing the base .....	209
5.4.2	Replacing the axis-1 timing belt .....	271
5.5	Inner arm .....	330
5.5.1	Replacing the inner arm .....	330
5.6	Outer arm .....	403
5.6.1	Replacing the mechanical stopper .....	403
5.6.2	Replacing the bellows .....	426
5.6.3	Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position .....	442
5.6.4	Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position .....	462
5.6.5	Replacing the ball screw .....	496
5.6.6	Replacing the axis-2 timing belt .....	542
5.6.7	Replacing the axis-3 timing belt .....	573
5.6.8	Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt .....	587
5.6.9	Replacing the axis-4 timing belt .....	609
5.6.10	Replacing the transmission module .....	634
5.6.11	Replacing the outer arm .....	660
5.7	Motors .....	720
5.7.1	Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly .....	720
5.7.2	Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly .....	779
5.7.3	Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly .....	810
5.7.4	Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly .....	827
5.8	Gearboxes .....	851
5.8.1	Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly .....	851
5.8.2	Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly .....	914
<b>6</b>	<b>Calibration .....</b>	<b>953</b>
6.1	Introduction to calibration .....	953
6.1.1	Introduction and calibration terminology .....	953
6.1.2	Calibration methods .....	954
6.1.3	When to calibrate .....	956



6.2	Synchronization marks and axis movement directions .....	957
6.2.1	Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes .....	957
6.2.2	Calibration movement directions for all axes .....	960
6.3	Updating revolution counters .....	961
6.3.1	Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots .....	961
6.4	Calibrating with Axis Calibration method .....	965
6.4.1	Description of Axis Calibration .....	965
6.4.2	Calibration tools for Axis Calibration .....	968
6.4.3	Installation locations for the calibration tools .....	970
6.4.4	Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure .....	971
6.4.5	Reference calibration .....	975
6.5	Calibrating the robot .....	977
6.5.1	Calibration position .....	977
6.5.2	Calibrating axis 1 and axis 2 .....	978
6.5.3	Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4 .....	979
6.6	Verifying the calibration .....	987
6.7	Checking the synchronization position .....	988
6.7.1	Checking the synchronization position on OmniCore robots .....	989
<b>7</b>	<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>991</b>
7.1	Introduction to troubleshooting .....	991
7.2	Oil and grease stains on motors and gearboxes .....	993
7.3	Mechanical noise or dissonance .....	994
7.4	Manipulator collapses on power down .....	996
7.5	Motor temperature too high .....	997
7.6	Robot vibration during low speed movement .....	998
<b>8</b>	<b>Decommissioning .....</b>	<b>1001</b>
8.1	Introduction to decommissioning .....	1001
8.2	Environmental information .....	1002
8.3	Scrapping of robot .....	1004
<b>9</b>	<b>Reference information .....</b>	<b>1005</b>
9.1	Introduction .....	1005
9.2	Applicable standards .....	1006
9.3	Unit conversion .....	1007
9.4	Screw joints .....	1008
9.5	Weight specifications .....	1011
9.6	Standard toolkit .....	1012
9.7	Special tools .....	1013
9.8	Lifting accessories and lifting instructions .....	1015
<b>10</b>	<b>Spare parts .....</b>	<b>1017</b>
10.1	Spare part lists and illustrations .....	1017
<b>Index</b>	<b>.....</b>	<b>1019</b>



**This page is intentionally left blank**



# Overview of this manual

---

## About this manual

This manual contains instructions for:

- mechanical and electrical installation of the IRB 920
- maintenance of the IRB 920
- mechanical and electrical repair of the IRB 920

The robot described in this manual has the following protection types:

- *Standard*
- *Clean Room*

---

## Product manual scope

The manual covers all variants and designs of the IRB 920. Some variants and designs may have been removed from the business offer and are no longer available for purchase.

---

## Usage

This manual shall be used during:

- installation and commissioning, from lifting the product to its work site and securing it to the foundation, to making it ready for operation
- maintenance work
- repair work
- decommissioning work



### Note

It is the responsibility of the integrator to conduct a risk assessment of the final application.

It is the responsibility of the integrator to provide safety and user guides for the robot system.

---

## Who should read this manual?

This manual is intended for:

- installation personnel
- maintenance personnel
- repair personnel.

---

## Prerequisites

A maintenance/repair/installation craftsman working with an ABB robot shall:

- be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/repair/maintenance work.
- be trained to respond to emergencies or abnormal situations.

*Continues on next page*



### References

Documentation referred to in the manual, is listed in the table below.

Document name	Document ID
<i>Product manual, spare parts - IRB 920</i>	3HAC075722-001
<i>Product specification - IRB 920</i>	3HAC075723-001
<i>Circuit diagram - IRB 920</i>	3HAC075152-014
<i>Safety manual for robot - Manipulator and IRC5 or OmniCore controller<sup>i</sup></i>	3HAC031045-001
<i>Product manual - OmniCore C30</i>	3HAC060860-001
<i>Product manual - OmniCore C90XT Type A</i>	3HAC089065-001
<i>Product manual - OmniCore E10</i>	3HAC079399-001
<i>Operating manual - OmniCore</i>	3HAC065036-001
<i>Application manual - Controller software OmniCore</i>	3HAC066554-001
<i>Application manual - CalibWare Field</i>	3HAC030421-001
<i>Technical reference manual - Event logs for RobotWare 7</i>	3HAC066553-001
<i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>	3HAC042927-001
<i>Technical reference manual - System parameters</i>	3HAC065041-001

<sup>i</sup> This manual contains all safety instructions from the product manuals for the manipulators and the controllers.

### Revisions

Revision	Description
A	First edition.
B	Published in release 21D. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Updated signal lamp information.</li><li>• Supported controller OmniCore E10 is added.</li></ul>
C	Published in release 22A. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The protection type <i>Clean Room</i> and protection class IP54 are added throughout the manual.</li><li>• Added information about length of thread engagement for attachment screws.</li><li>• Added troubleshooting for high motor temperature, see <a href="#">Motor temperature too high on page 997</a>.</li><li>• Updated information about Gleitmo treated screws, see <a href="#">Screw joints on page 1008</a>.</li></ul>
D	Published in release 22B. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Updated robot power cable information, see <a href="#">Robot cables on page 80</a>.</li><li>• Added cleaning instructions for robots with protection type Clean Room.</li></ul>
E	Published in release 22C. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Added new variants IRB 920-6/0.55 and IRB 920-6/0.65 throughout the manual.</li><li>• Updated information label figure.</li></ul>

Continues on next page



Revision	Description
F	Published in release 22D. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updated information in <a href="#">Lubricating the ball screw spline unit on page 111</a>.</li> <li>Minor updates in section <a href="#">Brake testing on page 34</a>.</li> </ul>
G	Published in release 23A. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added section <a href="#">Start of robot in cold environments on page 86</a>.</li> </ul>
H	Published in release 23B. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added information for robots with protection class IP54 for variants IRB 920-6/0.55 and IRB 920-6/0.65.</li> <li>Added information <a href="#">Gravity for different arm loads on page 70</a>.</li> </ul>
J	Published in release 23C. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updated article number of robot signal cable from 3HAC067446-00X to 3HAC084767-00X.</li> <li>Minor corrections.</li> </ul>
K	Published in release 23D. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added axis positions for most stable transport position.</li> <li>Removed lamp information throughout the manual.</li> <li>Updated sealing compound to 3HAC026759-003.</li> </ul>
L	Published in release 24A. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added troubleshooting about robot vibration.</li> </ul>
M	Published in release 24B. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added allowable weight for Gravity for different arm loads.</li> </ul>
N	Published in release 24C. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added support for OmniCore C90XT Type A controller and removed information for C90XT.</li> </ul>
P	Published in release 24D. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updated timing belt force and frequency throughout the manual.</li> </ul>
Q	Published in release 25A. The following updates are made in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Added information about expected component life working in L/H/P applications.</li> <li>Updated cleaning instructions for Clean Room robots.</li> <li>Minor correction.</li> </ul>



# Product documentation

### Categories for user documentation from ABB Robotics

The user documentation from ABB Robotics is divided into a number of categories. This listing is based on the type of information in the documents, regardless of whether the products are standard or optional.



#### Tip

All documents can be found via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

### Product manuals

Manipulators, controllers, DressPack, and most other hardware is delivered with a **Product manual** that generally contains:

- Safety information.
- Installation and commissioning (descriptions of mechanical installation or electrical connections).
- Maintenance (descriptions of all required preventive maintenance procedures including intervals and expected life time of parts).
- Repair (descriptions of all recommended repair procedures including spare parts).
- Calibration.
- Troubleshooting.
- Decommissioning.
- Reference information (safety standards, unit conversions, screw joints, lists of tools).
- Spare parts list with corresponding figures (or references to separate spare parts lists).
- References to circuit diagrams.

### Technical reference manuals

The technical reference manuals describe reference information for robotics products, for example lubrication, the RAPID language, and system parameters.

### Application manuals

Specific applications (for example software or hardware options) are described in **Application manuals**. An application manual can describe one or several applications.

An application manual generally contains information about:

- The purpose of the application (what it does and when it is useful).
- What is included (for example cables, I/O boards, RAPID instructions, system parameters, software).
- How to install included or required hardware.
- How to use the application.

*Continues on next page*



- Examples of how to use the application.

---

### Operating manuals

The operating manuals describe hands-on handling of the products. The manuals are aimed at those having first-hand operational contact with the product, that is production cell operators, programmers, and troubleshooters.



# How to read the product manual

---

### Reading the procedures

The procedures contain all information required for the installation or service activity and can be printed out separately when needed for a certain service procedure.

### Safety information

The manual includes a separate safety chapter that must be read through before proceeding with any service or installation procedures. All procedures also include specific safety information when dangerous steps are to be performed.

Read more in the chapter [Safety on page 15](#).

### Illustrations

The product is illustrated with general figures that does not take painting or protection type in consideration.

Likewise, certain work methods or general information that is valid for several product models, can be illustrated with illustrations that show a different product model than the one that is described in the current manual.



# 1 Safety

## 1.1 Safety information

### 1.1.1 Limitation of liability

---

**Limitation of liability**

Any information given in this manual regarding safety must not be construed as a warranty by ABB that the industrial robot will not cause injury or damage even if all safety instructions are complied with.

The information does not cover how to design, install and operate a robot system, nor does it cover all peripheral equipment that can influence the safety of the robot system.

In particular, liability cannot be accepted if injury or damage has been caused for any of the following reasons:

- Use of the robot in other ways than intended.
- Incorrect operation or maintenance.
- Operation of the robot when the safety devices are defective, not in their intended location or in any other way not working.
- When instructions for operation and maintenance are not followed as intended.
- Non-authorized design modifications of the robot.
- Repairs on the robot and its spare parts carried out by in-experienced or non-qualified personnel.
- Foreign objects.
- Force majeure.

---

**Spare parts and equipment**

ABB supplies original spare parts and equipment which have been tested and approved for their intended use. The installation and/or use of non-original spare parts and equipment can negatively affect the safety, function, performance, and structural properties of the robot. ABB is not liable for damages caused by the use of non-original spare parts and equipment.



# 1 Safety

---

## 1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

### 1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

---

#### General

Only personnel with appropriate training are allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, and use the robot. This includes electrical, mechanical, hydraulics, pneumatics, and other hazards identified in the risk assessment.

Persons who are under the influence of alcohol, drugs or any other intoxicating substances are not allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, or use the robot.

The plant liable must make sure that the personnel is trained on the robot, and on responding to emergency or abnormal situations.

---

#### Personal protective equipment

Use personal protective equipment, as stated in the instructions.



## 1.2 Safety signals and symbols

### 1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual







#### Introduction to safety signals

This section specifies all safety signals used in the user manuals. Each signal consists of:

- A caption specifying the hazard level (DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION) and the type of hazard.
- Instruction about how to reduce the hazard to an acceptable level.
- A brief description of remaining hazards, if not adequately reduced.

#### Hazard levels

The table below defines the captions specifying the hazard levels used throughout this manual.

Symbol	Designation	Significance
	DANGER	Signal word used to indicate an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in serious injury.
	WARNING	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury.
	ELECTRICAL SHOCK	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation related to electrical hazards which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury.
	CAUTION	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in slight injury.
	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in severe damage to the product.
	NOTE	Signal word used to indicate important facts and conditions.

*Continues on next page*




# 1 Safety

---

## 1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual

*Continued*

Symbol	Designation	Significance
	TIP	Signal word used to indicate where to find additional information or how to do an operation in an easier way.



## 1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

### Introduction to symbols

This section describes safety symbols used on labels (stickers) on the manipulator. Symbols are used in combinations on the labels, describing each specific warning. The descriptions in this section are generic, the labels can contain additional information such as values.



#### Note

The symbols on the labels on the product must be observed. Additional symbols added by the integrator must also be observed.




### Types of symbols

Both the manipulator and the controller are marked with symbols, containing important information about the product. This is important for all personnel handling the robot, for example during installation, service, or operation.

The safety labels are language independent, they only use graphics. See [Symbols on safety labels on page 19](#).

The information labels can contain information in text.

### Symbols on safety labels

Symbol	Description
 xx0900000812	<b>Warning!</b> Warns that an accident <i>may</i> occur if the instructions are not followed that can lead to serious injury, possibly fatal, and/or great damage to the product. It applies to warnings that apply to danger with, for example, contact with high voltage electrical units, explosion or fire risk, risk of poisonous gases, risk of crushing, impact, fall from height, etc.
 xx0900000811	<b>Caution!</b> Warns that an accident may occur if the instructions are not followed that can result in injury and/or damage to the product. It also applies to warnings of risks that include burns, eye injury, skin injury, hearing damage, crushing or slipping, tripping, impact, fall from height, etc. Furthermore, it applies to warnings that include function requirements when fitting and removing equipment where there is a risk of damaging the product or causing a breakdown.
 xx0900000839	<b>Prohibition</b> Used in combinations with other symbols.

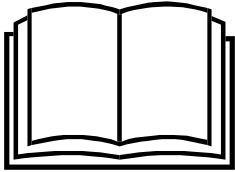
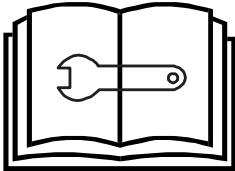
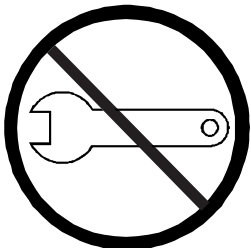
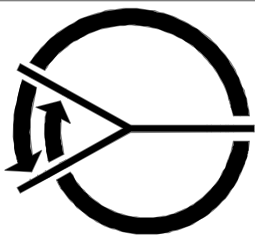

*Continues on next page*



# 1 Safety

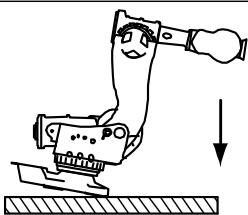

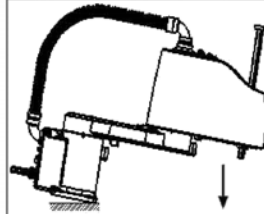


## 1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

*Continued*

Symbol	Description
 xx0900000813	<b>See user documentation</b> Read user documentation for details. Which manual to read is defined by the symbol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No text: <i>Product manual</i>.</li></ul>
 xx0900000816	<b>Before disassembly, see product manual</b>
 xx0900000815	<b>Do not disassemble</b> Disassembling this part can cause injury.
 xx0900000814	<b>Extended rotation</b> This axis has extended rotation (working area) compared to standard.
 xx0900000808	<b>Brake release</b> Pressing this button will release the brakes. This means that the robot arm can fall down.

*Continues on next page*



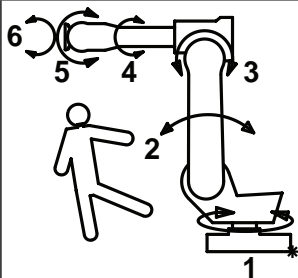
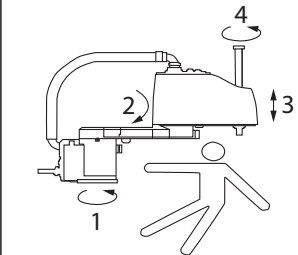

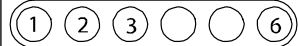


Symbol	Description
 <p>xx0900000810</p>   <p>3HAC 057068-001</p> <p>xx1500002402</p>	<p><b>Tip risk when loosening bolts</b></p> <p>The robot can tip over if the bolts are not securely fastened.</p>
  <p>xx0900000817</p>	<p><b>Crush</b></p> <p>Risk of crush injuries.</p>




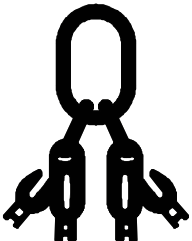





1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels  
Continued

Symbol	Description
 xx0900000818  xx1300001087	<b>Heat</b> Risk of heat that can cause burns. (Both signs are used)
 xx2400000736  xx1500002616	<b>Moving robot</b> The robot can move unexpectedly.
 xx0900000820  xx1000001140	<b>Brake release buttons</b>

Continues on next page


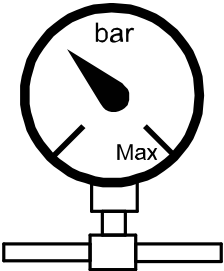
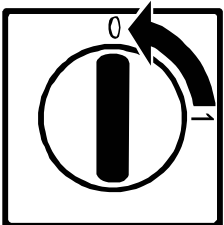



Symbol	Description
 xx0900000821	Lifting bolt
 xx1000001242	Adjustable chain sling with shortener
 xx0900000822	Lifting of robot
 xx0900000823	<b>Swivel eye bolt</b> The exclamation mark indicates required usage of swivel eye bolts at the lifting points.
 xx0900000823	<b>Oil</b> Can be used in combination with prohibition if oil is not allowed.
 xx0900000824	Mechanical stop
 xx1000001144	No mechanical stop



1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels  
Continued

Symbol	Description
 xx0900000825	<b>Stored energy</b> Warns that this part contains stored energy. Used in combination with <i>Do not disassemble</i> symbol.
 xx0900000826	<b>Pressure</b> Warns that this part is pressurized. Usually contains additional text with the pressure level.
 xx0900000827	<b>Shut off with handle</b> Use the power switch on the controller.
 xx1400002648	<b>Do not step</b> Warns that stepping on these parts can cause damage to the parts.



### 1.3 Robot stopping functions

---

#### Protective stop and emergency stop

The protective stops and emergency stops are described in the product manual for the controller.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- *Product manual - OmniCore C90XT Type A*
- *Product manual - OmniCore E10*



# 1 Safety

---

## 1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

### 1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

---

#### National or regional regulations

The integrator of the robot system is responsible for the safety of the robot system.

The integrator is responsible that the robot system is designed and installed in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The integrator of the robot system is required to perform a risk assessment.

---

#### Layout

The robot integrated to a robot system shall be designed to allow safe access to all spaces during installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

If robot movement can be initiated from an external control panel then an emergency stop must also be available.

If the manipulator is delivered with mechanical stops, these can be used for reducing the working space.

A perimeter safeguarding, for example a fence, shall be dimensioned to withstand the following:

- The force of the manipulator.
- The force of the load handled by the robot if dropped or released at maximum speed.
- The maximum possible impact caused by a breaking or malfunctioning rotating tool or other device fitted to the robot.

The maximum TCP speed and the maximum velocity of the robot axes are detailed in the section *Robot motion* in the product specification for the respective manipulator.

Consider exposure to hazards, such as slipping, tripping, and falling.

Hazards due to the working position and posture for a person working with or near the robot shall be considered.

Hazards due to noise emission from the robot needs to be considered.

Consider hazards from other equipment in the robot system, for example, that guards remain active until identified hazards are reduced to an acceptable level.

---

#### Allergenic material

See [Environmental information on page 1002](#) for specification of allergenic materials in the product, if any.

---

#### Securing the robot to the foundation

The robot must be properly fixed to its foundation/support, as described in the respective product manual.

When the robot is installed at a height, hanging, or other than mounted directly on the floor, there will be additional hazards.

*Continues on next page*



---

**Using lifting accessories and other external equipment**

Ensure that all equipment used during installation, service and all handling of the robot are in correct condition for the intended use.

---

**Electrical safety**

Incoming mains must be installed to fulfill national regulations.

The power supply wiring to the robot must be sufficiently fused and if necessary, it must be possible to disconnect it manually from the mains power.

The power to the robot must be turned off with the main switch and the mains power disconnected when performing work inside the controller cabinet. Lock and tag shall be considered.

Harnesses between controller and manipulator shall be fixed and protected to avoid tripping and wear.

Wherever possible, power on/off or rebooting the robot controller shall be performed with all persons outside the safeguarded space.

**Note**

Use a CARBON DIOXIDE (CO<sub>2</sub>) extinguisher in the event of a fire in the robot.

---

**Safety devices**

The integrator is responsible for that the safety devices necessary to protect people working with the robot system are designed and installed correctly.

When integrating the robot with external devices to a robot system:

- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that emergency stop functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.
- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that safety functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.

---

**Other hazards**

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.

**WARNING**

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

The risk assessment should also consider other hazards arising from the application, such as, but not limited to:

- Water
- Compressed air
- Hydraulics

End-effector hazards require particular attention for applications which involve close human collaboration with the robot.

*Continues on next page*



# 1 Safety

---

## 1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

*Continued*

---

### Pneumatic or hydraulic related hazards



#### Note

The pressure in the complete pneumatic or hydraulic systems must be released before service and maintenance.

All components in the robot system that remain pressurized after switching off the power to the robot must be marked with clearly visible drain facilities and a warning sign that indicates the hazard of stored energy.

Loss of pressure in the robot system may cause parts or objects to drop.

Dump valves should be used in case of emergency.

Shot bolts should be used to prevent tools, etc., from falling due to gravity.

All pipes, hoses, and connections have to be inspected regularly for leaks and damage. Damage must be repaired immediately.

---

### Verify the safety functions

Before the robot system is put into operation, verify that the safety functions are working as intended and that any remaining hazards identified in the risk assessment are mitigated to an acceptable level.



### 1.5 Safety during operation

#### Automatic operation

Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed, before changing mode to automatic and initiating automatic operation.

#### Unexpected movement of robot arm



##### **WARNING**

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



##### **WARNING**

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.



# 1 Safety

## 1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

## 1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair

### 1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

#### General

Corrective maintenance must only be carried out by personnel trained on the robot. Maintenance or repair must be done with all electrical, pneumatic, and hydraulic power switched off, that is, no remaining hazards.

Hazards due to stored mechanical energy in the manipulator for the purpose of counterbalancing axes must be considered before maintenance or repair.

Never use the robot as a ladder, which means, do not climb on the controller, manipulator, including motors, or other parts. There are hazards of slipping and falling. The robot might be damaged.


Make sure that there are no tools, loose screws, turnings, or other unexpected parts remaining after maintenance or repair work.

When the work is completed, verify that the safety functions are working as intended.

#### Hot surfaces

Surfaces can be hot after running the robot, and touching these may result in burns. Allow the surfaces to cool down before maintenance or repair.

#### Allergic reaction

Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
 Allergic reaction	When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reaction.	Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn.


#### Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease)

When handling oil, grease, or other chemical substances the safety information of the respective manufacturer must be observed.







#### Note

Take special care when handling hot lubricants.

Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
 Hot oil or grease	Changing and draining gearbox oil or grease may require handling hot lubricant heated up to 90 °C.	Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn during this activity.

*Continues on next page*



Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
 <b>Allergic reaction</b>	When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reaction.	Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn.
 <b>Possible pressure build-up in gearbox</b>	When opening the oil or grease plug, there may be pressure present in the gearbox, causing hot lubricant to spray from the opening.	Open the plug carefully and keep away from the opening. Do not overfill the gearbox when filling. Put oil absorbent cloth, bags or paper at appropriate locations to catch any oil residues. Use appropriate protective gear such as heat-resistant gloves, goggles/protective visor, or a body suit if necessary.
 <b>Do not overfill</b>	Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• damage seals and gaskets</li> <li>• completely press out seals and gaskets</li> <li>• prevent the robot from moving freely.</li> </ul>	Make sure not to overfill the gearbox when filling it with oil or grease. After filling, verify that the level is correct.
 <b>Specified amount depends on drained volume</b>	The specified amount of oil or grease is based on the total volume of the gearbox. When changing the lubricant, the amount refilled may differ from the specified amount, depending on how much has previously been drained from the gearbox.	After filling, verify that the level is correct.

### Hazards related to batteries

Under rated conditions, the electrode materials and liquid electrolyte in the batteries are sealed and not exposed to the outside.

There is a hazard in case of abuse (mechanical, thermal, electrical) which leads to the activation of safety valves and/or the rupture of the battery container. As a result under certain circumstances, electrolyte leakage, electrode materials reaction with moisture/water or battery vent/explosion/fire may follow.

Do not short circuit, recharge, puncture, incinerate, crush, immerse, force discharge or expose to temperatures above the declared operating temperature range of the product. Risk of fire or explosion.

Operating temperatures are listed in [Operating conditions, robot on page 41](#).

See safety instructions for the batteries in *Material/product safety data sheet - Battery pack (3HAC043118-001)*.

Continues on next page



# 1 Safety

---

## 1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

*Continued*

---

### Unexpected movement of robot arm



#### **WARNING**

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



#### **WARNING**

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

---

### Related information

See also the safety information related to installation and operation.



## 1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes

### Description

In an emergency situation, the brakes on a robot axis can be released manually by pushing a brake release button.

How to release the brakes is described in the section:

- [Manually releasing the brakes on page 64.](#)

The robot may be moved manually on smaller robot models, but larger models may require using an overhead crane or similar equipment.

### Increased injury

Before releasing the brakes, make sure that the weight of the manipulator does not result in additional hazards, for example, even more severe injuries on a trapped person.



#### **DANGER**

When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways.

Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot.

### Prerequisites for access to brake release buttons

Make sure that the brake release buttons on the manipulator are within reach and quickly accessible in case of emergency situations, even when the manipulator is installed on a height, on a wall, or suspended.



### 1.6.3 Brake testing

---

#### When to test

During operation, the holding brake of each axis normally wears down. A test can be performed to determine whether the brake can still perform its function.



#### Note

Note that the following axes do not have a brake:

- Axis 1
- Axis 2

#### How to test

The function of the holding brake of each axis motor may be verified as described below:

- 1 Run each axis to a position where the combined weight of the manipulator and any load is maximized (maximum static load).
- 2 Switch the motor to the MOTORS OFF.
- 3 Inspect and verify that the axis maintains its position.

If the manipulator does not change position as the motors are switched off, then the brake function is adequate.



#### Note

It is recommended to run the service routine *BrakeCheck* as part of the regular maintenance, see the operating manual for the robot controller.

For robots with the option SafeMove, the *Cyclic Brake Check* routine is recommended. See the manual for SafeMove in [References on page 10](#).



## 1.7 Safety during troubleshooting

---

### General

When troubleshooting requires work with power switched on, special considerations must be taken:

- Safety circuits might be muted or disconnected.
- Electrical parts must be considered as *live*.
- The manipulator can move unexpectedly at any time.



#### **DANGER**

Troubleshooting on the controller while powered on must be performed by personnel trained by ABB or by ABB field engineers.

A risk assessment must be done to address both robot and robot system specific hazards.



#### **WARNING**

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



#### **WARNING**

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

---

### Related information

See also the safety information related to installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.



# 1 Safety

---

## 1.8 Safety during decommissioning

## 1.8 Safety during decommissioning

---

### General

See section [Decommissioning on page 1001](#).

If the robot is decommissioned for storage, take extra precaution to reset safety devices to delivery status.

### Unexpected movement of robot arm



#### **WARNING**

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



#### **WARNING**

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.



## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.1 About IRB 920

---

#### Introduction

The IRB 920 is one of ABB Robotics latest generation of 4-axis robot, with a payload of 6 kg, designed based on industrial robot platform. The robot has an open structure that is especially adapted for flexible use, and can communicate extensively with external systems.

The IRB 920 contains the following variants:

- IRB 920-6/0.55
- IRB 920-6/0.65
- IRB 920T-6/0.45
- IRB 920T-6/0.55
- IRB 920T-6/0.65

**Note**

Without any specific statement, IRB 920 represents all variants under this product.



## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.2 Technical data

### 2.2 Technical data

#### Weight, robot

The table shows the weight of the robot.

Robot model	Nominal weight
IRB 920	IRB 920-6/0.55: 23 kg
	IRB 920-6/0.65: 24 kg
	IRB 920T-6/0.45: 22 kg
	IRB 920T-6/0.55: 23 kg
	IRB 920T-6/0.65: 24 kg



#### Note

The weight does not include additional options, tools and other equipment fitted on the robot.

#### Mounting positions

The table shows valid mounting positions and the installation (mounting) angle for the manipulator.

Mounting position	Installation angle
Floor mounted	0°



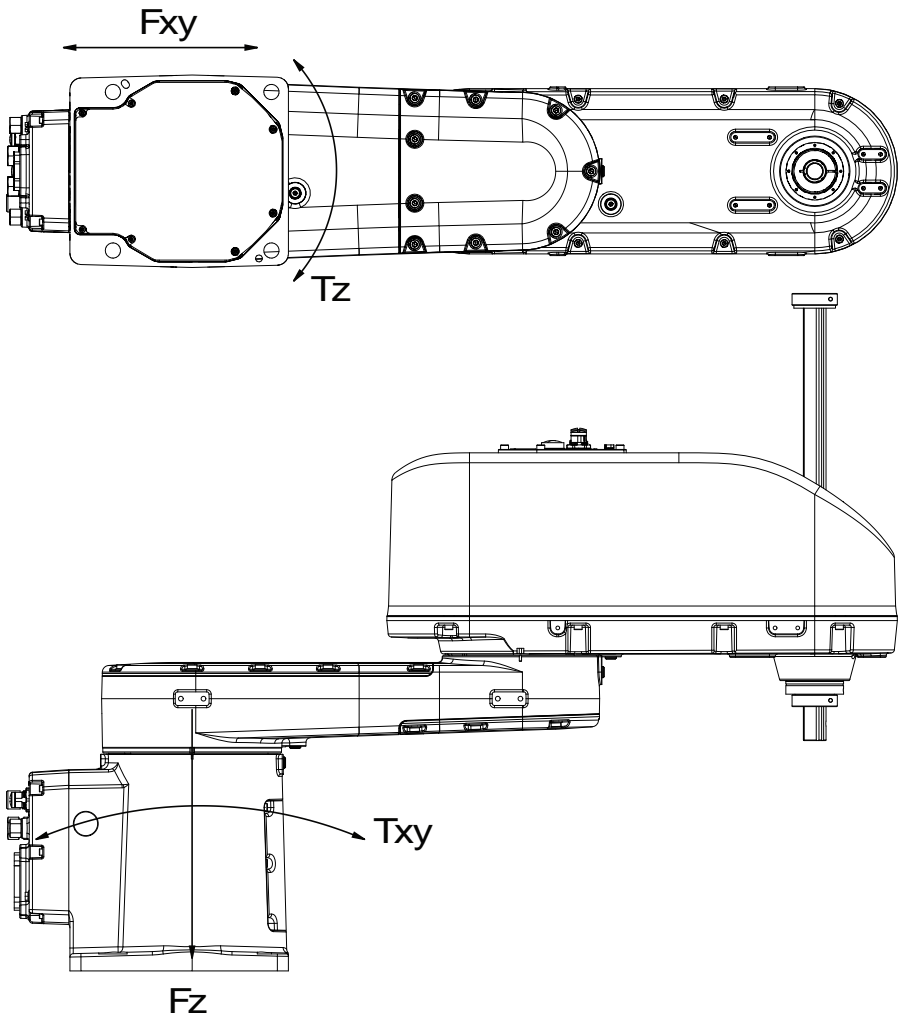
#### Note

The actual mounting angle must always be configured in the system parameters, otherwise the performance and lifetime is affected. For details, see *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

*Continues on next page*



Loads on foundation, robot



xx2000001168

$F_{xy}$	Force in any direction in Plane XY
$F_z$	Force along Axis Z
$T_{xy}$	Bending moment in any direction in Plane XY
$T_z$	Torsional moment around Axis Z

The table shows the various forces and torques working on the robot during different kinds of operation.



Note

These forces and torques are extreme values that are rarely encountered during operation. The values also never reach their maximum at the same time!



WARNING

The robot installation is restricted to the mounting options given in following load table(s).

Continues on next page



## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.2 Technical data


Continued

Floor mounted

Force	Endurance load (in operation)	Maximum load (emergency stop)
Force xy	±550 N	±1500 N
Force z	±550 N	±650 N
Torque xy	±330 Nm	±500 Nm
Torque z	±150 Nm	±900 Nm

### Requirements, foundation

The table shows the requirements for the foundation where the weight of the installed robot is included:

Requirement	Value	Note
Flatness of foundation surface	0.1/500 mm	Flat foundations give better repeatability of the resolver calibration compared to original settings on delivery from ABB. The value for levelness aims at the circumstance of the anchoring points in the robot base. In order to compensate for an uneven surface, the robot can be recalibrated during installation. If resolver/encoder calibration is changed this will influence the absolute accuracy
Minimum resonance frequency	22 Hz  <b>Note</b> It may affect the manipulator lifetime to have a lower resonance frequency than recommended.	The value is recommended for optimal performance. Due to foundation stiffness, consider robot mass including equipment. <sup>i</sup> For information about compensating for foundation flexibility, see the description of <i>Motion Process Mode</i> in the manual that describes the controller software option, see <a href="#">References on page 10</a> .
Minimum foundation material yield strength	150 MPa	

<sup>i</sup> The minimum resonance frequency given should be interpreted as the frequency of the robot mass/inertia, robot assumed stiff, when a foundation translational/torsional elasticity is added, i.e., the stiffness of the pedestal where the robot is mounted. The minimum resonance frequency should not be interpreted as the resonance frequency of the building, floor etc. For example, if the equivalent mass of the floor is very high, it will not affect robot movement, even if the frequency is well below the stated frequency. The robot should be mounted as rigid as possible to the floor.  
Disturbances from other machinery will affect the robot and the tool accuracy. The robot has resonance frequencies in the region 10 – 20 Hz and disturbances in this region will be amplified, although somewhat damped by the servo control. This might be a problem, depending on the requirements from the applications. If this is a problem, the robot needs to be isolated from the environment.

### Storage conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed storage conditions for the robot:

Parameter	Value
Minimum ambient temperature	-25 °C
Maximum ambient temperature	55 °C
Maximum ambient temperature (less than 24 hrs)	70 °C

Continues on next page



Parameter	Value
Maximum ambient humidity	95% at constant temperature (gaseous only)

#### Operating conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed operating conditions for the robot:

Parameter	Value
Minimum ambient temperature	+5°C <sup>i</sup>
Maximum ambient temperature	+45°C
Maximum ambient humidity	5% - 95% non-condensing according to IEC61131-2

<sup>i</sup> At low environmental temperature < 10°C is, as with any other machine, a warm-up phase recommended to be run with the robot. Otherwise there is a risk that the robot stops or run with lower performance due to temperature dependent oil and grease viscosity.

#### Protection classes, robot

The table shows the available protection types of the robot, with the corresponding protection class.

Protection type	Protection class <sup>i</sup>
Manipulator, protection type Standard	IP30 <sup>ii</sup> IP54 (option 3350-540)
Manipulator, protection type Clean Room	ISO Class 5 <sup>iii</sup>

<sup>i</sup> According to IEC 60529.

<sup>ii</sup> The protection class of the ballscrew area is IP20. For more information, please contact ABB.

<sup>iii</sup> Valid for IRB 920T-6/0.45, IRB 920T-6/0.55 and IRB 920T-6/0.65.

#### Environmental information

The product complies with IEC 63000. *Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances.*



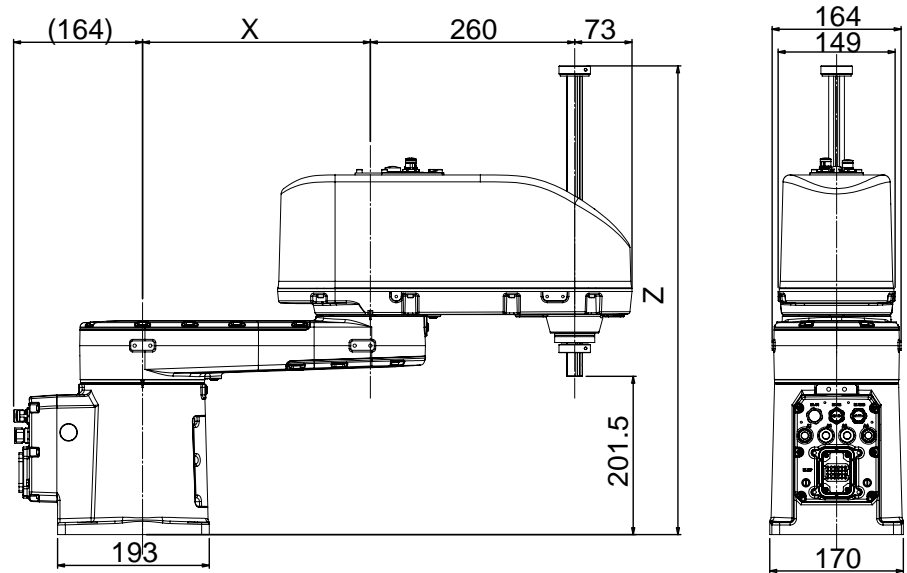
## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.3 Robot dimensions

### 2.3 Robot dimensions

#### Dimensions for rear outlet cable version

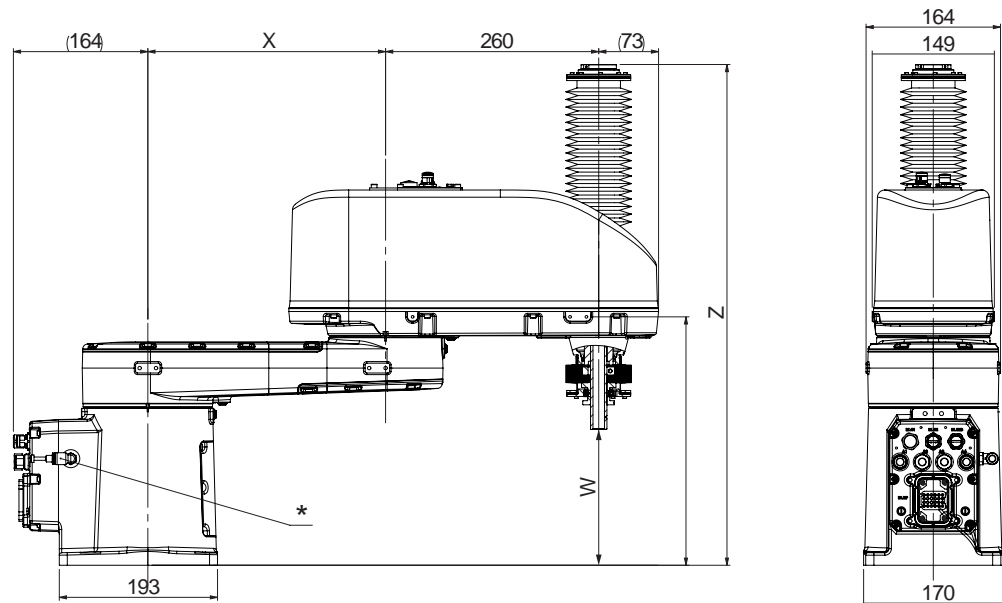
Robots with protection class IP30 3350-300



xx2000001145

	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
X	190 mm	190 mm	290 mm	290 mm	390 mm	390 mm
Z	596.5 mm	716.5 mm	596.5 mm	716.5 mm	596.5 mm	716.5 mm

Robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) or with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-5)



xx2100002391

\*: For Clean Room only.

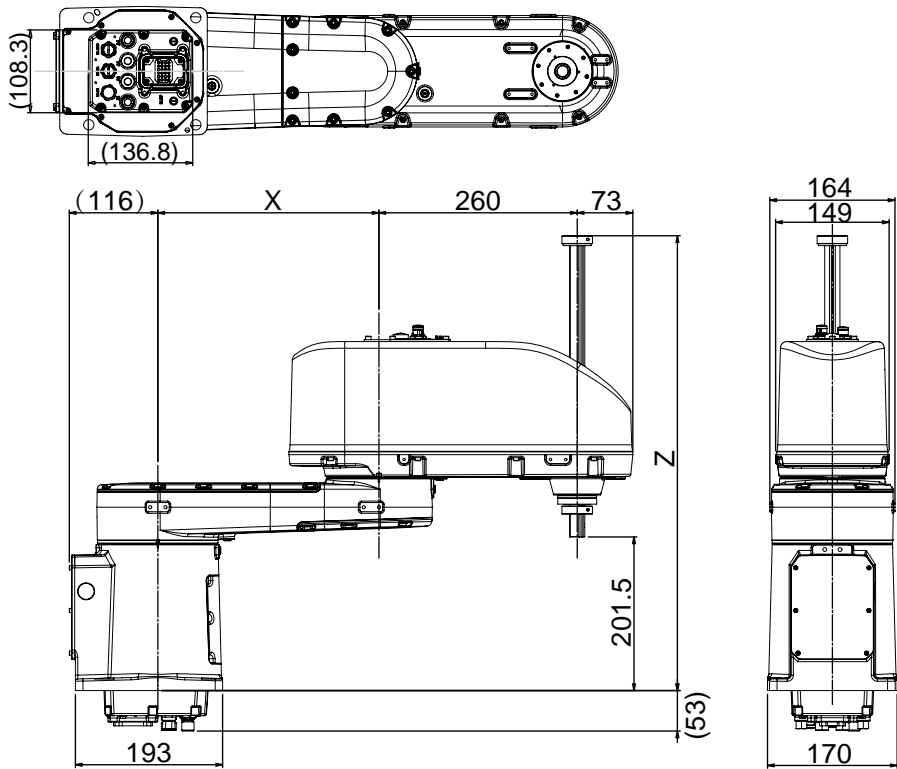
Continues on next page



	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
X	190 mm	190 mm	290 mm	290 mm	390 mm	390 mm
Z	610.8 mm	728.7 mm	610.8 mm	728.7 mm	610.8 mm	728.7 mm
W	165.7 mm	150.7 mm	165.7 mm	150.7 mm	165.7 mm	150.7 mm

Dimensions for underneath outlet cable version

Robots with protection class IP30 3350-300



xx2000001146

	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
X	190 mm	190 mm	290 mm	290 mm	390 mm	390 mm
Z	596.5 mm	716.5 mm	596.5 mm	716.5 mm	596.5 mm	716.5 mm

Continues on next page

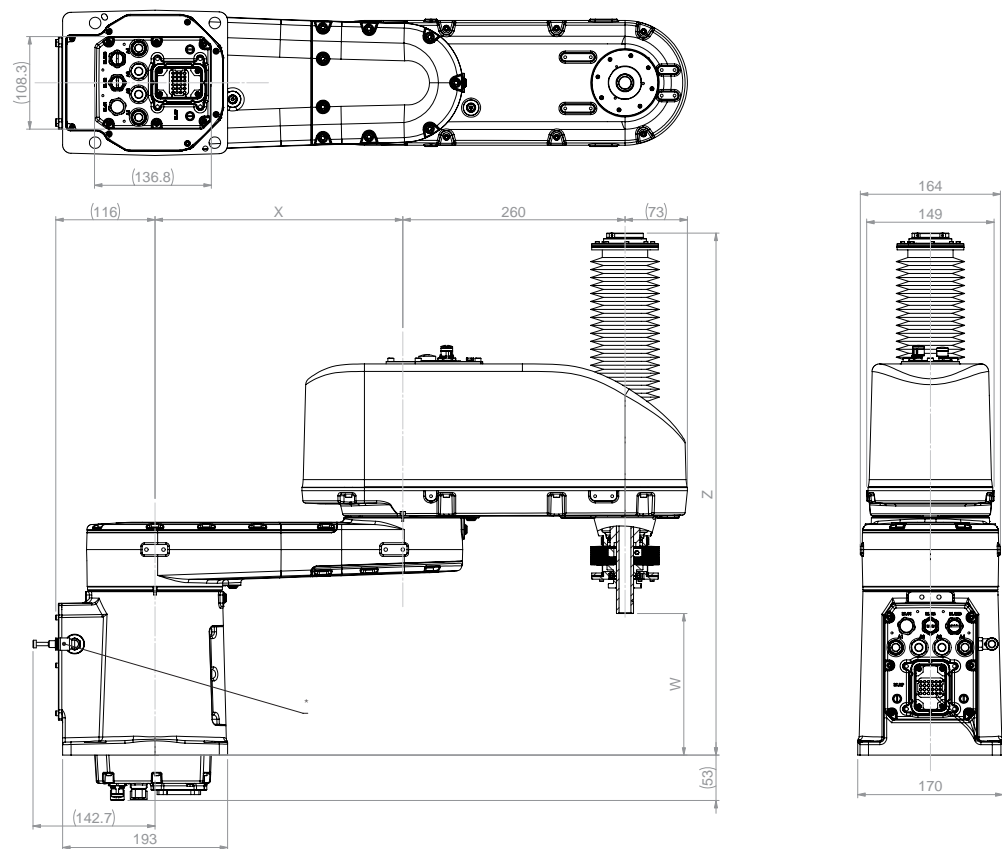


## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.3 Robot dimensions

*Continued*

Robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) or with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-5)



xx2100002429

\*: For Clean Room only.

	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
X	190 mm	190 mm	290 mm	290 mm	390 mm	390 mm
Z	610.8 mm	728.7 mm	610.8 mm	728.7 mm	610.8 mm	728.7 mm
W	165.7 mm	150.7 mm	165.7 mm	150.7 mm	165.7 mm	150.7 mm

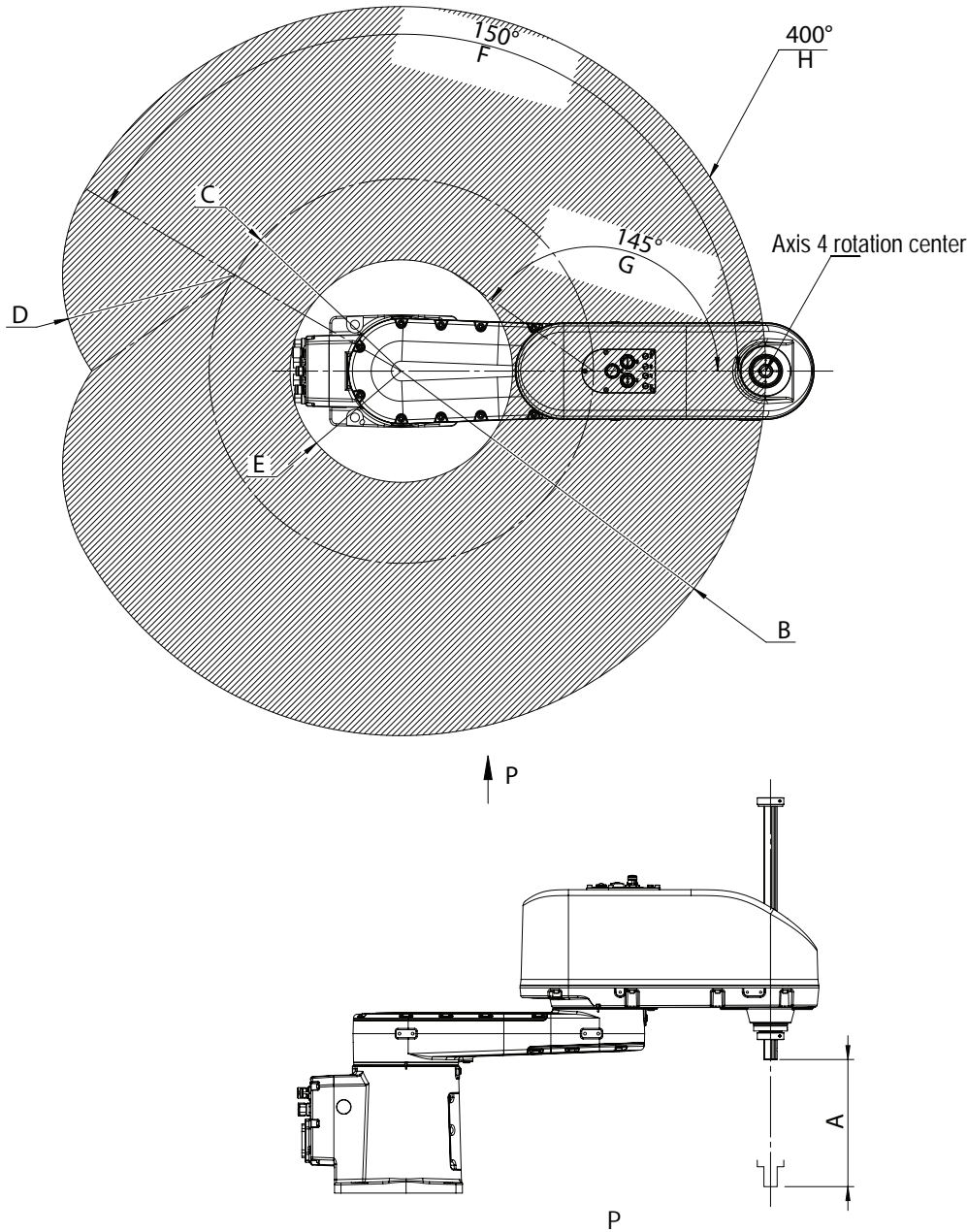


2.4 Working range

Illustration, working range

Robots with protection class IP30 3350-300

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



xx2000001137

	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
A (Axis3)	180 mm	300 mm	180 mm	300 mm	180 mm	300 mm
B	450 mm		550 mm		650 mm	

Continues on next page



## 2 Manipulator description

---

### 2.4 Working range

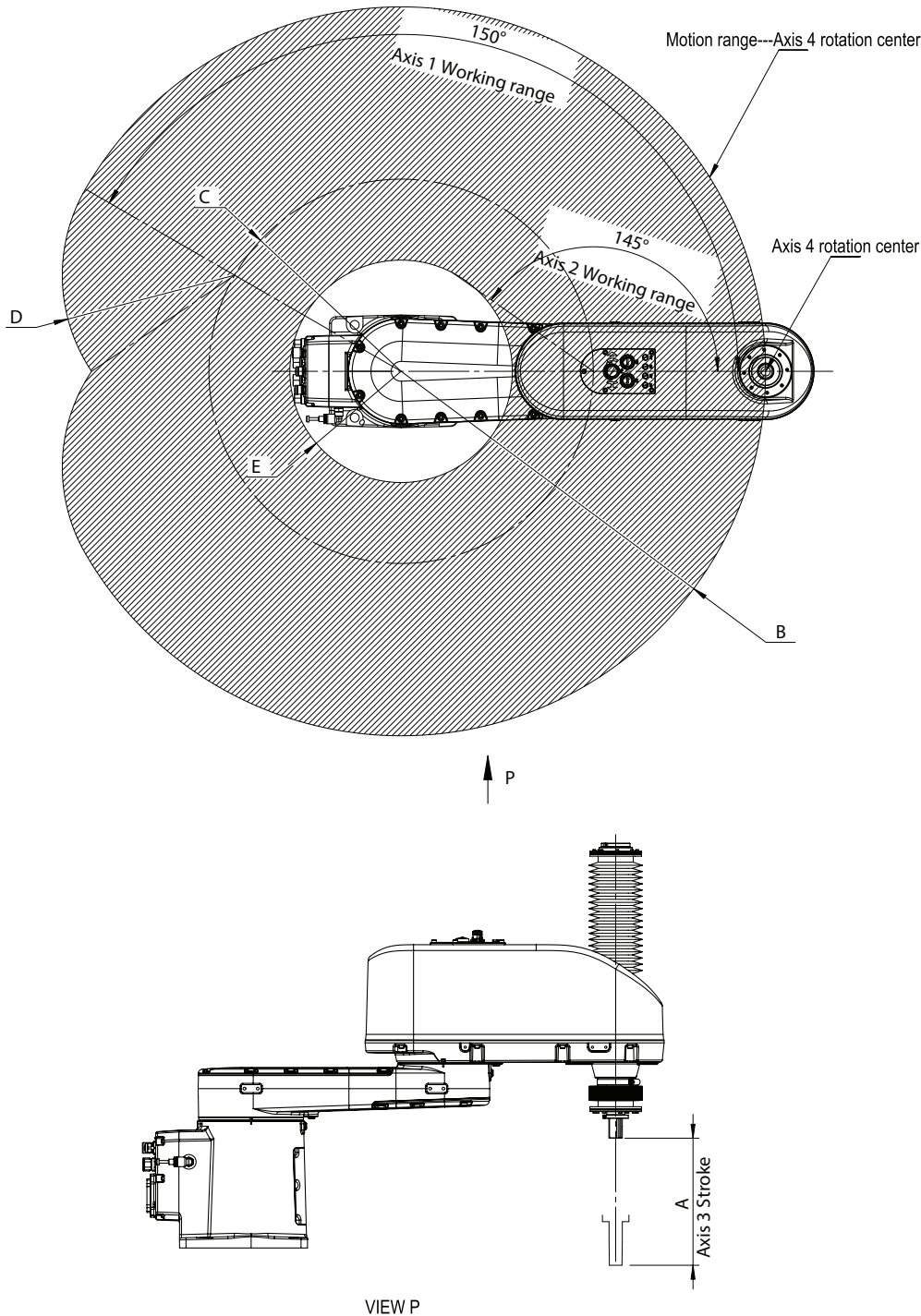
*Continued*

	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
C	190 mm		290 mm		390 mm	
D	260 mm					
E	150.9 mm		167.8 mm		231.5 mm	
F (Axis1)	±150°					
G (Axis2)	±145°					
H (Axis4)	±400°					

*Continues on next page*



Robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) or with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-5)



xx2100002430

	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
A (Axis3)	145 mm	250 mm	145 mm	250 mm	145 mm	250 mm
B	450 mm		550 mm		650 mm	
C	190 mm		290 mm		390 mm	

Continues on next page



## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.4 Working range

*Continued*

	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
D	260 mm					
E	150.9 mm		167.8 mm		231.5 mm	
F (Axis1)	±150°					
G (Axis2)	±145°					
H (Axis4)	±400°					

### Working range

Axis	Working range	Note
Axis 1	$\pm 150^\circ$	
Axis 2	$\pm 145^\circ$	
Axis 3	Robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 180 mm/300 mm	Value for restricted working range.
	Robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) or with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-5) 145 mm/250 mm	Value for restricted working range.
Axis 4	$\pm 400^\circ$	Default value.



### 2.5 The unit is sensitive to ESD

---

#### Description

ESD (electrostatic discharge) is the transfer of electrical static charge between two bodies at different potentials, either through direct contact or through an induced electrical field. When handling parts or their containers, personnel not grounded may potentially transfer high static charges. This discharge may destroy sensitive electronics.

---

#### Safe handling

Use one of the following alternatives:

- Use a wrist strap.

Wrist straps must be tested frequently to ensure that they are not damaged and are operating correctly.

- Use an ESD protective floor mat.

The mat must be grounded through a current-limiting resistor.

- Use a dissipative table mat.

The mat should provide a controlled discharge of static voltages and must be grounded.



This page is intentionally left blank



## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning

#### General

This chapter contains assembly instructions and information for installing the IRB 920 at the working site.

See also the product manual for the robot controller.

The installation must be done by qualified installation personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The technical data is detailed in section [Technical data on page 38](#).

#### Safety information

Before any installation work is commenced, all safety information must be observed. There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before performing any installation work.



#### Note

Always connect the IRB 920 and the robot to protective earth and residual current device (RCD) before connecting to power and starting any installation work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- *Product manual - OmniCore C90XT Type A*
- *Product manual - OmniCore E10*



## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure

## 3.2 Unpacking

### 3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure

#### Introduction


This section is intended for use when unpacking and installing the robot for the first time. It also contains information useful during later re-installation of the robot.

#### Prerequisites for installation personnel

Installation personnel working with an ABB product must:

- Be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/maintenance/repair work.
- Conform to all national and local codes.

#### Checking the pre-requisites for installation

	Action
1	Make a visual inspection of the packaging and make sure that nothing is damaged.
2	Remove the packaging.
3	Check for any visible transport damage.   <b>Note</b> Stop unpacking and contact ABB if transport damages are found.
4	Clean the unit with a lint-free cloth, if necessary. Wipe away the protective transportation grease applied to the tool flange.
5	Make sure that the lifting accessory used (if required) is suitable to handle the weight of the robot as specified in: <a href="#">Weight, robot on page 38</a>
6	If the robot is not installed directly, it must be stored as described in: <a href="#">Storage conditions, robot on page 40</a>
7	Make sure that the expected operating environment of the robot conforms to the specifications as described in: <a href="#">Operating conditions, robot on page 41</a>
8	Before taking the robot to its installation site, make sure that the site conforms to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Loads on foundation, robot on page 39</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Protection classes, robot on page 41</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Requirements, foundation on page 40</a></li></ul>
9	Before moving the robot, please observe the stability of the robot: <a href="#">Risk of tipping/stability on page 53</a>
10	When these prerequisites are met, the robot can be taken to its installation site as described in section: <a href="#">On-site installation on page 56</a>
11	Install required equipment, if any.



### 3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability

#### Risk of tipping

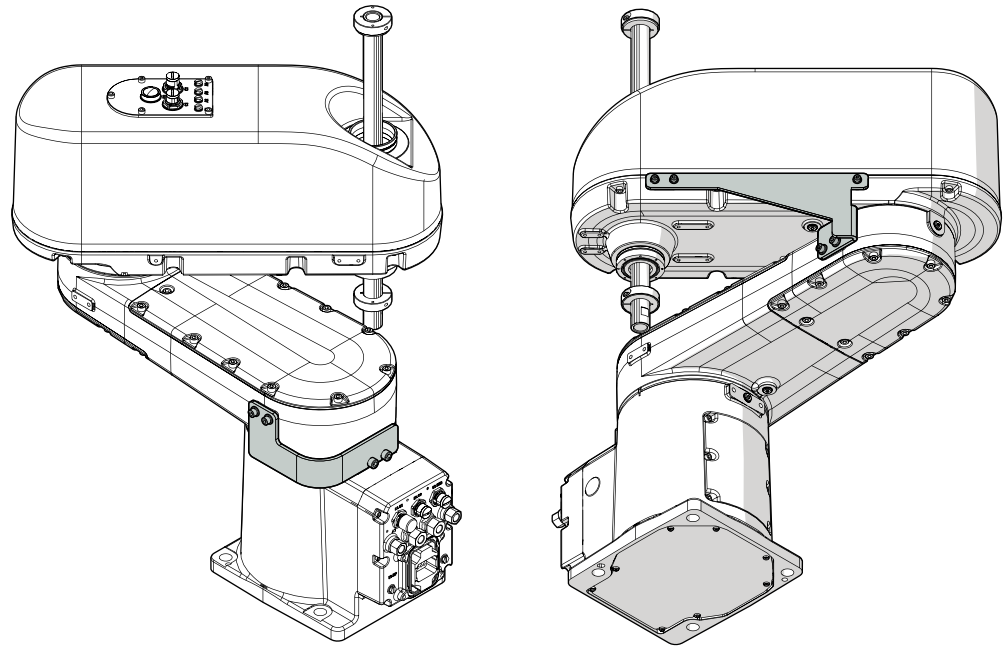
If the robot is not fastened to the foundation while moving the arm, the robot is not stable in the whole working area. Moving the arm will displace the center of gravity, which may cause the robot to tip over.

The transportation position is the most stable position.

**Do not change the robot position before securing it to the foundation!**

#### Transportation position

This figure shows the robot in its transportation position.



xx2000001152



#### Note

The robot might be positioned in a different position at delivery, due to actual configurations and options (for example DressPack).

Axis number	Angle of axis
Axis 1	0°
Axis 2	-145°
Axis 3	0 mm
Axis 4	0°

#### Transportation bracket

At delivery, the robot is locked in the correct position with a transportation bracket for securing the position during shipping and transport. The bracket must be removed before conducting any service work.

*Continues on next page*



### 3 Installation and commissioning

---

#### 3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability

*Continued*

How to use the transportation bracket is described further in [Transportation bracket on page 55](#).



#### **WARNING**

The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation.



### 3.2.3 Transportation bracket

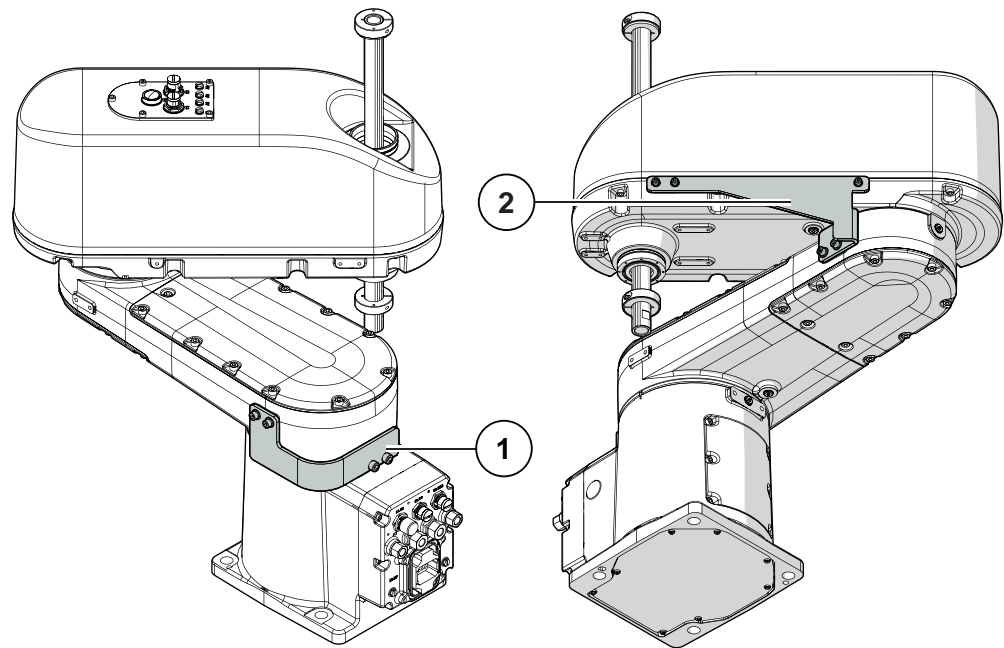
#### Location of the transportation bracket

At delivery, the robot is locked in the correct position with the transportation brackets for securing the position during shipping and transport. The transportation brackets cannot be removed until the robot is secured to the foundation.



#### Note

Keep the brackets every time when it's removed from the robot for further use.



xx2000001151

1	Base inner arm fixture
2	Inner arm outer arm fixture

#### Removing the transportation bracket

	Action	Note
1	<b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
2	Remove the screws.	
3	Remove the bracket.	



## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.3.1 Brief installation procedure

## 3.3 On-site installation


### 3.3.1 Brief installation procedure

#### Introduction

This procedure is a brief guide when installing the robot for the first time. Also see [Pre-installation procedure on page 52](#).

#### First installation

Use these procedures to install the IRB 920.

	Action	Note
1	Transport the manipulator to its intended location.	
2	Install the valid platform or prepare the foundation for the manipulator.	
3	Lift and secure the manipulator to the platform/foundation.	See <a href="#">Lifting the robot on page 58</a> . See <a href="#">Orienting and securing the robot on page 66</a> .
4	Connect the manipulator to the controller.	See <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore C30</i></li><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore C90XT Type A</i></li><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore E10</i></li></ul>
5	Configure the safety settings.	See <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore C30</i></li><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore C90XT Type A</i></li><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore E10</i></li></ul>
6	How to start and run the robot is described in the product manual for the controller.	See <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore C30</i></li><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore C90XT Type A</i></li><li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore E10</i></li></ul>
7	Install required equipment, if any.	
8	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



### 3.3.2 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

#### Safe handling

Use the following procedure after installation, maintenance, or repair, before initiating motion.



#### **DANGER**

Initiating motion without fulfilling the following aspects, may increase the risk for injury or cause damage to the robot.

	Action
1	Remove all tools and foreign objects from the robot and its working area.
2	Verify that the robot is properly secured to its position by all screws, before it is powered up.
3	Verify that any safety equipment installed to secure the position or restrict the robot motion during service activity is removed.
4	Verify that the fixture and work piece are well secured, if applicable.
5	Verify that all safety equipment is installed, as designed for the application.
6	Verify that no personnel are inside the safeguarded space.
7	If maintenance or repair has been done, verify the function of the part that was maintained.
8	Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed.

#### Collision risks



#### **CAUTION**

When programming the movements of the robot, always identify potential collision risks before initiating motion.



## 3 Installation and commissioning

---

### 3.3.3.1 Lifting the robot by two people

### 3.3.3 Lifting the robot

#### 3.3.3.1 Lifting the robot by two people

---

##### General

This section describes how to lift the robot and move it by two people.



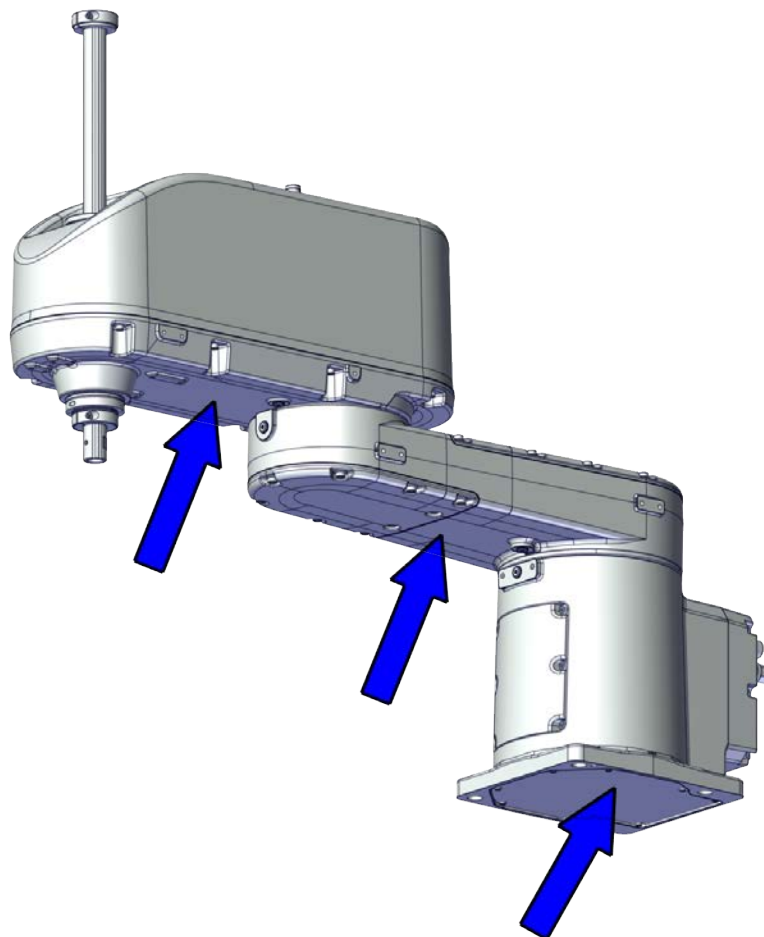
##### **WARNING**

The transportation brackets cannot be removed until the robot is secured to the foundation.

---

##### Grasping location

Grasp the robot with one hand supporting at the housing and the other hand holding the base.






xx2000001156

*Continues on next page*



#### Lifting and transporting the robot

	Action
1	<div> <b>CAUTION</b></div> <p>The IRB 920 weighs, IRB 920-6/0.55: 23 kg IRB 920-6/0.65: 24 kg IRB 920T-6/0.45: 22 kg IRB 920T-6/0.55: 23 kg IRB 920T-6/0.65: 24 kg and can be lifted by two people.</p> <div> <b>CAUTION</b></div> <p>Do not grasp the ball screw during the lifting work, it may be damaged.</p>
2	Grasp the robot, see <a href="#">Grasping location on page 58</a> .
3	Lift the robot.
4	<p>Move the robot to desired position.</p> <div> <b>CAUTION</b></div> <p>Be careful so that the robot does not bump into something while lifting and transporting. It could damage the robot.</p>
5	Secure the robot on a workbench according to section <a href="#">Orienting and securing the robot on page 66</a> .



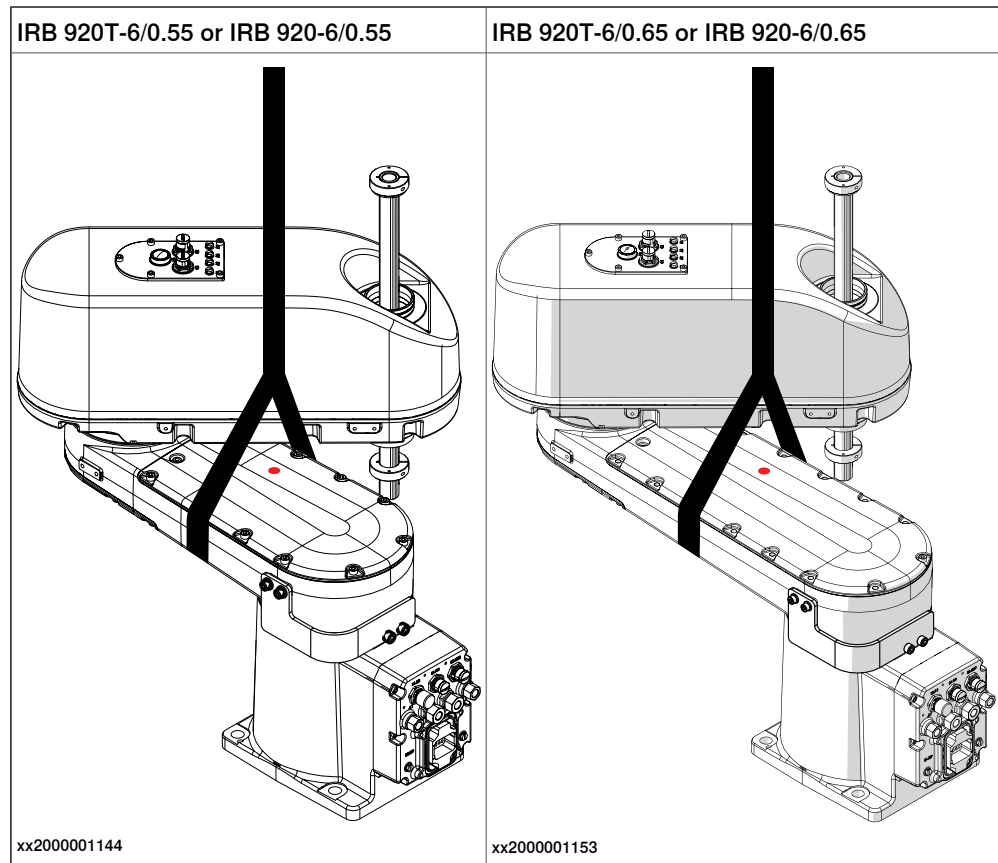
### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.3.2 Lifting robot with lifting accessories

#### 3.3.3.2 Lifting robot with lifting accessories

##### Illustration - attaching the roundslings

Only 550 mm and 650 mm can be lifted with lifting accessories.



#### **DANGER**

Attempting to lift a robot in any other position than the recommended lifting position may result in the robot tipping over, causing severe damage or injury.

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Overhead crane	-	
Roundsling, 2 m	-	Length: 2 m. Lifting capacity: 100 kg.
Roundsling, 2.5 m	-	Length: 2.5 m. Lifting capacity: 2,000 kg.

*Continues on next page*



#### Lifting the robot



#### WARNING

The transportation brackets cannot be removed until the robot is secured to the foundation.

Use this procedure to lift the robot.

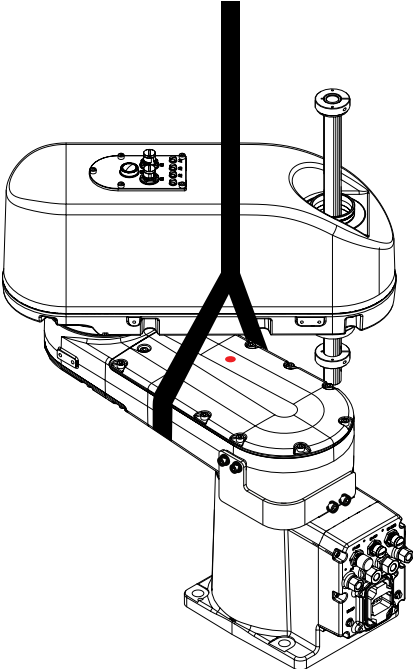
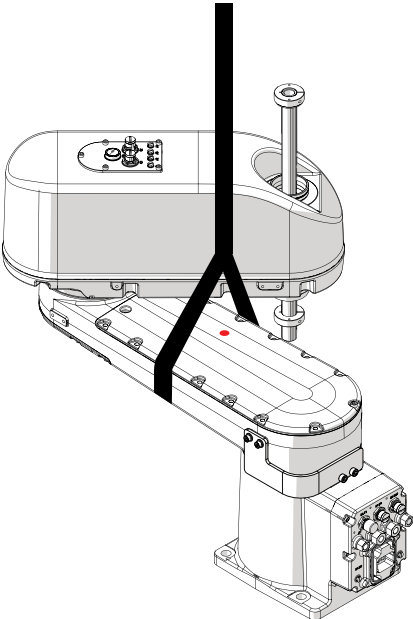
	Action	Note
1	<p>Move the robot to the appropriate lifting position.</p> <div> <b>WARNING</b> </div> <p>The robot is mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation.</p>	
2	<div> <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <p>For Clean Room robots, it is important not to rub against the paint of the robot while performing any service work on the robot.</p>	
3	<div> <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <p>The weight of the IRB 920 robot is            IRB 920-6/0.55: 23 kg            IRB 920-6/0.65: 24 kg            IRB 920T-6/0.45: 22 kg            IRB 920T-6/0.55: 23 kg            IRB 920T-6/0.65: 24 kg            All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>	
4	<div> <b>WARNING</b> </div> <p>Personnel must not, under any circumstances, be present under the suspended load.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.3.2 Lifting robot with lifting accessories  
Continued

Action	Note
5 Attach the lifting roundslings to the robot.	<p>Lifting capacity for the lifting chain is specified in <a href="#">Required tools and equipment on page 60</a>.</p> <p>Valid for 550 mm</p>  <p>xx2000001144</p> <p>Valid for 650 mm</p>  <p>xx2000001153</p>

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
6	Carefully stretch the roundslings by lifting the crane slowly. This prevents the robot from falling down when it is unfastened. Do not overstretch the roundslings if the robot is fastened because there is a risk of the robot being damaged.	
7	Remove the robot attachment screws (if the robot is fastened).	Screw: M12x35 (robot installation directly on foundation) (4 pcs)
8	Raise the overhead crane to lift the robot.	



### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes

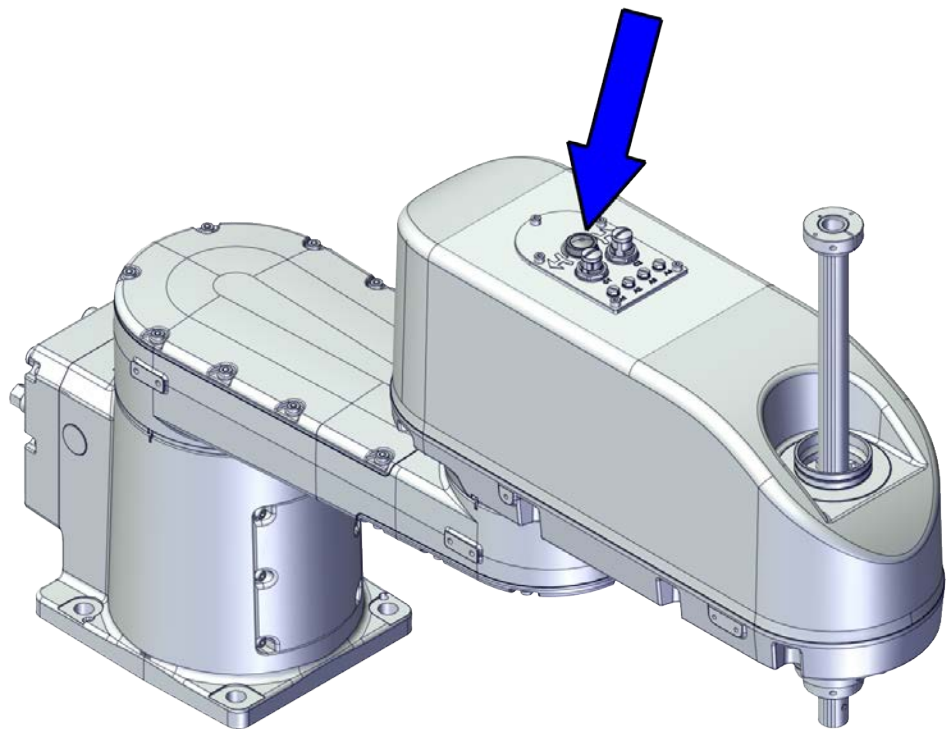
#### 3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes

##### Introduction to manually releasing the brakes

This section describes how to release the holding brakes for the axes motors.

##### Location of the brake release unit



The brake release unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx2000001154


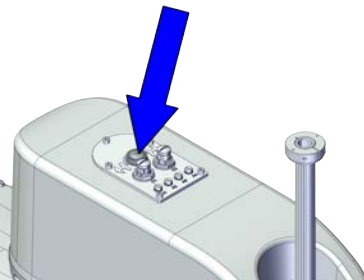
##### Releasing the brakes

This procedure describes how to release the holding brakes when the robot is equipped with a brake release unit.

	Action	Note
1	 <b>Note</b>  If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section <a href="#">Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 65</a> .	
2	 <b>DANGER</b>  When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways. Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot.	



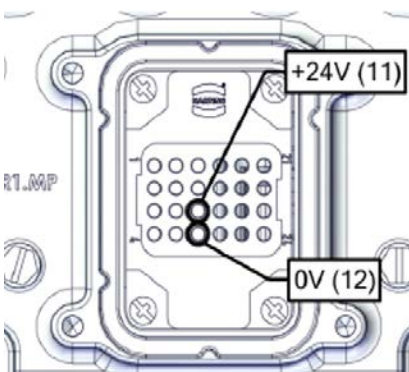
*Continues on next page*



Action	Note
<p>3 Release the holding brake of all axes by pressing the brake release button.</p> <p>The brake will be enable as soon as the button is released.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Pressing the brake release button will release the holding brakes on all axes simultaneously.</p>	 <p>xx2000001155</p>

#### Supplying power to connector R1.MP

If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to connector R1.MP on the robot, in order to enable the brake release buttons.

Action	Note
<p>1  <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Incorrect connections, such as supplying power to the wrong pin, may cause all brakes to be released simultaneously and instantly!</p>	
<p>2 Supply</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0V on pin 12.</li> <li>• 24V on pin 11.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Do not interchange the 24V and 0V pins.</p> <p>If they are mixed up, damage can be caused to internal electrical components.</p>	 <p>xx2000001136</p>
<p>3 Use the brake releasing button as described in <a href="#">Releasing the brakes on page 64</a>.</p>	



## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

### 3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

#### General

This section describes how to orient and secure the robot to the base plate or foundation in order to run the robot safely.

#### Attachment screws



The table below specifies the type of securing screws and washers to be used for securing the robot to the base plate/foundation.

Suitable screws	M12x35 (robot installation directly on foundation)
Quantity	4 pcs
Quality	8.8
Suitable washer	24 x 13 x 2.5, steel hardness class 200HV
Guide pins	2 pcs, D6, ISO 2338 - 6m6x20 - A1
Tightening torque	56 Nm±5.6 Nm
Length of thread engagement	Minimum 17 mm for ground with material yield strength 150 MPa
Level surface requirements	0.1/500 mm <sup>i</sup>

<sup>i</sup> See [Requirements, foundation on page 40](#).

#### Securing a floor mounted robot

Use this procedure to orient and secure the robot floor mounted.

	Action	Note
1	Make sure the installation site for the robot conforms to the specifications in section <a href="#">Technical data on page 38</a> .	
2	Prepare the installation site with attachment holes The foundation surface must be clean and unpainted.	The hole configuration of the base is shown in the figure in <a href="#">Hole configuration, base on page 67</a> .
3	 <b>CAUTION</b>  The weight of the IRB 920 robot is IRB 920-6/0.55: 23 kg IRB 920-6/0.65: 24 kg IRB 920T-6/0.45: 22 kg IRB 920T-6/0.55: 23 kg IRB 920T-6/0.65: 24 kg All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.	
4	 <b>CAUTION</b>  When the robot is put down after being lifted or transported, there is a risk of it tipping, if not properly secured.	

*Continues on next page*



### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

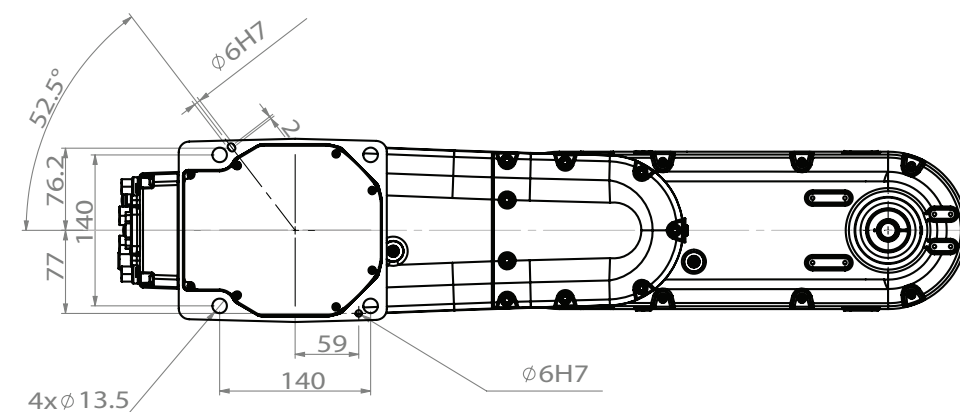
*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Lift the robot.	See <a href="#">Lifting the robot on page 58</a> .
6	Guide the robot gently, using the attachment screws while lowering it into its mounting position.	Make sure the robot base is correctly fitted onto the pins.
7	Fit the securing screws and washers in the attachment holes of the base.	Screws: M12x35 (robot installation directly on foundation), 4 pcs, quality 8.8 Washers: 24 x 13 x 2.5, steel hardness class 200HV
8	Tighten the bolts in a crosswise pattern to ensure that the base is not distorted.	Tightening torque: 56 Nm±5.6 Nm

#### Hole configuration, base

This illustration shows the hole configuration used when securing the robot.

Illustration for rear outlet cable version:



xx2000001147

Illustration for underneath outlet cable version:

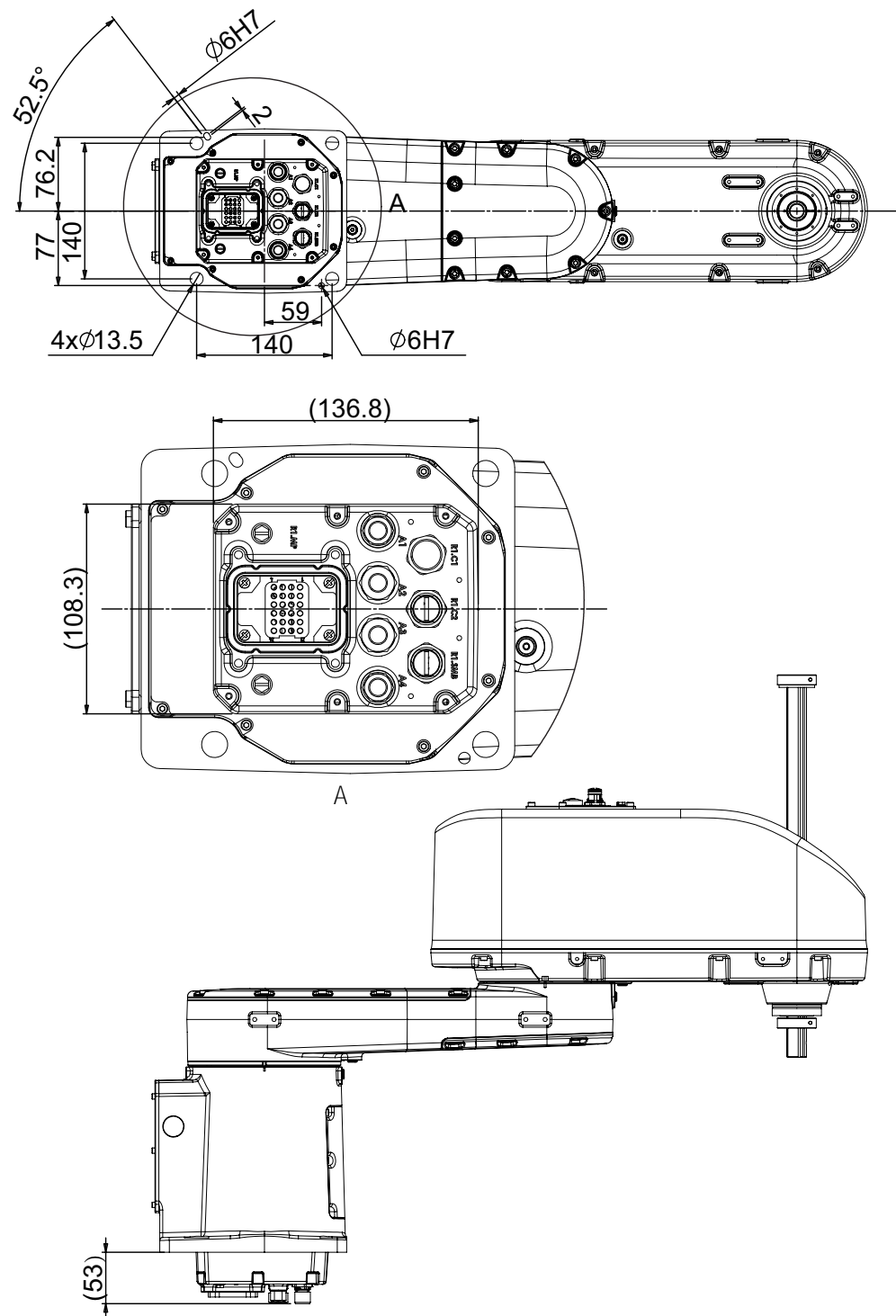
*Continues on next page*



### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

*Continued*



xx2000001148



#### 3.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances

---

##### Define loads carefully

Any loads mounted on the robot must be defined correctly and carefully (with regard to the position of center of gravity and mass moments of inertia) in order to avoid jolting movements and overloading motors, gears and structure.



##### CAUTION

Incorrectly defined loads may result in operational stops or major damage to the robot.

Load diagrams, permitted extra loads (equipment) and their positions are specified in the product specification. The loads must be defined in the software.

---

##### Stopping time and braking distances

The performance of the motor brake depends on if there are any loads attached to the robot.

See the product specification for the robot, listed in [References on page 10](#).



### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

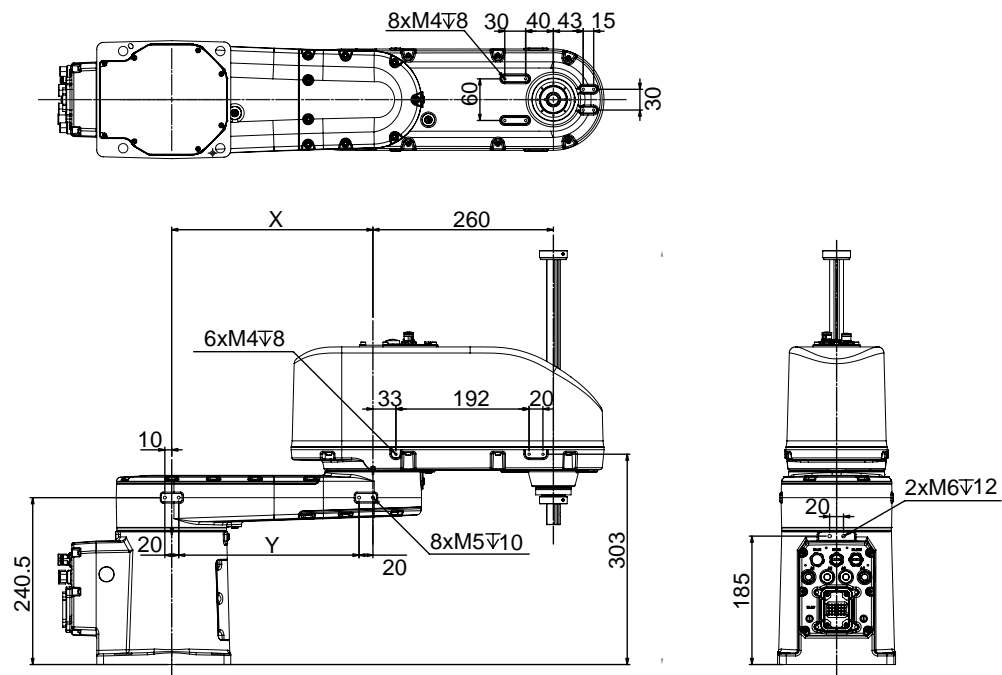
#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

##### Attachment holes and dimensions

Extra loads can be mounted on robot. Definitions of dimensions and masses are shown in the following figures. The robot is supplied with holes for fitting extra equipment.

Maximum allowed arm load depends on center of gravity of arm load and robot payload.

##### Holes for fitting extra equipment



xx2000001149

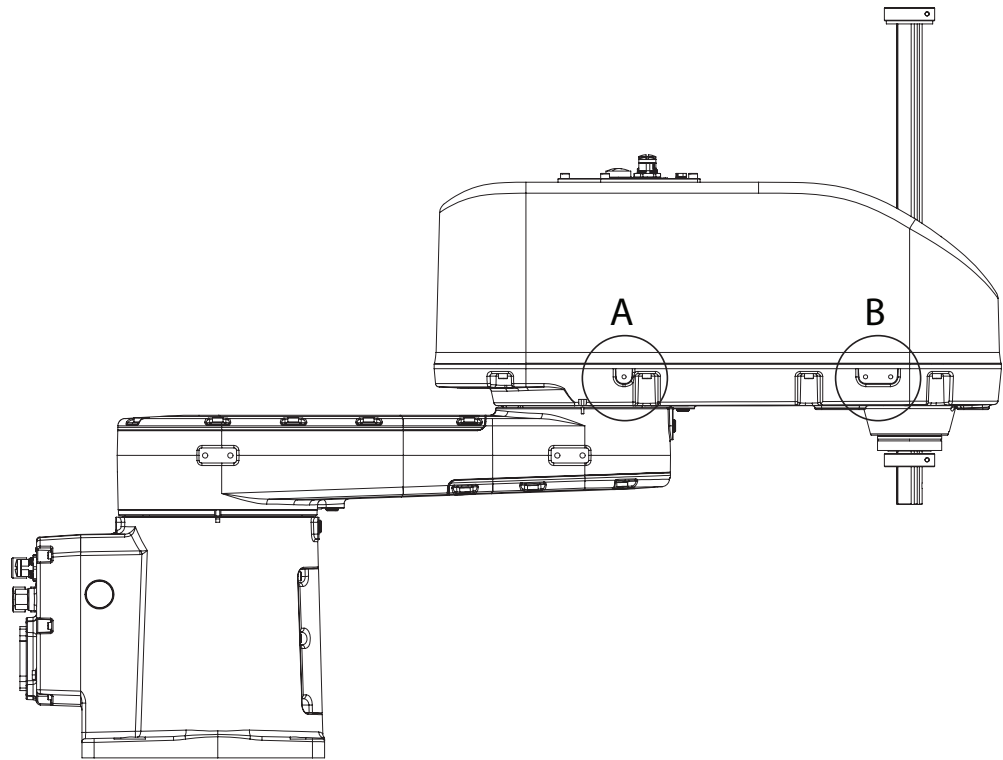
	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
X	190 mm	190 mm	290 mm	290 mm	390 mm	390 mm
Y	160 mm	160 mm	260 mm	260 mm	360 mm	360 mm

##### Gravity for different arm loads

Arm loads can be mounted on the axis 2. The C.o.G (center of gravity) of the extra load shall be within the marked load areas. The robot is supplied with holes for mounting of extra equipment. (See figures in Holes for mounting of extra equipment.)

*Continues on next page*





xx2300000850

#### Allowable weight

The total weight of equivalent weight from equipment and payload should not exceed 6 kg. The weight of equipment is converted to equivalent weight with formula below.



#### Note

Maximum load on the frame must not be exceeded.

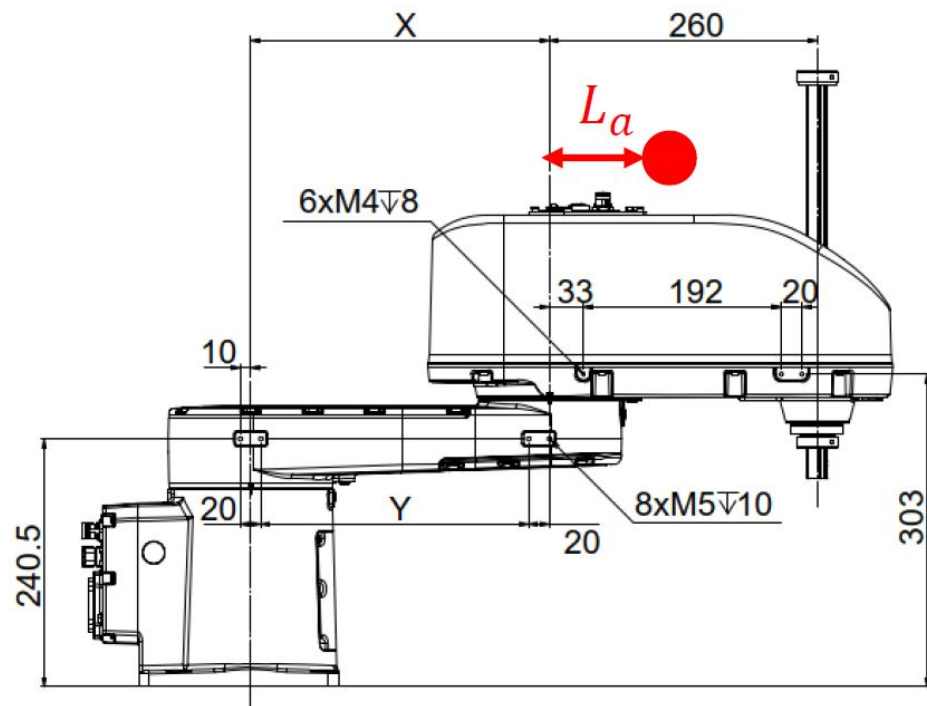
*Continues on next page*



### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

Continued



xx2400000960

$$E_m = M \cdot (L_a + X)^2 / (X + 260)^2$$

Value	Variant	Description
$E_m$		equivalent weight of equipment, in kg.
$L_a$		distance between axis 2 and C.o.G of equipment of equipment along horizontal direction, in mm.
X	6/0.45	190 mm
	6/0.55	290 mm
	6/0.65	390 mm

Example:

Situation: For IRB 920 6/0.55, equipment of 0.8kg is attached to arm2.

Allowable weight: X=290 mm. The distance between CoG of equipment and axis2 is 100 mm. The equivalent weight is  $E_m = 0.8 \cdot (290 + 100)^2 / (290 + 260)^2 = 0.4$  kg.

Then the max.allowable weight of payload is 6-0.4=5.6 kg.

Allowable C.o.G area for case 1: Screws on one side are used

1 x M4 screw for location A:

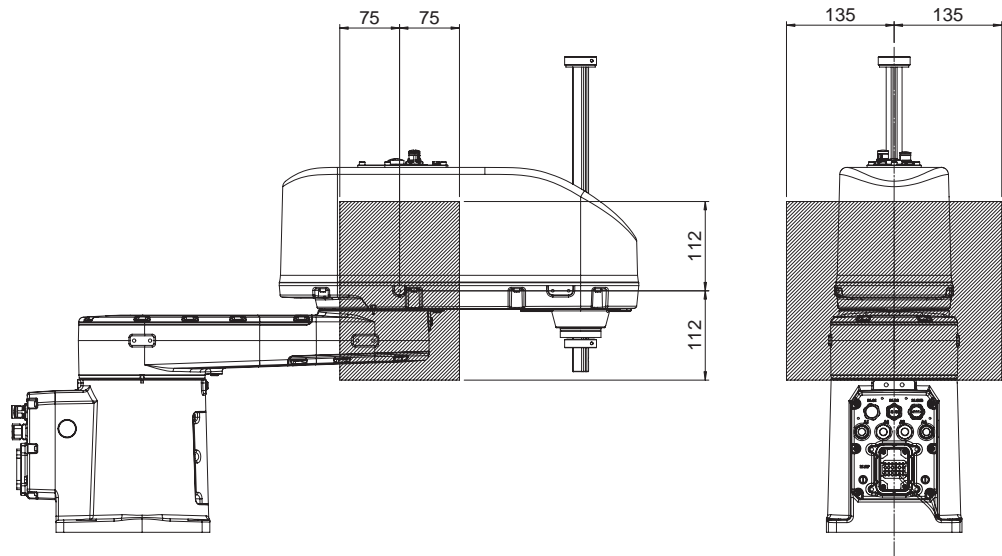
Continues on next page



### 3 Installation and commissioning

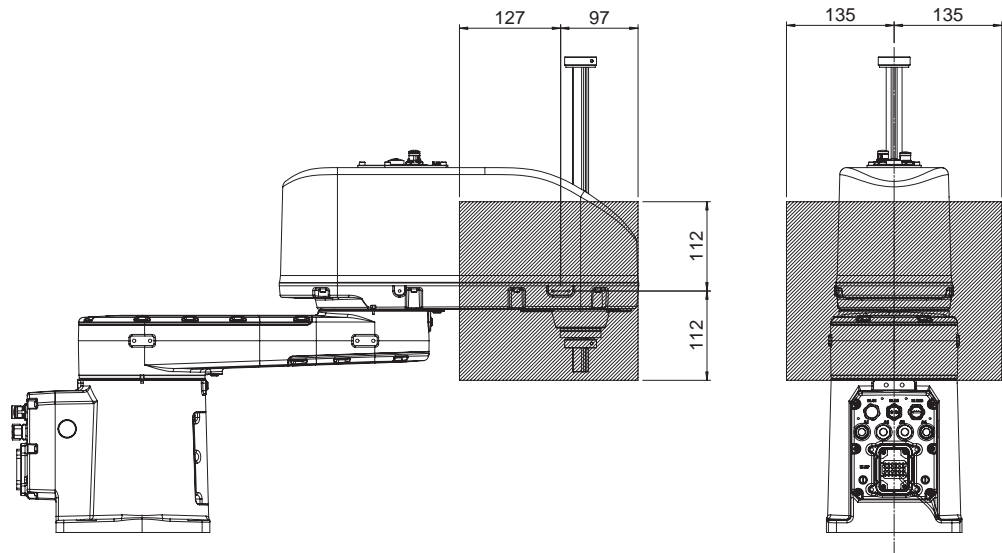
#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

*Continued*



xx2300000851

**2 x M4 screws for location B:**



xx2300000853

**Allowable C.o.G area for case 2: Screws on two sides are used  
2 x M4 screws for location A:**

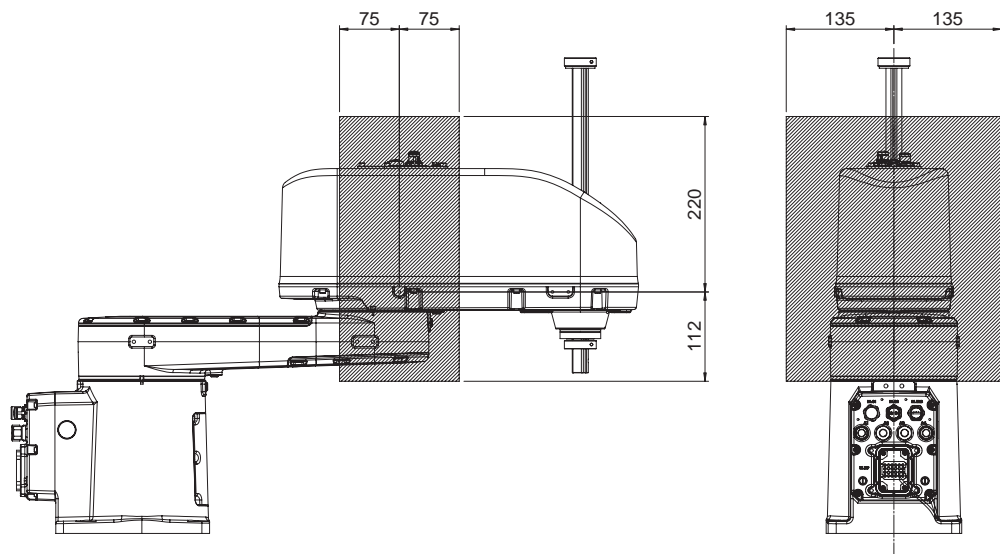
*Continues on next page*



### 3 Installation and commissioning

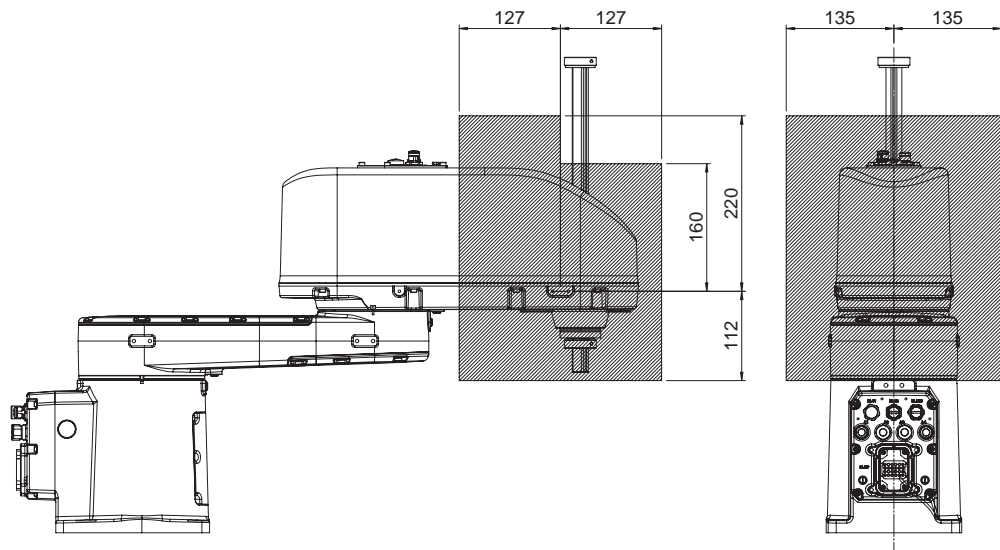
#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

*Continued*



xx2300000852

4 x M4 screws for location B:



xx2300000854

#### Fitting of end effector to the ball screw spline shaft

An end effector can be attached to the lower end of the shaft of the ball screw spline unit. The dimensions for fitting the end effector is shown in the following figure.



#### Note

Mounting of other equipment on the IRB 920 may damage the gearboxes.

*Continues on next page*

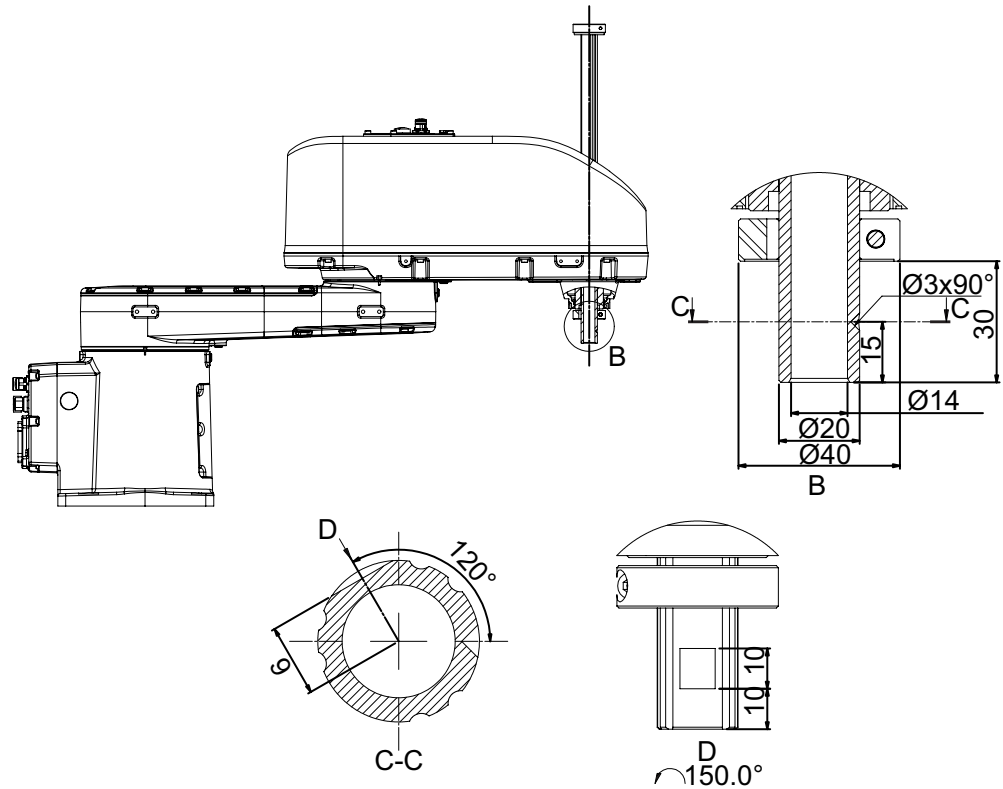


### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

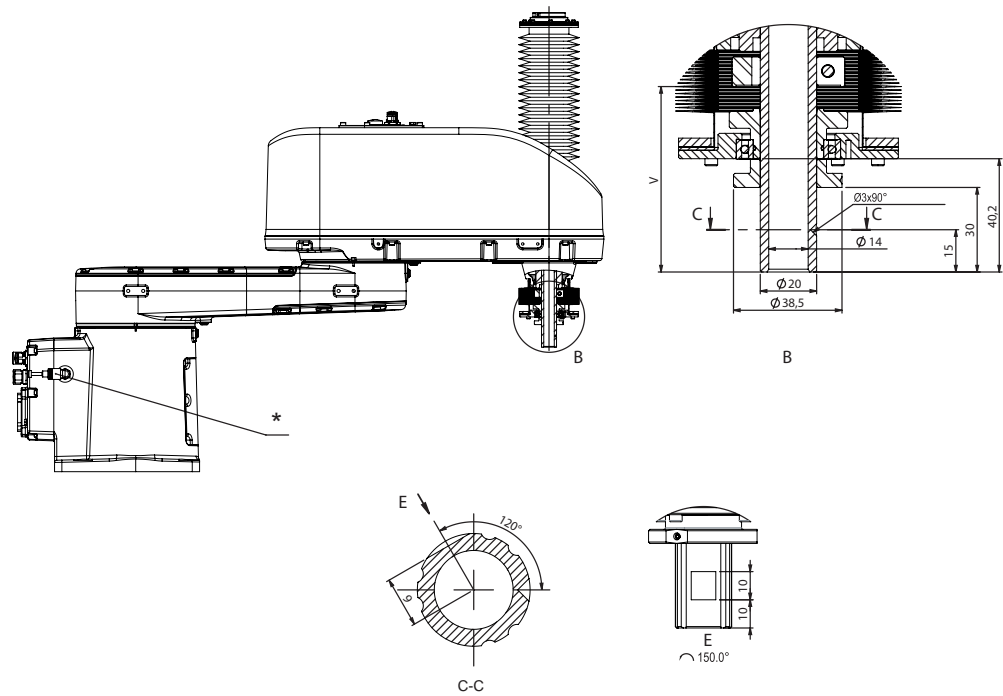
*Continued*

Robots with protection class IP30 3350-300



xx2000001157

Robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) or with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-5)



xx2100002394

\*: For Clean Room only.

*Continues on next page*



### 3 Installation and commissioning

---

#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

*Continued*

	0.45_0.18	0.45_0.3	0.55_0.18	0.55_0.3	0.65_0.18	0.65_0.3
V	65.8 mm	80.8 mm	65.8 mm	80.8 mm	65.8 mm	80.8 mm

---

#### Fastener quality

When fitting tools on the tool flange, only use screws with quality 12.9. For other equipment use suitable screws and tightening torque for your application.



## 3.4 Restricting the working range

### 3.4.1 Adjusting the working range

#### Reasons for adjusting the manipulator working range

The working range of each manipulator axis is configured in the software. If there is a risk that the manipulator may collide with other objects at installation site, its working space should be limited. The manipulator must always be able to move freely within its entire working space.

#### Working range configurations

The parameter values for the axes working range can be altered within the allowed working range and according to available options for the robot, either to limit or to extend a default working range. Allowed working ranges and available options for each manipulator axis are specified in [Working range on page 45](#).

#### Mechanical stops on the manipulator

Mechanical stops are and can be installed on the manipulator as limiting devices to ensure that the manipulator axis does not exceed the working range values set in the software parameters.



#### Note

The mechanical stops are only installed as safety precaution to physically stop the robot from exceeding the working range set. A collision with a mechanical stop always requires actions for repair and troubleshooting.

Axis	Fixed mechanical stop <sup>i</sup>	Movable mechanical stop <sup>ii</sup>
Axis 1	yes	no
Axis 2	yes	no
Axis 3	yes	yes
Axis 4	no	no

<sup>i</sup> Part of the casting or fixed on the casting and can not /should not be removed.

<sup>ii</sup> Can be installed in a different position to ensure a reduced working range.



### 3 Installation and commissioning

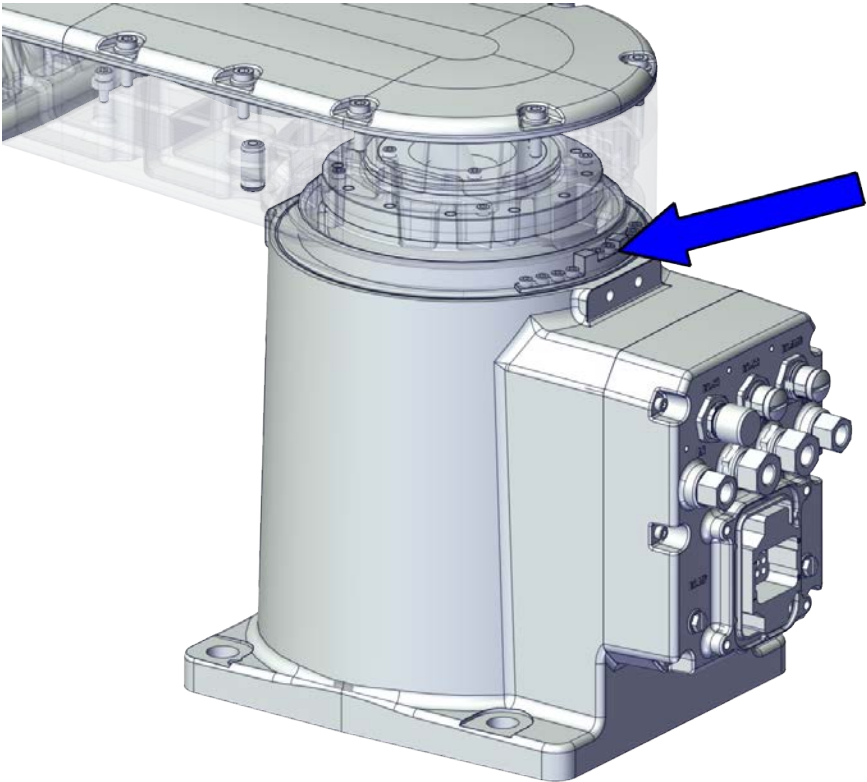
#### 3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range

#### 3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range

##### Axis-1 mechanical stops

##### Location of the mechanical stop

The figures shows where the axis-1 mechanical stop is placed on the robot.



xx2000001159

##### Required spare parts



##### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Block	3HAC075320-001	

##### Replacement of the axis-1 mechanical stop

For more details about replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop , see [Removing the block from the base on page 237](#).

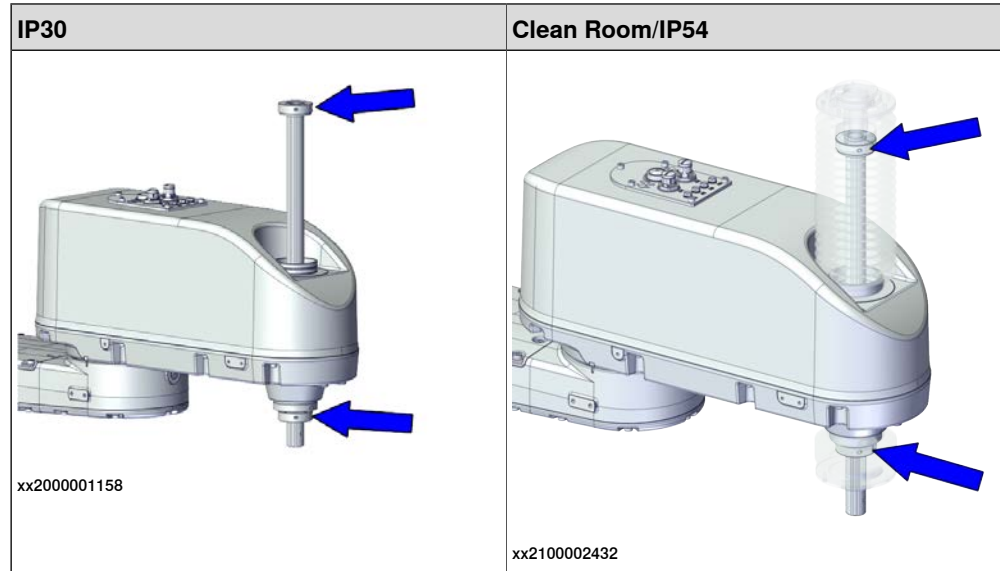
*Continues on next page*



#### Axis 3 mechanical stops

##### Location of the mechanical stops

The figures shows where the axis 3 mechanical stops are placed on the robot.



#### CAUTION

For the robots with protection type Clean Room and protection class IP54, the mechanical stops are inside the bellows. If needed, remove the bellows to inspect the ball screw spline unit.

For the details on removing the bellows, refer to [Replacing the bellows](#).

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Mechanical-Stop top, D20	3HAC073068-001	With bolt
Mechanical-Stop bottom, D20	3HAC073069-001	With bolt

#### Replacement of the axis-3 mechanical stop

For more details about replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop, see [Replacing the mechanical stopper on page 403](#).



## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

## 3.5 Electrical connections

### 3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

#### Introduction

Connect the robot and controller to each other after securing them to the foundation. The lists below specify which cables to use for each respective application.



#### DANGER

Turn off the main power before connecting any cables.



#### CAUTION

Verify that the serial number is according to the number(s) in the *Declaration of Incorporation* (DoI).

#### Main cable categories

The following table specifies cabling categories between the robot and the controller. Some of the cabling belong to optional applications.

Cable category	Description
Robot cables	Handles power supply to and control of the robot's motors as well as feedback from the serial measurement board. Specified in the table <a href="#">Robot cables on page 80</a> .
Customer cables	Handles communication with equipment fitted on the robot by the customer, low voltage signals and high voltage power supply + protective ground. The customer cables also handle databus communication. The customer cables also include the air hose. See the product manual for the controller, see document number in <a href="#">References on page 10</a> .
Air hoses	The hose for compressed air is integrated with the manipulator cable harness.

#### Robot cables

These cables are included in the standard delivery. They are completely pre-manufactured and ready to plug in.

Cable sub-category	Description	Connection point, cabinet	Connection point, robot
Robot cables, power	Transfers drive power from the drive units in the control cabinet to the robot motors.	X1	R1.MP <sup>i</sup>
Robot cable, signals	Transfers resolver data from and power supply to the serial measurement board.	X2	R1.SMB

<sup>i</sup> An O-ring is needed for the robots with protection type Clean Room and protection class IP54.

*Continues on next page*





#### Note

Install the O-ring (3HAB3772-19) for the haring connector when connect the power cable for the robots with protection type Clean Room and protection class IP54.

#### Robot cable, power

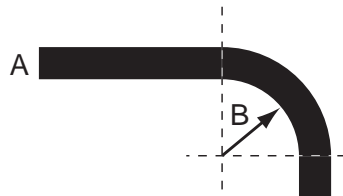
Power cable length	Article number
Power cable, straight connector, 3 m	3HAC077245-001
Power cable, straight connector, 7 m	3HAC077245-002
Power cable, straight connector, 15 m	3HAC077245-003
Power cable, angled connector, 3 m	3HAC077247-001
Power cable, angled connector, 7 m	3HAC077247-002
Power cable, angled connector, 15 m	3HAC077247-003

#### Robot cable, signals

Signal cable length	Article number
Signal cable, shielded: 3 m	3HAC084767-001
Signal cable, shielded: 7 m	3HAC084767-002
Signal cable, shielded: 15 m	3HAC084767-003

#### Bending radius for static floor cables

The minimum bending radius is 10 times the cable diameter for static floor cables.



xx1600002016

A	Diameter
B	Diameter x10

*Continues on next page*



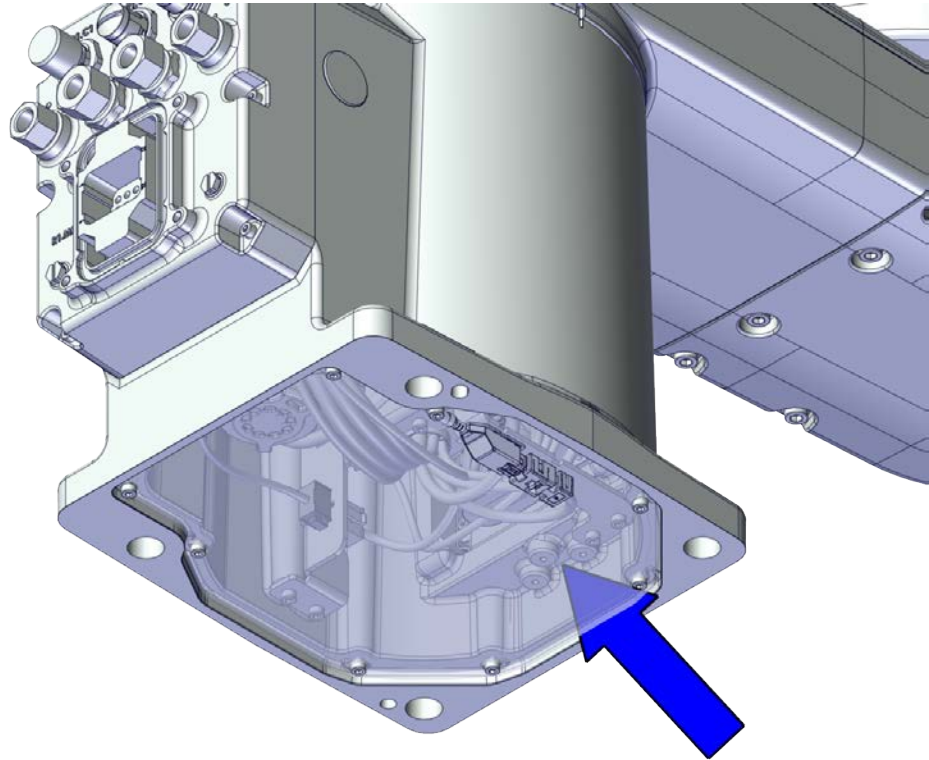
### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

*Continued*

##### Grounding and bonding point on manipulator

There is a grounding/bonding point on the manipulator base. The grounding/bonding point is used for potential equalizing between control cabinet, manipulator and any peripheral devices.



xx2000001160

Figure 3.1:

##### Customer cables - CP/CS cable

CP/CS cable length	Article number <sup>i</sup>
3 m	3HAC067449-001
7 m	3HAC067449-002
15 m	3HAC067449-003

<sup>i</sup> It is recommended to always use the CP/CS cable provided by ABB. If users still require to do wiring by their own, make sure to use R1.C1 connector in M12 A-code 12p female type. It is the responsibility of the users to guarantee the safety of the system when self-prepared cables and connectors are used.

##### Customer cables - Ethernet floor cable

Ethernet floor cable length	Article number <sup>i</sup>
7 m	3HAC067447-002
15 m	3HAC067447-003

<sup>i</sup> It is recommended to always use the Ethernet floor cable provided by ABB. If users still require to do wiring by their own, make sure to use R1.C2 connector in M12 X-code male type. It is the responsibility of the users to guarantee the safety of the system when self-prepared cables and connectors are used.

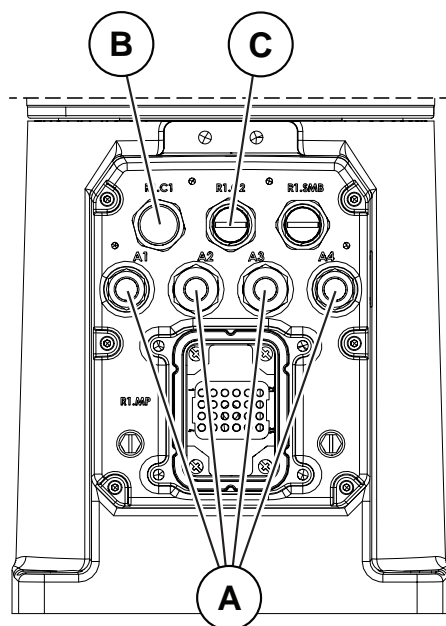


### 3.5.2 Customer connections

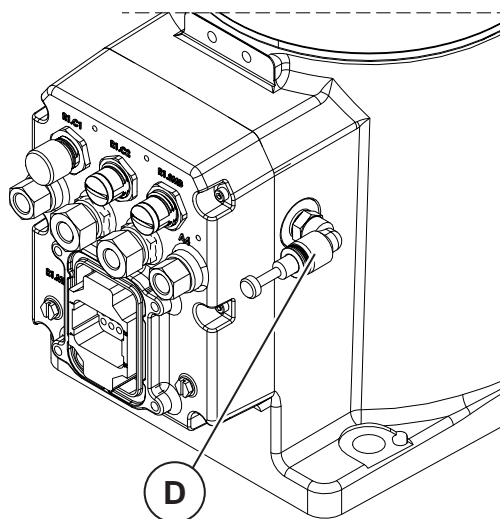
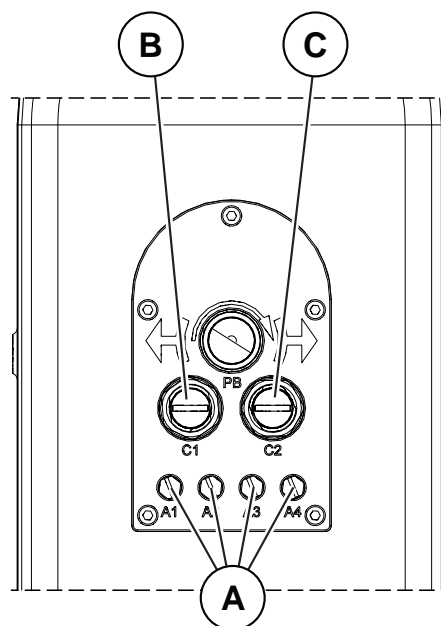
#### Introduction to customer connections

The cables for customer connection are integrated in the robot and the connectors are placed at the outer arm and base. There are two connectors C1/C2 at the outer arm. Corresponding connector R1.C1/R1.C2 are located at the base.

Hose for compressed air is also integrated into the manipulator. There are 4 inlets at the base (R1/8") and 4 outlets (M5) on the outer arm.



xx2000001161



xx2100002441

*Continues on next page*



### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.5.2 Customer connections

*Continued*

Position	Connection	Description	Number	Value
A	Air	Max. 6 bar	4	Air hose with outer diameter 4 mm, 2 pcs Air hose with outer diameter 6 mm, 2 pcs
B	C1	Customer power/signal	12 wires	30 V, 1.5 A
C	C2	Customer power/signal or ethernet	8 wires	30 V, 1 A or 1 Gbits/s
D	EP	Exhaust port <sup>i</sup>	1	Φ8 , 7~9L/min <sup>ii</sup>

<sup>i</sup> Only available for protection type Clean Room.

<sup>ii</sup> To avoid the deformation of bellows, reduce the air flow if necessary.

#### Connector kits (optional)

##### Connector kits, base

R1.C1 and R1.C2 connectors on the base are parts of the CP/CS cable and Ethernet floor cable, respectively. For details about the robot cabling, see [Robot cabling and connection points on page 80](#).

##### Connector kits, outer arm

The table describes the CP/CS and Ethernet (if any) connector kits for the outer arm.

Position	Description		Art. no.
Connector kits	CP/CS	M12 CPCS Male straight connector kits	3HAC066098-001
		M12 CPCS Male angled connector kits	3HAC066099-001
	Ethernet	M12 Ethernet Cat5e Male straight connector kits	3HAC067413-001
		M12 Ethernet Cat5e Male angled connector kits	3HAC067414-001

#### Protection covers

##### Protection covers for water and dust proofing

Protection covers are delivered together with the robot and must be well fitted to the connectors in any application requiring water and dust proofing.

Always remember to refit the protection covers after removing them.

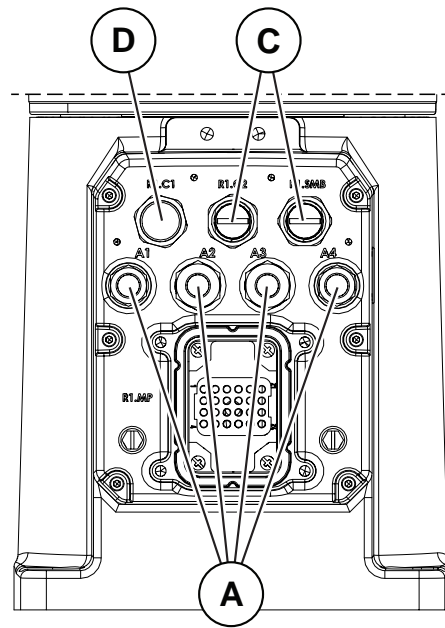


#### Note

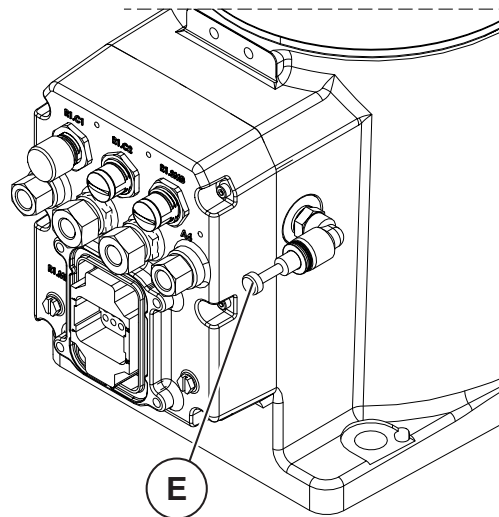
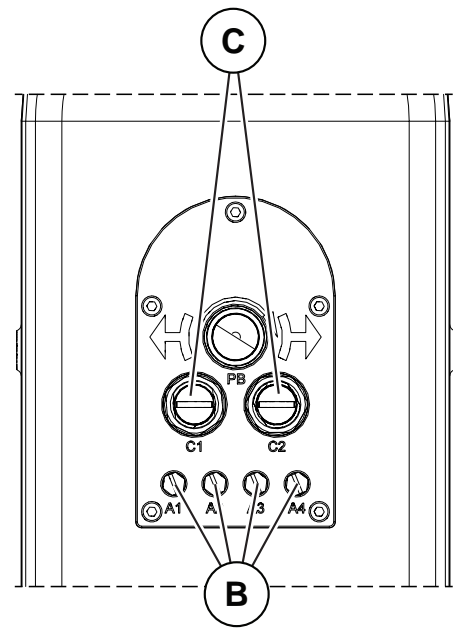
If the protection covers are not refitted back with the connectors exposed, the protection class will be lost.

*Continues on next page*





xx2000001162



xx2100002442

A	Protection covers for air hose connector on the base
B	Protection covers for air hose connector on the process hub
C	Protection covers for C2/SMB connector on the base and C1/C2 connector on the process hub
D	Protection cover for C1 connector on the base
E	Protection plug for exhaust port connector on the base <sup>i</sup>

<sup>i</sup> Only available for protection type Clean Room.



## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.6 Start of robot in cold environments

### 3.6 Start of robot in cold environments

#### Introduction

This section describes how to start the robot in a cold environment if it is not starting the normal way.

#### Problems with starting the robot

##### Event message from Motion Supervision

Use this procedure if an event message indicates a problem with Motion supervision at start-up. More information about Motion Supervision is found in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

	Action	Note
1	Turn off Motion Supervision.	
2	Start the robot.	
3	When the robot has reached normal working temperature, the Motion Supervision can be turned on again.	

##### Robot stopping with other event message

Use this procedure if the robot is not starting.

	Action	Note
1	Start the robot with its normal program but with reduced speed.	The speed can be regulated with the RAPID instruction <code>VelSet</code> .

#### Adjusting the speed and acceleration during warm-up

Depending on how cold the environment is and what program is being used, the speed might need to be ramped up until reached maximum. The table shows examples of how to adjust the speed:

Work cycles	AccSet	Speed/velocity
3 Work cycles	20, 20	v100 (100 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	40, 40	v400 (400 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	60, 60	v600 (600 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	100, 100	v1000 (1000 mm/s)
More than 5 Work cycles	100, 100	Max.

If the program consists of large wrist movements, it is possible that the reorientation velocity, which is always high in predefined velocities, needs to be included in the ramping up.



### 3.7 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

#### Safe handling

Use the following procedure after installation, maintenance, or repair, before initiating motion.



#### **DANGER**

Initiating motion without fulfilling the following aspects, may increase the risk for injury or cause damage to the robot.

	Action
1	Remove all tools and foreign objects from the robot and its working area.
2	Verify that the robot is properly secured to its position by all screws, before it is powered up.
3	Verify that any safety equipment installed to secure the position or restrict the robot motion during service activity is removed.
4	Verify that the fixture and work piece are well secured, if applicable.
5	Verify that all safety equipment is installed, as designed for the application.
6	Verify that no personnel are inside the safeguarded space.
7	If maintenance or repair has been done, verify the function of the part that was maintained.
8	Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed.

#### Collision risks



#### **CAUTION**

When programming the movements of the robot, always identify potential collision risks before initiating motion.



This page is intentionally left blank



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.1 Introduction

---

#### Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes all the maintenance activities recommended for the IRB 920.

It is based on the maintenance schedule found at the beginning of the chapter. The schedule contains information about required maintenance activities including intervals, and refers to procedures for the activities.

Each procedure contains all the information required to perform the activity, including required tools and materials.

The procedures are gathered in different sections and divided according to the maintenance activity.

---

#### Safety information

Observe all safety information before conducting any maintenance work.

There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before performing any maintenance work.

The maintenance must be done by qualified personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.



#### Note

If the IRB 920 is connected to power, always make sure that the IRB 920 is connected to protective earth and a residual current device (RCD) before starting any maintenance work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- *Product manual - OmniCore C90XT Type A*
- *Product manual - OmniCore E10*
- [Robot cabling and connection points on page 80.](#)



## 4 Maintenance

---

### 4.2 Service Information System (SIS)

### 4.2 Service Information System (SIS)

---

#### General

Service Information System (SIS) is a software function within the robot controller, which simplifies maintenance of the robot system. It supervises the operating time and mode of the robot, and alerts the operator when a maintenance activity is scheduled.

#### Troubleshooting

The SIS function *Gearbox* is available for estimating the service interval (remaining lifetime) of the gearboxes of a robot. Such information of the ball screw spline unit of the IRB 920 is reported as **axis 3** in the SIS system. When a service message is reported for axis 3 of the IRB 920, an inspection on the ball screw spline unit is required.

For more information about the SIS function, see *Operating manual - Integrator's guide OmniCore*.



## 4.3 Maintenance schedule and expected component life

### 4.3.1 Specification of maintenance intervals

---

#### Introduction

The intervals are specified in different ways depending on the type of maintenance activity to be carried out and the working conditions of the IRB 920:

- Calendar time: specified in months regardless of whether the system is running or not.
- Operating time: specified in operating hours. More frequent running means more frequent maintenance activities.
- SIS: specified by the robot's SIS (Service Information System). A typical value is given for a typical work cycle, but the value will differ depending on how hard each part is run.

The SIS used in OmniCore is further described in the *Operating manual - OmniCore*.

Robots with the functionality *Service Information System* activated can show active counters in the device browser in RobotStudio, or on the FlexPendant.



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.2 Maintenance schedule

### 4.3.2 Maintenance schedule

#### Scheduled and non-predictable maintenance

The robot must be maintained regularly to ensure proper function. The maintenance activities and intervals are specified in the table below.

Non-predictable situations also give rise to inspections of the robot. Any damage must be attended to immediately.

#### Life of each component

The inspection intervals *do not* specify the life of each component. Values for these are specified in the section [Expected component life on page 94](#)

#### Maintenance schedule

Maintenance activities	Regularly	Every 12 months	Every 36 months	Every 15,000 hours <sup>i</sup>	Every 20,000 hours <sup>i</sup>	Reference
Cleaning the robot	x					<a href="#">Cleaning the IRB 920 on page 113</a>
Inspecting the robot	x					Check for abnormal wear or contamination.
Inspecting the robot harness	x <sup>ii</sup>					<a href="#">Inspecting the robot cabling on page 99</a>
Inspecting the information labels		x				<a href="#">Inspecting the information labels on page 95</a>
Inspecting the ball screw spline unit	x					<a href="#">Inspecting the ball screw spline unit on page 100</a>
Inspecting the mechanical stop	x					<a href="#">Inspecting axis-3 mechanical stops on page 103</a>
Inspecting the timing belt		x				<a href="#">Inspecting timing belts on page 106</a>
Lubricating the ball screw spline unit	x <sup>iii</sup>					<a href="#">Lubricating the ball screw spline unit on page 111</a>
Replacing the SMB battery pack			x <sup>iv</sup>			<a href="#">Replacing the battery pack on page 110</a>
Running the <i>Brake Check</i> routine <sup>v</sup>	x <sup>vi</sup>					Recommended to robots without the SafeMove option. See <i>Operating manual - OmniCore</i> .
Running the <i>Cyclic Brake Check</i> routine <sup>v</sup>	x <sup>vi</sup>					Recommended to robots with the SafeMove option. See <i>Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove</i> .
Overhaul of complete robot				x <sup>vii</sup>	x <sup>viii</sup>	

<sup>i</sup> Operating hours counted by the DTC = Duty time counter.

*Continues on next page*



- ii Replace when damage or cracks is detected or life limit is approaching that specified in section [Expected component life on page 94](#).
- iii Inspect the grease condition on ball screw spline unit frequently and lubricate the unit if any of grease degradation (including but not limited to discoloration or dry-out) or insufficiency is observed. Alternatively, lubricate the ball screw spline unit regularly depending on the application condition.
- iv The battery is to be replaced at given maintenance interval or at battery low alert.
- v Not needed separately if already included in the application.
- vi Recommended test interval is within the range 8-48 hours.
- vii Valid for IRB 920-6/0.55 and IRB 920-6/0.65.
- viii Valid for IRB 920T-6/0.45, IRB 920T-6/0.55 and IRB 920T-6/0.65.



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.3 Expected component life

### 4.3.3 Expected component life

#### Expected life depends on usage

The expected life of a specific component of the robot can vary greatly depending on how hard it is run.

#### Expected component life

Component	Expected life	Note
Cable harness, normal usage <sup>i</sup>	20000 hours <sup>ii</sup>	
Cable harness, extreme usage <sup>iii</sup>	20000 hours <sup>ii</sup>	
Gearboxes	20000 hours	Valid for IRB 920T-6/0.45, IRB 920T-6/0.55 and IRB 920T-6/0.65.
Gearboxes	15000 hours	Valid for IRB 920-6/0.55 and IRB 920-6/0.65.

<sup>i</sup> Examples of "normal usage" in regard to movement: most material handling applications and limited use of bending backwards mode of axis 3.

<sup>ii</sup> Severe chemical or thermal environments, or similar environments, can result in shortened life expectancy.

<sup>iii</sup> Examples of "extreme usage" in regard to movement: press tending, very severe palletizing applications, major use of axis 1 movement and major use of bending backwards of axis 3.

#### Expected component life - for L/H/P applications

The demanding nature of using IRB 920 with protection type Clean Room in a Lifescience, Healthcare, and Pharmaceutical (L/H/P) application where extensive cleaning are applied can shorten the life of the robot's components compared to that of standard robots in a typical robotic application. See [Expected component life on page 94](#) for standard robots. Depending on the actual cleaning in the L/H/P application, the compromise of lifetime of IRB 920 with protection type Clean Room in L/H/P applications will depend on a number of factors. The most important factors are:

- The cleaning detergent and cleaning protocol/regime applied.
- The ambient environment including temperature, humidity, water quality, etc. Using elevated temperature for cleaning bath is not recommended.
- Installation, maintenance, and repair procedures.
- The operation cycle of the robot.

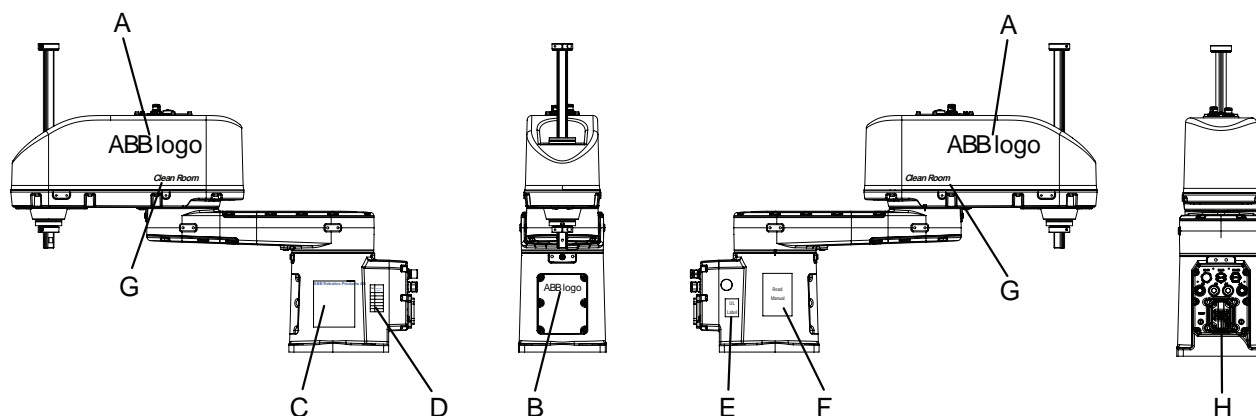


## 4.4 Inspection activities

### 4.4.1 Inspecting the information labels

#### Location of labels

These figures show the location of the information labels to be inspected. The symbols are described in section [Safety symbols on manipulator labels on page 19](#).



xx2000001143

A	ABB logo (Big size)
B	ABB logo (Small size)
C	Rating label
D	Calibration label
E	UL label
F	Read manual and caution
G	Clean Room label <sup>i</sup>

<sup>i</sup> Only available for Clean Room robots.

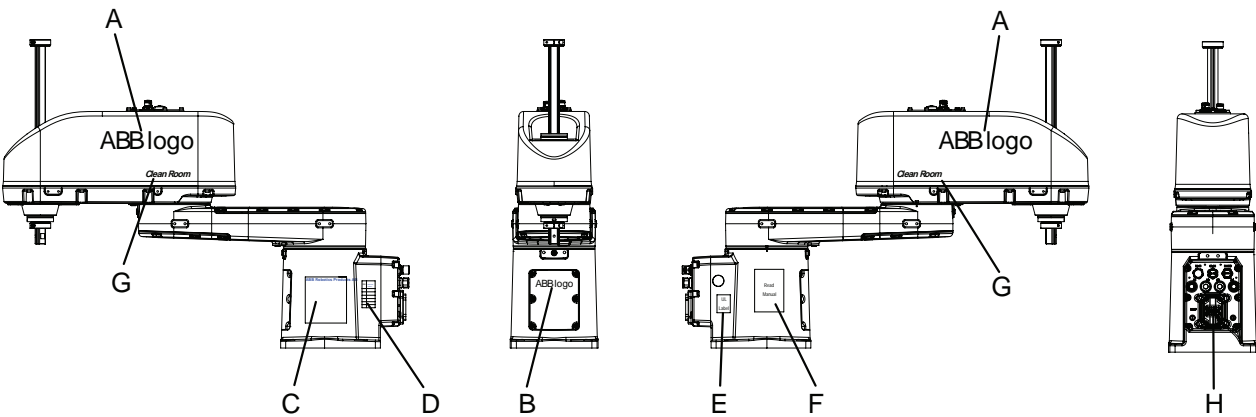
*Continues on next page*



# 4 Maintenance

## 4.4.1 Inspecting the information labels

*Continued*



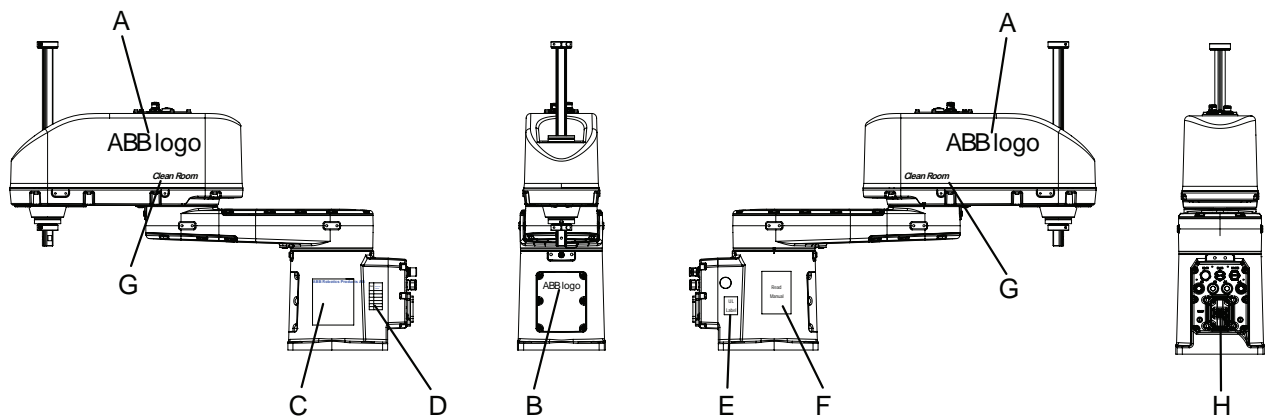
xx2000001143

A	ABB logo (Big size)
B	ABB logo (Small size)
C	Rating label
D	Calibration label
E	UL label
F	Read manual and caution
G	Clean Room label <sup>i</sup>

<sup>i</sup> Only available for Clean Room robots.

*Continues on next page*

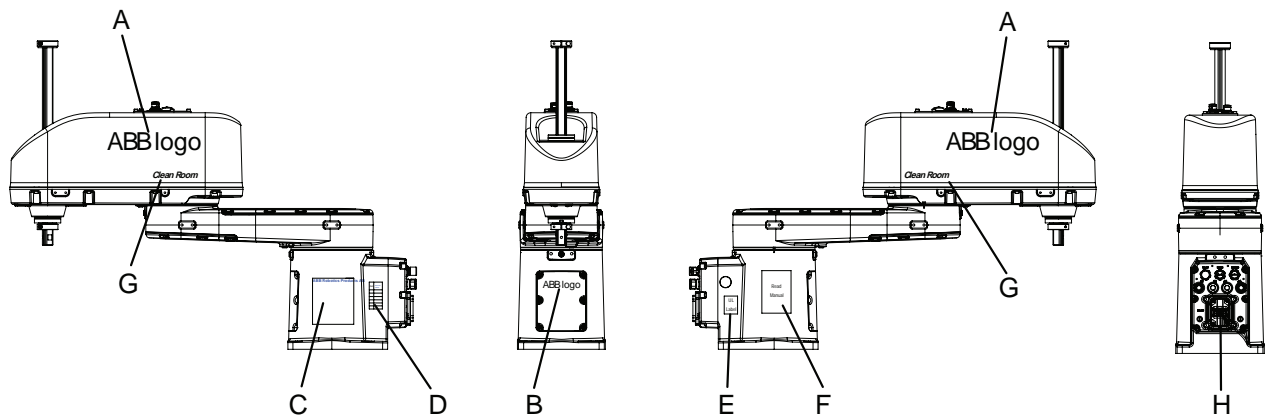




xx2000001143

A	ABB logo (Big size)
B	ABB logo (Small size)
C	Rating label
D	Calibration label
E	UL label
F	Read manual and caution
G	Clean Room label <sup>i</sup>

<sup>i</sup> Only available for Clean Room robots.



xx2000001143

A	ABB logo (Big size)
B	ABB logo (Small size)
C	Rating label
D	Calibration label
E	UL label
F	Read manual and caution
G	Clean Room label <sup>i</sup>

<sup>i</sup> Only available for Clean Room robots.

*Continues on next page*



## 4 Maintenance


### 4.4.1 Inspecting the information labels

*Continued*

#### Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

#### Inspecting, labels

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
2	Inspect the labels, located as shown in the figures.	
3	Replace any missing or damaged labels.	Article numbers for the labels and plate set is specified in <a href="#">Spare parts on page 1017</a> .



## 4.4.2 Inspecting the robot cabling

### Introduction



#### CAUTION

**For robots with protection type Clean Room**

Always read the specific instructions before doing any repair work, see [Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124](#)


### Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.

### Inspection, robot cabling

Use this procedure to inspect the robot cabling.

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply to the robot</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply to the robot</li> <li>• air pressure supply to the robot</li> </ul> Before entering the robot working area.	
2	Visually inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the control cabling between the robot and control cabinet</li> <li>• the cabling to motors 1 and 2.</li> </ul> Look for abrasions, cuts or crush damage.	
3	Replace the cabling if wear or damage is detected.	



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.3 Inspecting the ball screw spline unit

### 4.4.3 Inspecting the ball screw spline unit

#### Introduction

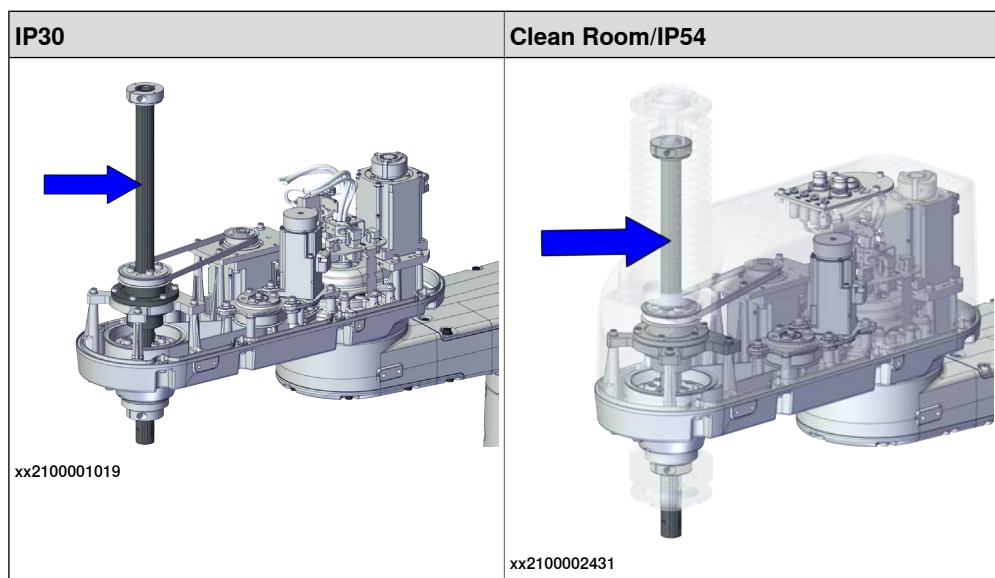


#### CAUTION

Always read the specific instructions if the robot has protection type Clean Room, before doing any repair work, see [Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124](#)

#### Location of ball screw spline unit

The ball screw spline unit is located as shown in the figure.



#### CAUTION

For the robots with protection type Clean Room and protection class IP54, the ball screw spline unit is inside the bellows. If needed, remove the bellows to inspect the ball screw spline unit.

For details about how to remove the bellows, see [Replacing the bellows](#).

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Ball screw, BNS2020A+395LC5	3HAC070477-001	Used for IRB 920T-6/0.45_0.18, IRB 920T-6/0.55_0.18 and IRB 920T-6/0.65_0.18

*Continues on next page*



## 4.4.3 Inspecting the ball screw spline unit

*Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Ball screw, PBSA20-20-335-395	3HAC077739-001	Used for IRB 920-6/0.55_0.18 and IRB 920-6/0.65_0.18
Ball screw, BNS2020A+515LC5	3HAC072983-001	Used for IRB 920T-6/0.45_0.3, IRB 920T-6/0.55_0.3 and IRB 920T-6/0.65_0.3
Ball Screw Flange	3HAC070479-001	
Mechanical-Stop top, D20	3HAC073068-001	With bolt
Mechanical-Stop bottom, D20	3HAC073069-001	With bolt

**Required tools and equipment**

Spare part	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.


**Inspecting, ball screw spline unit****Note**

**For robots with protection type Clean Room**

**For robots with protection class IP54**

First remove the upper bellow and lower bellow according to [Replacing the bellows on page 426](#).

Then, use this procedure to inspect the ball screw spline unit.

	Action	Note
1	Turn on the electric power supply to the robot. If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section <a href="#">Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 65</a> .	
2	 <b>DANGER</b>  When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways!  Make sure the payload is disassembled or tooling is properly supported; otherwise, fast downward movements of axis 3 may cause severe hits.	

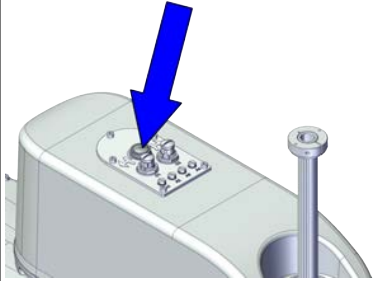
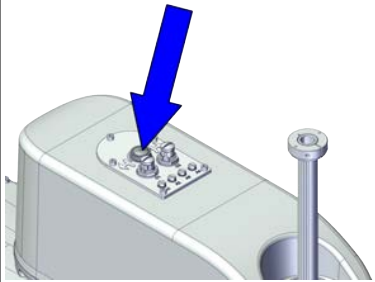
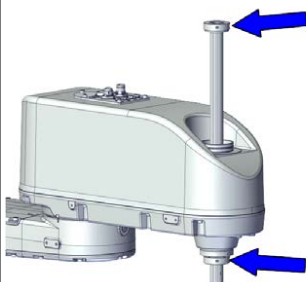
*Continues on next page*



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.3 Inspecting the ball screw spline unit

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Release the holding brake by pressing the button on the internal brake release unit.	 xx2000001155
4	Move the outer arm to a position where the axis 3 can be moved in full stroke.	
5	Press the brake release button and move the shaft to its upper and lower limits manually.	 xx2000001155
6	Visually inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the stop blocks on the ball screw spline unit</li> <li>the shaft of the ball screw spline unit</li> </ul> Look for abrasions, cuts or crush damages on the spline, and grease amount on the shaft.	 xx2000001158
7	Apply grease to the shaft if it is not enough.	See <a href="#">Lubricating the ball screw spline unit on page 111</a> .
8	Replace the ball screw spline unit if wear or damage is detected.	See <a href="#">Replacing the ball screw on page 496</a> .



## 4.4.4 Inspecting axis-3 mechanical stops

### Introduction

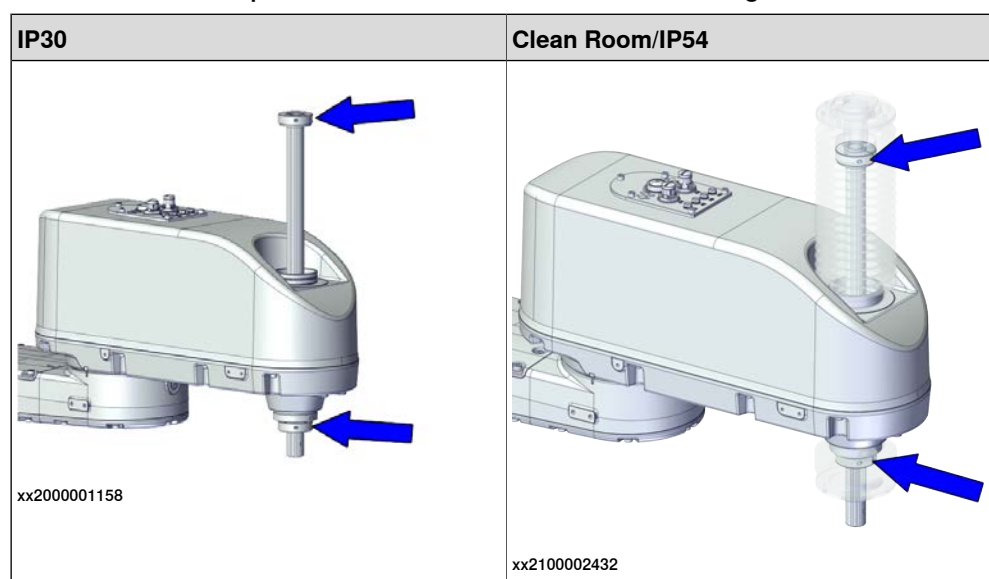


#### CAUTION

Always read the specific instructions if the robot has protection type Clean Room, before doing any repair work, see [Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124](#)

### Location of axis-3 mechanical stops

The mechanical stops on axis 3 is located as shown in the figures.



#### CAUTION

For the robots with protection type Clean Room and protection class IP54, the mechanical stops are inside the bellows. If needed, remove the bellows to inspect the ball screw spline unit.

For the details on removing the bellows, refer to [Replacing the bellows](#).

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Mechanical-Stop top, D20	3HAC073068-001	With bolt
Mechanical-Stop bottom, D20	3HAC073069-001	With bolt

*Continues on next page*



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.4 Inspecting axis-3 mechanical stops

*Continued*

#### Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced.  
These are specified in the replacement procedure.

#### Inspecting, axis-3 mechanical stops



##### Note



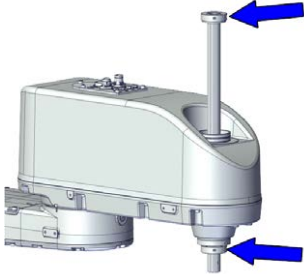
**For robots with protection type Clean Room**

**For robots with protection class IP54**

First remove the upper bellow and lower bellow according to [Replacing the bellows on page 426](#).


Then, use this procedure to inspect the ball screw spline unit.

Use this procedure to inspect mechanical stops on axes 1 and 2.

	Action	Information
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Inspect the mechanical stops.	 xx2000001158

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Information
4	<p>Replace if any mechanical stop is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bent</li> <li>• loose</li> <li>• damaged.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The expected life of gearboxes can be reduced as a result of collisions with the mechanical stop.</p>	



# 4 Maintenance

## 4.4.5 Inspecting timing belts

### 4.4.5 Inspecting timing belts

#### Introduction

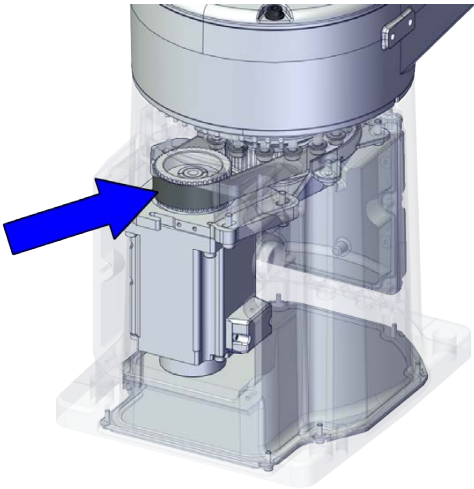
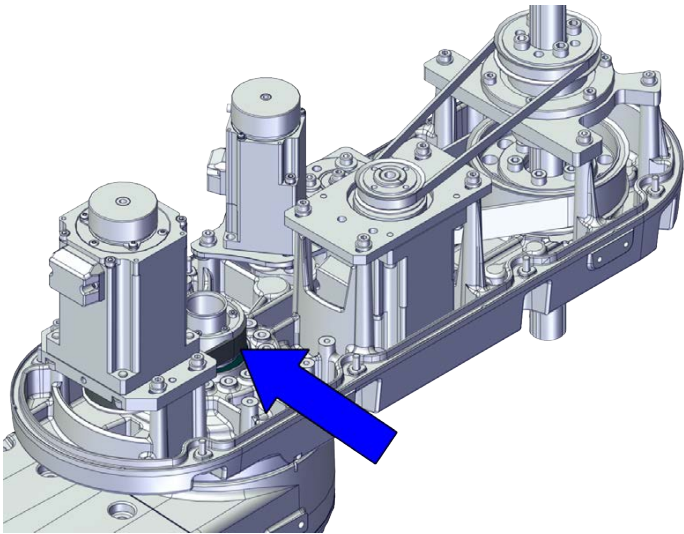


#### CAUTION

Always read the section "General procedures" before doing any repair work.  
*Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.*

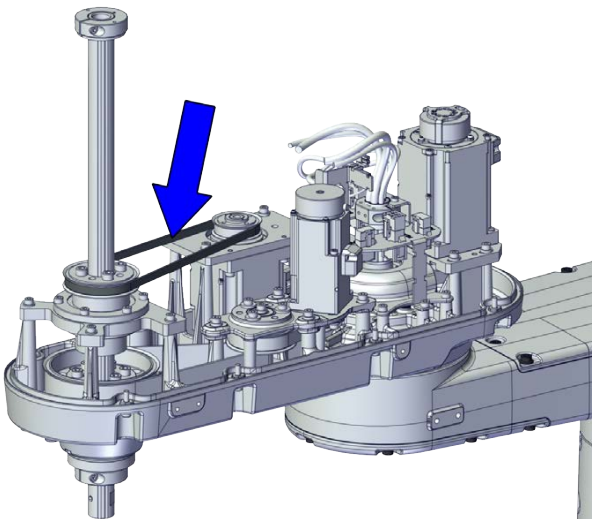
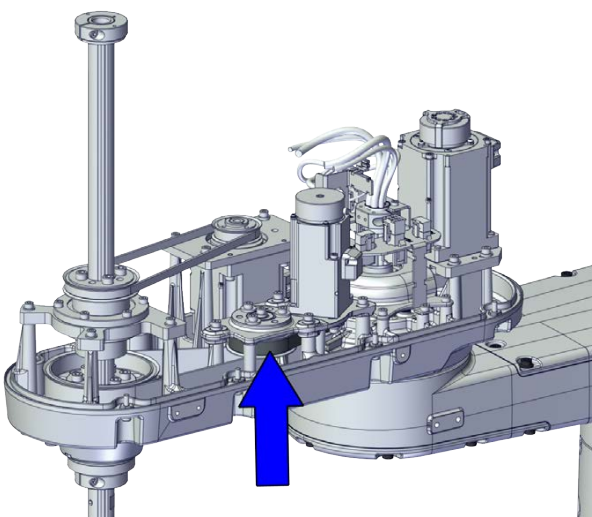
#### Location of timing belts

The timing belts are located as shown in the figures.

Axis	Location
1	 xx2100001015
2	 xx2100001024

*Continues on next page*



Axis	Location
3	 <p>xx2100001020</p>
4	 <p>xx2100001022</p>

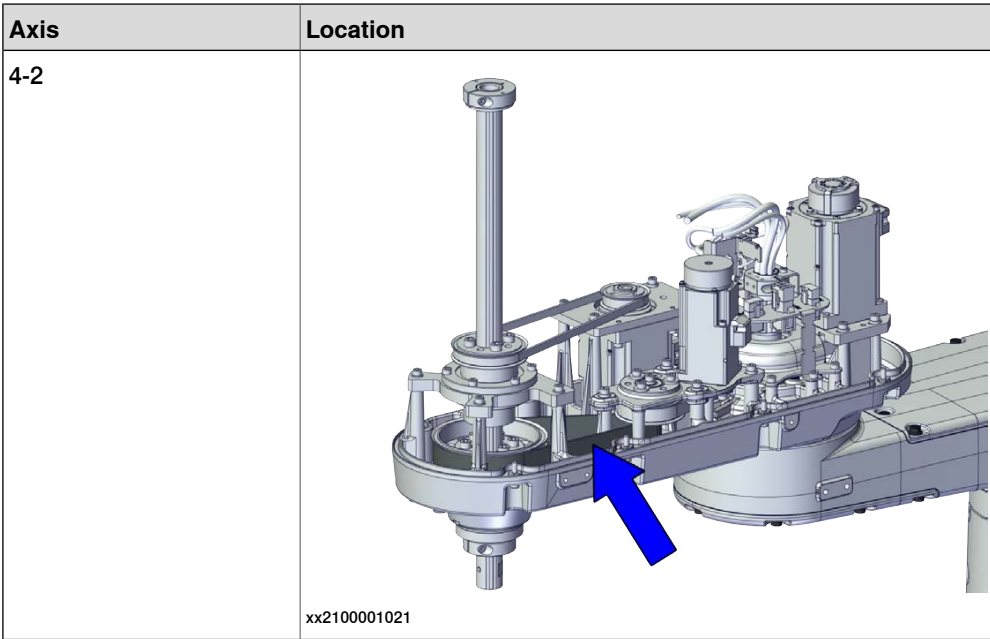
*Continues on next page*



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.5 Inspecting timing belts

*Continued*



#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Note
Standard toolkit	The content is defined in the section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.	

#### Timing belt tension

The table describes the timing belt tension.


Axis	Force		Frequency	
	Used timing belt	New timing belt	Used timing belt	New timing belt
Axis 1	63-89 N	90-130 N	209-249 Hz	250-370 Hz
Axis 2	49-69 N	70-100 N	218-259 Hz	260-390 Hz
Axis 3	28-37 N	40-53 N	92-109 Hz	110-145 Hz
Axis 4	24.5-34 N	35-50 N	205-244 Hz	245-340 Hz
Axis 4-2	168-189 N	240-270 N	151-179 Hz	180-240 Hz

*Continues on next page*



## Inspecting timing belts

Use this procedure to inspect timing belts.

	Action	Information
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	Gain access to each <i>timing belt</i> by removing the cover.	
3	Check the timing belts for damage or wear.	
4	Check the <i>timing belt pulleys</i> for damage.	
5	If any damage or wear is detected, the part must be replaced!	
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. Adjust the belt tension if needed!	See <a href="#">Timing belt tension on page 108</a> .



## 4 Maintenance

---

### 4.5 Replacement/changing activities

### 4.5 Replacement/changing activities

---

#### Replacing the battery pack

Replacing the battery pack is accessible after removing the SMB from the base, see [Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit on page 199](#).

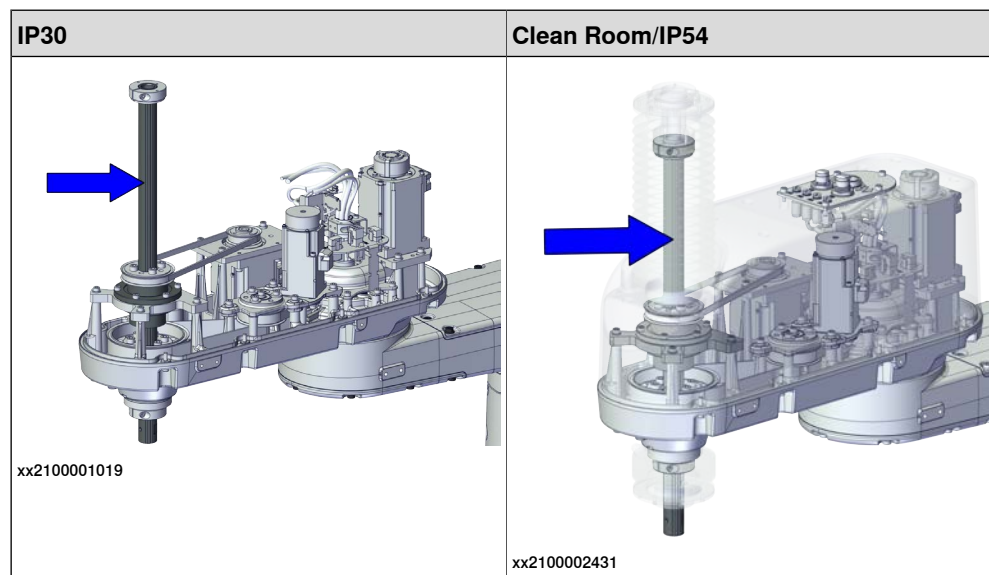


## 4.6 Lubrication activities

### 4.6.1 Lubricating the ball screw spline unit

#### Location of the ball screw spline unit

The ball screw spline unit is located as shown in the figure.



#### CAUTION

For the robots with protection type Clean Room and protection class IP54, the ball screw spline unit is inside the bellows. If needed, remove the bellows to inspect the ball screw spline unit.

For details about how to remove the bellows, see [Replacing the bellows](#).

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

*Continues on next page*



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.6.1 Lubricating the ball screw spline unit

*Continued*

#### Lubricating the ball screw spline unit



#### Note

**For robots with protection type Clean Room**

**For robots with protection class IP54**


First remove the upper bellow and lower bellow according to [Replacing the bellows on page 426](#).

Then, use this procedure to inspect the ball screw spline unit.



#### Note

Cover the end effector and peripheral equipment in case the grease drips, before lubricating the ball screw spline unit.

	Action	Note
1	Turn on the electric power supply to the robot. If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section <a href="#">Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 65</a> .	
2	 <b>DANGER</b>  When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways!  Make sure the payload is disassembled or tooling is properly supported; otherwise, fast downward movements of axis 3 may cause severe hits.	
3	Release the holding brake by pressing the button on the internal brake release unit.	
4	Move the outer arm to a position where the axis 3 can be moved in full stroke.	
5	Move the shaft manually to its upper limit while pressing the brake release button.	
6	Wipe off old grease from the shaft.	
7	Apply new grease and fill the grooves. Wipe off excessive grease.	
8	Move the shaft manually to its lower limit while pressing the brake release button.	
9	Wipe off old grease from the shaft.	
10	Apply new grease and fill the grooves. Wipe off excessive grease.	
11	Move the shaft up and down several times while pressing the brake release button to smooth out the grease on the shaft. Wipe off excessive grease.	



## 4.7 Cleaning activities

### 4.7.1 Cleaning the IRB 920

#### General

To secure high uptime it is important that the IRB 920 is cleaned regularly. The frequency of cleaning depends on the environment in which the manipulator works. Different cleaning methods are allowed depending on the type of protection of the IRB 920.



#### Note

Always verify the protection type of the robot before cleaning.



#### WARNING

Turn off all electrical power supplies to the robot before starting the cleaning.

#### Special cleaning considerations

This section specifies some special considerations when cleaning the robot.

- Always use cleaning equipment as specified. Any other cleaning equipment may shorten the life of the robot.
- Always check that all protective covers are fitted to the robot before cleaning.
- Do not point the water jet at connectors, joints, sealings or gaskets.
- Do not use compressed air to clean the robot.
- Do not use solvents that are not approved by ABB to clean the robot.
- Do not remove any covers or other protective devices before cleaning the robot.

#### Cleaning methods

This following table defines what cleaning methods are allowed for ABB manipulators depending on the protection type.

Protection type	Cleaning method			
	Vacuum cleaner	Wipe with cloth	Rinse with water	High pressure water, steam or spray
Standard IP30	Yes	Yes. With mild cleaning detergent.	No	No

*Continues on next page*



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.7.1 Cleaning the IRB 920

*Continued*

Protection type	Cleaning method			
	Vacuum cleaner	Wipe with cloth	Rinse with water	High pressure water, steam or spray
IP54 (option)	Yes	Yes. With mild cleaning detergent.	Yes. It's highly recommended to inspect the fans for contamination that could hinder the air supply at the regular cleaning, and then clean if necessary. No	No
Clean room	Yes	Yes. With mild cleaning detergent. <sup>i</sup> See <a href="#">Cleaning and disinfection instructions for Clean Room robots</a> .	No	No

<sup>i</sup> Clean Room robots shall be cleaned with recommended cleaning detergent in recommended cleaning frequency, which are specified in [Cleaning and disinfection instructions for Clean Room robots](#).

#### Wiping with cloth

##### Cleaning and disinfection instructions for Clean Room robots

ABB robots with protection types *Clean Room* are designed to be cleaned at a low cleaning frequency, before entering the cleanroom environment, after robot commissioning or during cleanroom maintenance.

Wipe-down cleaning method is recommended. Robot surfaces shall be wiped with clean and low particle emission cleanroom cloth which is soaked with following cleaning detergents.

Functional components	Concentration	Maximum cleaning frequency
Alcohol	70%	Daily
Isopropyl Alcohol (IPA)	70%	Daily
Peroxide (H <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub> )	3%	Weekly

Ready-to-use pre-wetted wipes are allowed to use in condition of that the main detergent component and its concentration in the wipes meet the detergent specification specified in the previous table.

Followings are some recommended examples of detergent brands and types:

- Ecolab Klerwipe™ Alcodes GF
- Ecolab Klerwipe™ DrySan Duo
- Diversey® Clearklens Wipes
- Diversey® Suma Wipes
- Diversey® Oxivir Excel Wipes

*Continues on next page*



Use the following procedure to clean the robots:

- 1 Before cleaning, use the lint free cloth to remove dirt, debris or any other contaminant from the to-be cleaned surfaces.
  - Make sure no visible residues left.
  - Never apply hard forces on or rub against the robot surfaces to remove dirt or debris; otherwise, protective paint layers may be damaged.
- 2 Wet a clean cloth with the cleaning detergent and then wipe the robot painting surfaces.
  - Make sure no cleaning agents are sprayed onto robot surfaces or into the robot structure.
  - Wipe from the surface center to edge and always in the same direction.
  - Never apply the cleaning detergents to bellows.
- 3 Wait a few minutes for detergent volatilization.
  - Make sure no residue of cleaning agents left on the robot surfaces after wipe down cleaning.



#### Note

End users/system integrators shall take the responsibility of assessing whether the disinfection is sufficiently implemented and reaches the disinfection degree required for the intended application and environment.

---

### Cleaning with water

#### Instructions for rinsing with water

ABB robots with protection types *Standard*, *Foundry Plus*, *Wash*, or *Foundry Prime* can be cleaned by rinsing with water (water cleaner).<sup>1</sup>

The following list defines the prerequisites:

- Maximum water pressure at the nozzle: 700 kN/m<sup>2</sup> (7 bar)<sup>1</sup>
- Fan jet nozzle should be used, min. 45° spread
- Minimum distance from nozzle to encapsulation: 0.4 meters
- Maximum flow: 20 liters/min<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Typical tap water pressure and flow

---

### Cables

Movable cables need to be able to move freely:

- Remove waste material, such as sand, dust and chips, if it prevents cable movement.
- Clean the cables if they have a crusty surface, for example from dry release agents.

<sup>1</sup> See [Cleaning methods on page 113](#) for exceptions.



**This page is intentionally left blank**



## 5 Repair

### 5.1 Introduction

#### Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes repair activities for the IRB 920. Each procedure contains the information required to perform the activity, for example spare parts numbers, required special tools, and materials.



#### WARNING

Repair activities not described in this chapter must only be carried out by ABB.

#### Report replaced units



#### Note

When replacing a part on the IRB 920, report to your local ABB the serial number, the article number, and the revision of both the replaced unit and the replacement unit.

This is particularly important for safety equipment to maintain the safety integrity of the installation.

#### Safety information

Make sure to read through the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before commencing any service work.



#### Note

The robot should be secured with the transportation brackets during removing from/refitting to the foundation.



#### Note

If the IRB 920 is connected to power, always make sure that the IRB 920 is connected to protective earth and a residual current device (RCD) before starting any repair work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- *Product manual - OmniCore C90XT Type A*
- *Product manual - OmniCore E10*



## 5 Repair

### 5.2.1 Mounting instructions for bearings

## 5.2 General procedures

### 5.2.1 Mounting instructions for bearings

#### General

This section describes how to mount and grease different types of bearings on the robot.

#### Equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Grease	3HAC042536-001	Shell Gadus S2 Used to grease the bearings, if not specified otherwise.

#### Assembly of all bearings


Attend to the following instructions while mounting a bearing on the robot.

	Action	Note
1	To avoid contamination, let a new bearing remain in its wrapping until it is time for fitting.	
2	Ensure that the parts included in the bearing fitting are free from burrs, grinding waste, and other contamination. Cast components must be free of foundry sand.	
3	Bearing rings, inner rings, and roller elements must not be subjected to direct impact. The roller elements must not be exposed to any stresses during the assembly work.	

#### Assembly of tapered bearings

Follow the preceding instructions for the assembly of the bearings when mounting a tapered bearing on the robot.

In addition to those instructions, the following procedure must be carried out to enable the roller elements to adjust to the correct position against the race flange.

	Action	Note
1	Tension the bearing gradually until the recommended pre-tension is achieved.  <b>Note</b> The roller elements must be rotated a specified number of turns before pre-tensioning is carried out and also rotated during the pre-tensioning sequence.	
2	Make sure the bearing is properly aligned as this will directly affect the durability of the bearing.	

#### Greasing of bearings

 <b>Note</b> This instruction is not valid for solid oil bearings.
--

*Continues on next page*



The bearings must be greased after assembly according to the following instructions:

- The bearings must not be completely filled with grease. However, if space is available beside the bearing fitting, the bearing may be totally filled with grease when mounted, as excessive grease will be pressed out from the bearing when the robot is started.
- During operation, the bearing should be filled to 70-80% of the available volume.
- Ensure that grease is handled and stored properly to avoid contamination.

Grease the different types of bearings as following description:

- *Grooved ball bearings* must be filled with grease from both sides.
- *Tapered roller bearings* and axial needle bearings must be greased in the split condition.



## 5 Repair

### 5.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings

### 5.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings

#### General

This section describes how to mount different types of sealings.

#### Equipment

Consumable	Article number	Note
Grease	3HAC042536-001	Shell Gadus S2

#### Rotating sealings

The following procedures describe how to fit rotating sealings.



#### CAUTION

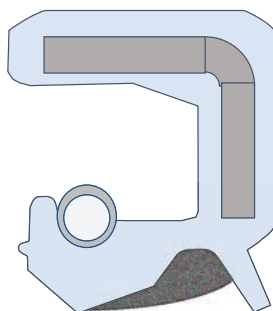
Please observe the following before commencing any assembly of sealings:

- Protect the sealing during transport and mounting, especially the main lip on radial sealings.
- Keep the sealing in its original wrappings or protect it well before actual mounting.
- The fitting of sealings and gears must be carried out on clean workbenches.
- Use a protective sleeve for the main lip during mounting, when sliding over threads, keyways or other sharp edges.
- Do not lubricate a static side of a sealing with grease, since this may result in movement of the sealing during operation.

The only exception for lubrication of static sides of a sealing, is to use P-80 rubber lubrication gel against certain aluminium surfaces. If usage of P-80 is relevant, it is stated in the repair procedures.

#### Radial sealings

A radial sealing consists of a flexible rubber lip bonded to a rigid metal case. Only one side of the sealing is static with a metal insert.



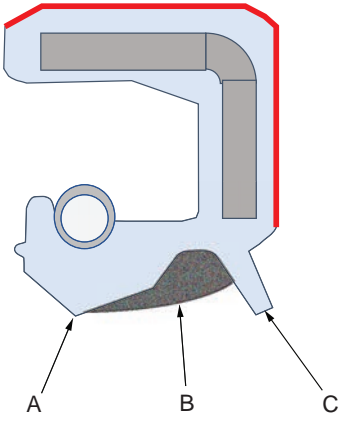

xx2300000433

*Continues on next page*



### 5.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings

*Continued*

	Action	Note
1	Check the sealing to ensure that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The sealing is of the correct type.</li> <li>• There is no damage on the main lip.</li> </ul>	
2	Inspect the shaft surface before mounting. If scratches or damage are found, the shaft must be replaced since it may result in future leakage. Do not try to grind or polish the shaft surface to get rid of the defect.	
3	Lubricate the sealing with grease just before fitting. (Not too early - there is a risk of dirt and foreign particles adhering to the sealing.) Fill 2/3 of the space between the dust lip and the main lip with grease. If the sealing is without dust lip, just lubricate the main lip with a thin layer of grease.	<p>Article number is specified in <a href="#">Equipment on page 120</a>.</p>  <p>xx2000000071</p> <p>A Main lip B Grease C Dust lip</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Ensure that no grease is applied to the red marked surface.</p>

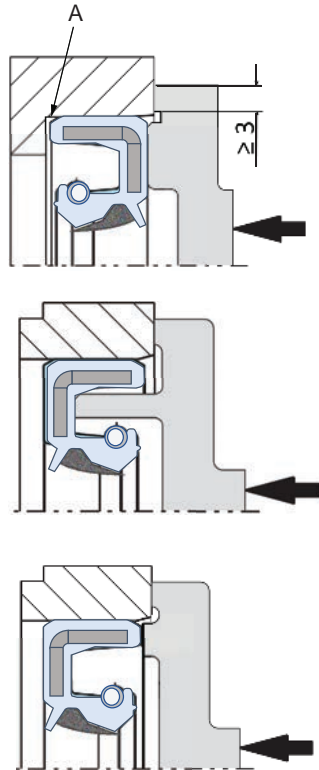
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.2.2 Mounting instructions for sealings

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Mount the sealing correctly with a mounting tool. Never hammer directly on the sealing as this may result in leakage.	 <p>xx2000000072</p> <p>A Gap</p>
5	Make sure that no grease is left on the robot surface.	

### Flange sealings and static sealings

The following procedure describes how to fit flange sealings and static sealings.

	Action
1	Check the flange surfaces. They must be even and free from pores. It is easy to check flatness using a gauge on the fastened joint (without sealing compound). If the flange surfaces are defective, the parts may not be used because leakage could occur.
2	Clean the surfaces properly in accordance with the recommendations of ABB.
3	Distribute the sealing compound evenly over the surface.
4	Tighten the screws evenly when fastening the flange joint.

### O-rings

The following procedure describes how to fit o-rings.

	Action	Note
1	Ensure that the correct o-ring size is used.	
2	Check the o-ring for surface defects, burrs, shape accuracy, or deformation.	Defective o-rings, including damaged or deformed o-rings, may not be used.

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	Check the o-ring grooves and mating surfaces. They should be free of pores, contamination and obvious scratches/damage.	
4	Lubricate the o-ring with grease.	
5	Tighten the screws evenly while assembling.	
6	Check that the o-ring is not squashed outside the o-ring groove.	
7	Make sure that no grease is left on the robot surface.	



## 5 Repair

### 5.2.3 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

### 5.2.3 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

#### General

Follow the procedures in this section whenever breaking the paint of the robot during replacement of parts.

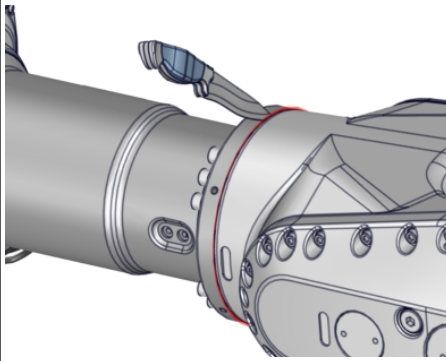
For robots with protection type Clean Room

When replacing parts on the robot, it is important to make sure that after the replacement, no particles will be emitted from the joint between the structure and the new part, and that the easy cleaned surface is retained.

#### Required equipment

Equipment	Spare parts	Note
Sealing compound	3HAC026759-003	Sikaflex 521 FC. Color white.
Tooling pin		Width 6-9 mm, made of wood.
Cleaning agent		Ethanol
Knife		
Lint free cloth		
Touch up paint Clean Room/Hygienic	3HAC036639-001	White
Touch up paint Standard/Foundry Plus	3HAC067974-001	Graphite White

#### Removing

	Action	Description
1	Cut the paint with a knife in the joint between the part that will be removed and the structure, to avoid that the paint cracks.	 xx2300000950
2	Carefully grind the paint edge that is left on the structure to a smooth surface.	

#### Refitting

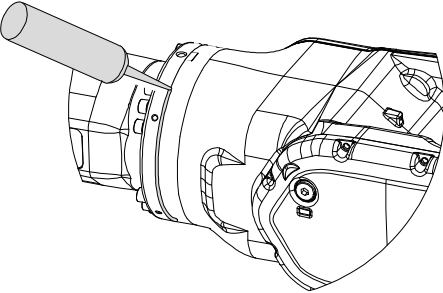
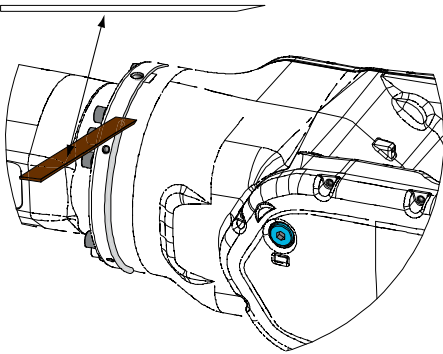

	Action	Description
1	Before the parts are refitted, clean the joint so that it is free from oil and grease.	Use ethanol on a lint free cloth.
2	Place the tooling pin in hot water.	

*Continues on next page*



## 5.2.3 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

*Continued*

	Action	Description
3	Seal all refitted joints with sealing compound.	 xx0900000122
4	Use the tooling pin to even out the surface of the sealing compound.	 xx0900000125
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54</b> Wait 10 minutes.	<b>For robots with protection class IP54</b> Sikaflex 521FC skin dry time (10 minutes).
6	Use Touch up paint Clean Room/Hygienic, white to paint any damaged surfaces.   <b>Note</b>  Always read the instruction in the product data sheet in the paint repair kit for Clean Room/Hygienic.	3HAC036639-001

**Note**

After all repair work, wipe the robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.



## 5 Repair

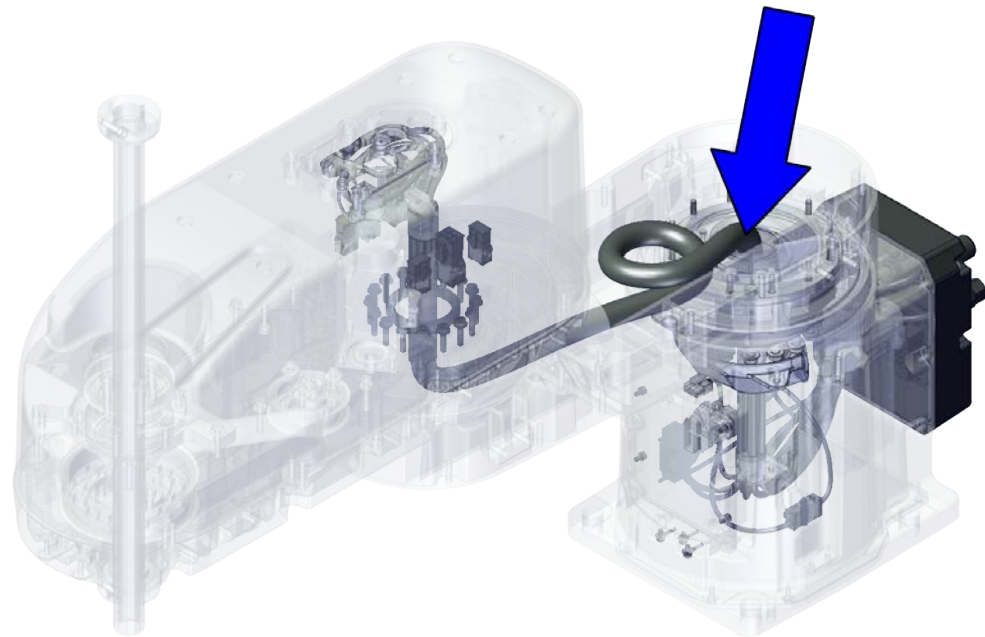
### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

## 5.3 Cable harness

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

#### Location of the main harness

The main harness is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001029

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Main harness MS, Basic	3HAC076580-001	
Main harness MS, Basic+C1+Air	3HAC076581-001	
Main harness MS, Basic+C1+C2+Air	3HAC076582-001	
Main harness ML, Basic	3HAC079759-001	
Main harness ML, Basic+C1+Air	3HAC079760-001	
Main harness ML, Basic+C1+C2+Air	3HAC079761-001	
Base plate, rear outlet cable	3HAC067865-001	Base bottom cover, rear cable

*Continues on next page*



Spare part	Article number	Note
Rear plate	3HAC070312-001	Base rear cover, bottom cable
Base plate, undeneath outlet cable	3HAC067864-001	Base bottom cover, bottom cable
Gasket, Foot cover	3HAC065350-001	When using with UndeneathOutletCable, this gasket will be used in rear plate and base plate.
One-way valve	3HAC044906-001	

### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


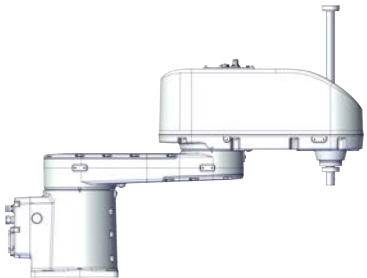


### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

#### Removing the main harness

Use these procedures to remove the main harness.





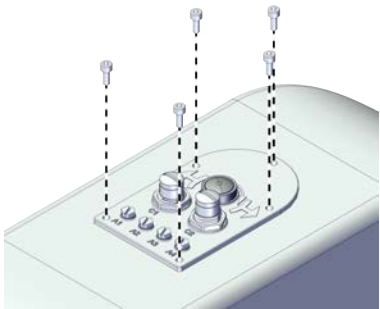
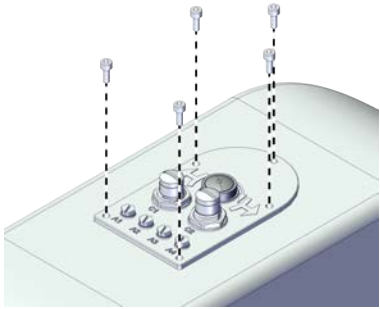
Preparations before removing the main arm

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2100000930
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

Continues on next page







## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

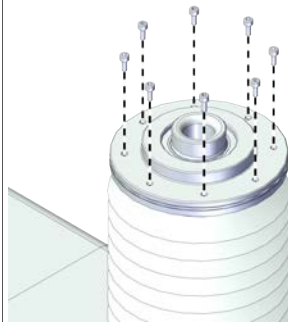
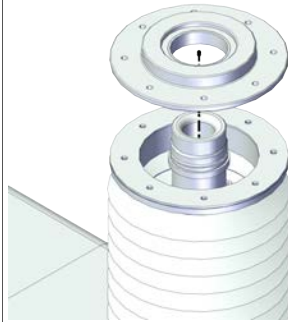
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	




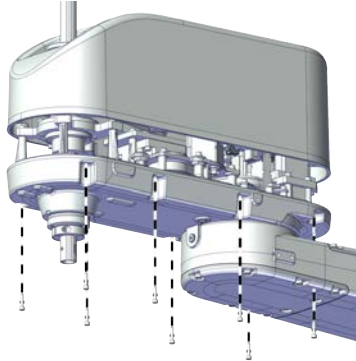
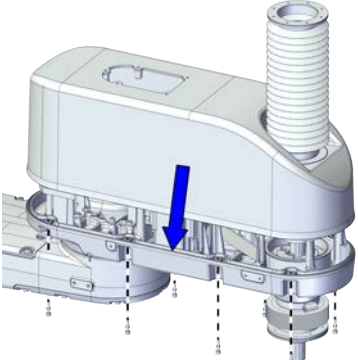
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

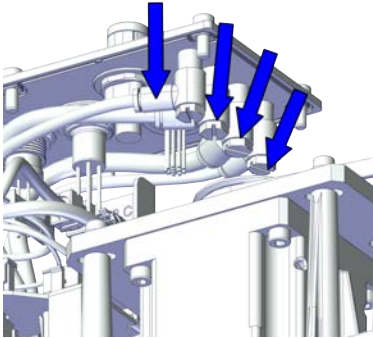
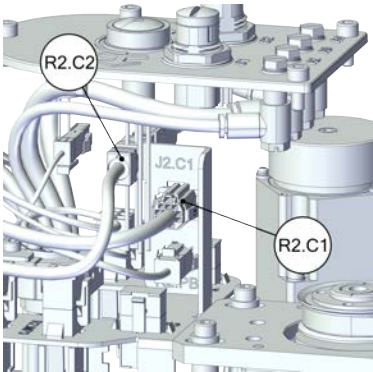



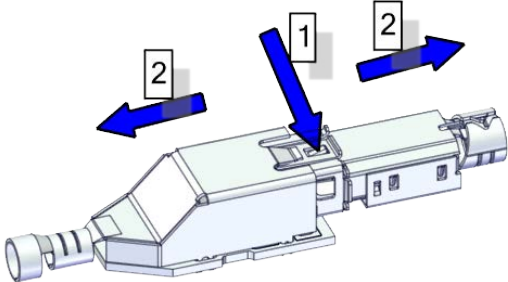
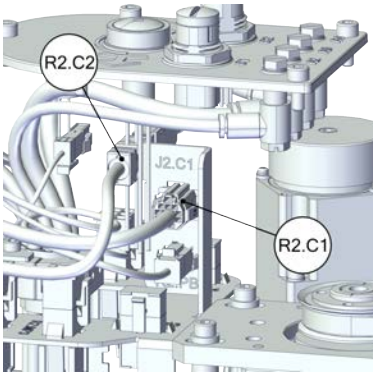
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

#### Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	 xx2100001033


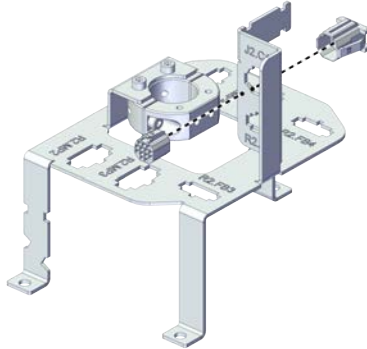
*Continues on next page*





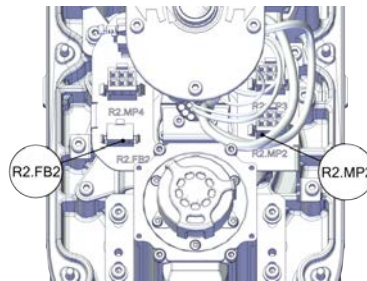
## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*


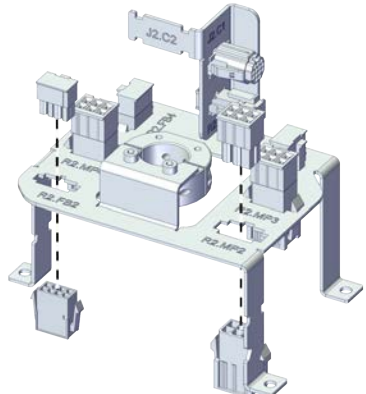
	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor



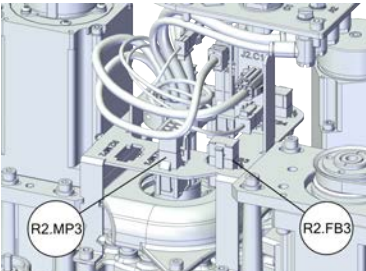
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>


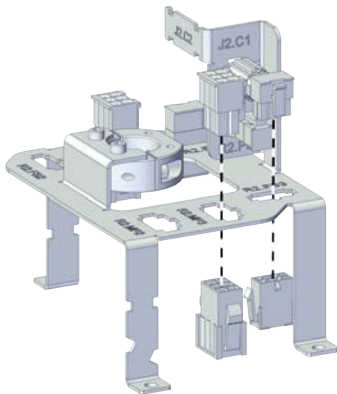
Continues on next page




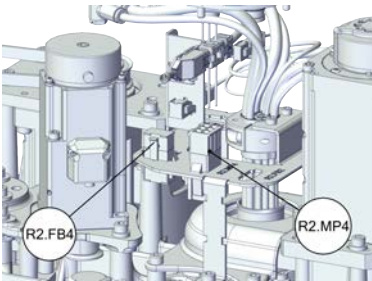

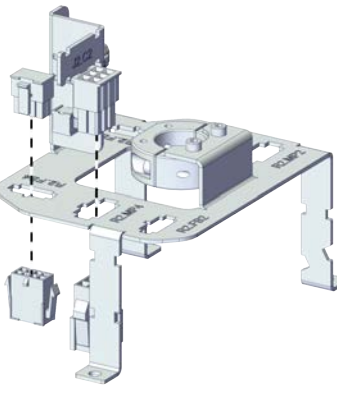
## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>



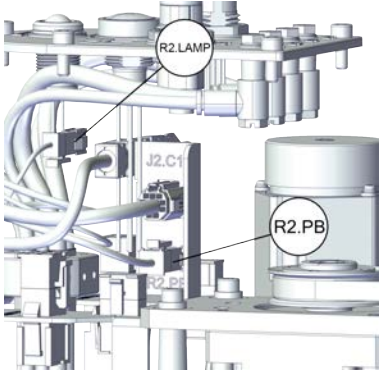

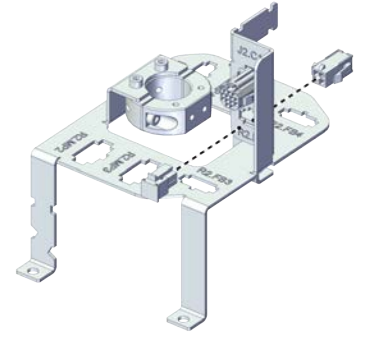
#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>


Continues on next page



## Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

## Pull out the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	





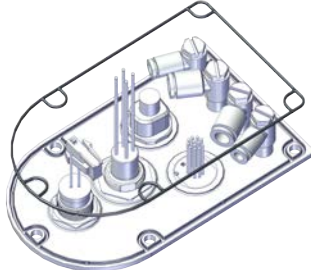
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

#### Removing the cable ferrule and bracket


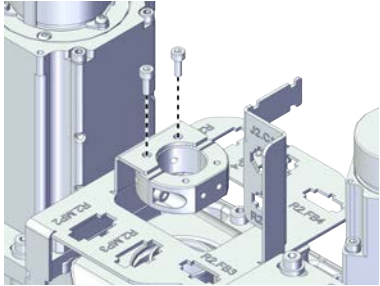

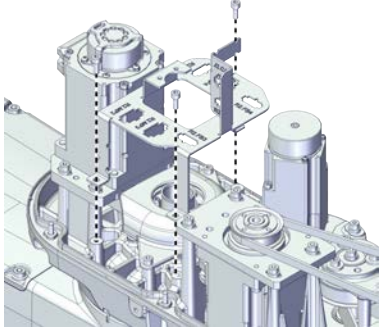
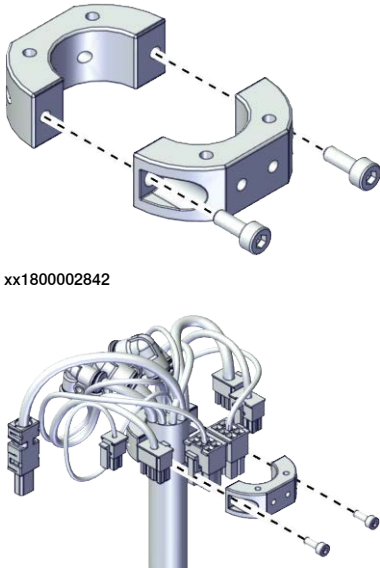
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

Continues on next page




## 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p> <p>xx1800002849</p>

## Removing the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




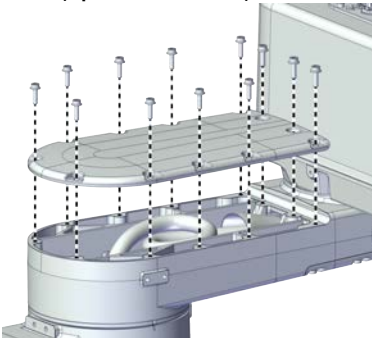
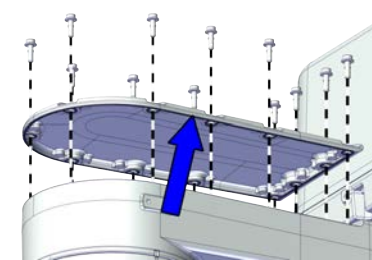
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

Continued



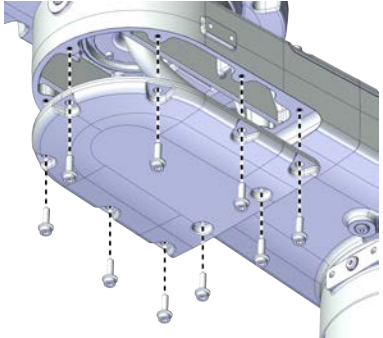
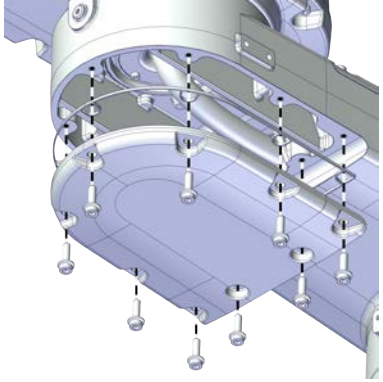
	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Remove the cover.  <b>Note</b> <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the cover and check the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	 xx2100000942 <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b>  xx2100002428

#### Removing the axis-2 cover



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover and check the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000943</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002451</p>

## Removing the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	



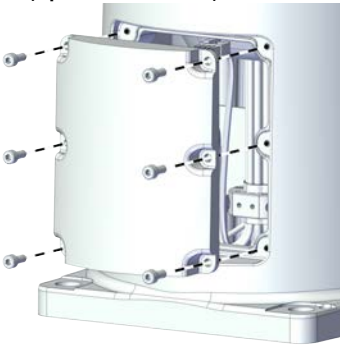


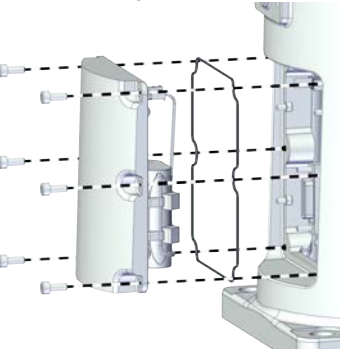
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*




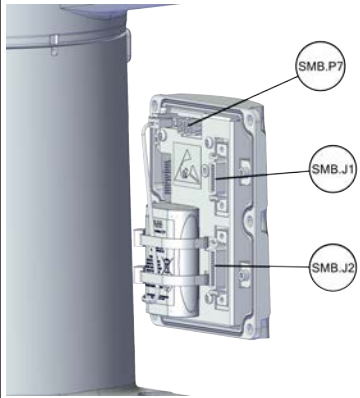
	Action	Note
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the stainless screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
5	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the SMB cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	xx2100000944 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002433

#### Disconnecting the SMB cabling



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Cut the strips.	
5	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul>  <b>Tip</b> Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 xx2100000945

## Removing the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
4	Lay down the robot.	



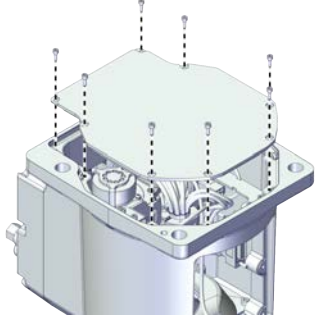
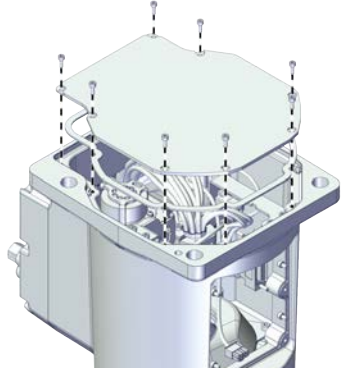
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair



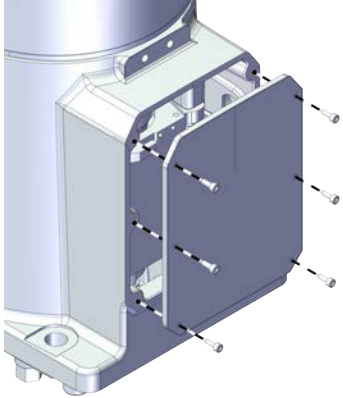
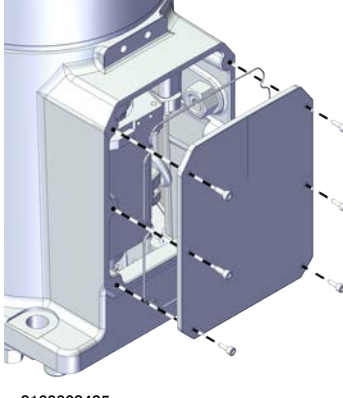
### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*



	Action	Note
5	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
7	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version:
8	<p>Remove the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001202</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>

#### Disconnecting the grounding cable connectors

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i></p>	

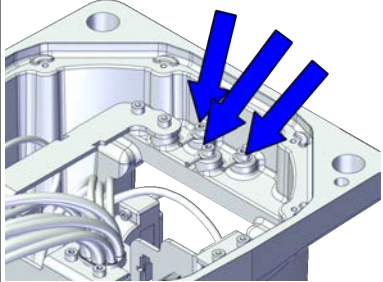
*Continues on next page*





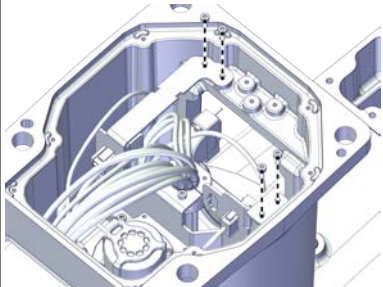
## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness


*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the three grounding cables from the bracket by unscrew the screws.	 xx2100000947

#### Releasing the base bracket


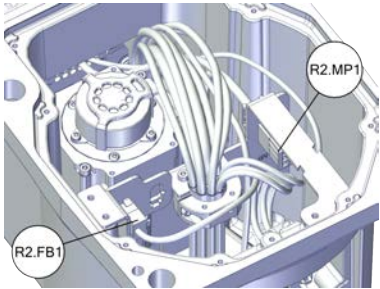

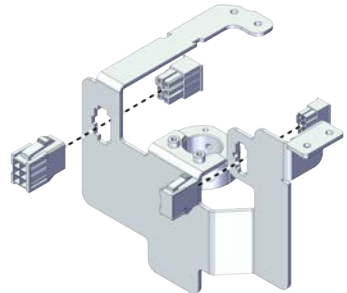
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base.	 xx2100000948

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul>	 xx2100000949
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000950

## Removing the bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

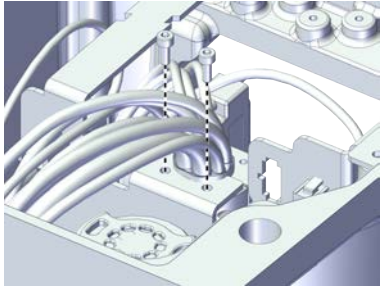
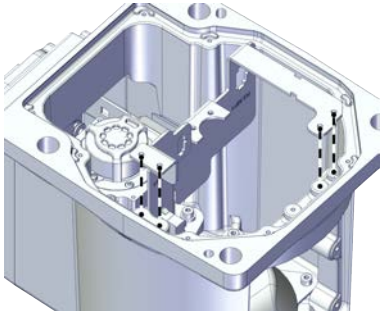
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*



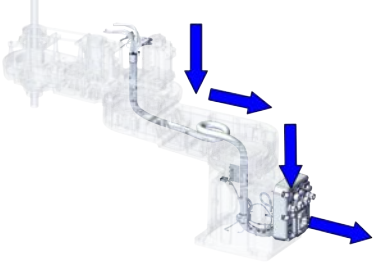
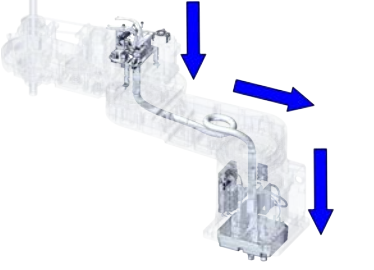
	Action	Note
3	Release the cable ferrule from the bracket.	 xx2100000951
4	Remove the bracket.	 xx2100000952

Removing the main harness from the axis -2 gearbox position



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the outer arm from the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

## Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	


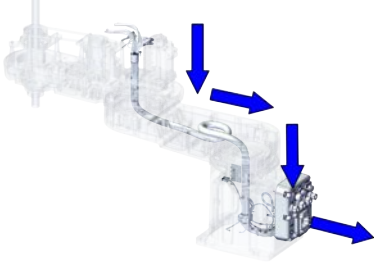
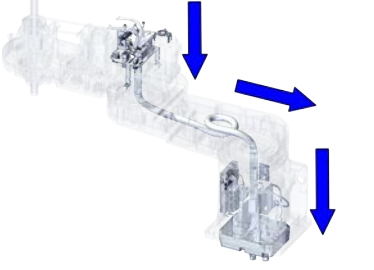
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*



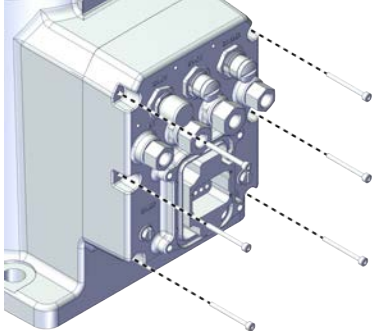
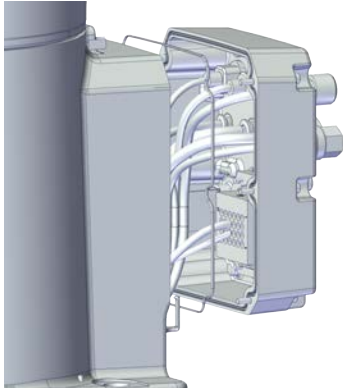
	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

#### Removing the main harness

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the main harness.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the main harness.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>




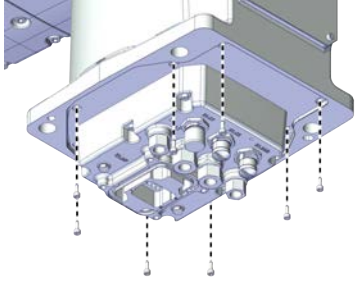
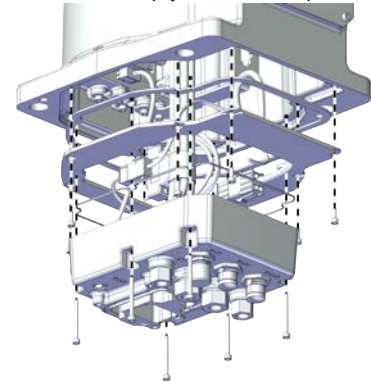
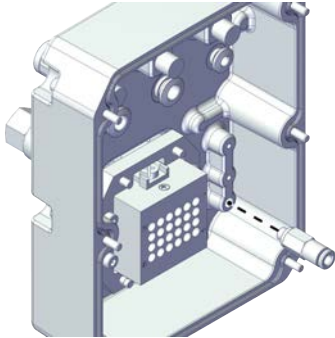
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002437</p>
7	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the one way valve by unscrewing it.</p>	 <p>xx2200000281</p>


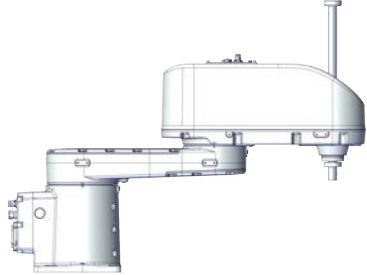



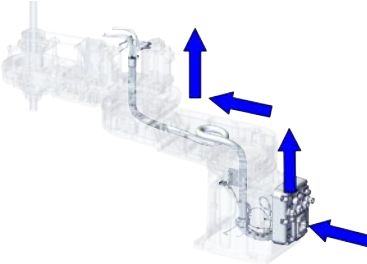
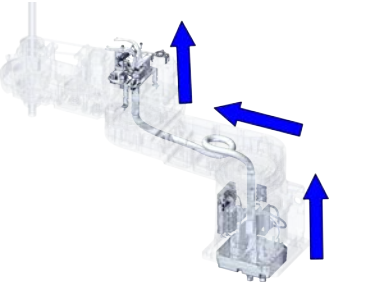
### Refitting the main harness

Use these procedures to refit the main harness.

*Continues on next page*



Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Make sure that the robot is at zero position.</p>	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
3	<p>Insert the internal harness into the inner arm through the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>

Continues on next page



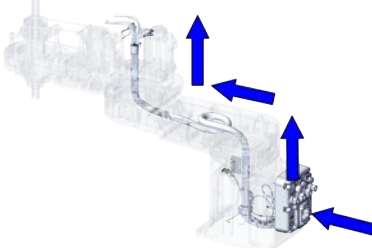
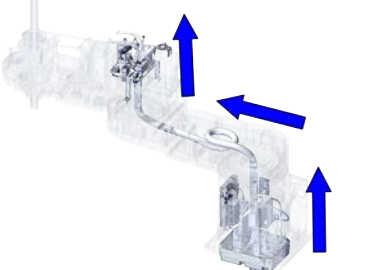


## 5 Repair


### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

Inserting the main harness through the axis -2 gearbox position



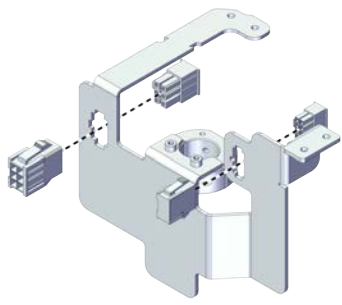

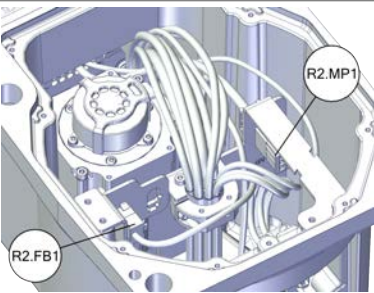

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the internal harness into the outer arm through the plastic protection tube and the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>
3	Secure the R2.MP3 and R2.MP4 with cable straps.	

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000950</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000949</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Reconnecting the grounding cable connectors

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

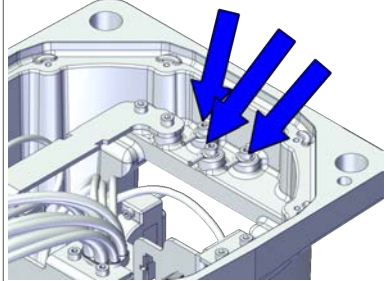

Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*



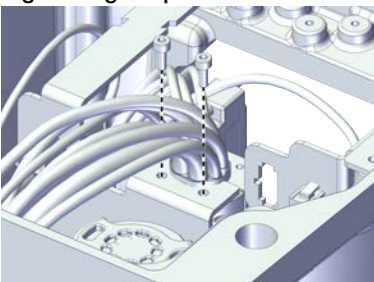
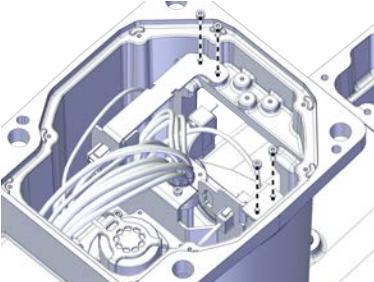
	Action	Note
2	Secure the three grounding cables to the bracket with the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000947</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Refitting the base bracket


	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000951</p>
4	<p>Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000948</p>

## Refitting the SMB cover


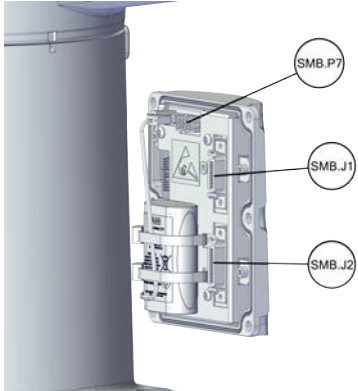
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the main harness  
Continued



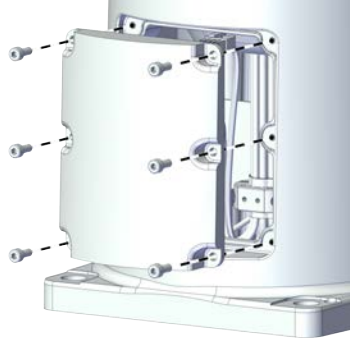
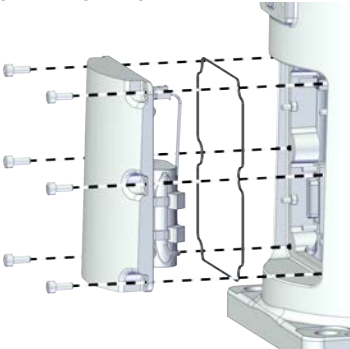
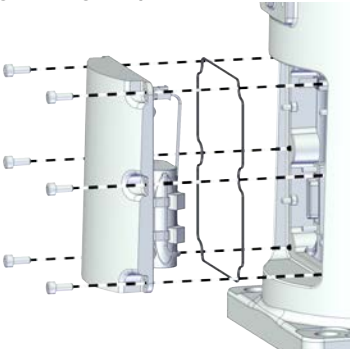
	Action	Note
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SMB.P7</li><li>• SMB.J1</li><li>• SMB.J2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

Continues on next page



## 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the SMB cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100000944</p>
4	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Stainless Screw Hexagon Socket Head Cap, Clean Room 3HAC075438-001 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p>

*Continues on next page*


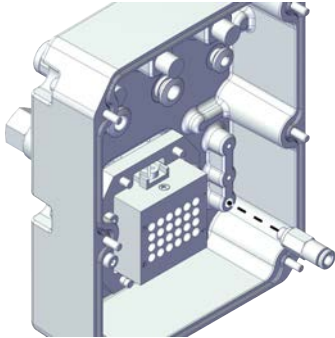


## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

#### Refitting the main harness

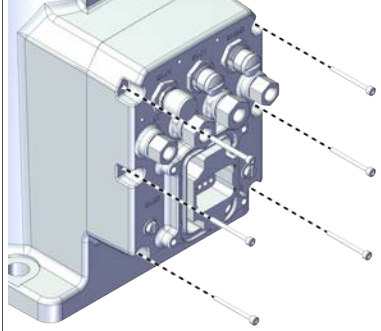
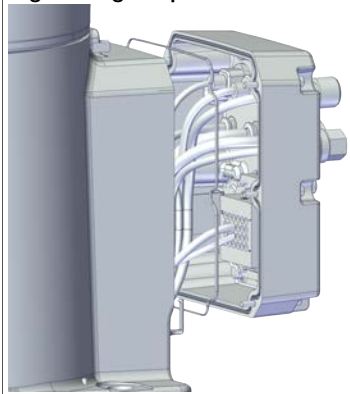
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the one way valve by screwing it into the main harness assembly.</p>	 xx2200000281

*Continues on next page*



## 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Secure with the screws.	 <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>


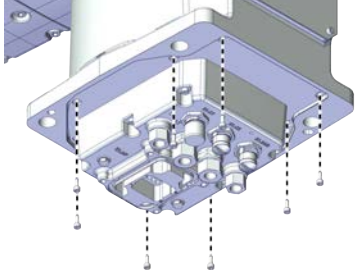
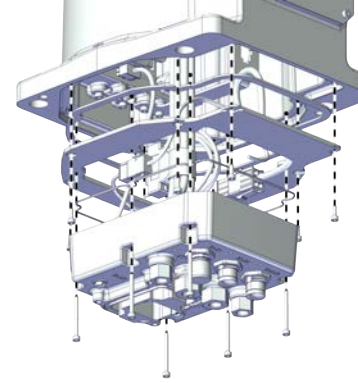
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
6	Secure with the screws.	<p></p> <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p></p> <p>xx2100002437</p>

#### Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	





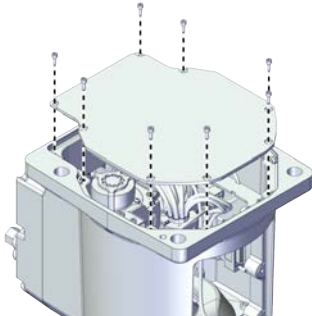
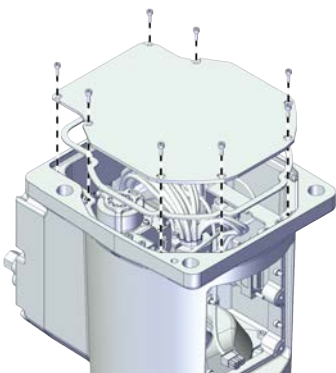
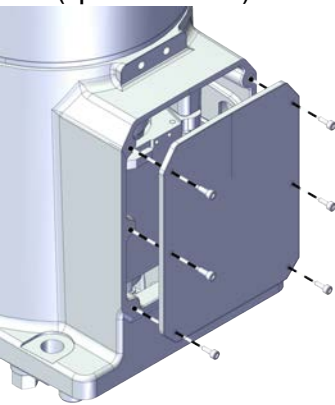
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

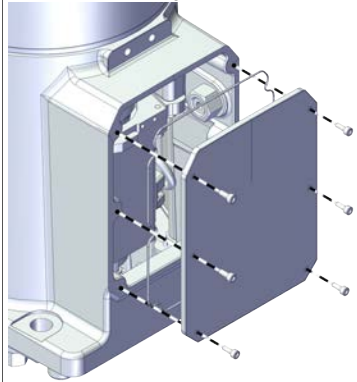
### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate before refitting the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate before refitting the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For rear outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>
4	<p>Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001202</p>

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
		<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>
5	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
6	Secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Steel</p> <p>Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 56 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>

#### Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	




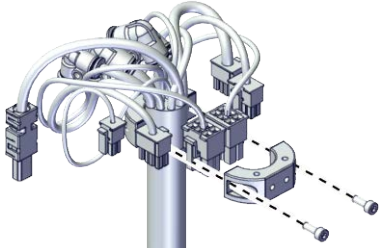


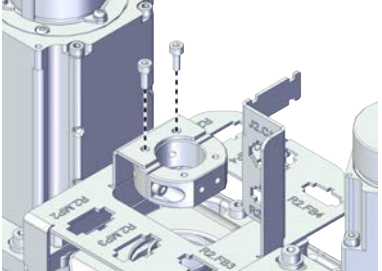


*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness




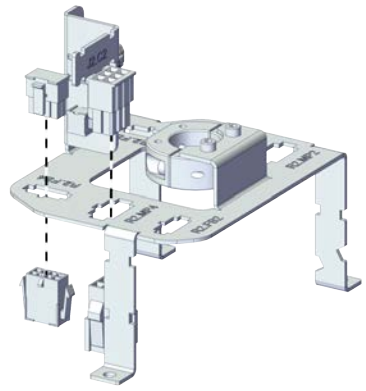

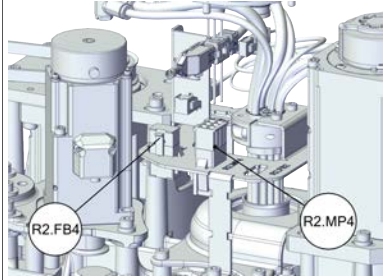

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

Continues on next page



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




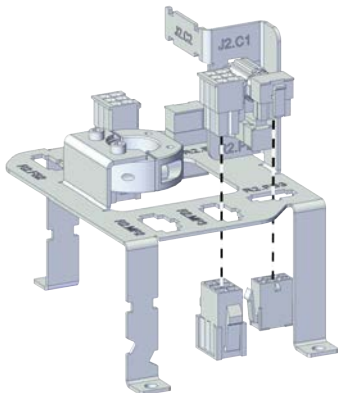

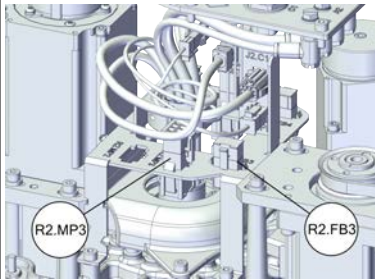



## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*




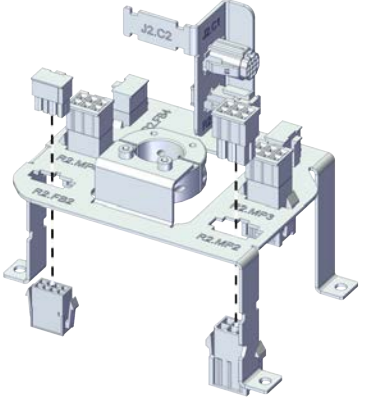

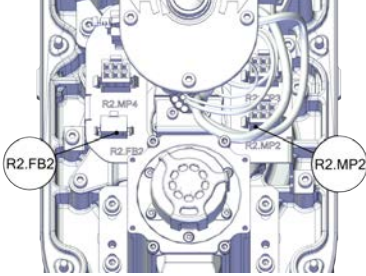

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




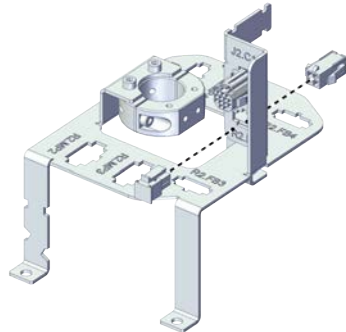

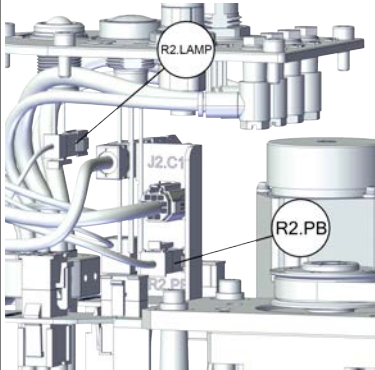



## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*



#### Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



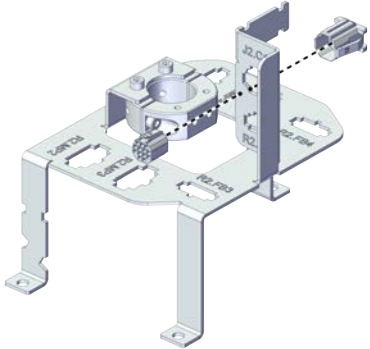

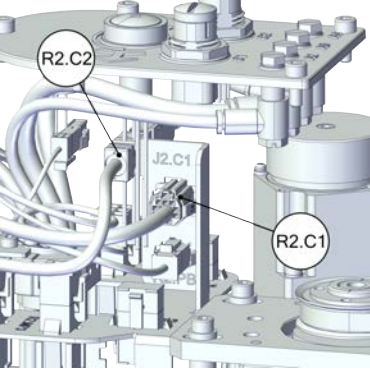


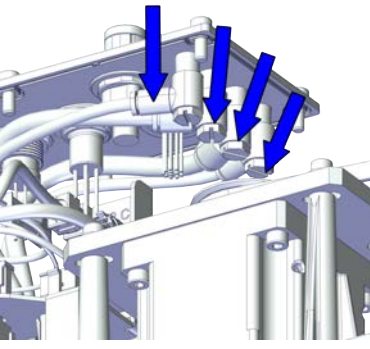
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

Continued




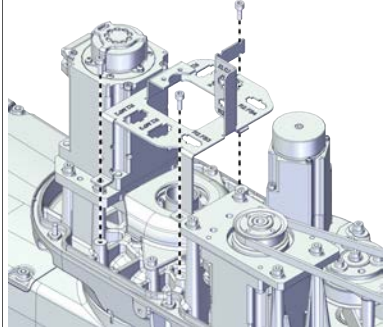
	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>

Continues on next page




	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




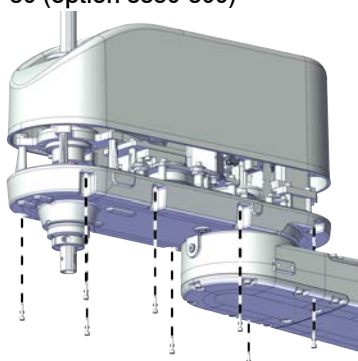
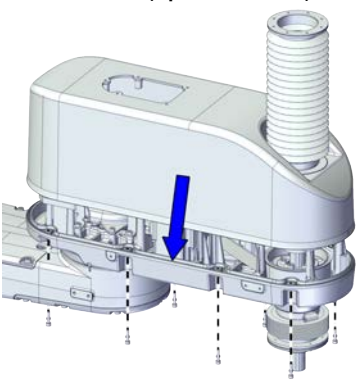
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

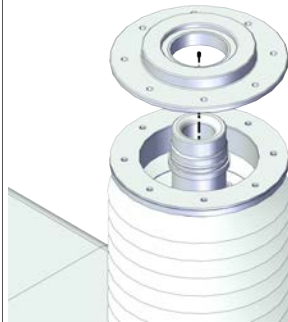
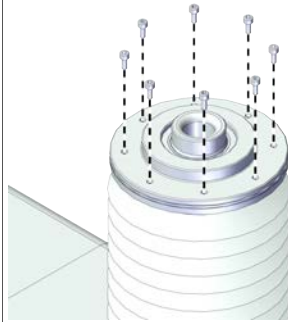


For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

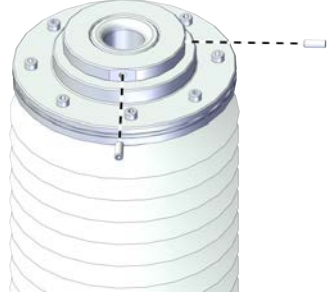
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*




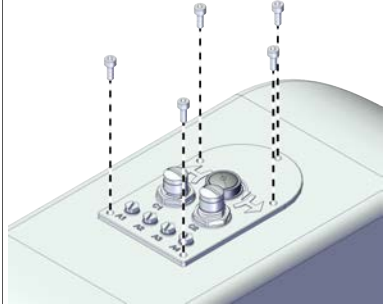
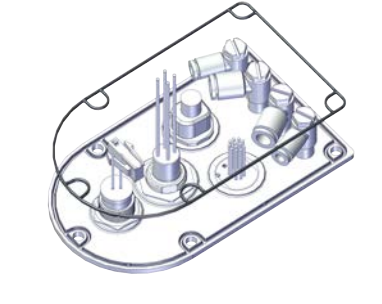
	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.	Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002398

#### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	



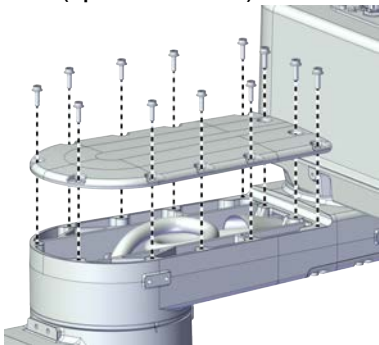
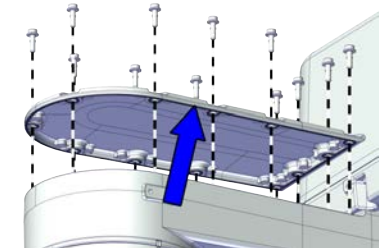
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*




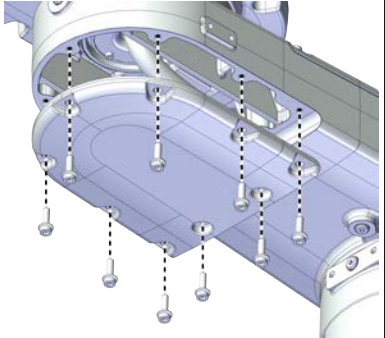
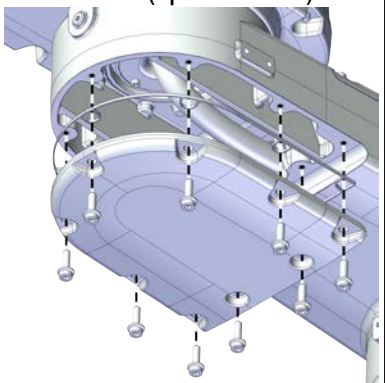
	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p>  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	<p>For 450 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (10 pcs)</p> <p>For 550 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (12 pcs)</p> <p>For 650 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>
3	Refit the screws.	 <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>

#### Refitting the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the cover.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (9 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm $\pm 3\%$ For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
4	Refit the screws.	xx2100000943 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002451

Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.1 Replacing the main harness

*Continued*

#### Concluding procedure

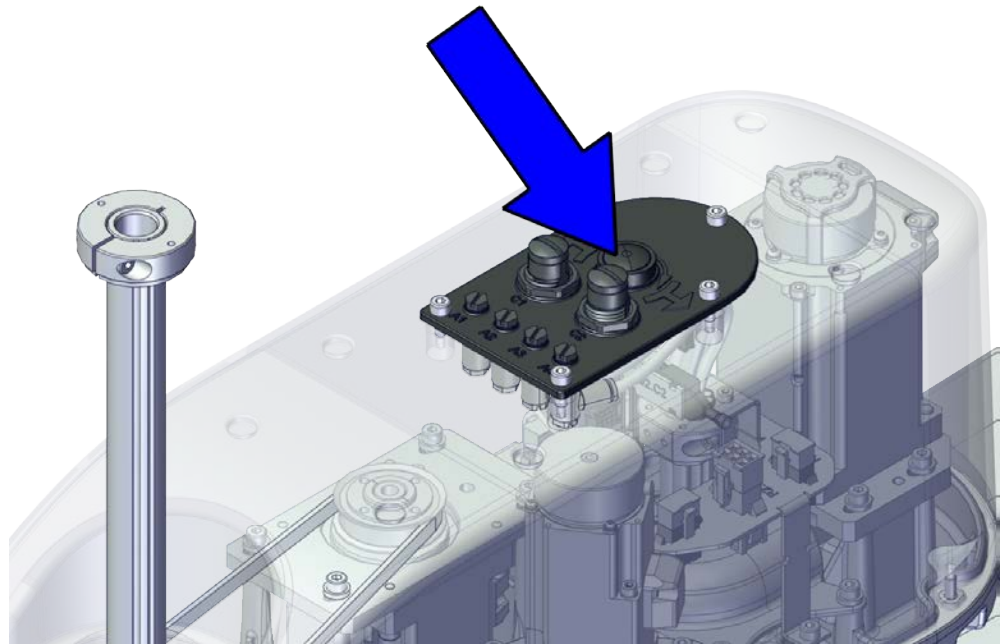
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	



### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub

#### Location of the process hub

The process hub is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001009

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Process hub, M, Basic	3HAC076583-001	
Process hub, M, Basic+C1+A	3HAC076584-001	
Process hub, M, Basic+C1+C2+A	3HAC076585-001	
Outer arm cover	3HAC076611-001	
Gasket, Process hub	3HAC073940-001	

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.  If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.  Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.  Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the process hub

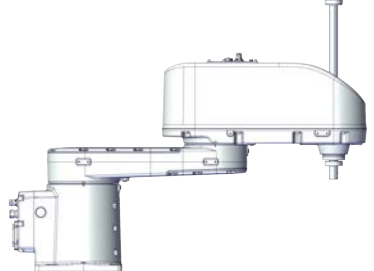


Use these procedures to remove the process hub.

#### Preparations before removing the process hub



	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2100000930
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
4	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

#### Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	



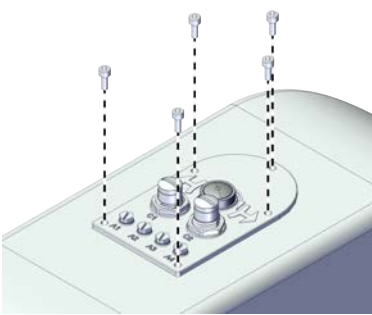
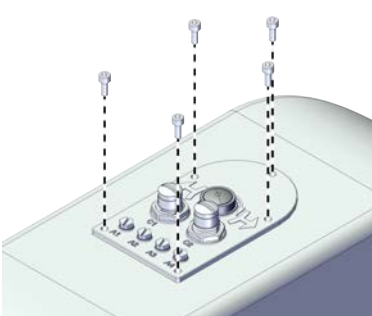
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair



### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p>
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

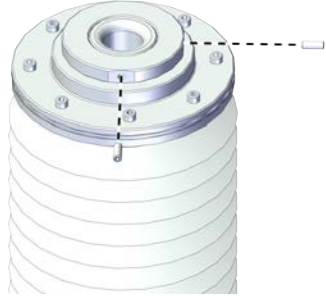

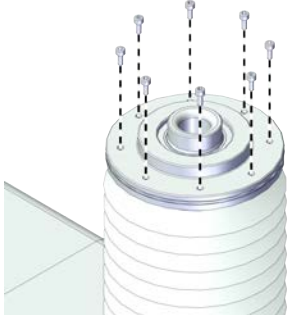
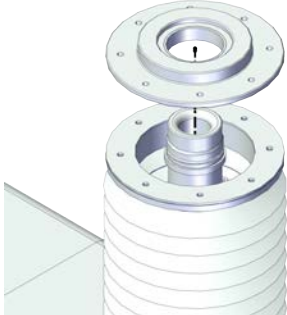
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the locking screws.</p>	 <p>xx2100002398</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the top cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

*Continues on next page*






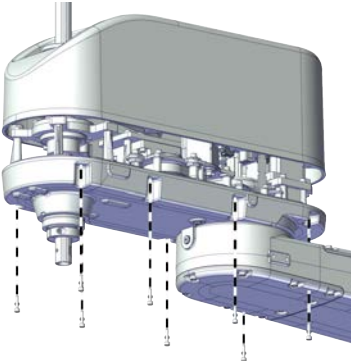
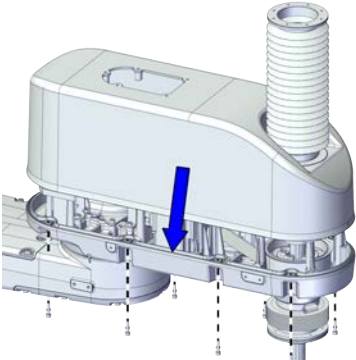


## 5 Repair

### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub

*Continued*



#### Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>



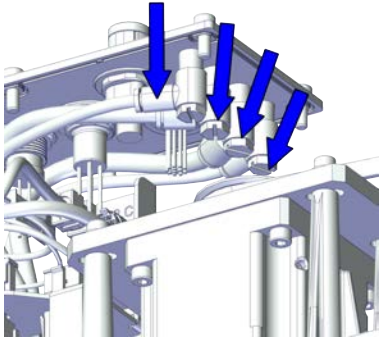
*Continues on next page*



## Releasing the straps on the bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Cut the straps on the base bracket.	

## Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

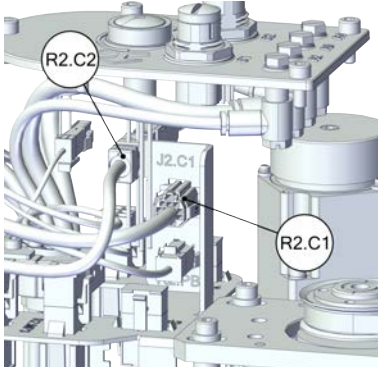



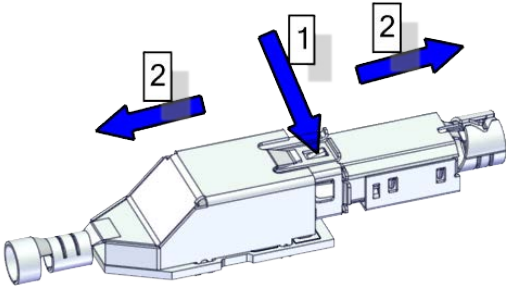

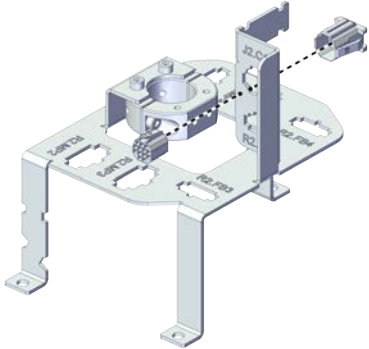
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032

Continues on next page



5 Repair



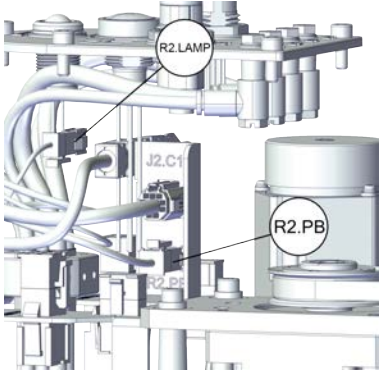

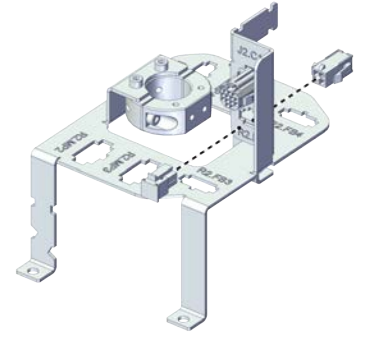
5.3.2 Replacing the process hub  
Continued

	Action	Note
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C1</li></ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	
6	<b>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</b> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	
		 xx2100001034


Continues on next page



## Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

## Pull out the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	





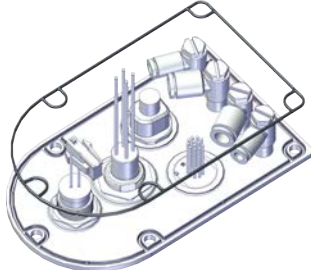
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub



Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

#### Refitting the process hub



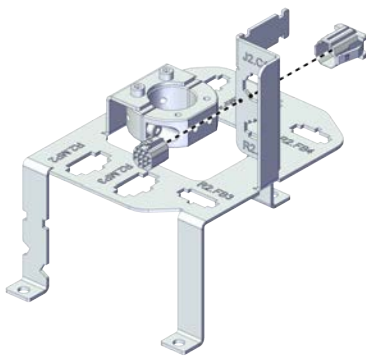

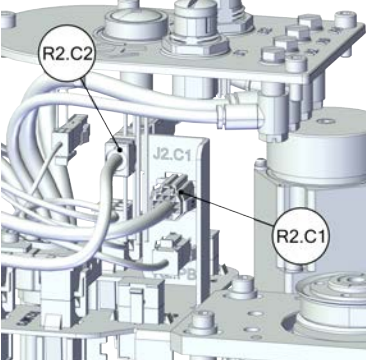


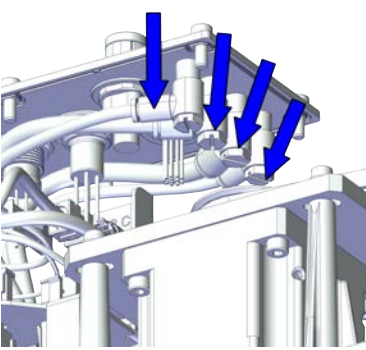
Use these procedures to refit the process hub.

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.  <b>CAUTION</b> Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>


Continues on next page






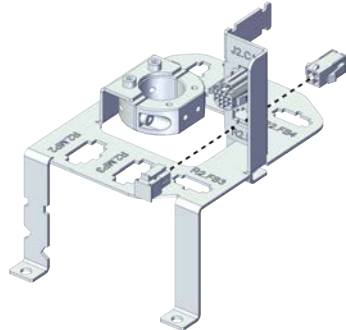

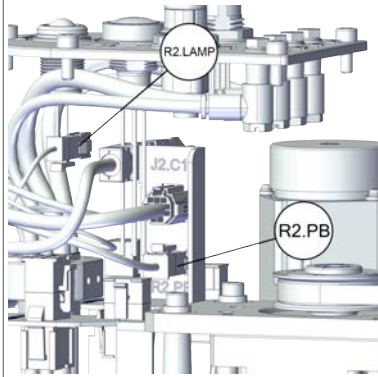
## 5 Repair

### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub

*Continued*


	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Reconnecting the connector for PB


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




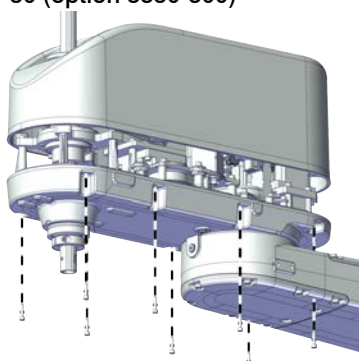
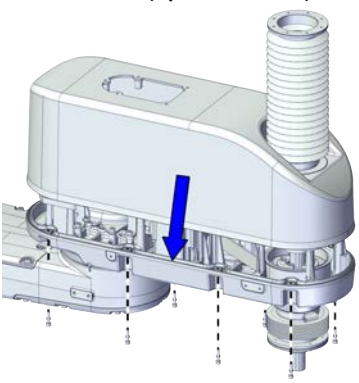
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

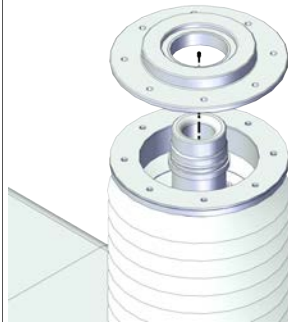
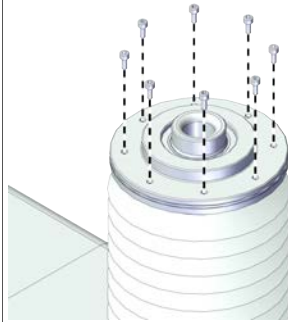


For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

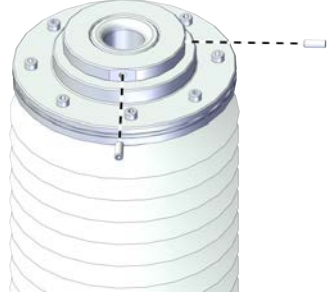
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub

*Continued*




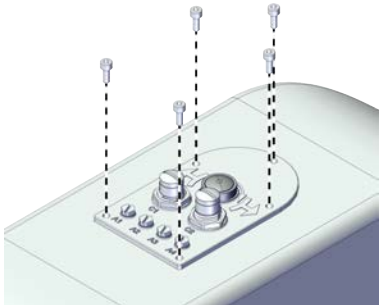
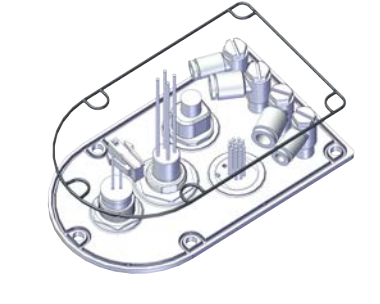
	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.	Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002398

#### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

---

### 5.3.2 Replacing the process hub

*Continued*

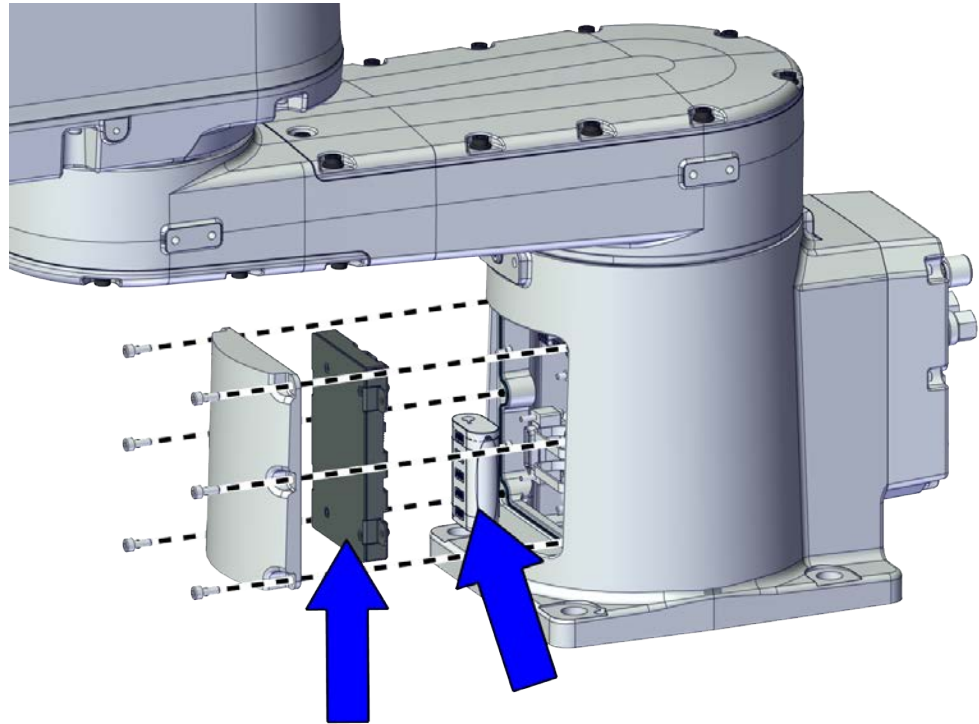
	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



### 5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

#### Location of the SMB unit and battery unit

The SMB unit and battery unit are located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001010

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
SMB unit	3HAC063968-001	
Battery unit	3HAC044075-001	Battery includes protection circuits. Only replace with a specified spare part or an ABB-approved equivalent.
SMB cover	3HAC076603-001	
Stainless Screw Hexagon Socket Head Cap, Clean Room	3HAC075438-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Gasket, SMB cover	3HAC073938-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

*Continued*

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.  If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.  Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.  Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b>  Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the SMB unit and battery unit

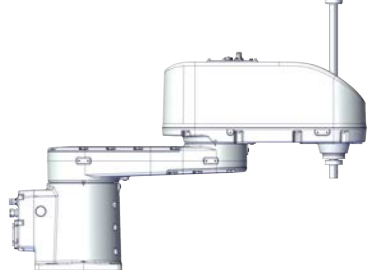


Use these procedures to remove the SMB unit and battery unit.

#### Preparations before removing the SMB unit and battery unit




	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2100000930
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
4	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

## Removing the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	


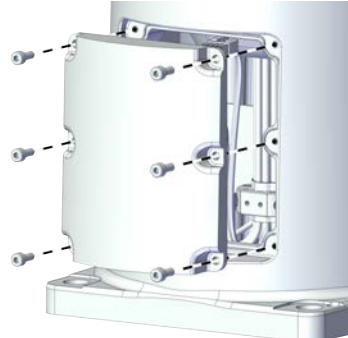


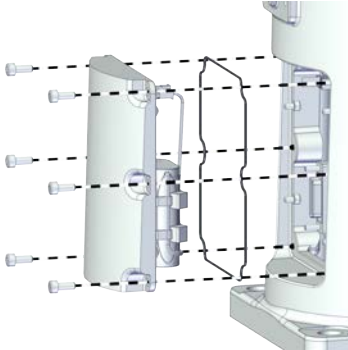
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

*Continued*



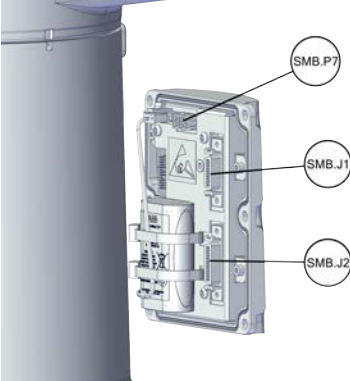
	Action	Note
4	<p>Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the stainless screws on the SMB cover to the base.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> 
5	<p>Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the SMB cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>xx2100000944</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p>

#### Disconnecting the SMB cabling




	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Cut the strips.	
5	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul>  <b>Tip</b>  Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 xx2100000945

## Removing the SMB unit

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b>  The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

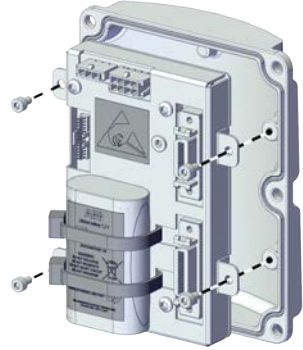
Continues on next page







## 5 Repair

### 5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the SMB package attachment screws and remove the SMB package from the SMB cover.	 xx2100001036

#### Separating the battery unit and SMB unit

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Separate the battery unit from the SMB assembly by cutting the cable straps.	 xx2100001035



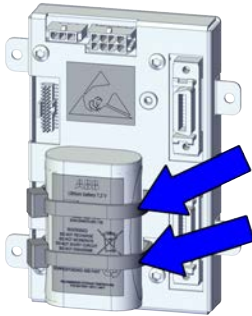
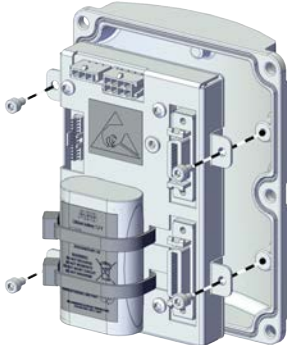
*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the SMB unit and battery unit

Use these procedures to refit the SMB unit and battery unit.

## Refitting the SMB unit and battery unit

	Action	Note
1	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
3	Bind the SMB unit to the battery unit with the cable strap.	 xx2100001035
4	Refit the SMB package to the SMB cover with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001036


Continues on next page





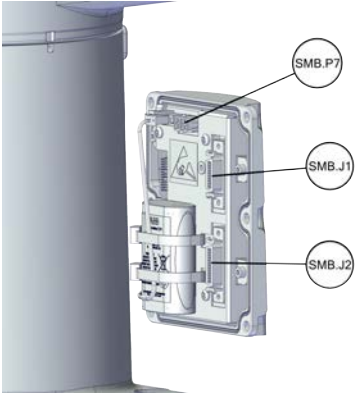
## 5 Repair

### 5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Refitting the SMB cover



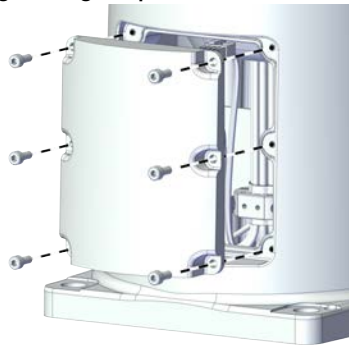
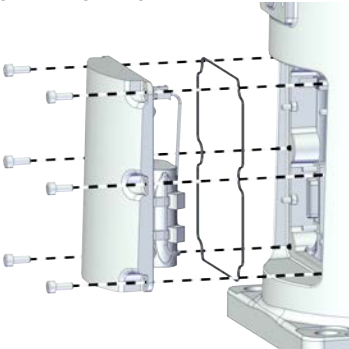
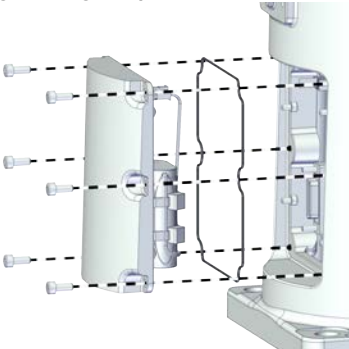
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SMB.P7</li><li>• SMB.J1</li><li>• SMB.J2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

*Continues on next page*



## 5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the SMB cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100000944</p>
4	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Stainless Screw Hexagon Socket Head Cap, Clean Room 3HAC075438-001 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p>

*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

*Continued*

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	

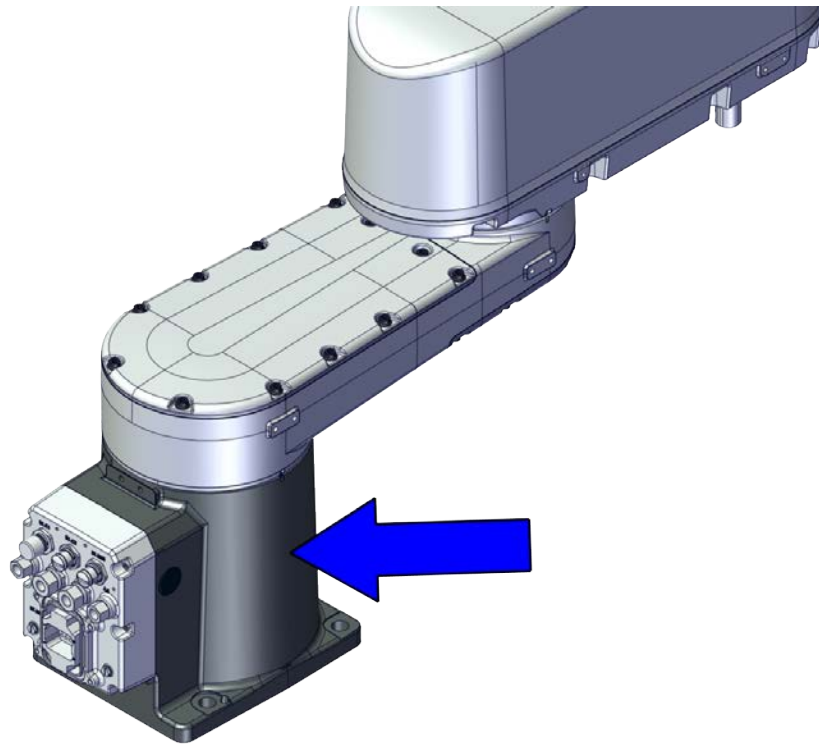


## 5.4 Base

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

#### Location of the base

The base is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001011

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Base	3HAC076568-001	
Base plate, rear outlet cable	3HAC067865-001	Base bottom cover, rear cable
Rear plate	3HAC070312-001	Base rear cover, bottom cable
Base plate, underneath outlet cable	3HAC067864-001	Base bottom cover, bottom cable
Block	3HAC075320-001	
Gasket, bottom plate	3HAC073939-001	Base rear cover, bottom cable

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

Spare part	Article number	Note
Gasket, Foot cover	3HAC065350-001	When using with UndeneathOutletCable, this gasket will be used in rear plate and base plate.
Air exhaust	3HAC082080-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .

*Continues on next page*


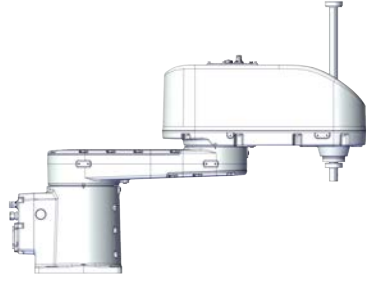




Action	Note
<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the base

Use these procedures to remove the base.

#### Preparations before removing the base

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.   <b>CAUTION</b>  Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2100000930
4	 <b>DANGER</b>  Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
5	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*





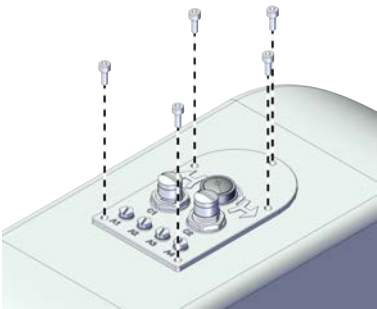
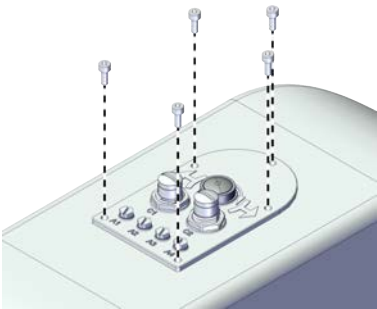


## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

#### Removing the process hub screws



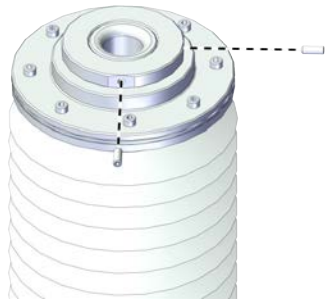

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p>
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

*Continues on next page*



For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399

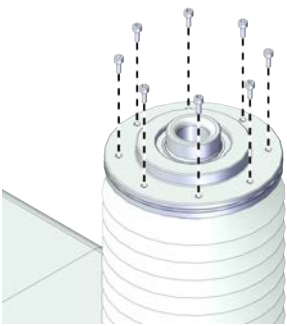
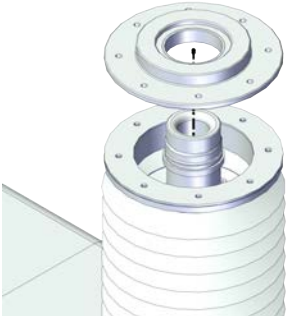
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*




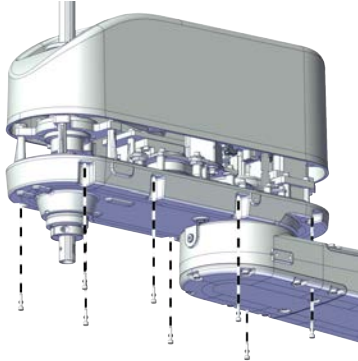
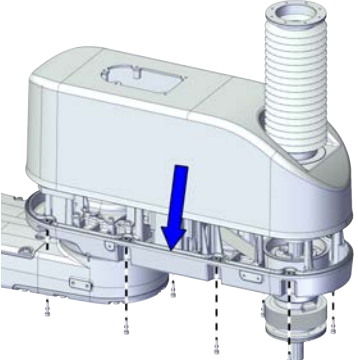
	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

### Removing the cover of the outer arm



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!  See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a></p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

#### Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

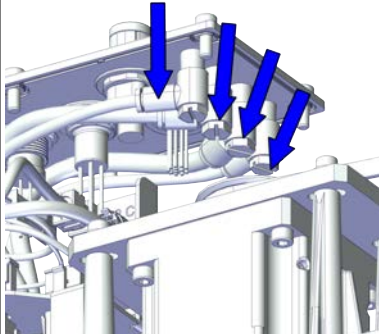
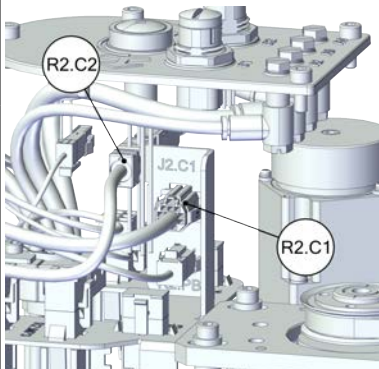



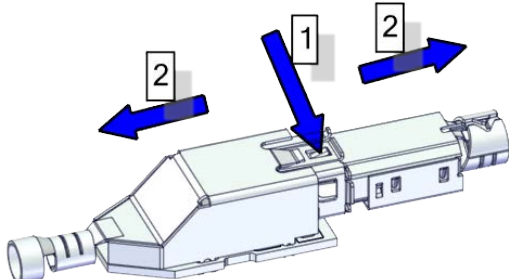
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




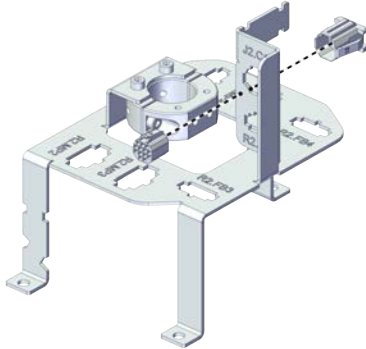
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base  
Continued



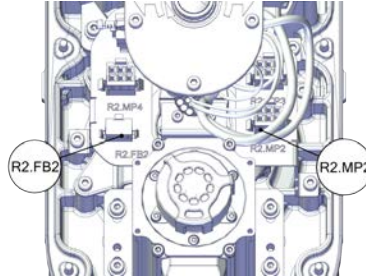
	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C1</li></ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>


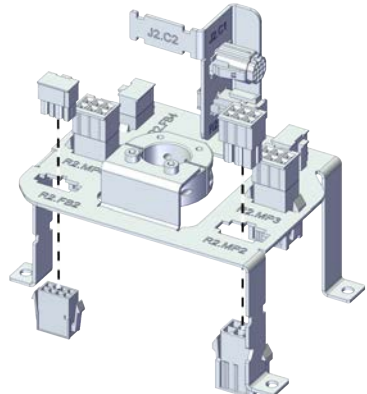
*Continues on next page*





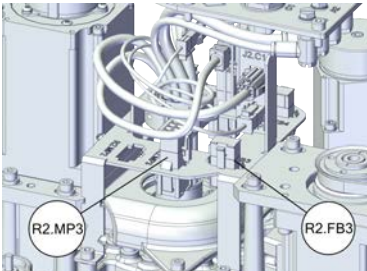
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*


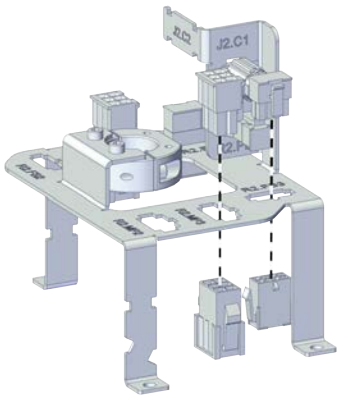
	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor


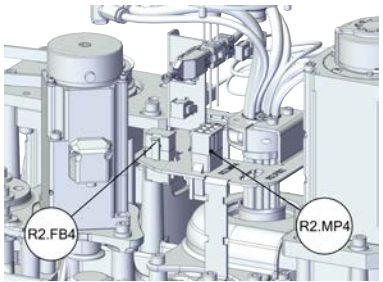

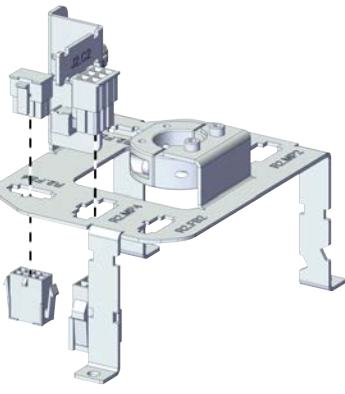
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>

*Continues on next page*



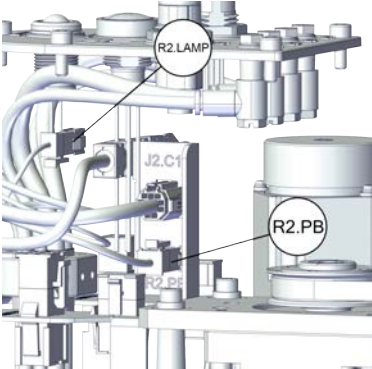

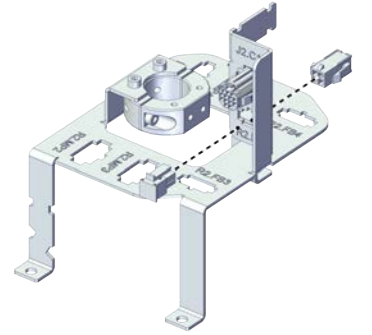


## 5 Repair


### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

#### Disconnecting the connector for PB





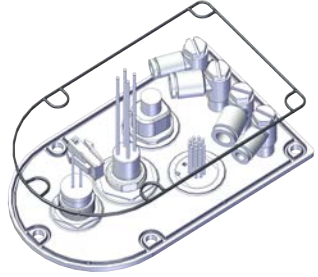
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a>	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

#### Pull out the process hub



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

## Removing the cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	


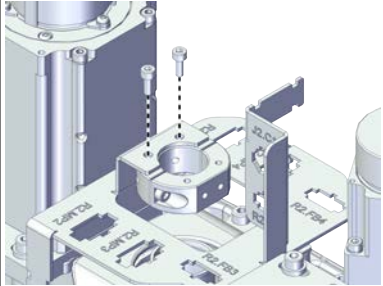

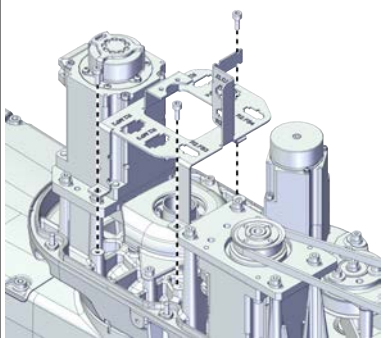
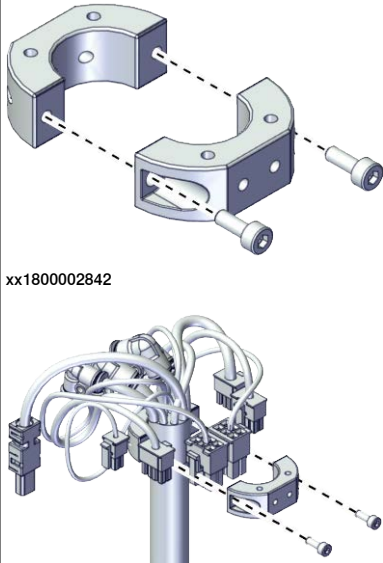
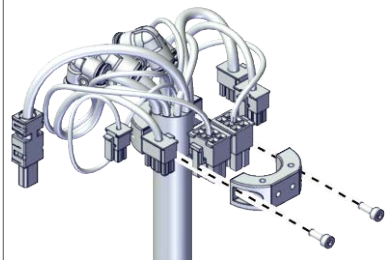
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*




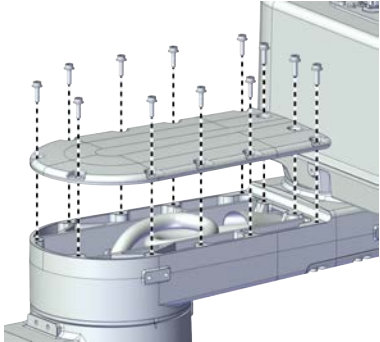
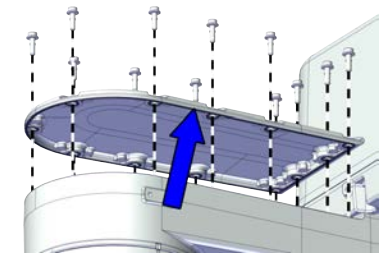
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>

### Removing the axis-1 cover



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Remove the cover.  <b>Note</b> <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the cover and check the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	 xx2100000942 <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b>  xx2100002428

## Removing the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	



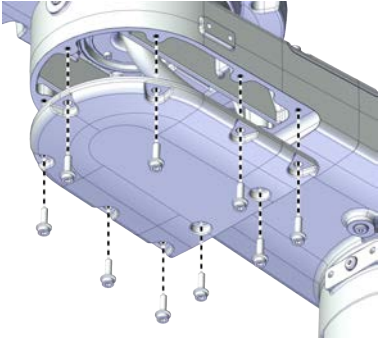
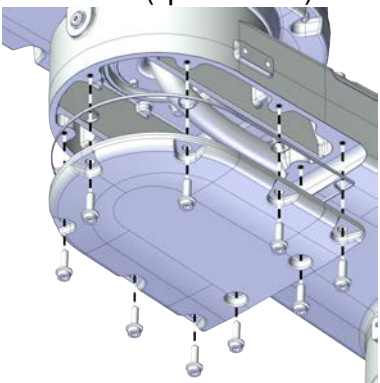
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*



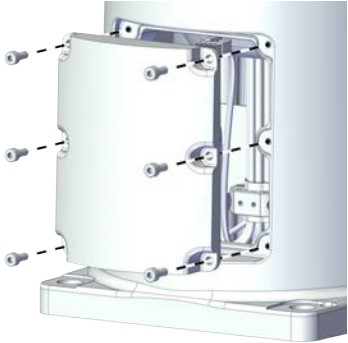


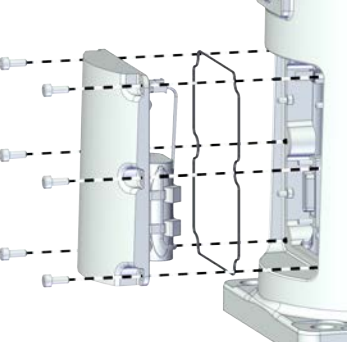
	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover and check the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000943</p>  <p>xx2100002451</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>

### Removing the SMB cover


	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
4	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the stainless screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
5	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the SMB cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	xx2100000944 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002433

## Disconnecting the SMB cabling

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	




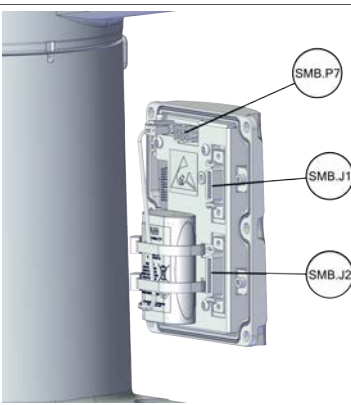
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued



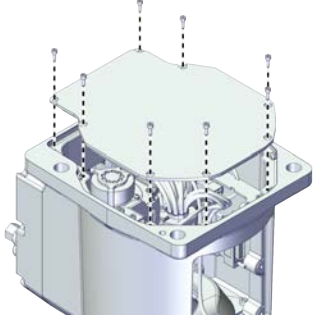
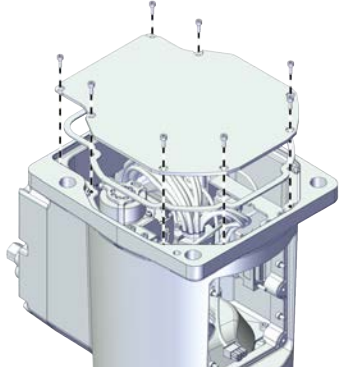
	Action	Note
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Cut the strips.	
5	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul>  <b>Tip</b> Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 xx2100000945

### Removing the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
4	Lay down the robot.	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
5	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>



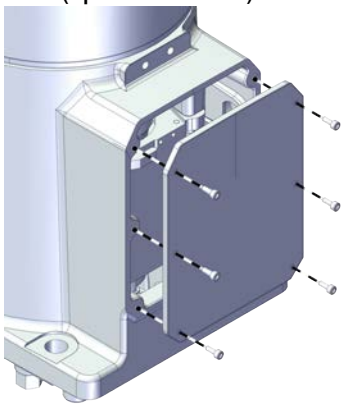
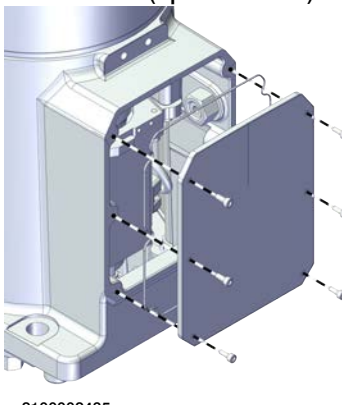
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

	Action	Note
7	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
8	<p>Remove the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001202</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>

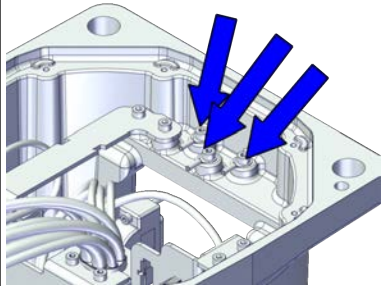
### Disconnecting the grounding cable connectors

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	



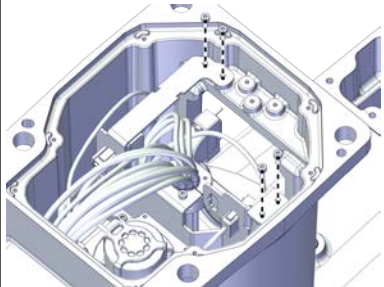
Continues on next page




5.4.1 Replacing the base  
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the three grounding cables from the bracket by unscrew the screws.	 xx2100000947

## Releasing the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base.	 xx2100000948

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


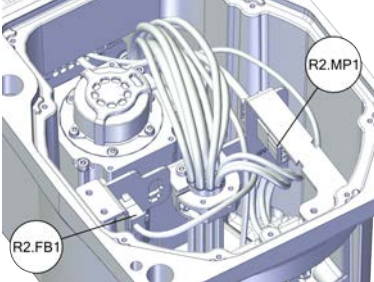

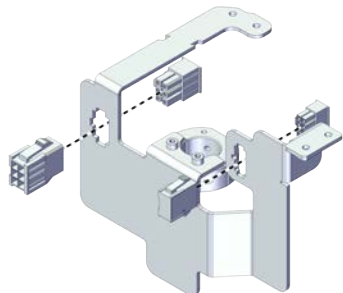
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

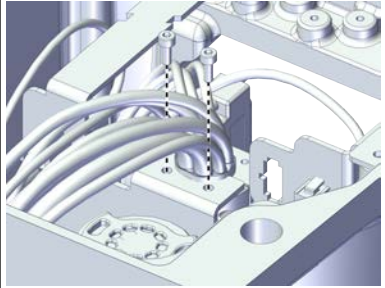
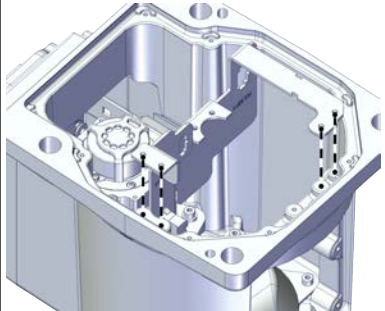
	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul>	 xx2100000949
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b>  The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000950

### Removing the bracket



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	Release the cable ferrule from the bracket.	 xx2100000951
4	Remove the bracket.	 xx2100000952

#### Removing the main harness from the axis -2 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	



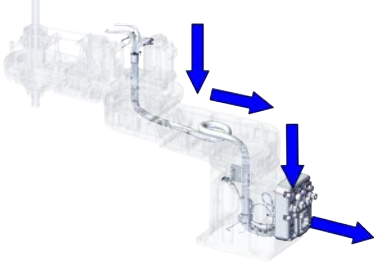
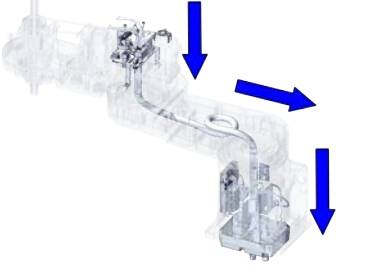
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*


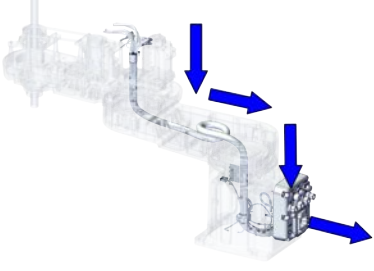
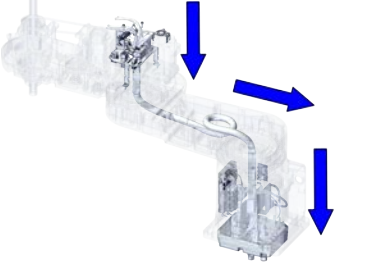
	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the outer arm from the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

#### Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

## Removing the main harness



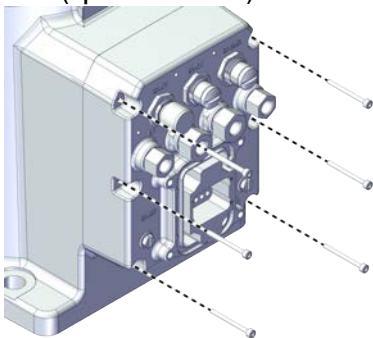
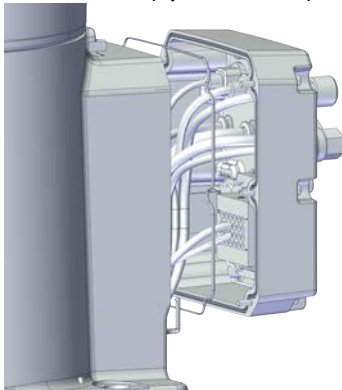
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page






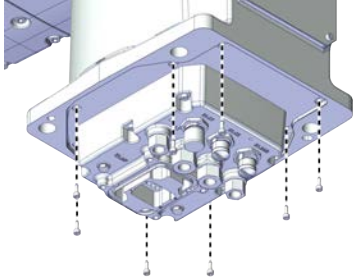
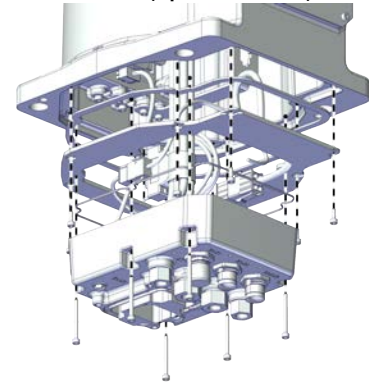
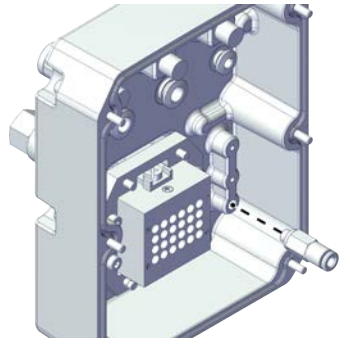
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base  
Continued


	Action	Note
3	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<div>Remove the main harness.</div> <div> <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the main harness.</div> <div> <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.</div>	<div> xx2100000953</div> <div>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</div> <div> xx2100002436</div>

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
5	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002437</p>
7	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the one way valve by unscrewing it.</p>	 <p>xx2200000281</p>

#### Removing the pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


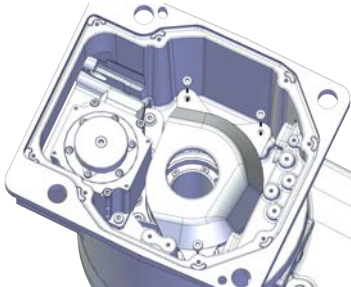
*Continues on next page*





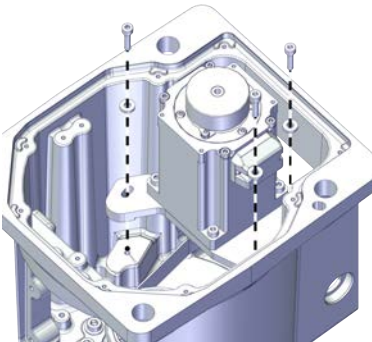
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	 xx2100001037
4	Remove the pulley protection cover.	



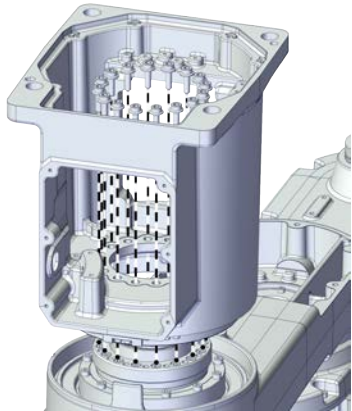
### Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001038
4	Remove the motor.	



*Continues on next page*



## Removing the base from the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers on the base to the axis-1 gear unit.	 xx2100001039
4	Remove the base.	

## Removing the block from the base

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

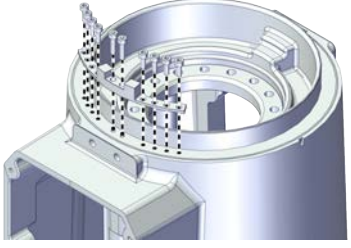
Continues on next page





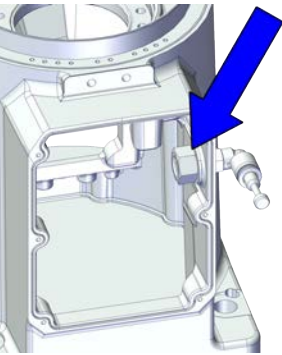
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	 xx2100001040
4	Remove the block from the base	

#### Removing the air exhaust for Clean Room robots

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a>	
3	For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the air exhaust by unscrewing the locking nut	 xx2200000280


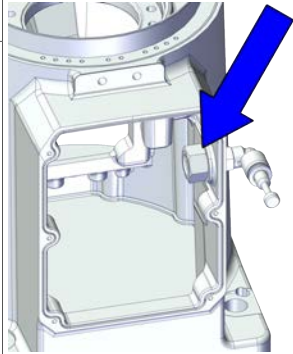
#### Refitting the base

Use these procedures to refit the base.


*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the air exhaust for Clean Room robots

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the air exhaust back to the base.	 <p>xx2200000280</p>
3	Secure with the nut.	

## Refitting the block to the base

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

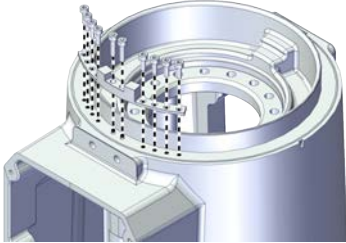
Continues on next page




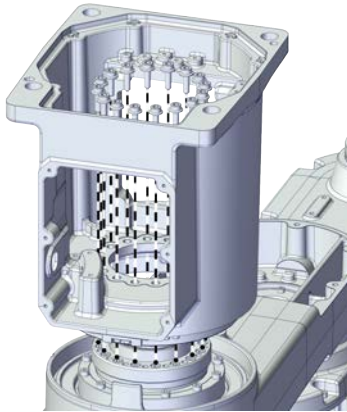
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the block back to the base.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Center: Hex socket head cap screw M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100001040</p>
3	Secure with the screws.	


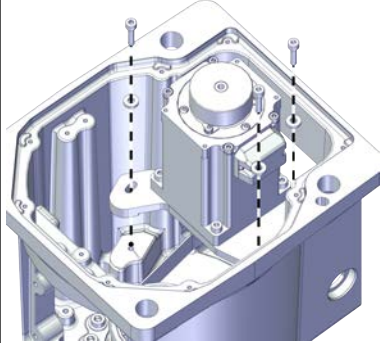
### Refitting the base

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6.7 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001039</p>
2	Refit the base to the axis-1 gearbox as the illustration.	
3	Refit the screws.	

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Put the timing belt into the pulley on the gear.	
3	<p>Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	 <p>xx2100001038</p> <p>Timing belt A1: 3HAC070449-001</p>
5	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	


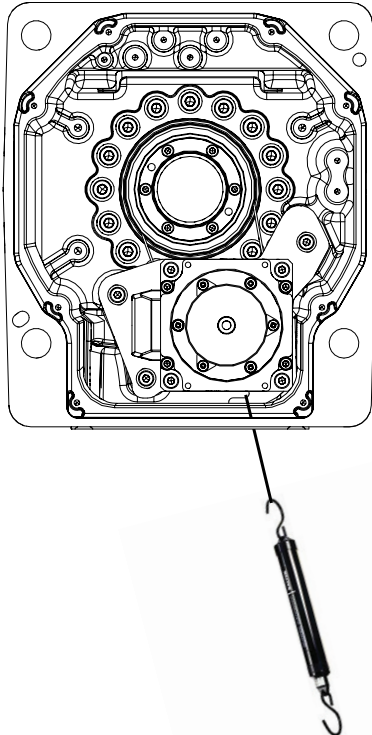
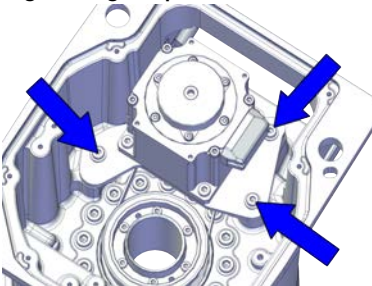
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


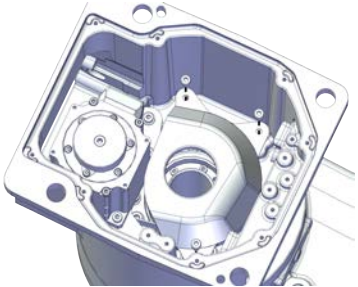
	Action	Note
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 63-89 N New belt: 90-130 N</p>  <p>xx2100001043</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	<p>Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm <math>\pm</math> 10%</p>  <p>xx2100001044</p>
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 209-249 Hz New belt: 250-370 Hz</p>
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

### Refitting the pulley protection cover


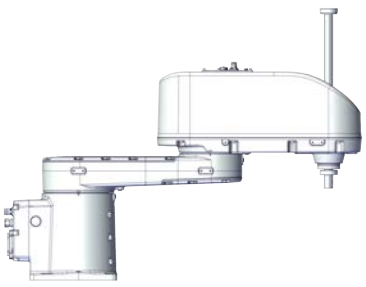
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the pulley protection cover.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001037
4	Secure the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	

Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Make sure that the robot is at zero position.	 xx2100000930




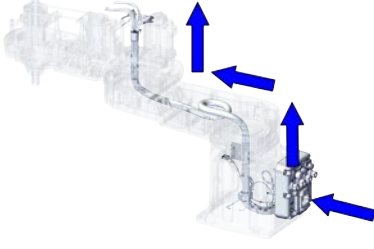
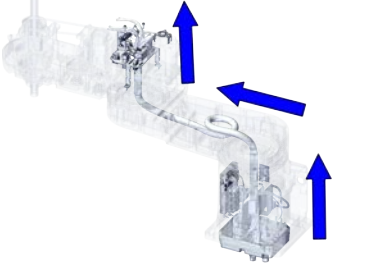
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*


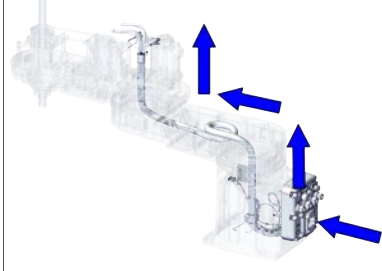
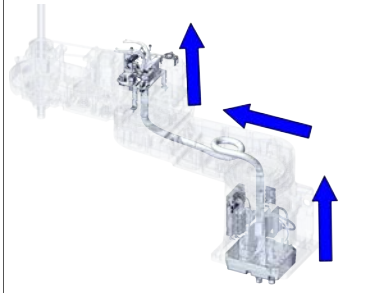
	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the internal harness into the inner arm through the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>

Inserting the main harness through the axis -2 gearbox position




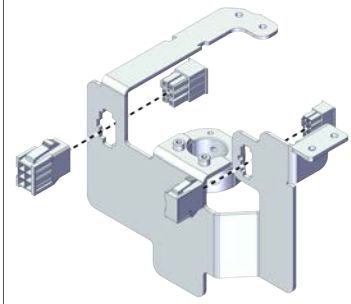
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the internal harness into the outer arm through the plastic protection tube and the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>
3	Secure the R2.MP3 and R2.MP4 with cable straps.	

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000950</p>


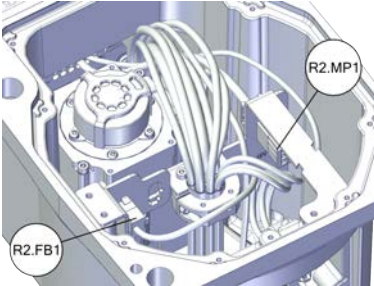

*Continues on next page*




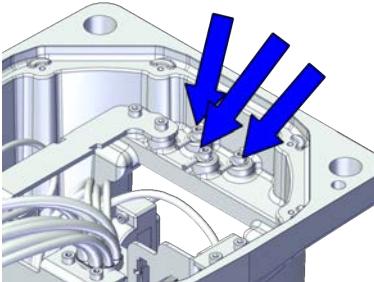
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000949</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Reconnecting the grounding cable connectors





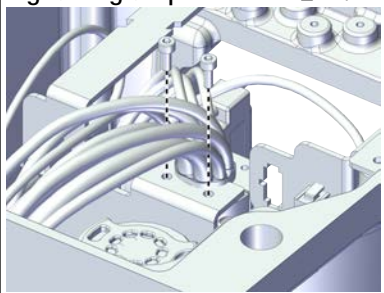
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Secure the three grounding cables to the bracket with the screw.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000947</p>

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.</p> <p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000951</p>

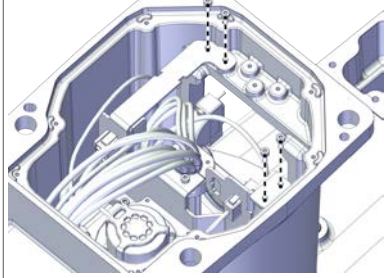
*Continues on next page*





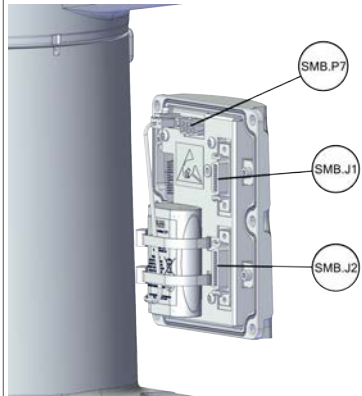
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*



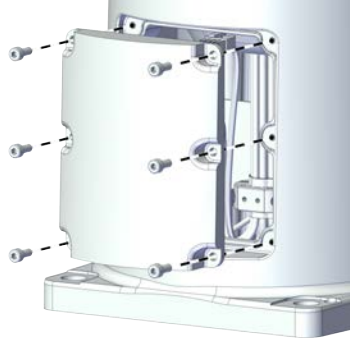
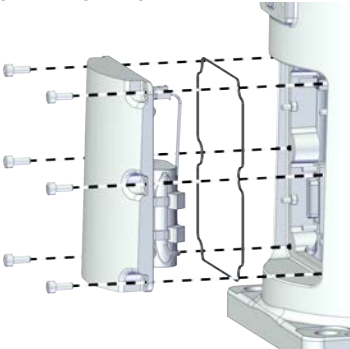
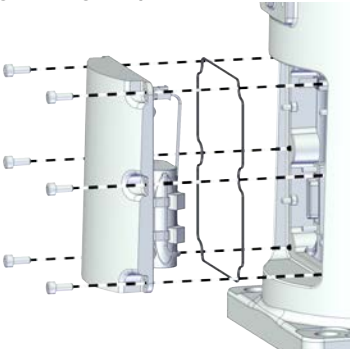
	Action	Note
4	Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000948</p>

### Refitting the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the SMB cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100000944</p>
4	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Stainless Screw Hexagon Socket Head Cap, Clean Room 3HAC075438-001 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p>


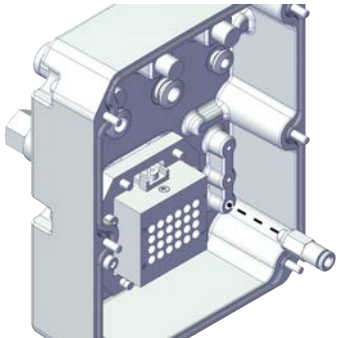
*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

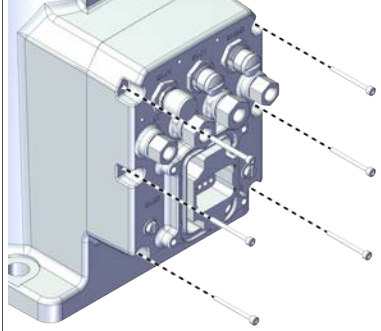
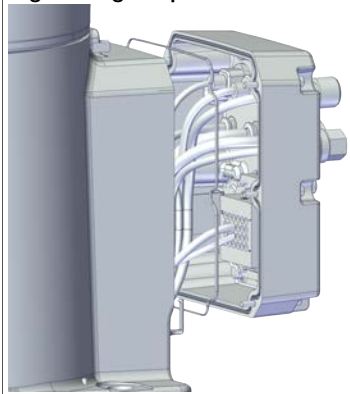
5.4.1 Replacing the base  
Continued

Refitting the main harness

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the one way valve by screwing it into the main harness assembly.</p>	 xx2200000281

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Secure with the screws.	 <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>


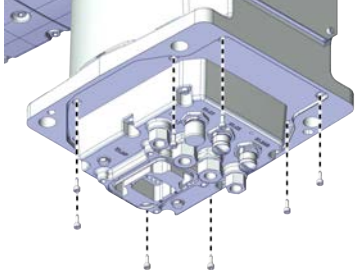
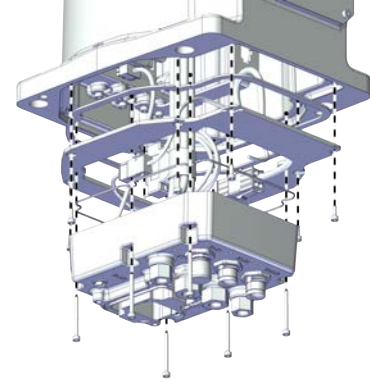
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
6	Secure with the screws.	<p></p> <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p></p> <p>xx2100002437</p>

#### Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*







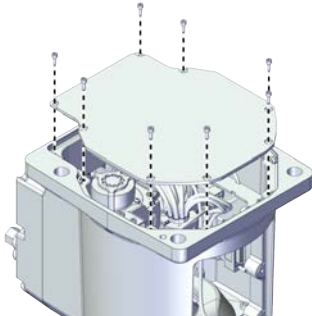
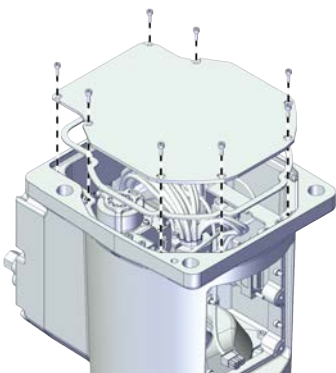
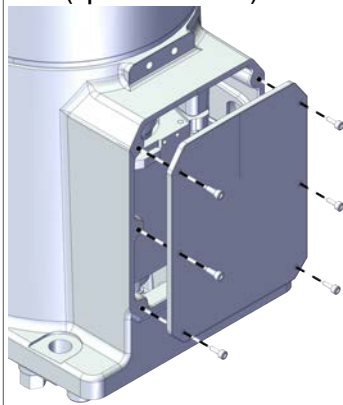
	Action	Note
2	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	



## 5 Repair

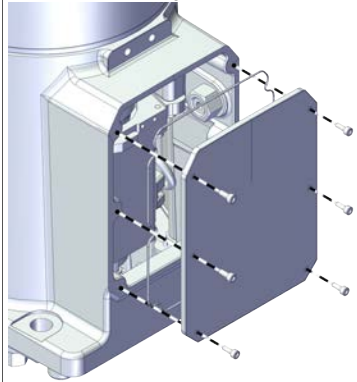
### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate before refitting the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate before refitting the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For rear outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>
4	<p>Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001202</p>

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
		<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>
5	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
6	Secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Steel</p> <p>Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 56 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>

#### Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	




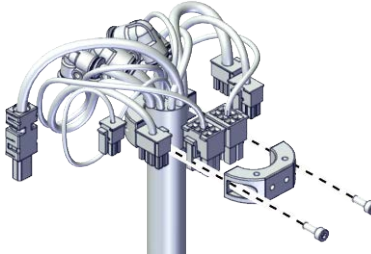


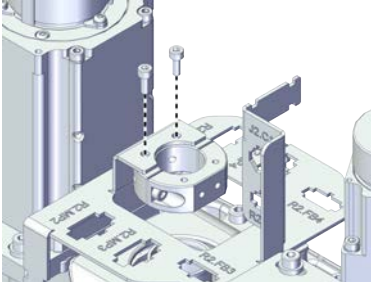


*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base




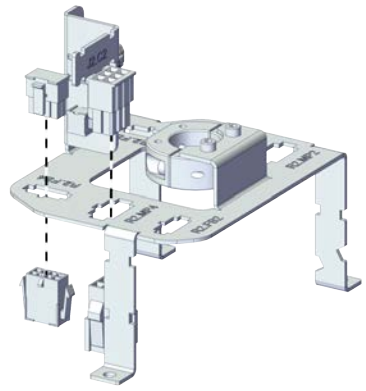

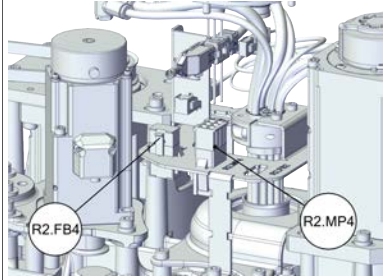

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

Continues on next page



#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




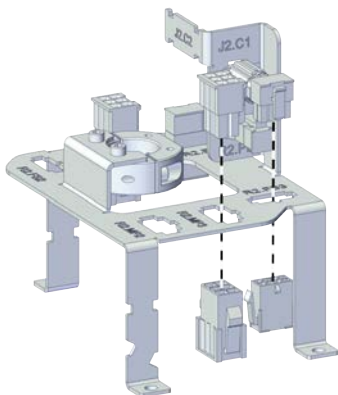

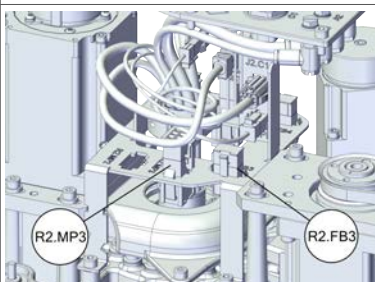



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*




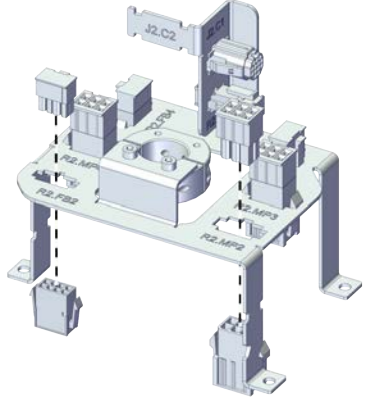

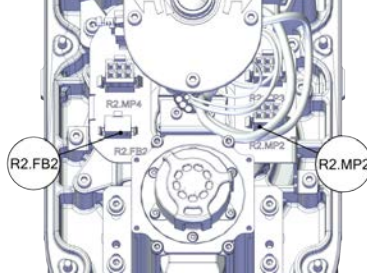

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




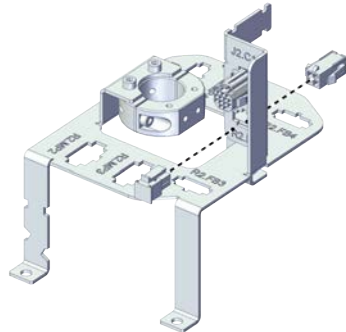

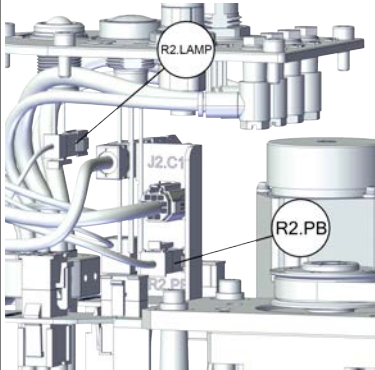



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*



#### Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



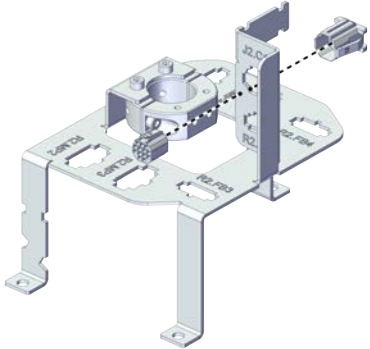

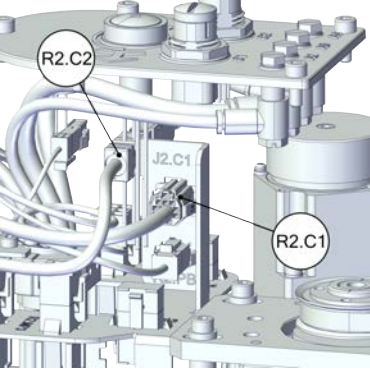


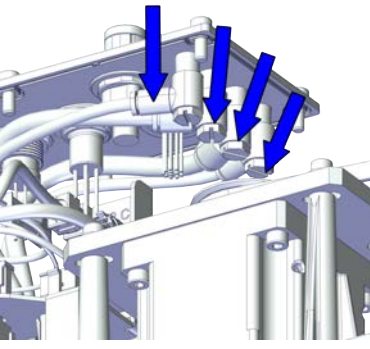
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued




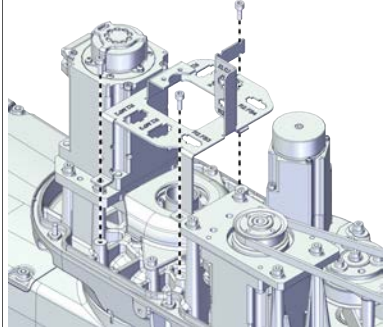
	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>

Continues on next page




	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




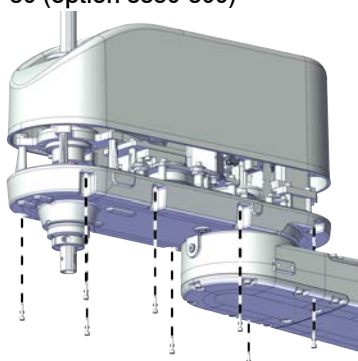
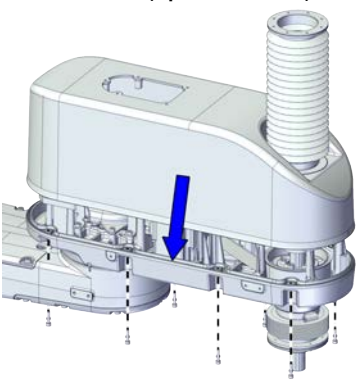
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

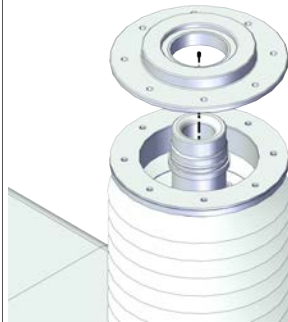
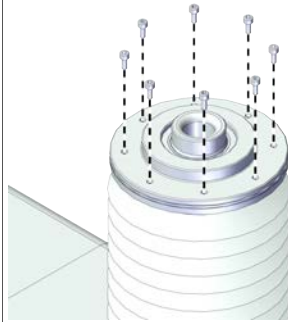


For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

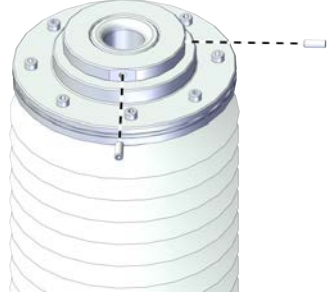
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.	Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002398




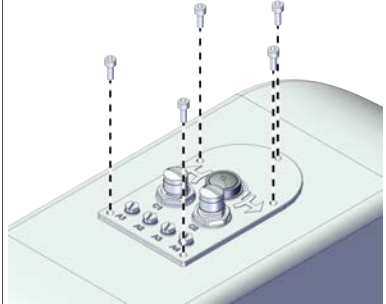
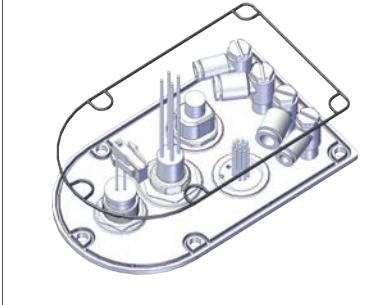
#### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	


*Continues on next page*



5.4.1 Replacing the base  
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	



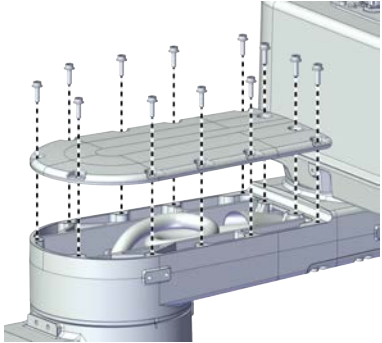
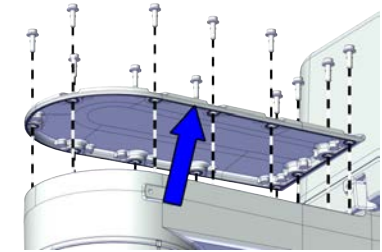
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*




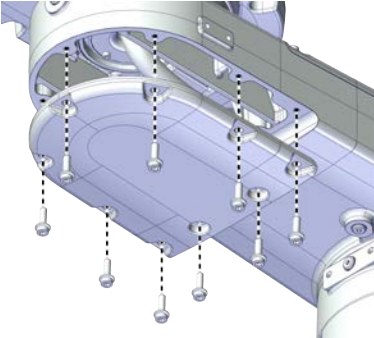
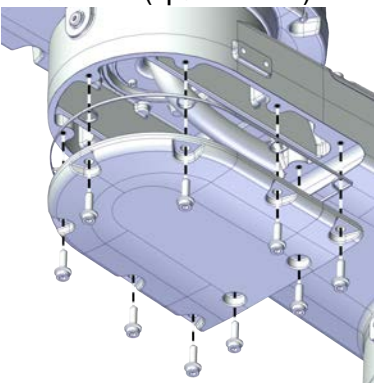
	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p>  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	<p>For 450 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (10 pcs)</p> <p>For 550 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (12 pcs)</p> <p>For 650 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>
3	Refit the screws.	 <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>

#### Refitting the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the cover.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (9 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm $\pm 3\%$ For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
4	Refit the screws.	xx2100000943 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002451

Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the base

*Continued*

#### Concluding procedure

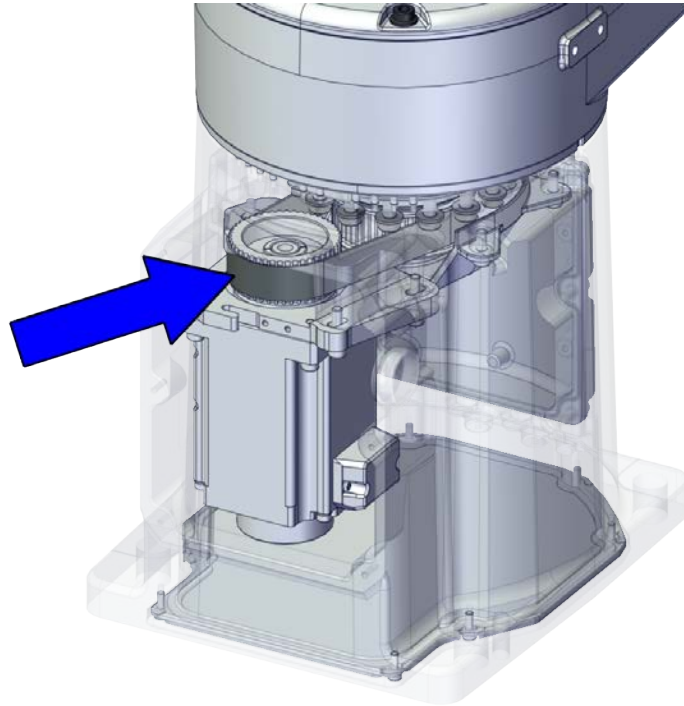
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	



## 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

### Location of the axis-1 timing belt

The axis-1 timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001015

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt A1	3HAC070449-001	

### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.  If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.  Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.  Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the axis-1 timing belt

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 timing belt.


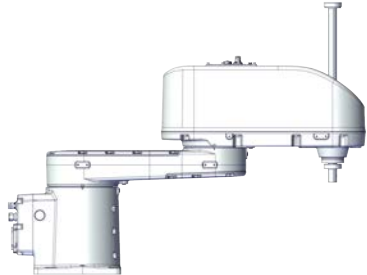


##### Preparations before removing the axis-1 timing belt

Remove the robot from the wall or enough space.


	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>If there is not enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

## Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




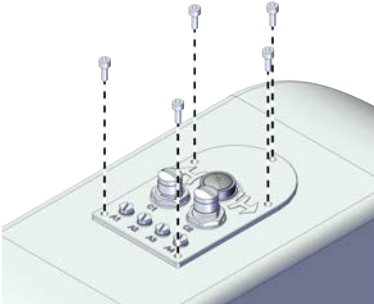
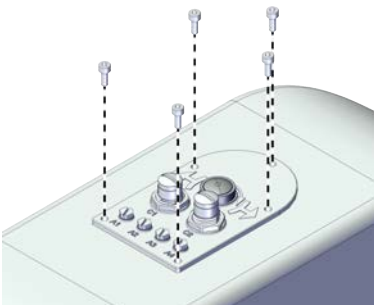
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	


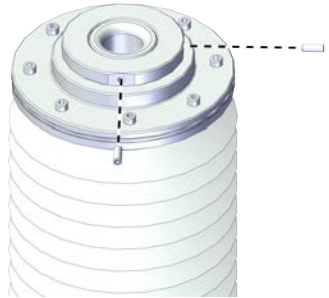

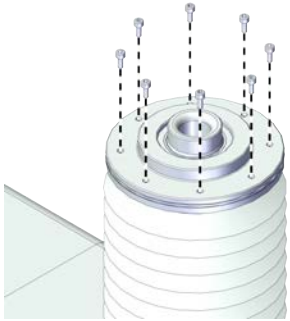
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

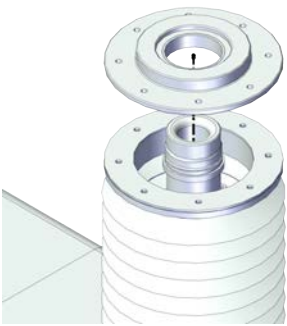
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*




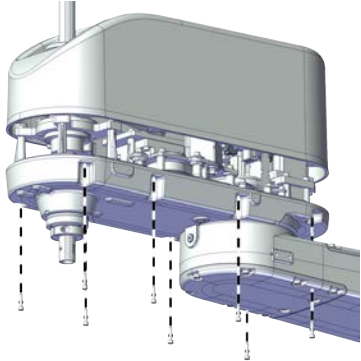
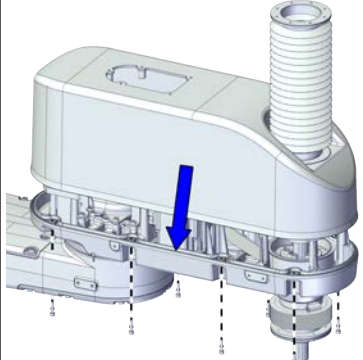
	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a></p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

## Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

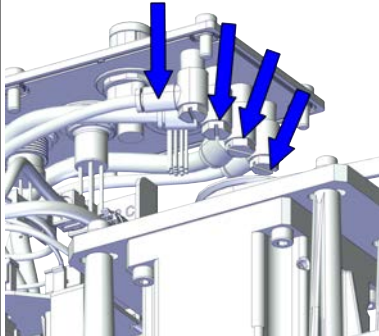
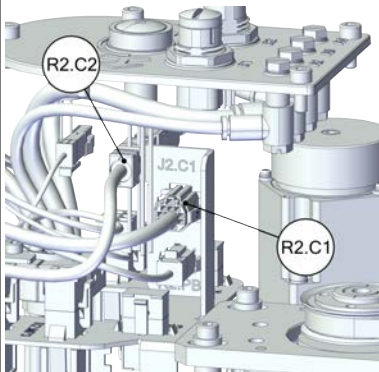



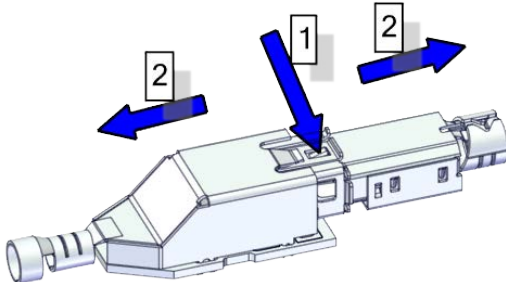
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page




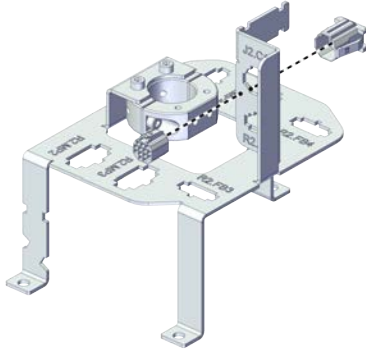
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt  
Continued



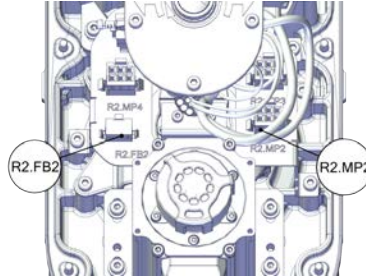
	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C1</li></ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>


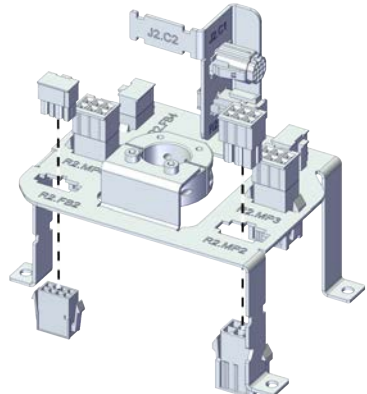
Continues on next page





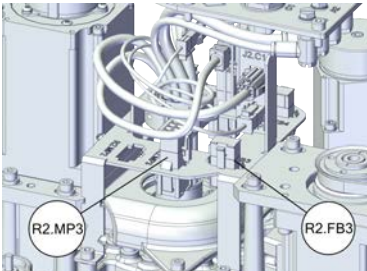
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*


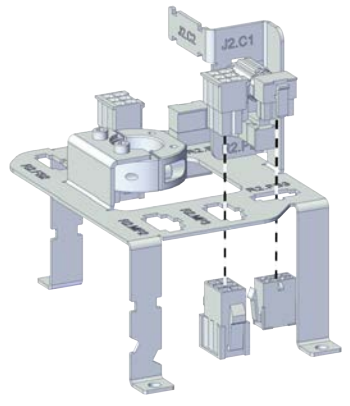
	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor


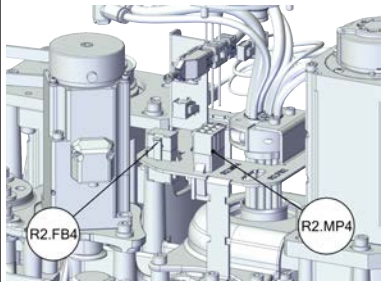

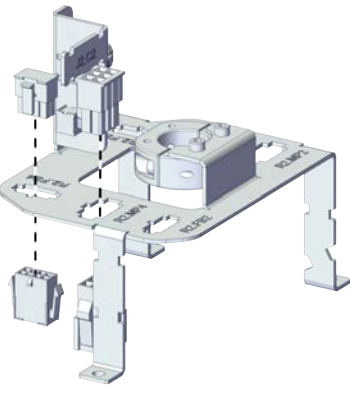
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>

Continues on next page



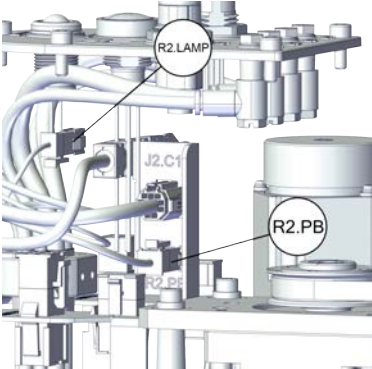

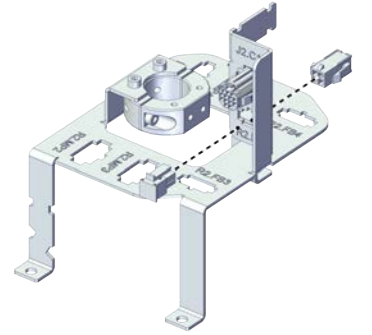


## 5 Repair


### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

#### Disconnecting the connector for PB





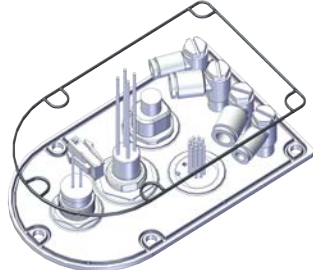
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

#### Pull out the process hub



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

## Removing the cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	


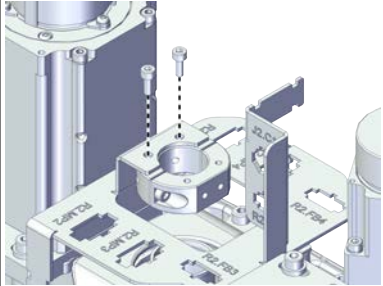

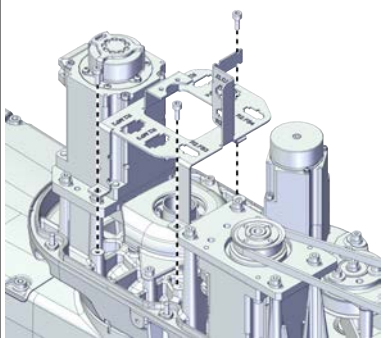
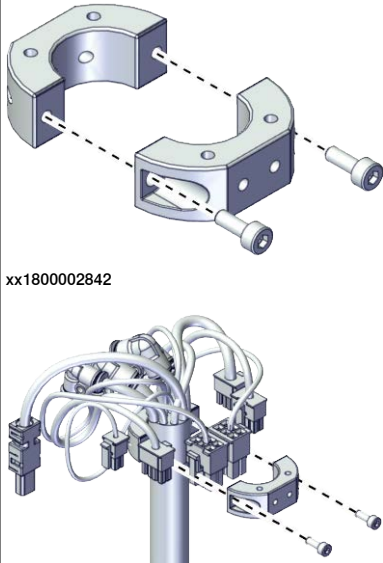
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*




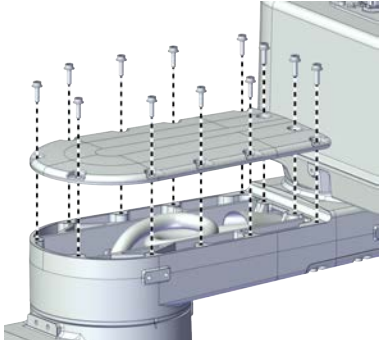
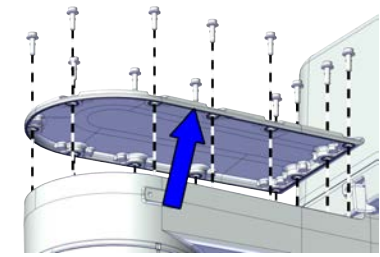
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p> <p>xx1800002849</p>

#### Removing the axis-1 cover



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Remove the cover.  <b>Note</b> <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the cover and check the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	 xx2100000942 <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b>  xx2100002428

## Removing the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	



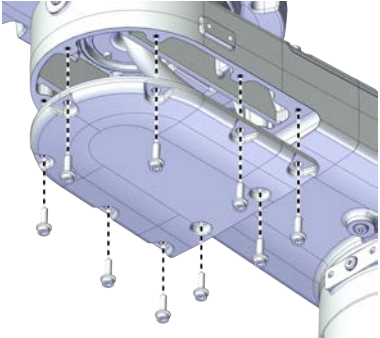
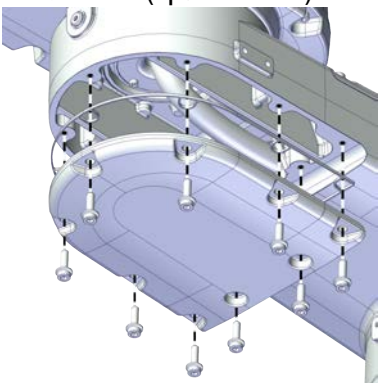
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

Continued



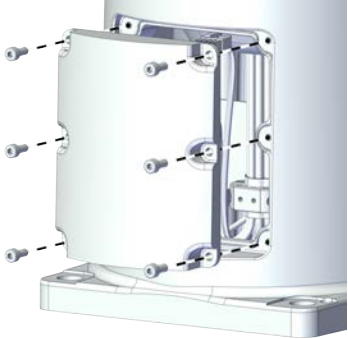


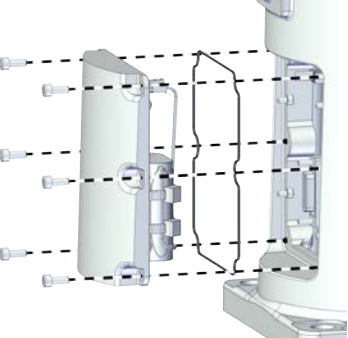
	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover and check the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000943</p>  <p>xx2100002451</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>

#### Removing the SMB cover


	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
4	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the stainless screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
5	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the SMB cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	xx2100000944 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002433

## Disconnecting the SMB cabling

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	




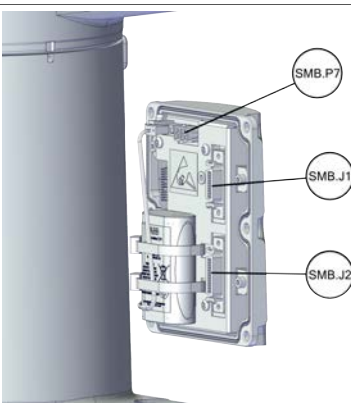
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

Continued



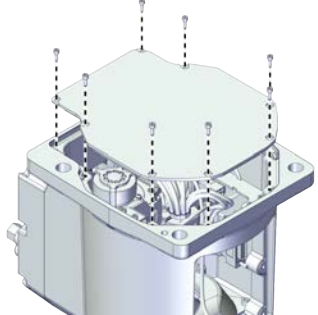
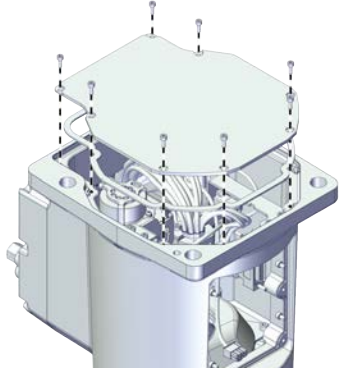
	Action	Note
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Cut the strips.	
5	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul>  <b>Tip</b> Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 xx2100000945

### Removing the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
4	Lay down the robot.	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
5	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>



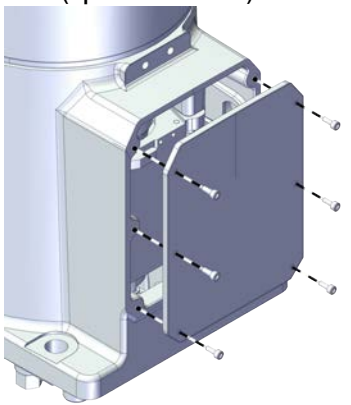
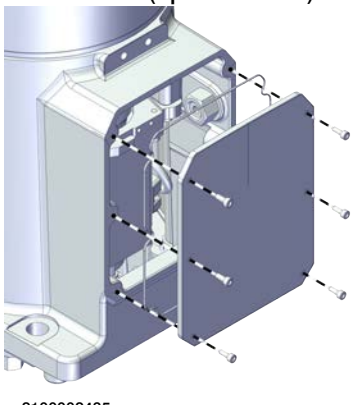
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
7	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
8	<p>Remove the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001202</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>

### Releasing the base bracket

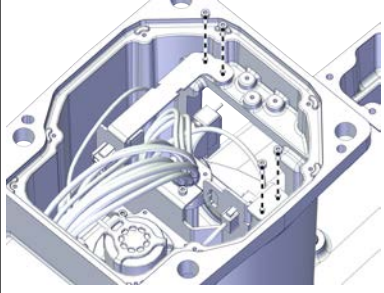
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



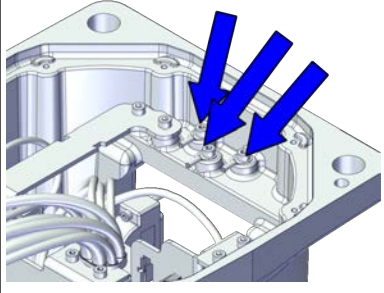


### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt


*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base.	 xx2100000948

#### Disconnecting the grounding cable connectors

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the three grounding cables from the bracket by unscrew the screws.	 xx2100000947

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


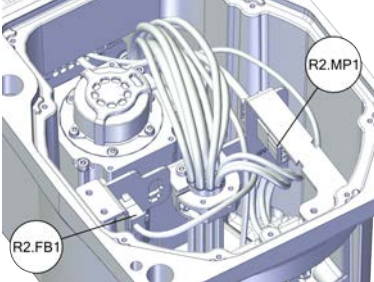

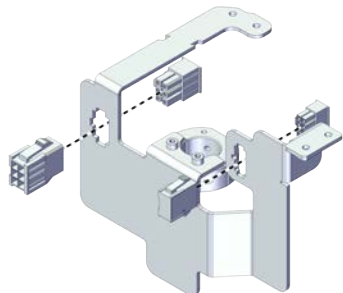
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

Continued

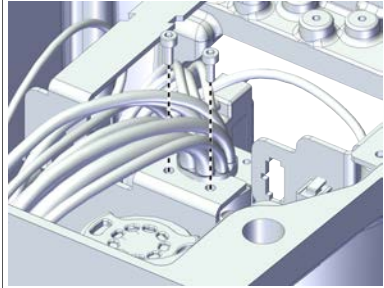
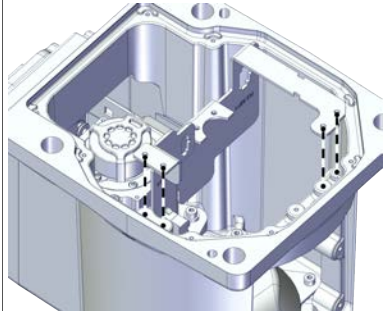
	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul>	 xx2100000949
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b>  The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000950

#### Removing the bracket



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	Release the cable ferrule from the bracket.	 xx2100000951
4	Remove the bracket.	 xx2100000952

#### Removing the main harness from the axis -2 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	



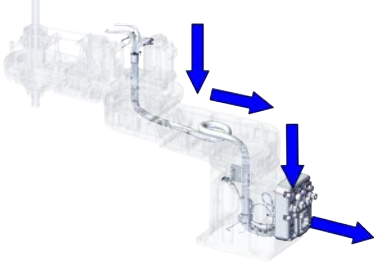
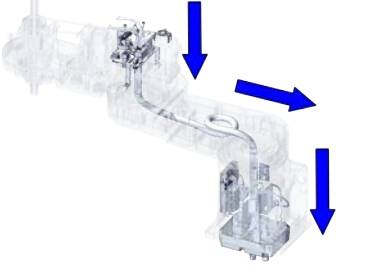
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*


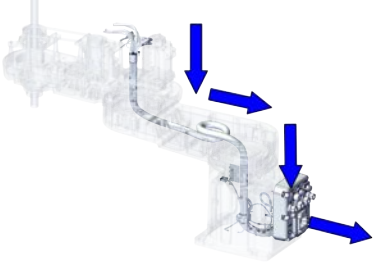
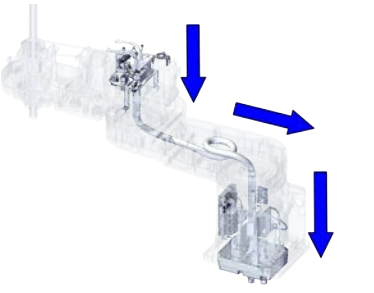
	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the outer arm from the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

#### Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

## Removing the main harness



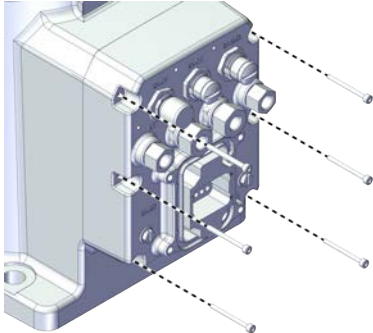
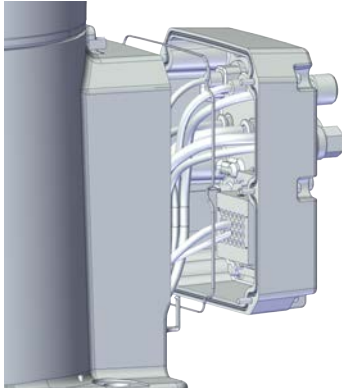
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt  
Continued




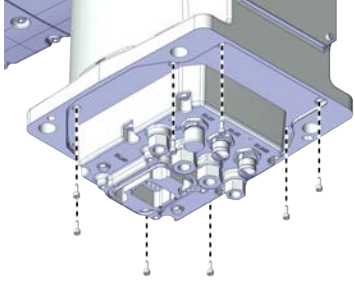
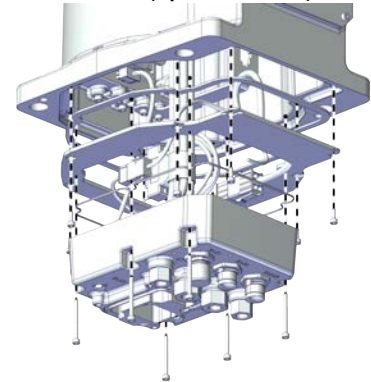
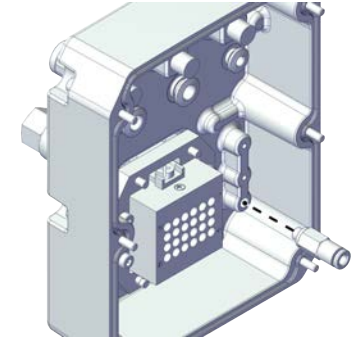
	Action	Note
3	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<div>Remove the main harness.</div> <div> <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the main harness.</div> <div> <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.</div>	<div> xx2100000953</div> <div>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</div> <div> xx2100002436</div>

Continues on next page




### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002437</p>
7	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the one way valve by unscrewing it.</p>	 <p>xx2200000281</p>

#### Removing the pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


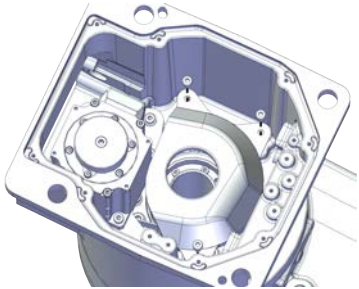
*Continues on next page*





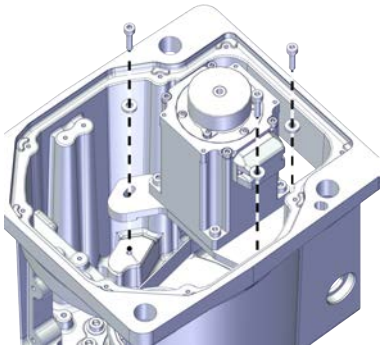
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	 xx2100001037
4	Remove the pulley protection cover.	



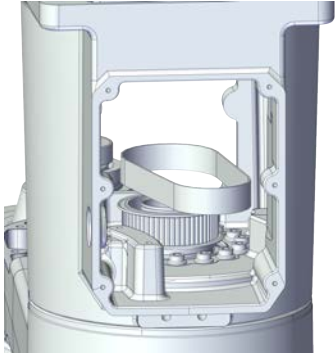
### Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001038
4	Remove the motor.	

*Continues on next page*




## Removing the axis-1 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take the timing belt out carefully.	 xx2100001045

## Refitting the axis-1 timing belt

Use these procedures to refit the axis-1 timing belt.

## Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Put the timing belt into the pulley on the gear.	

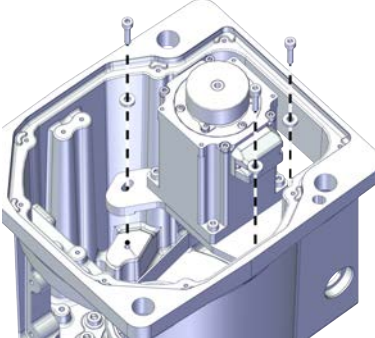
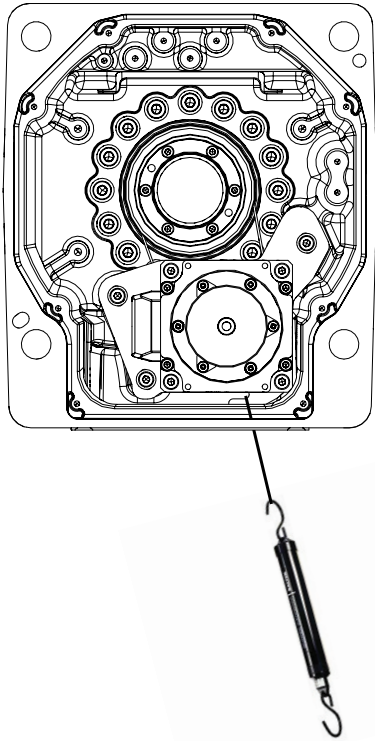
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

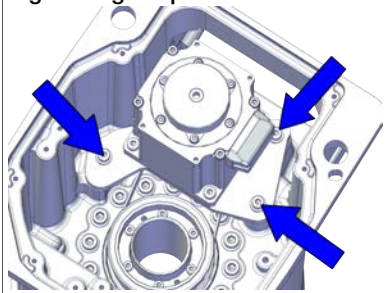
	Action	Note
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	 <p>xx2100001038</p> <p>Timing belt A1: 3HAC070449-001</p>
5	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	
6	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  <div> </div> <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.	<p>Used belt: 63-89 N New belt: 90-130 N</p>  <p>xx2100001043</p>

*Continues on next page*



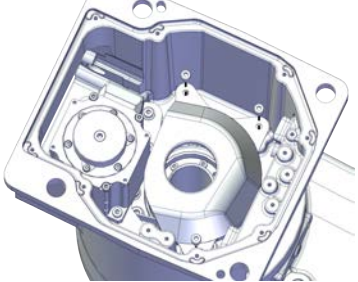


### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001044
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 209-249 Hz New belt: 250-370 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

#### Refitting the pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the pulley protection cover.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001037
4	Secure the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	

*Continues on next page*


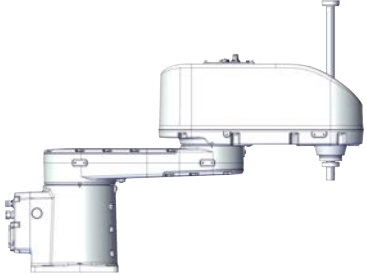



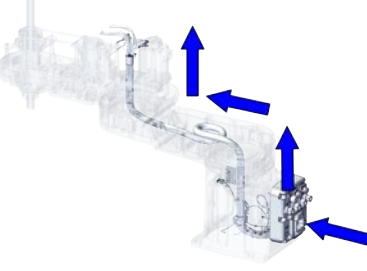
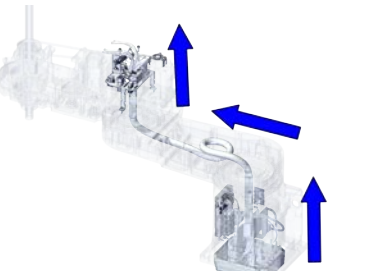


## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*



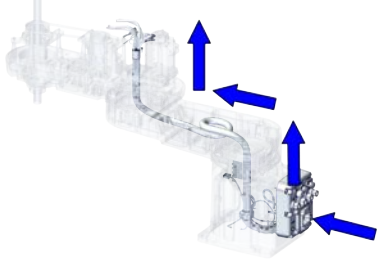
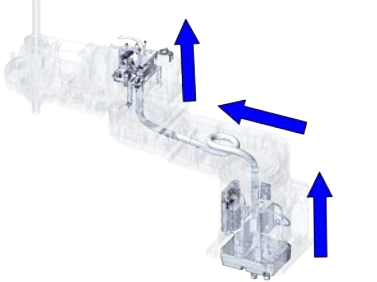
Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Make sure that the robot is at zero position.</p>	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
3	<p>Insert the internal harness into the inner arm through the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>


*Continues on next page*



## Inserting the main harness through the axis -2 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the internal harness into the outer arm through the plastic protection tube and the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>
3	Secure the R2.MP3 and R2.MP4 with cable straps.	

## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	



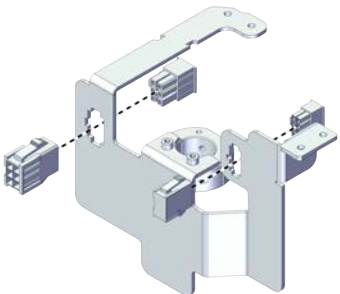

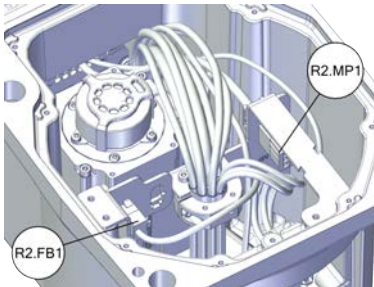

Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

Continued

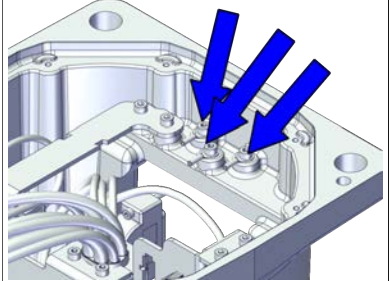

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000950</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000949</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Reconnecting the grounding cable connectors



	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	Secure the three grounding cables to the bracket with the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000947</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.	



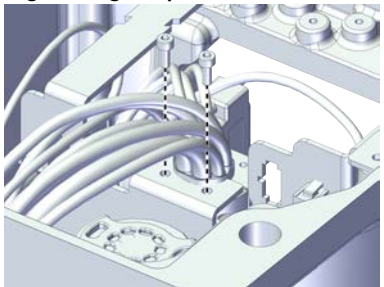
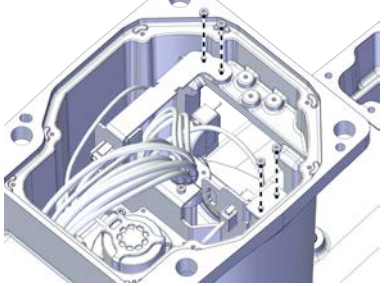
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

Continued


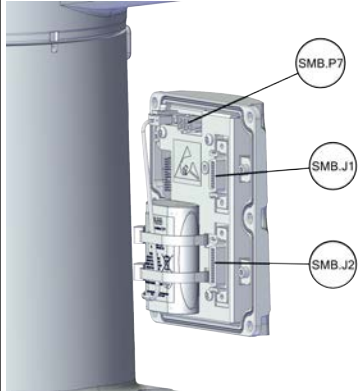
	Action	Note
	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000951</p>
4	<p>Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000948</p>

### Refitting the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page





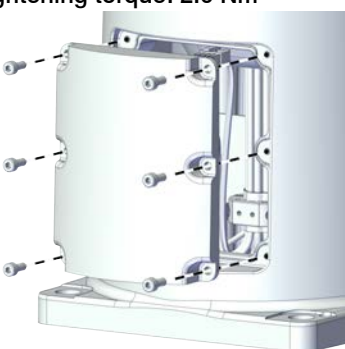
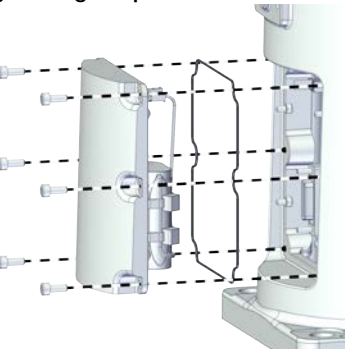
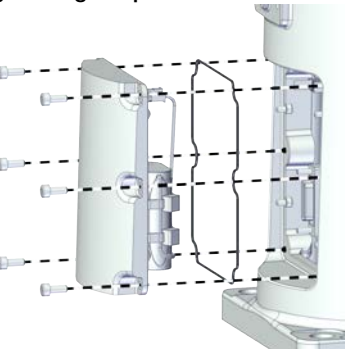
	Action	Note
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SMB.P7</li><li>• SMB.J1</li><li>• SMB.J2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt


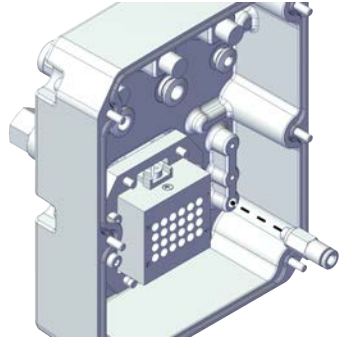
*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the SMB cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100000944</p>
4	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Stainless Screw Hexagon Socket Head Cap, Clean Room 3HAC075438-001 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p>

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the main harness

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the one way valve by screwing it into the main harness assembly.</p>	 <p>xx2200000281</p>

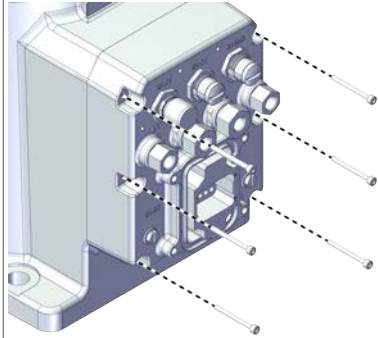
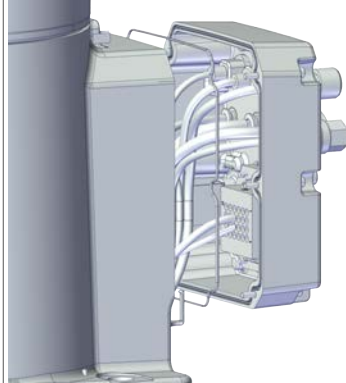
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*


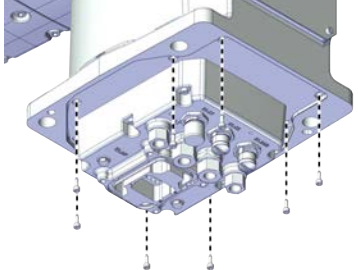
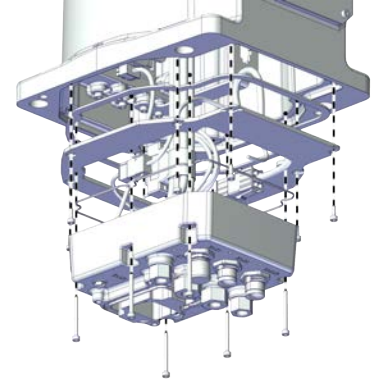
	Action	Note
3	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>

*Continues on next page*




## 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.   <b>Note</b> Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%
6	Secure with the screws.	 xx2100001204 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002437

## Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

---





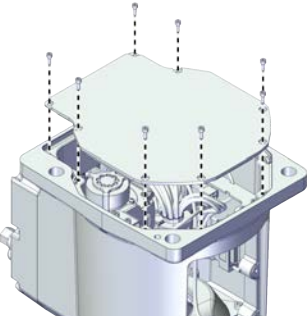
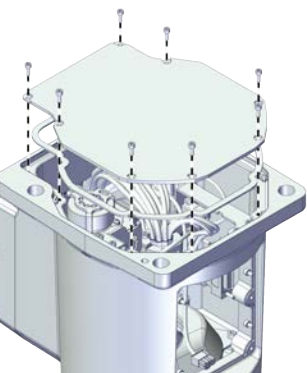
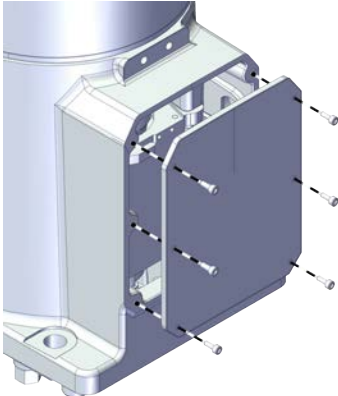
### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate before refitting the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate before refitting the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For rear outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>
4	<p>Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001202</p>

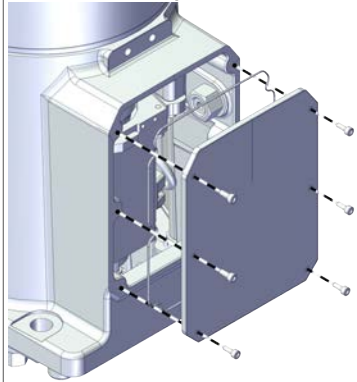
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*




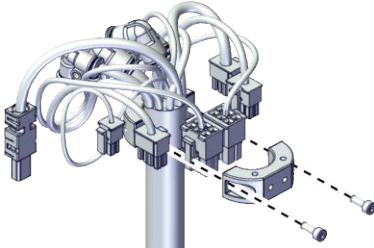


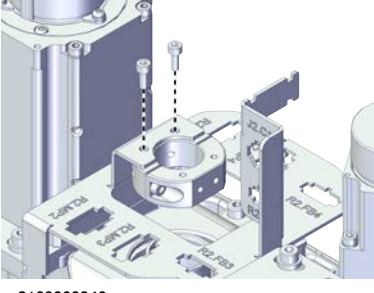


	Action	Note
		<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>
5	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
6	Secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Steel</p> <p>Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 56 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>

#### Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

Continues on next page




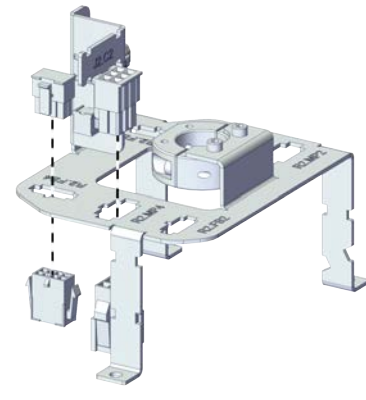

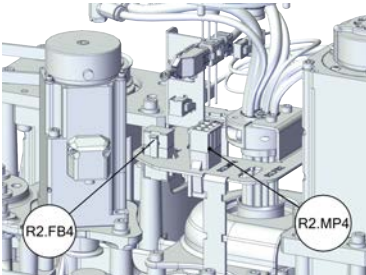



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*




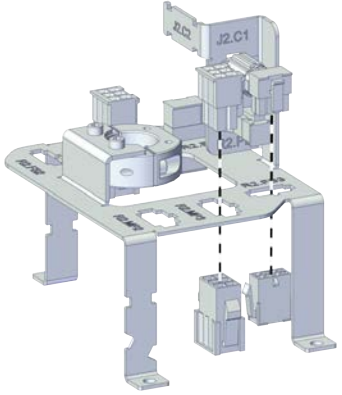

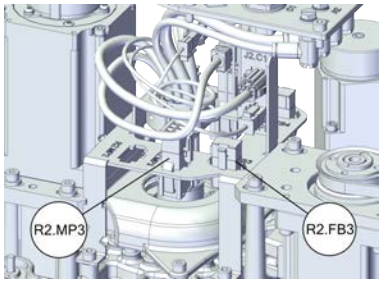

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




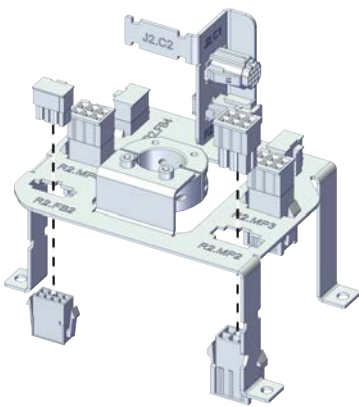

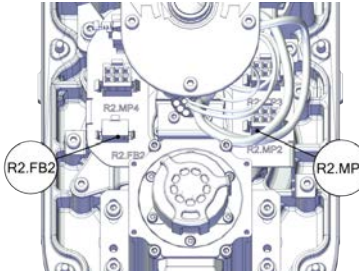



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

Continued




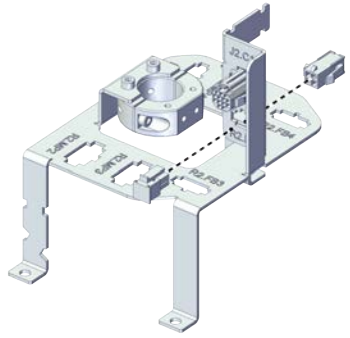

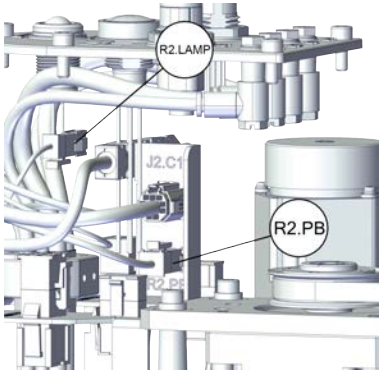

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page



## Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt



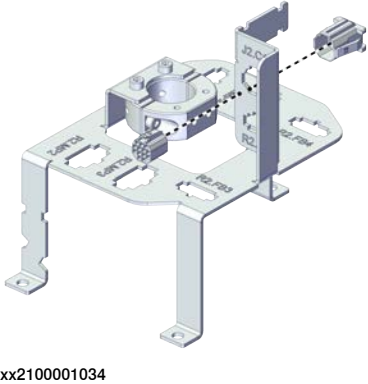

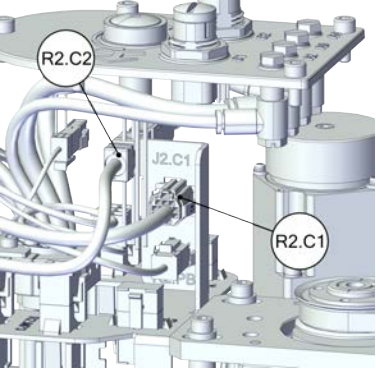


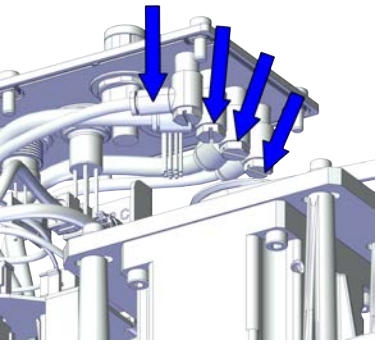
*Continued*

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>


Continues on next page






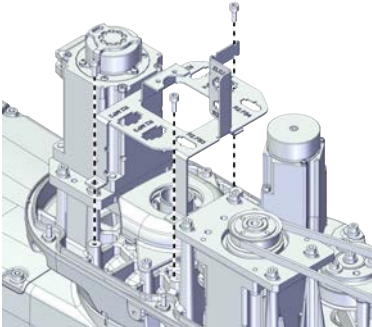
## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt


*Continued*

	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Securing the bracket in the outer arm




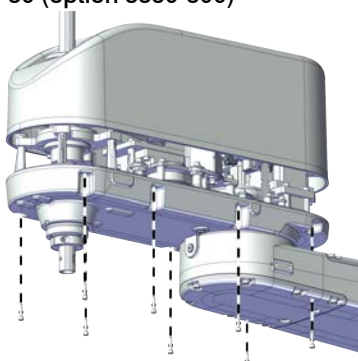
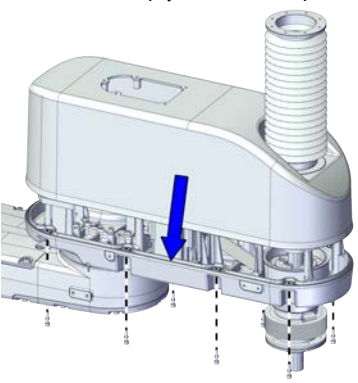
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	


*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

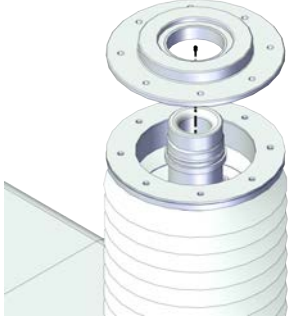
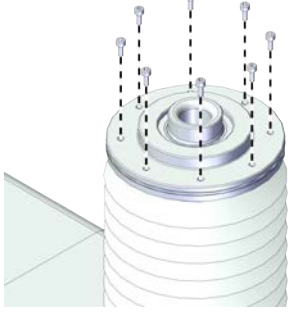


Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

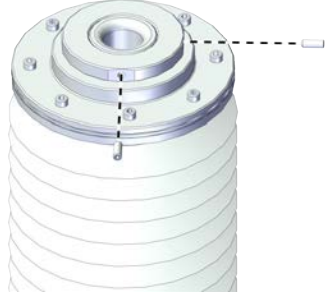
### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

*Continued*


	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




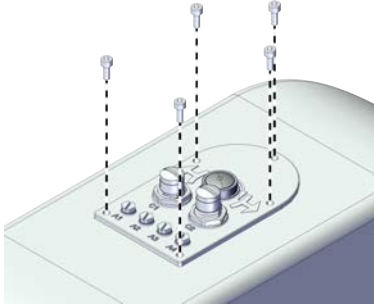
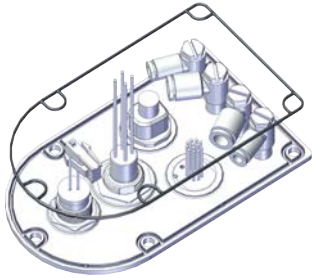
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt

Continued



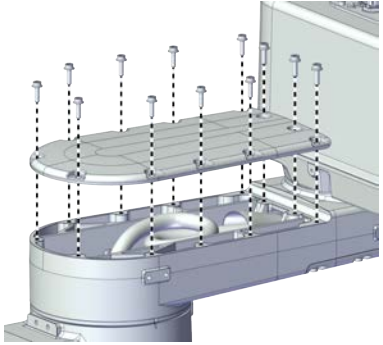
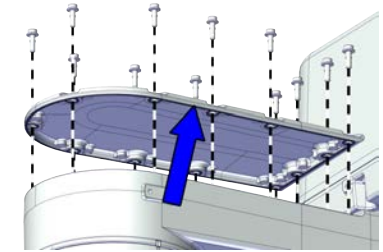
	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

### Refitting the axis-1 cover


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For 450 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (10 pcs)</p> <p>For 550 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (12 pcs)</p> <p>For 650 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>
3	Refit the screws.	 <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>

## Refitting the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




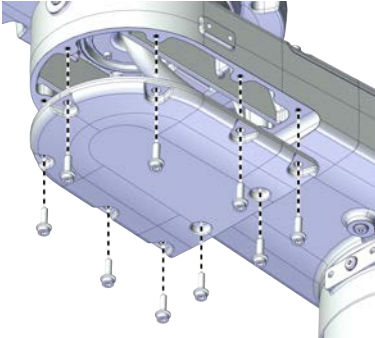
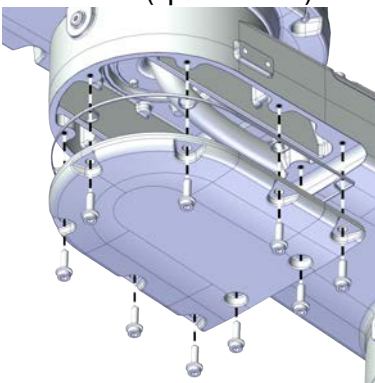
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.4.2 Replacing the axis-1 timing belt



Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the cover.   <b>Note</b>  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.   <b>Tip</b>  Replace the gasket if needed.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (9 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm $\pm$ 3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
4	Refit the screws.	xx2100000943  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002451

Continues on next page



## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	



## 5 Repair

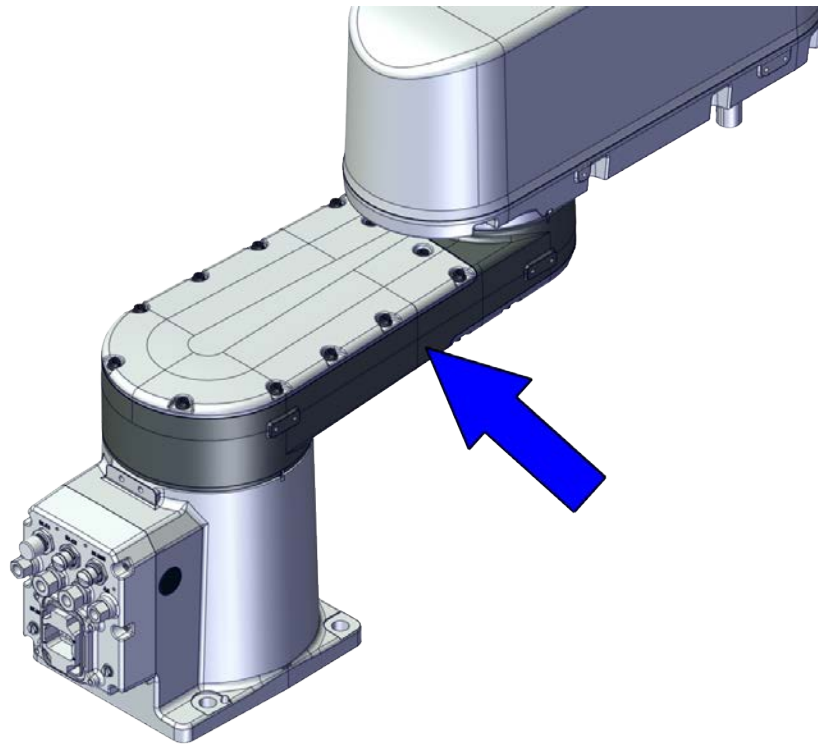
### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

## 5.5 Inner arm

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

#### Location of the inner arm

The inner arm is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001012

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Inner arm, 450 mm	3HAC076570-001	Used for IRB 920T-6/0.45
Inner arm, 550 mm	3HAC076571-001	Used for IRB 920T-6/0.55 and IRB 920-6/0.55.
Inner arm, 650 mm	3HAC076572-001	Used for IRB 920T-6/0.65 and IRB 920-6/0.65
Axis 1 Cover, 450 mm	3HAC076607-001	
Axis 1 Cover, 550 mm	3HAC076608-001	
Axis 1 Cover, 650 mm	3HAC076609-001	

*Continues on next page*



Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis 2 Cover	3HAC076610-001	
Inner arm, 450 mm	3HAC081475-001	
Inner arm, 550 mm	3HAC081476-001	
Inner arm, 550 mm	3HAC081477-001	
Axis 1 Cover, 450 mm	3HAC081490-001	
Axis 1 Cover, 550 mm	3HAC081491-001	
Axis 1 Cover, 650 mm	3HAC081492-001	
Axis 2 Cover	3HAC081493-001	
Gasket, upper cover, 450 mm	3HAC073606-001	
Gasket, upper cover, 550 mm	3HAC073605-001	
Gasket, upper cover, 650 mm	3HAC073604-001	
Gasket, low cover	3HAC073607-001	

**Required tools and equipment**

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

**Required consumables**

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

#### Deciding calibration routine


Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the inner arm

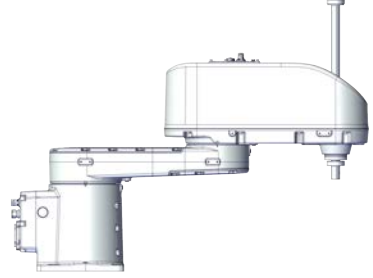


Use these procedures to remove the inner arm.

#### Preparations before removing the inner arm



	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.   <b>CAUTION</b>  Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2100000930
4	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
5	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

#### Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	



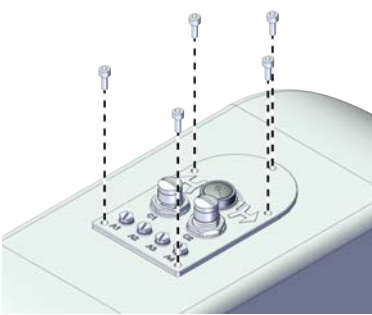
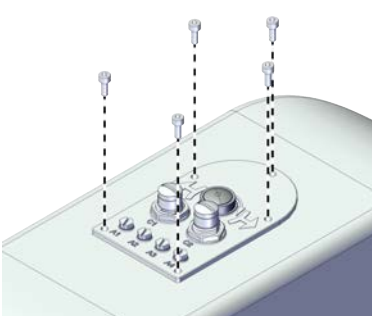
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair



### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p>
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

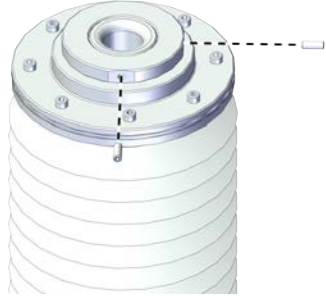

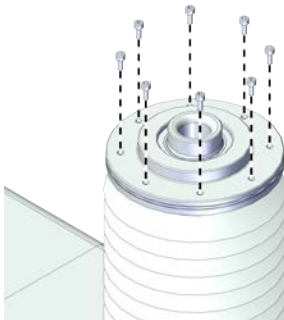
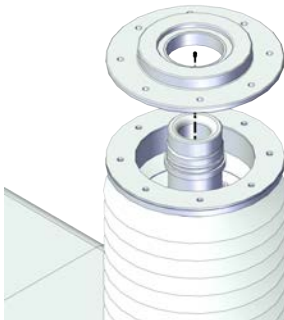
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the locking screws.</p>	 <p>xx2100002398</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the top cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

*Continues on next page*






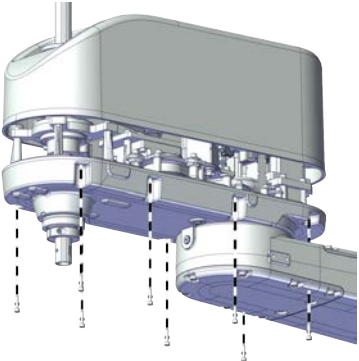
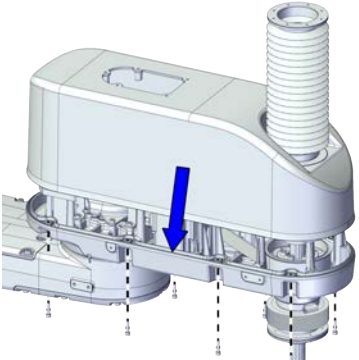


## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*



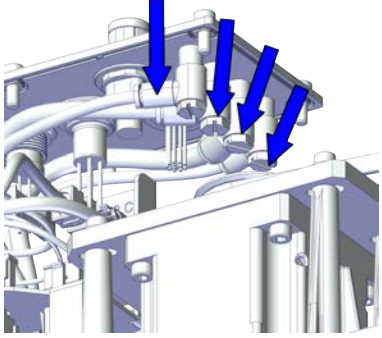
#### Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx210000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

*Continues on next page*



Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

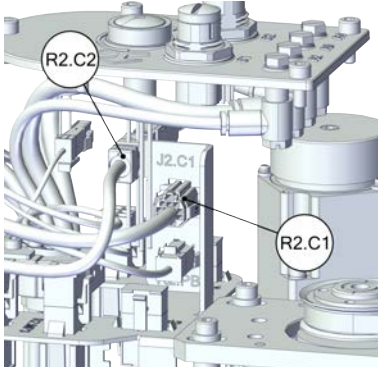



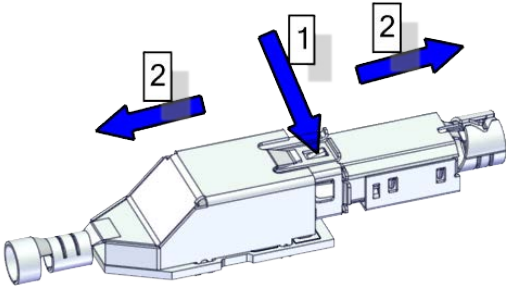

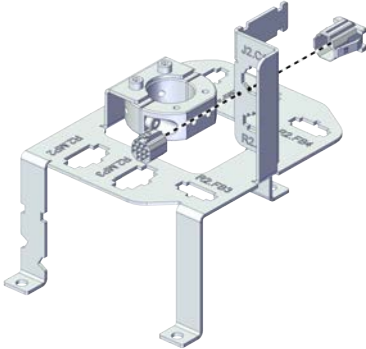
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032

Continues on next page



5 Repair



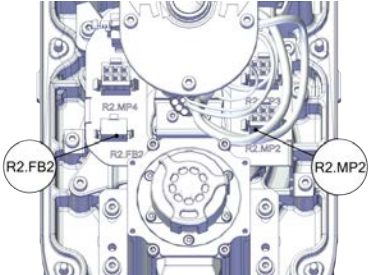

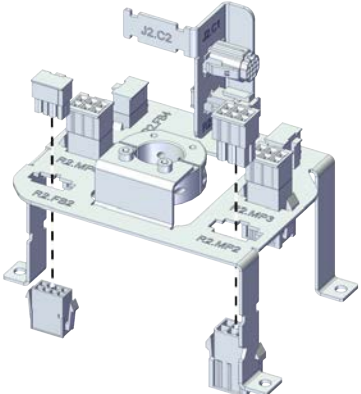
5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm  
Continued

	Action	Note
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C1</li></ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	
6	<b>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</b> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 xx2100001034


Continues on next page



## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 xx2100000934
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000935

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


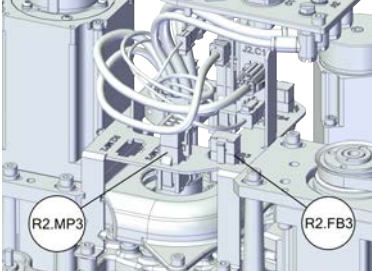

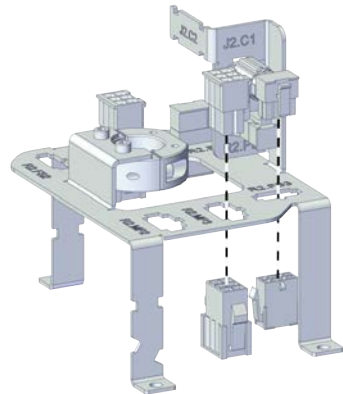
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

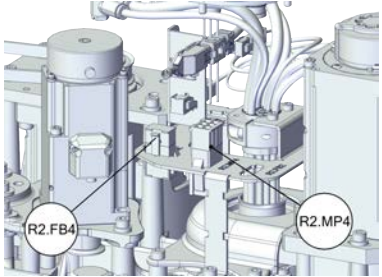

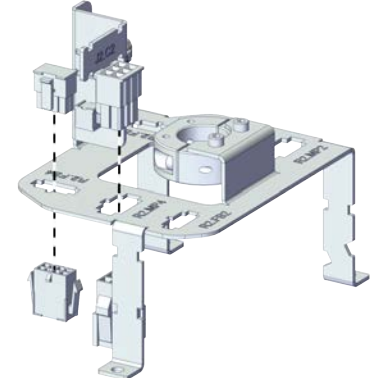
	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 xx2100000936
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000937

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor



	Action	Note
1	<b>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</b> Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket. <div>  <b>Note</b> </div> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>

#### Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b>            Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!            See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

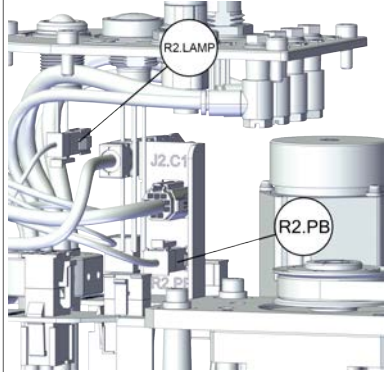

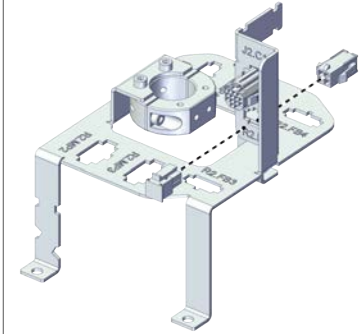
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*




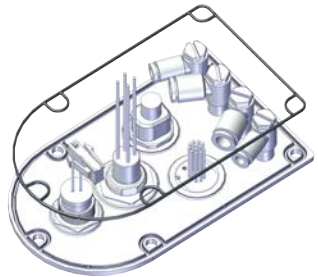
	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

Pull out the process hub




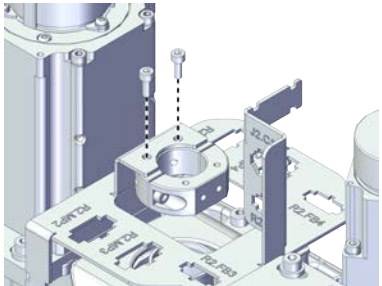
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Take out the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Removing the cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>


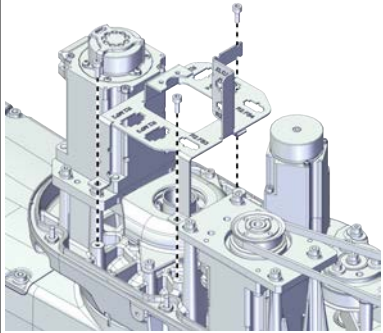
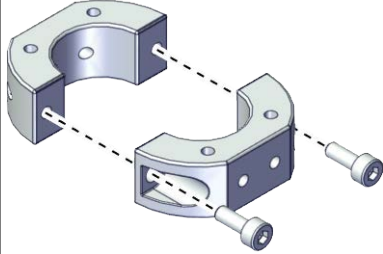
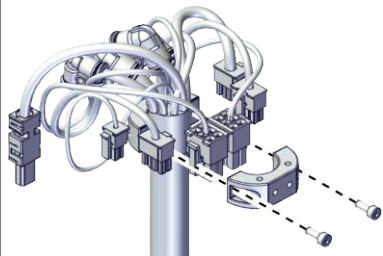
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

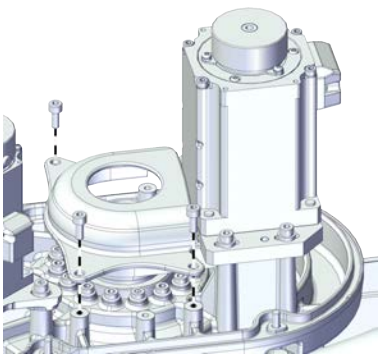
	Action	Note
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>

### Removing the gear-2 pulley protection cover



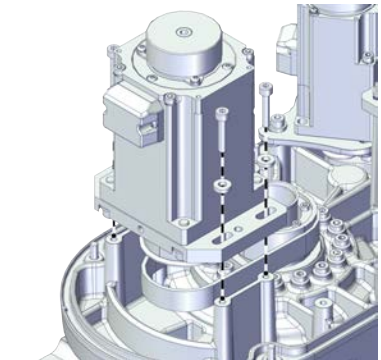

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b>  Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!  See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to release the pulley protection cover.	 <p>xx2100001047</p>

#### Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 <p>xx2100001046</p>
4	Remove the motor.  <b>Tip</b> Move the internal harness out of the way.	

#### Removing the axis-2 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


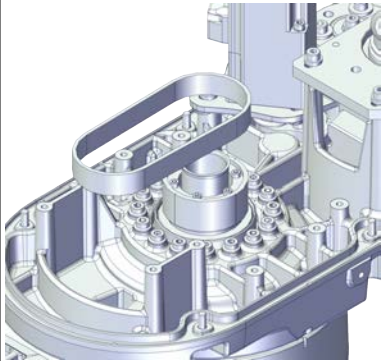
*Continues on next page*





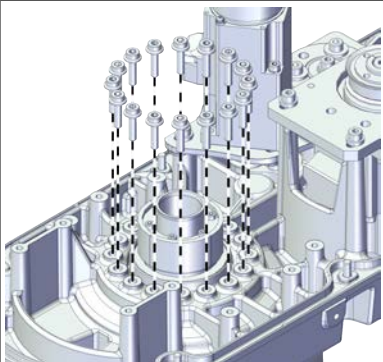
## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

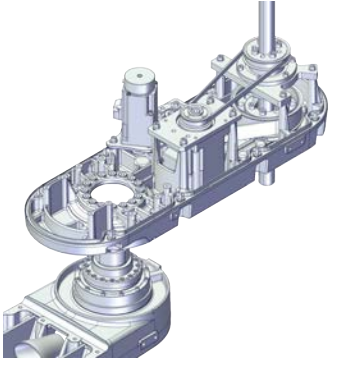
	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the timing belt from the outer arm.	 xx2100001048

### Removing the outer arm assembly



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the axis -2 gear inside the outer arm.	 xx2100001049

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	Remove the outer arm assembly slightly.	 <p>xx2100001050</p>

#### Removing the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a>	

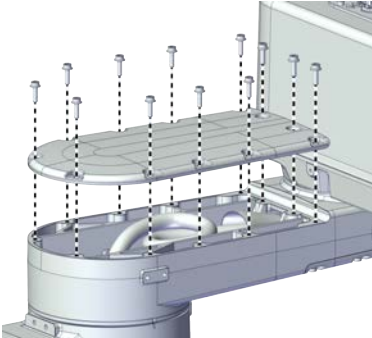
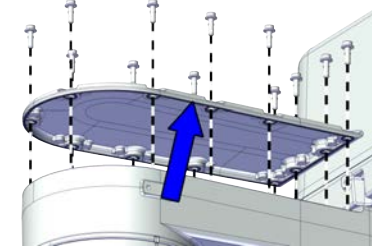


*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*



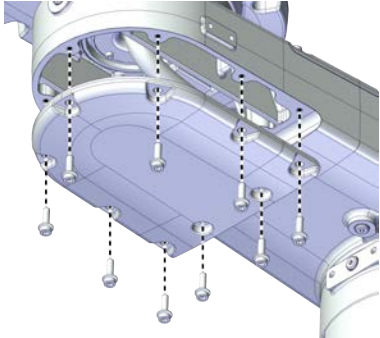
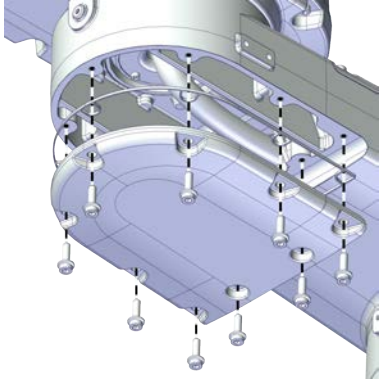
	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the cover and check the gasket.</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>
4	<p>Remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the cover and check the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	

### Removing the axis-2 cover



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i></p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover and check the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000943</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002451</p>

## Removing the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	



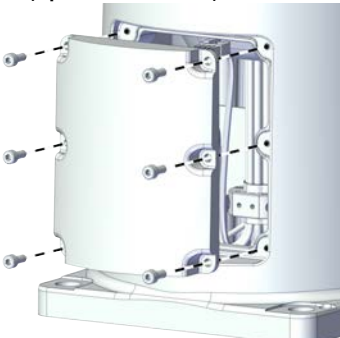


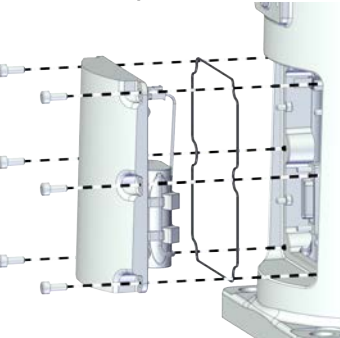
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*




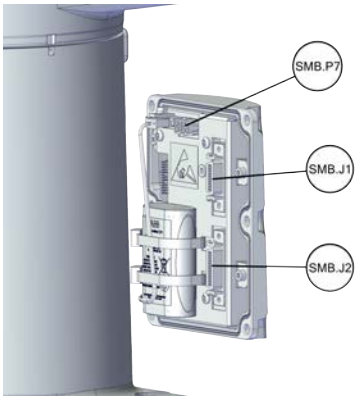
	Action	Note
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the stainless screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
5	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the SMB cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	xx2100000944 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002433

### Disconnecting the SMB cabling



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Cut the strips.	
5	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul>  <b>Tip</b> Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 xx2100000945

## Removing the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
4	Lay down the robot.	



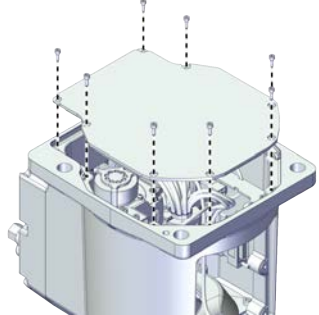
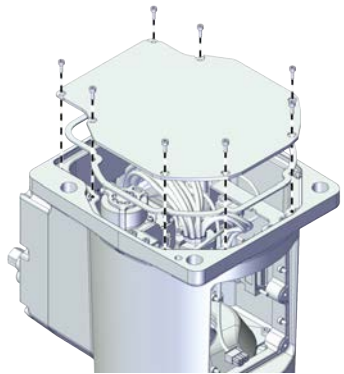
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair



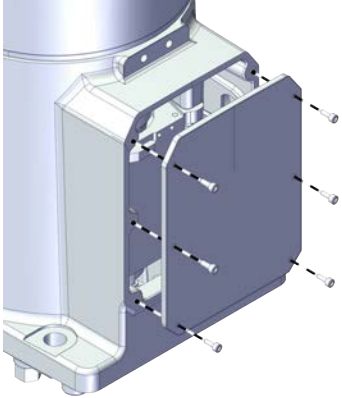
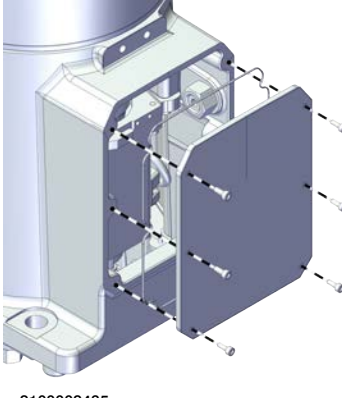
### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*



	Action	Note
5	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
7	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
8	<p>Remove the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001202</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>

## Releasing the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i></p>	

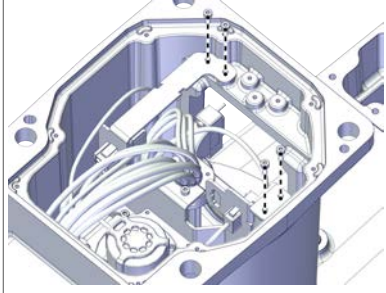
Continues on next page





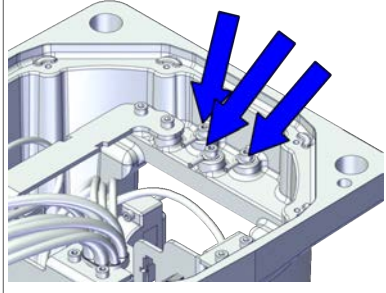
## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm


*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base.	 xx2100000948

#### Disconnecting the grounding cable connectors


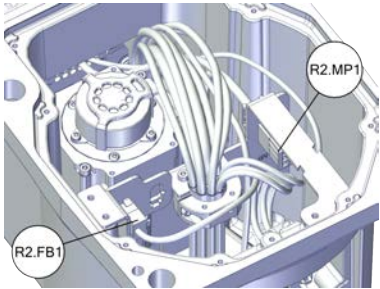

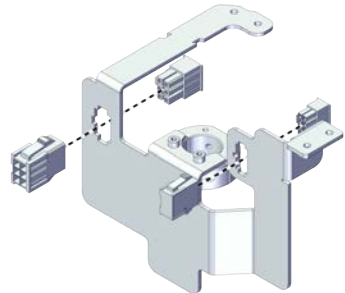
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the three grounding cables from the bracket by unscrew the screws.	 xx2100000947

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul>	 xx2100000949
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b>  The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000950

#### Removing the bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

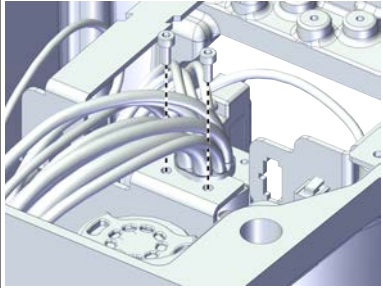
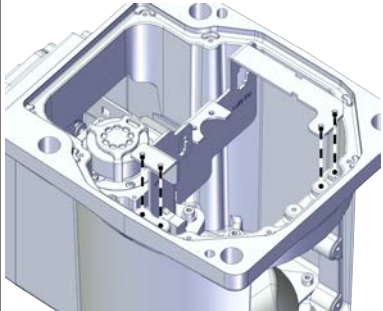
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*



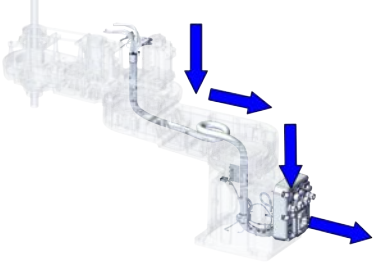
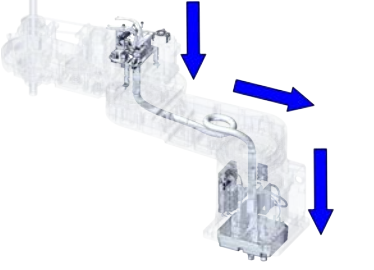
	Action	Note
3	Release the cable ferrule from the bracket.	 xx2100000951
4	Remove the bracket.	 xx2100000952

Removing the main harness from the axis -2 gearbox position



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the outer arm from the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

#### Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	


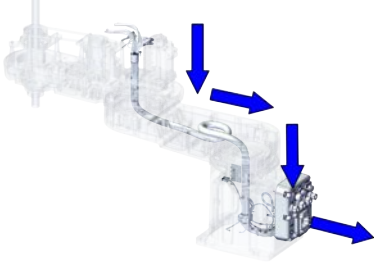
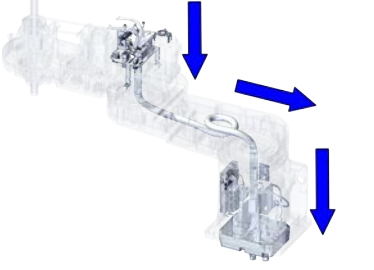
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*



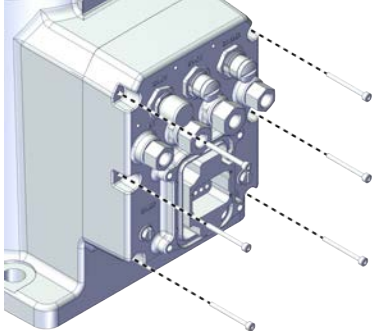
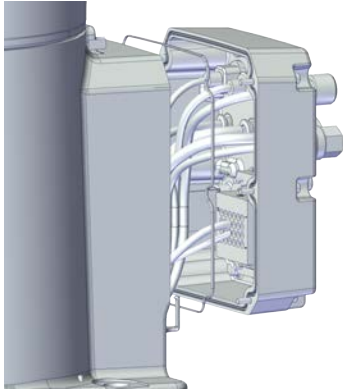
	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

### Removing the main harness

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the main harness.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the main harness.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>




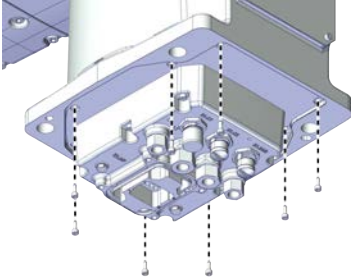
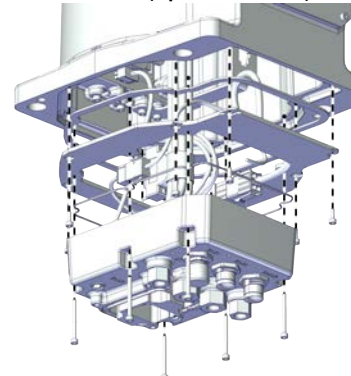
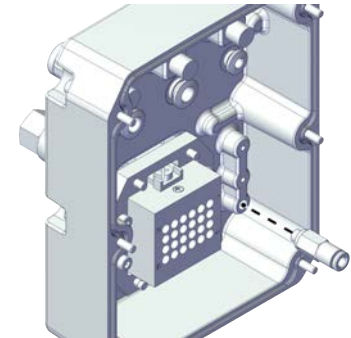
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*


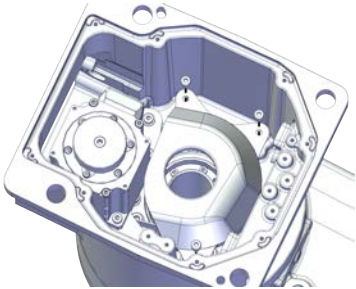
	Action	Note
5	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002437</p>
7	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the one way valve by unscrewing it.</p>	 <p>xx2200000281</p>

#### Removing the pulley protection cover



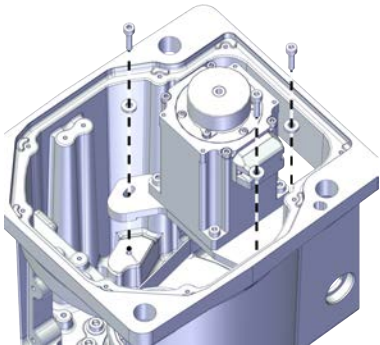
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	 xx2100001037
4	Remove the pulley protection cover.	

## Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001038
4	Remove the motor.	

Continues on next page



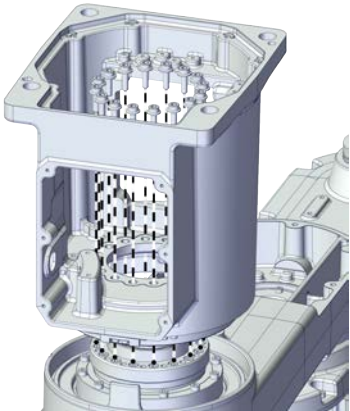


## 5 Repair



### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

#### Removing the base from the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

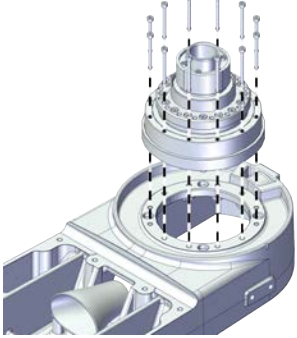


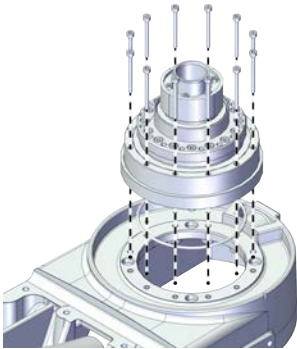
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers on the base to the axis-1 gear unit.	 xx2100001039
4	Remove the base.	

#### Removing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the gear to the inner arm.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001182</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the gear unit and the O-ring through the cable slightly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the O-ring and replace it if needed.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>  <p>xx2100002439</p>
4	Remove the gear unit.	

#### Removing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

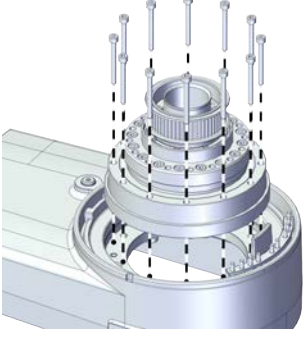


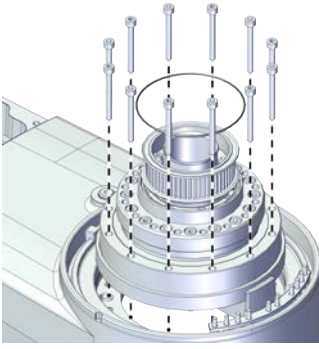
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm



*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the gear to the inner arm.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001130</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the gear unit and the O-ring through the cable slightly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the O-ring and replace it if needed.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>  <p>xx2100002440</p>
4	Remove the gear unit.	

#### Refitting the inner arm




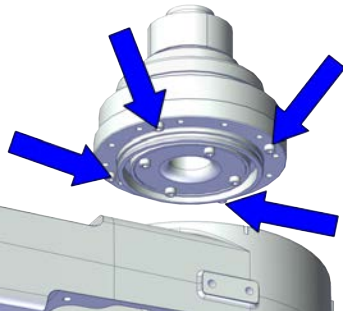
Use these procedures to refit the inner arm.

#### Refitting the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the gear unit according to the location screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the gear unit and the O-ring according to the location pin.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the O-ring and replace it if needed.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".</p>	 xx2100001183

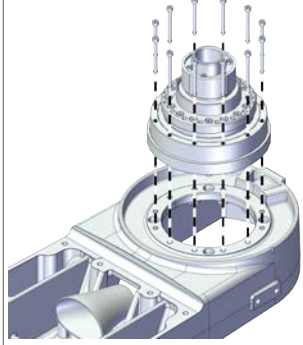
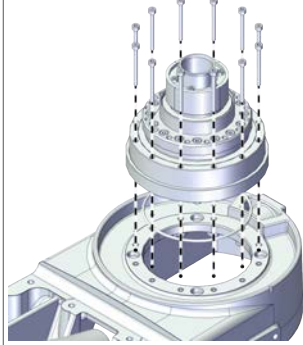
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*





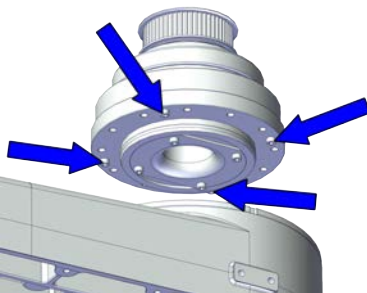
	Action	Note
4	Refit the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001182</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002439</p>

### Refitting the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the gear unit according to the location screws through the cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the gear unit and the O-ring according to the location pin through the cable.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the O-ring and replace it if needed.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	 <p>xx2100001131</p>

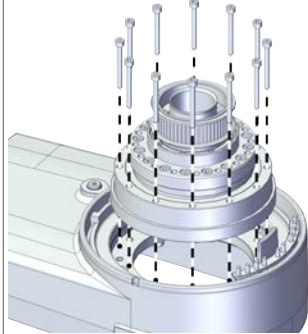
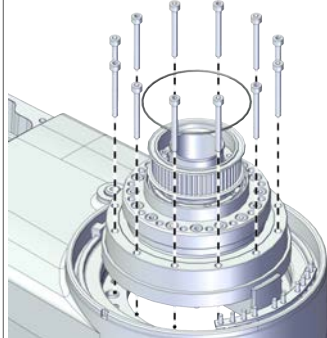
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Refit the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x35 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001130</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002440</p>

### Refitting the base

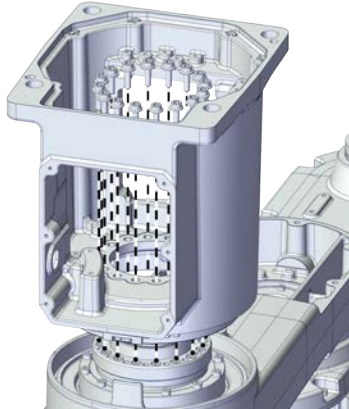
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*


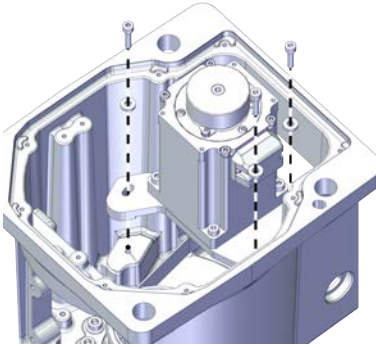


### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the base to the axis-1 gearbox as the illustration.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6.7 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001039</p>
3	Refit the screws.	

#### Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Put the timing belt into the pulley on the gear.	
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001038</p> <p>Timing belt A1: 3HAC070449-001</p>
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	


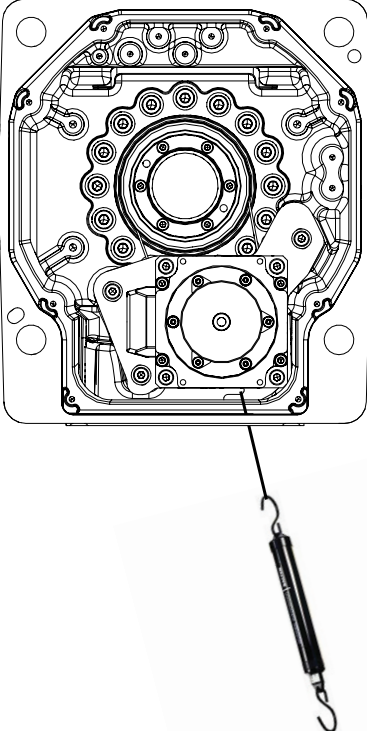
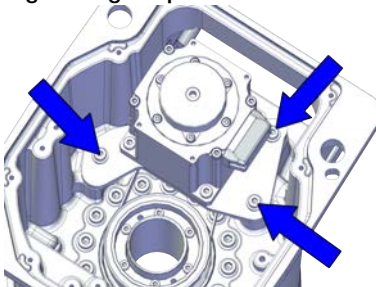
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm



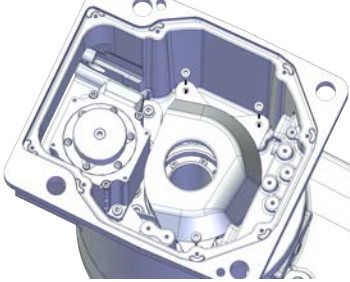
*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 63-89 N New belt: 90-130 N</p>  <p>xx2100001043</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	<p>Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001044</p>
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 209-249 Hz New belt: 250-370 Hz</p>
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	


*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the pulley protection cover.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001037
4	Secure the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	

## Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

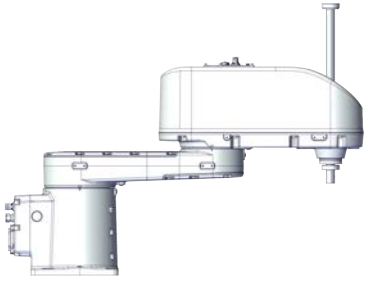



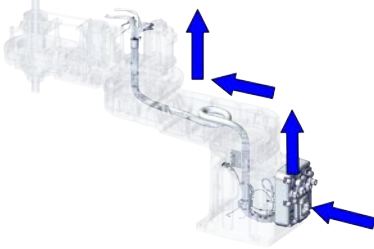
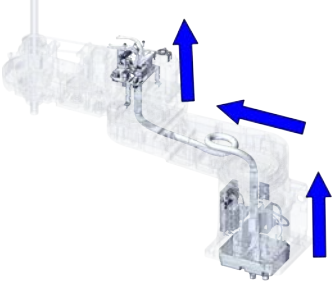
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*



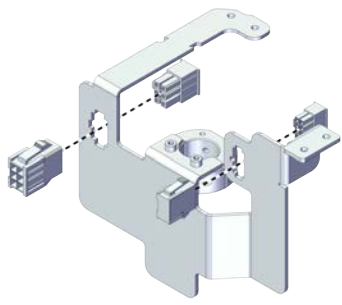

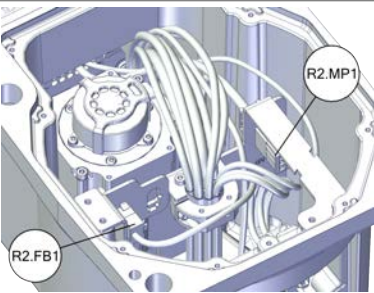

	Action	Note
2	Make sure that the robot is at zero position.	 xx2100000930
3	<p>Insert the internal harness into the inner arm through the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  xx2100000955 <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  xx2100001206

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000950</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000949</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Reconnecting the grounding cable connectors

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

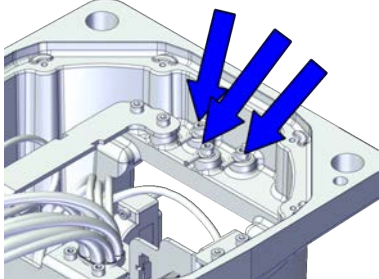

Continues on next page






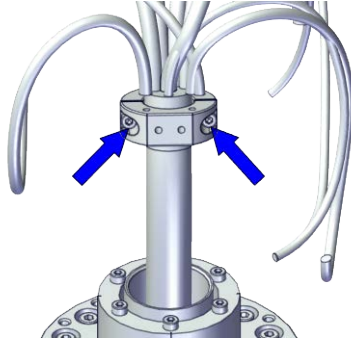
## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Secure the three grounding cables to the bracket with the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000947</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	





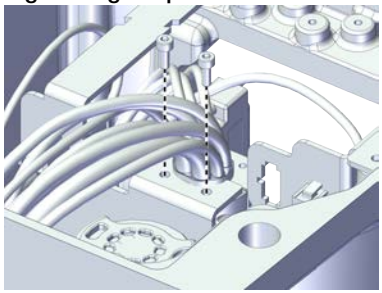
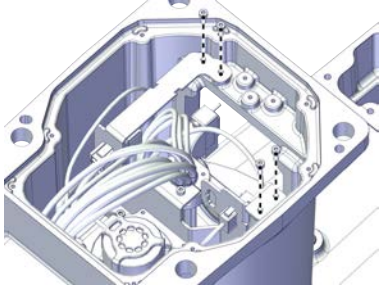
### Refitting the cable ferrule in the base

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the cable ferrule to the cable and secure it with the screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The cable ferrule should be refitted at the position Where the tape is wrapped.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002900</p>

Continues on next page



## Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.  Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.   <b>Tip</b> Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100000951
4	Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100000948



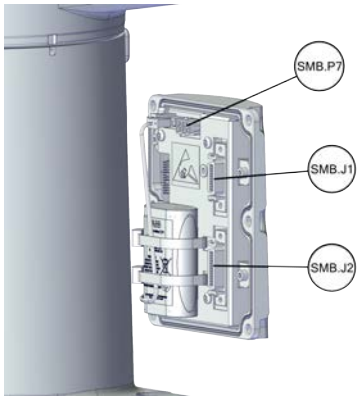
Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm  
Continued

Refitting the SMB cover



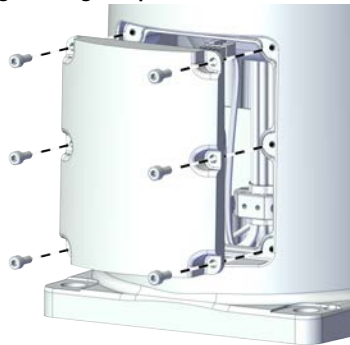
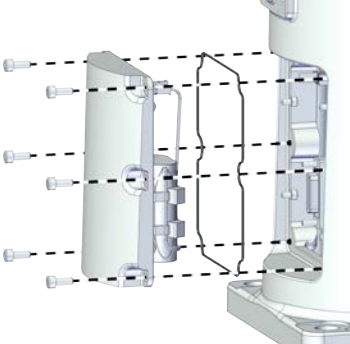
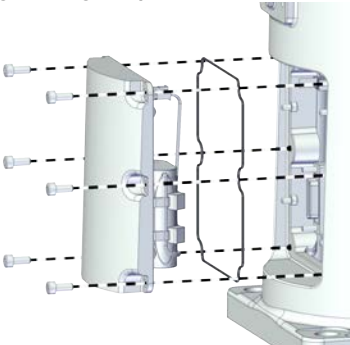
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SMB.P7</li><li>• SMB.J1</li><li>• SMB.J2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

Continues on next page



### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the SMB cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100000944</p>
4	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Stainless Screw Hexagon Socket Head Cap, Clean Room 3HAC075438-001 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p>


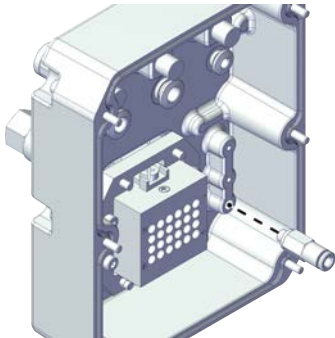
*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm  
Continued

Refitting the main harness

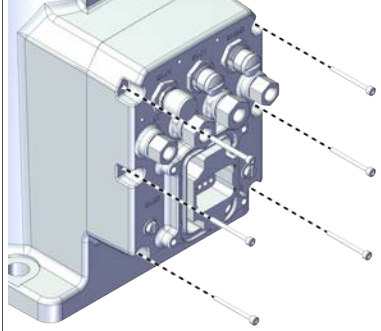
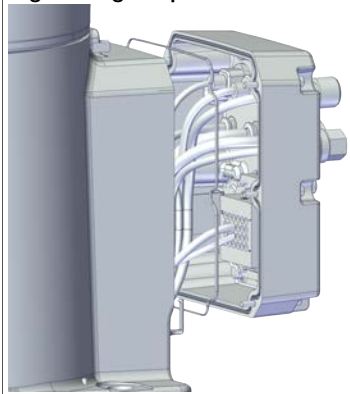
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the one way valve by screwing it into the main harness assembly.</p>	 xx2200000281

Continues on next page



## 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Secure with the screws.	 <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>


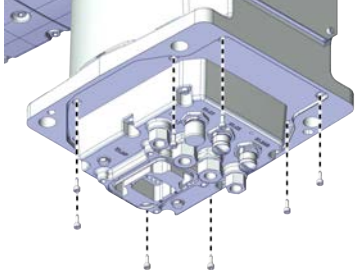
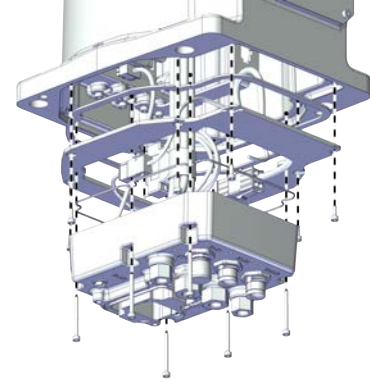
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
6	Secure with the screws.	<p></p> <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p></p> <p>xx2100002437</p>

### Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*







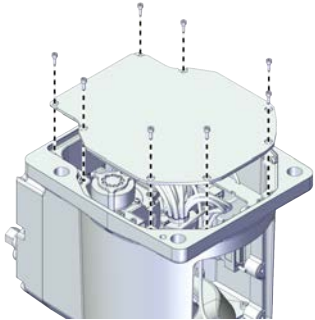
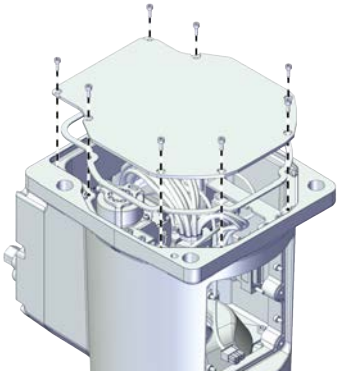
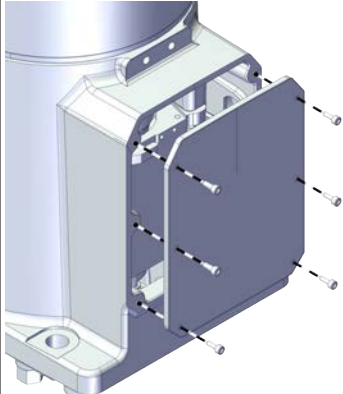
	Action	Note
2	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	



## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

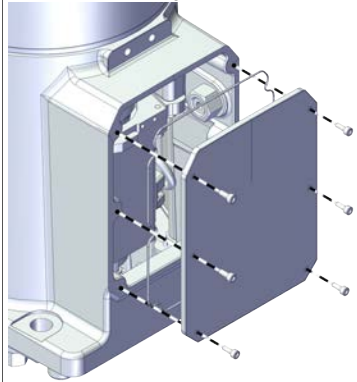
	Action	Note
3	<p>For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate before refitting the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate before refitting the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For rear outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>
4	<p>Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001202</p>

Continues on next page





### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
		<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>
5	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
6	Secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Steel</p> <p>Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 56 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>

#### Refitting the outer arm to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>	


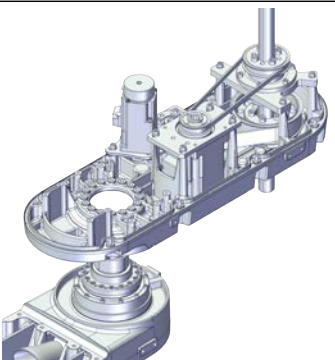

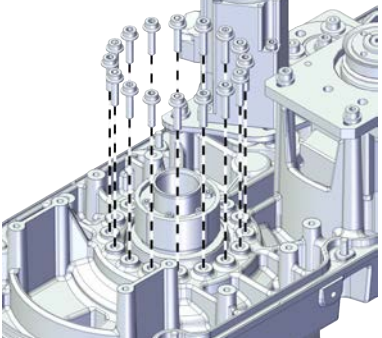
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

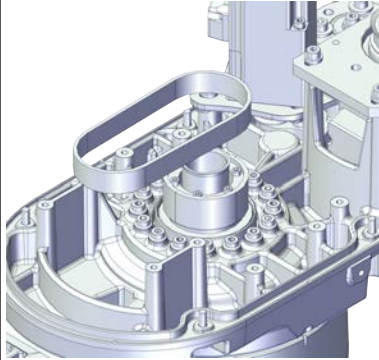
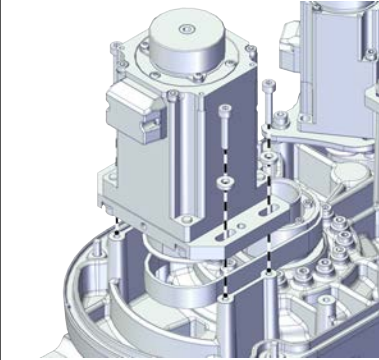
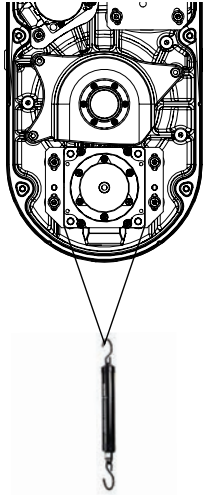
	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the outer arm to the axis-2 gear unit on the inner arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".</p>	 <p>xx2100001050</p>
4	<p>Refit the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The two screw holes under the axis-2 belt location are left empty.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001049</p>

### Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	Refit the axis-2 timing belt onto the pulley on the axis-2 gearbox.	 xx2100001048
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	 xx2100001046 Timing belt A2: 3HAC061861-001
5	Hang a strap to the motor.	
6	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range. <div></div> <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction. <div></div> <b>Tip</b> If the ball screw will interfere with the handheld dynamometer, adjust the ball screw manually.	Used belt: 49-69 N New belt: 70-100 N  xx2100001125

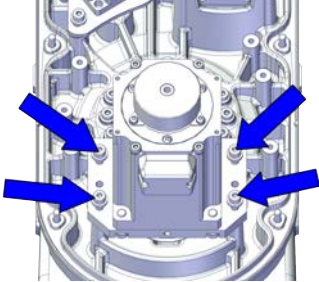
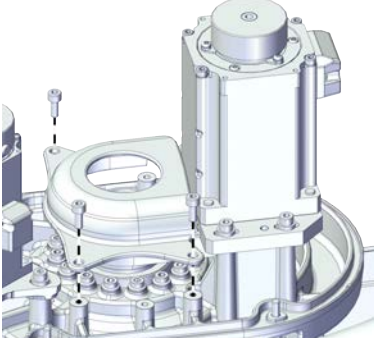
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

	Action	Note
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001176
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 218-259 Hz New belt: 260-390 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	
10	Refit the pulley protection cover and secure with screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001047

Inserting the main harness through the axis -2 gearbox position


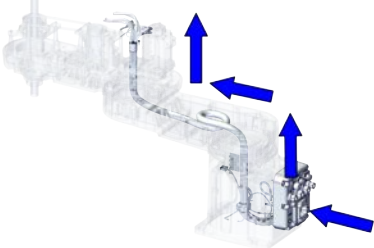
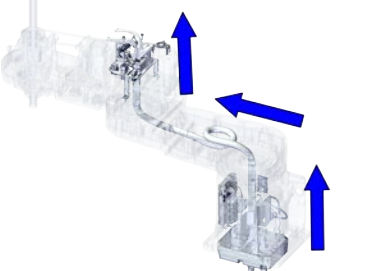
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

Continues on next page




## 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the internal harness into the outer arm through the plastic protection tube and the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>
3	Secure the R2.MP3 and R2.MP4 with cable straps.	

## Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	




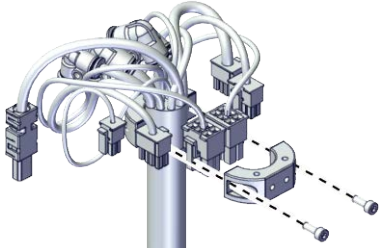


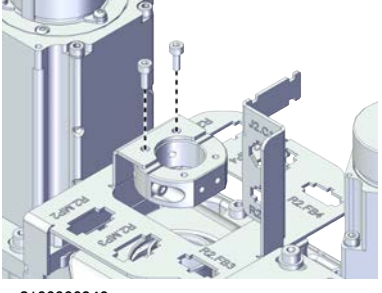


*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm




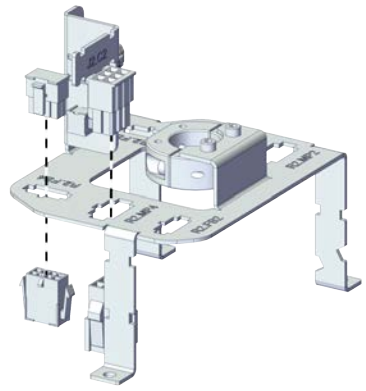

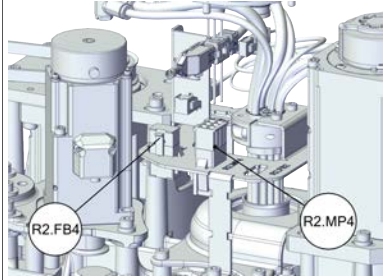

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

Continues on next page



### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




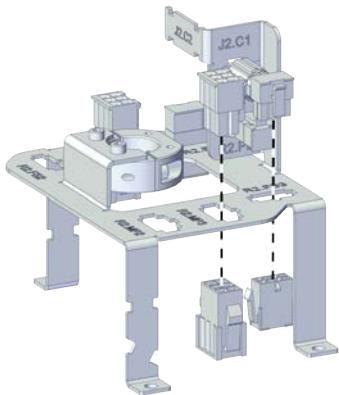

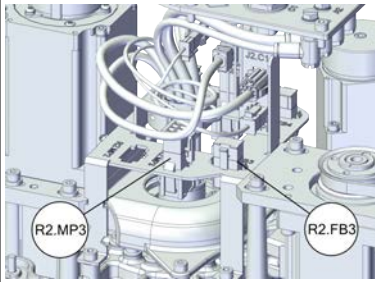



## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*




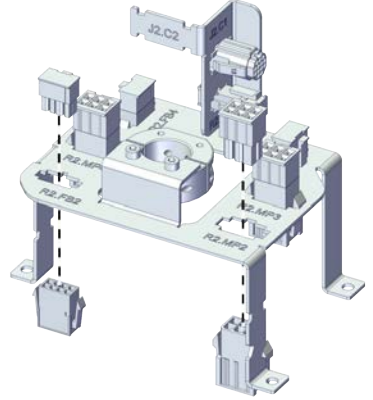

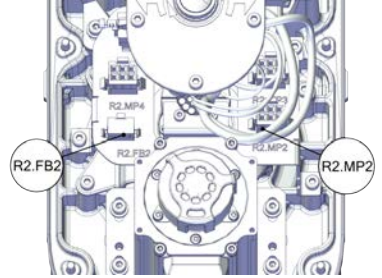

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




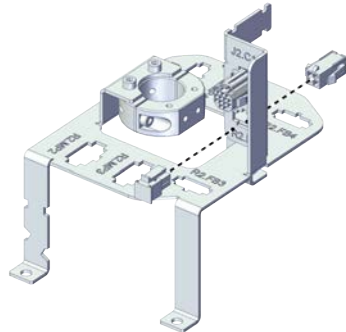

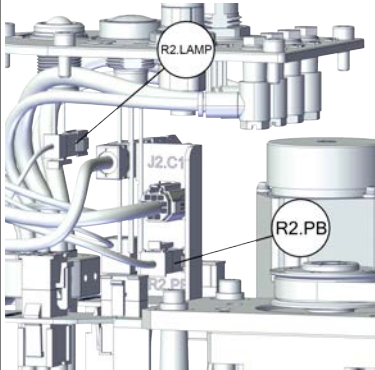



## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*



#### Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



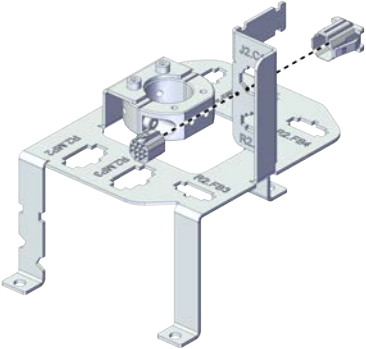

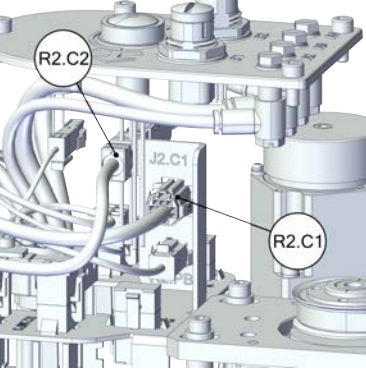


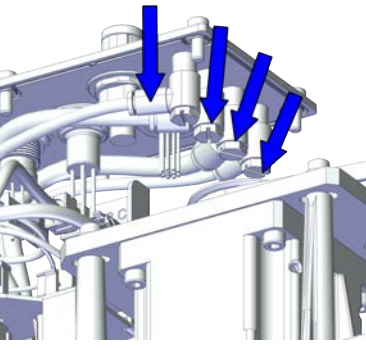
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued




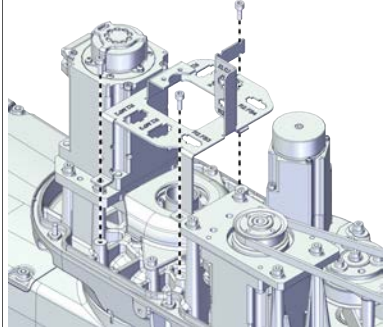
	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>

Continues on next page




	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




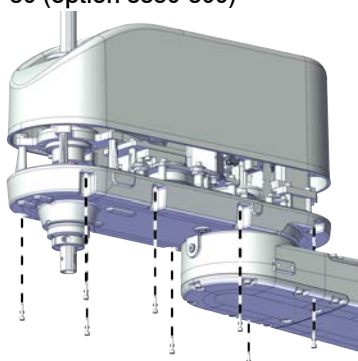
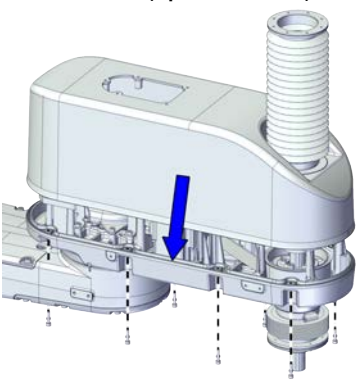
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

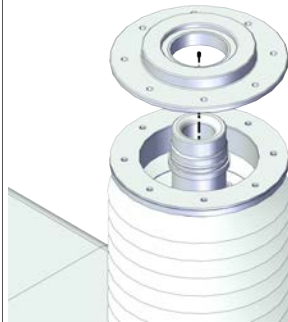
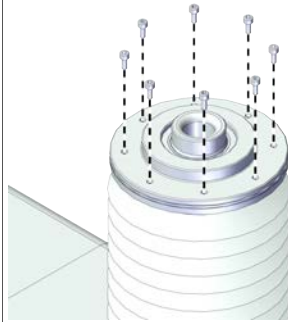


For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

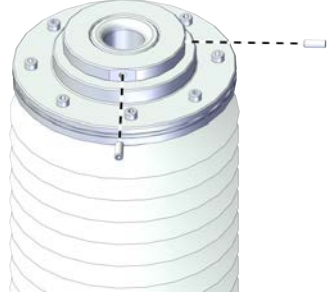
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*




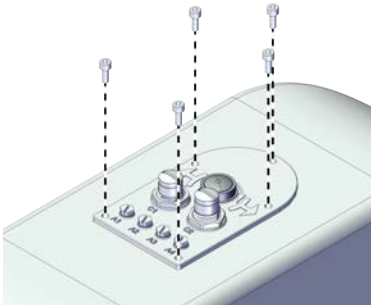
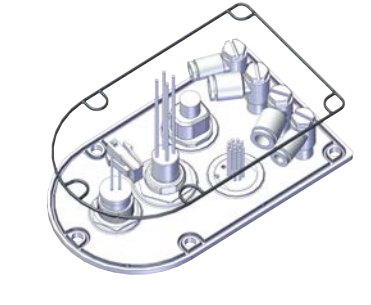
	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.	Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002398

#### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	



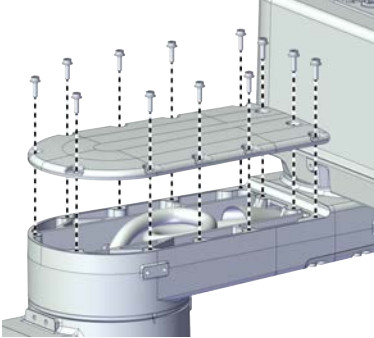
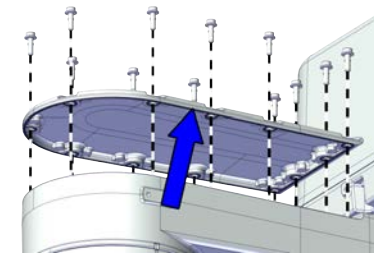
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued




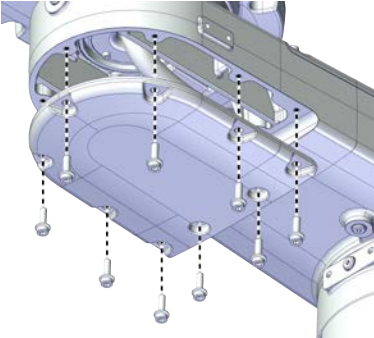
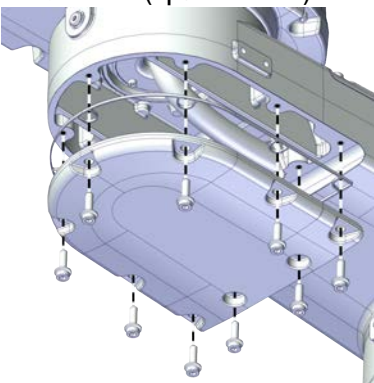
	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p>  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	<p>For 450 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (10 pcs)</p> <p>For 550 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (12 pcs)</p> <p>For 650 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>
3	Refit the screws.	 <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>

#### Refitting the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the cover.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (9 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm $\pm$ 3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2100000943 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002451
4	Refit the screws.	

Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

*Continued*

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	

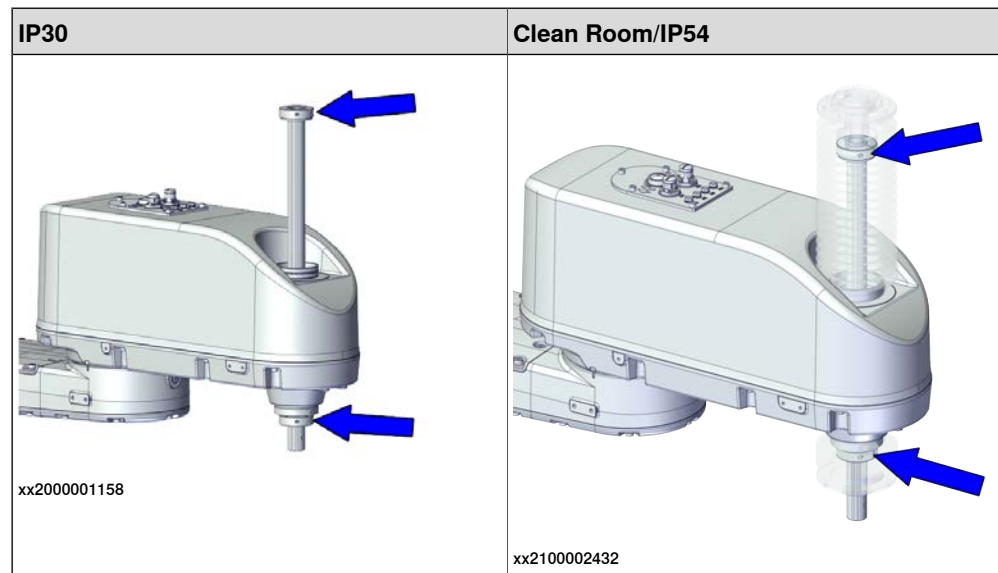


## 5.6 Outer arm

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

#### Location of the mechanical stoppers

The mechanical stoppers are located as shown in the figure.



#### CAUTION

For the robots with protection type Clean Room and protection class IP54, the mechanical stops are inside the bellows. If needed, remove the bellows to inspect the ball screw spline unit.

For the details on removing the bellows, refer to [Replacing the bellows](#).

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Mechanical-Stop top, D20	3HAC073068-001	With bolt
Mechanical-Stop bottom, D20	3HAC073069-001	With bolt

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the upper mechanical stopper

Use these procedures to remove the upper mechanical stopper.



#### Preparations before removing the upper mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	



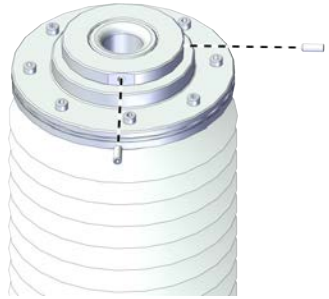
*Continues on next page*



5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper  
Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

## Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398


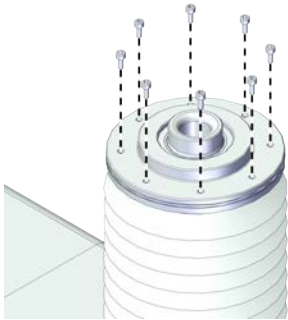
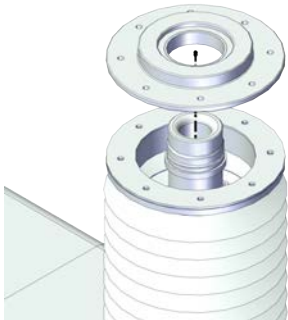
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the top cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>


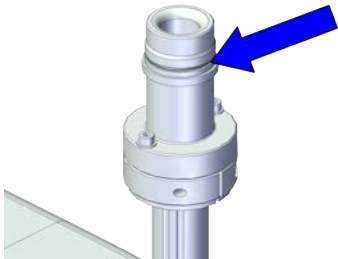

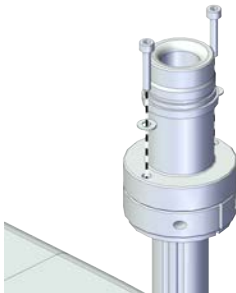


### Removing the extension shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	 <p><b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper  
Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the O-ring from the upper housing.	 xx2100002419
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the attachment screws.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Clean the upper housing from the glue if it will be reused.	 xx2100002420
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the extension shaft from the mechanical stopper.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Check the gasket for the extension shaft and replace it if needed.	 xx2100002421

Continues on next page



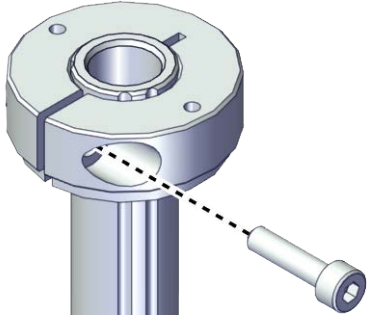


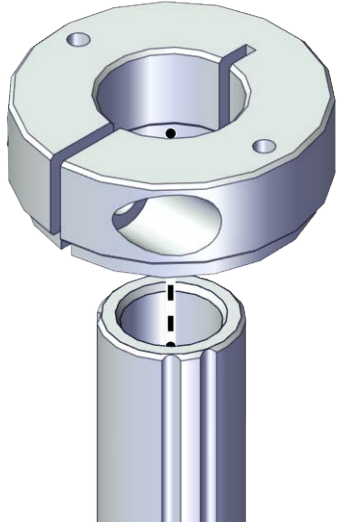


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*

#### Removing the upper mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screw.	 xx1800002858
4	Remove the mechanical stopper.  <b>Tip</b> Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.  <b>CAUTION</b> If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 xx1800002859


#### Refitting the upper mechanical stopper

Use these procedures to refit the upper mechanical stopper.

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the upper mechanical stopper




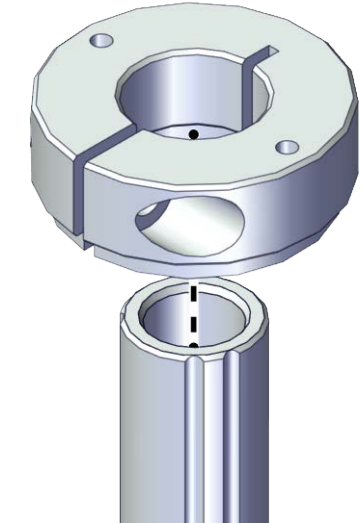
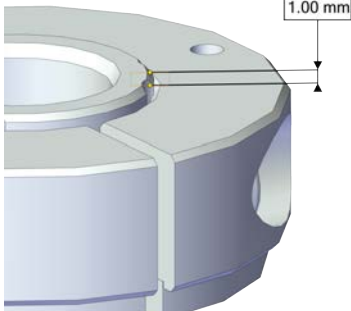
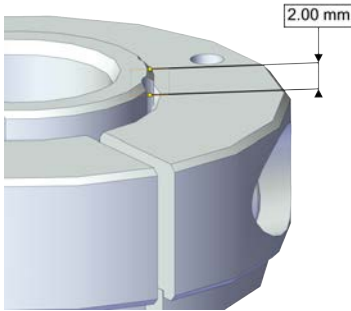
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper  
Continued

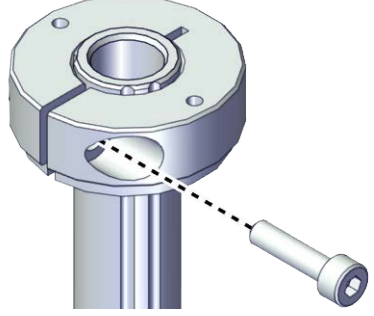
Action	Note
<div>2</div> <div>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 1 mm position to the upper of the ball screw.</div> <div><div></div><div><b>Note</b>  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 2 mm position to the upper of the ball screw.</div></div> <div><div></div><div><b>Tip</b>  Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</div></div> <div><div></div><div><b>CAUTION</b>  If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</div></div>	<div></div> <div>xx1800002859</div> <div><b>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</b></div> <div></div> <div>xx1900002012</div> <div><b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b></div> <div></div> <div>xx1900002011</div>

Continues on next page






### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002858</p>

#### Refitting the extension shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the extension shaft to the ball screw on the upper side of the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the extension shaft and replace it if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100002421</p>

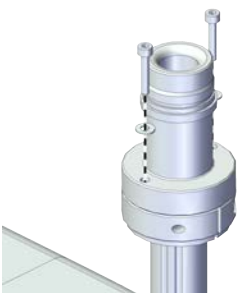

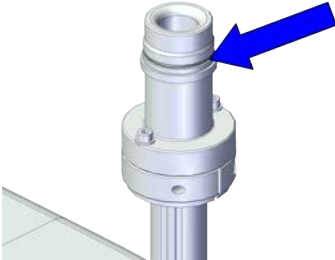
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Secure the extension shaft to the mechanical stopper with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002420</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Insert the O-ring to the extension shaft.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Replace the o-ring if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100002419</p>

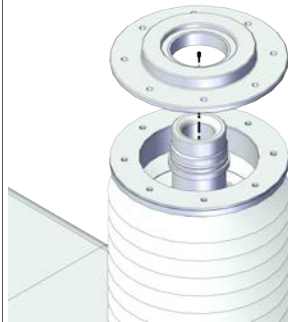
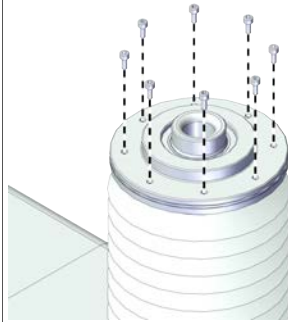


### Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

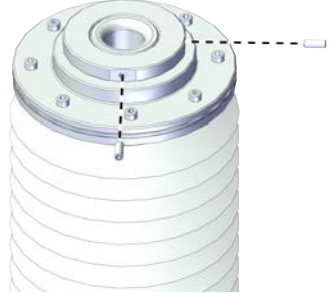
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the lower mechanical stopper

Use these procedures to remove the lower mechanical stopper.



#### Preparations before removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Move the ball screw to lower position.	



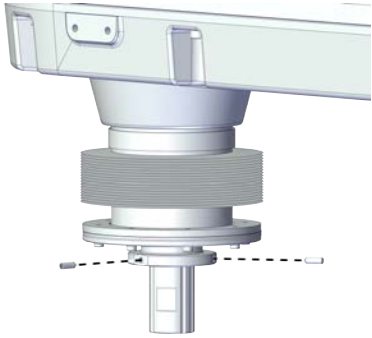
*Continues on next page*



5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper  
Continued

	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
4	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

## Removing the lower cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002404


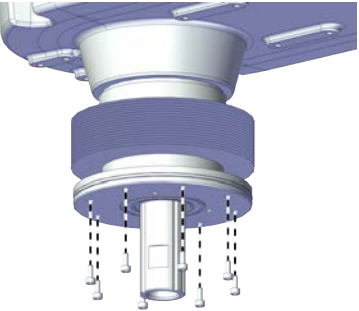
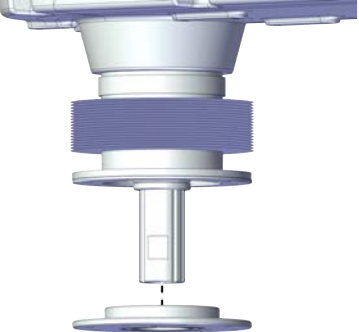
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the lower cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002405</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002406</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>


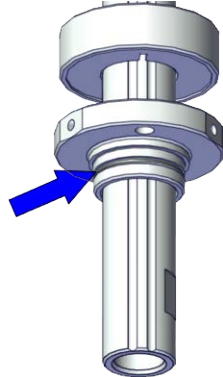
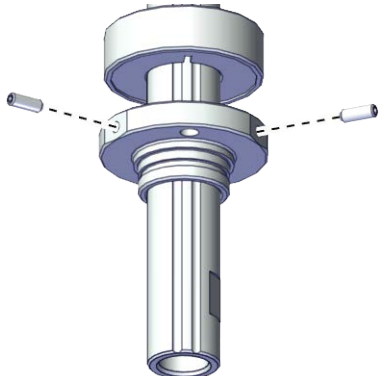

#### Removing the shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	 <p><b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


*Continues on next page*



5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper  
Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the O-ring from the lower housing.	 xx1900001615
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the attachment screws.	 xx1900001616
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the shaft from the mechanical stopper.  <b>Note</b> The shaft is glued to the ball screw. Be careful with the glue when removing the shaft.	

## Removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


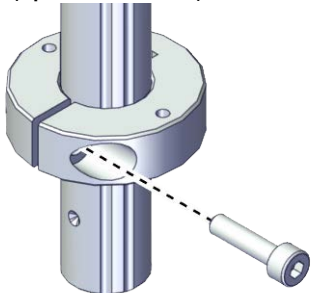
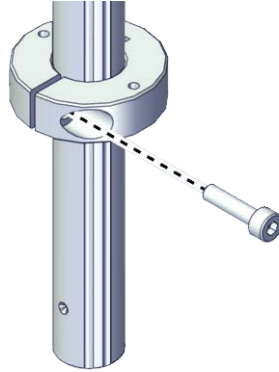

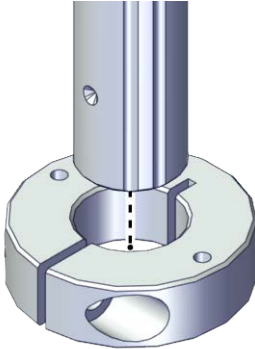
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screw.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1800002860</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900001642</p>
4	Remove the mechanical stopper.  <b>CAUTION</b> If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 <p>xx1800002861</p>


*Continues on next page*



**Refitting the lower mechanical stopper**

Use these procedures to refit the lower mechanical stopper.

**Refitting the mechanical stopper**

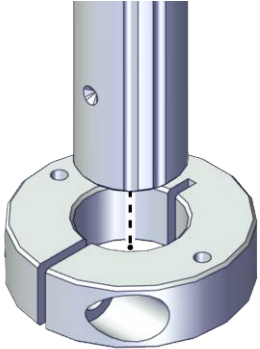
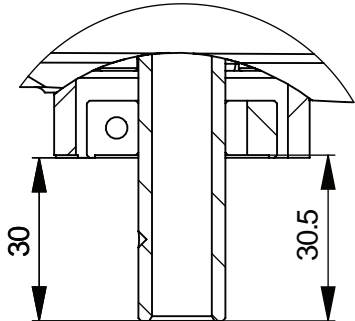
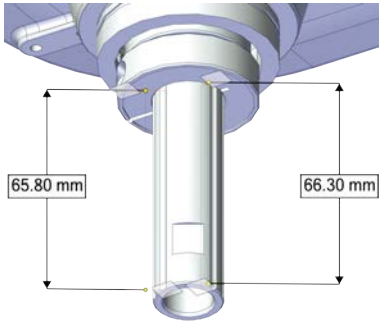
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

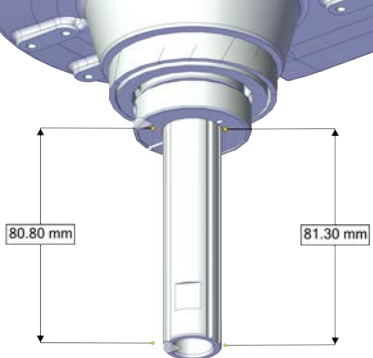
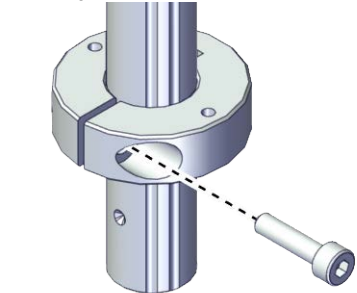
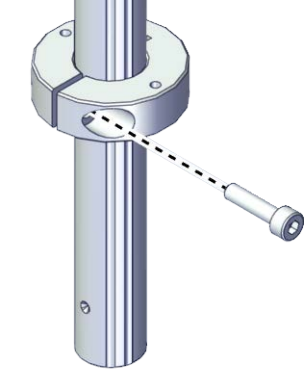
5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper  
Continued

Action	Note
<div>2</div> <div><div><div></div><div>Note</div></div><div>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) For 180 mm ball screw, refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 65.8 mm position to the lower of the ball screw. For 300 mm ball screw, refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 80.8 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</div><div><div></div><div>Tip</div></div><div>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</div><div><div></div><div>CAUTION</div></div><div>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</div><div><div></div><div>Note</div></div><div>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper. The flat side is on the upper side.</div></div>	<div></div> <div>xx1800002861</div> <div>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</div> <div></div> <div>xx1900000144</div> <div>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) For 180 mm ball screw</div> <div></div> <div>xx2100002425</div> <div>For 300 mm ball screw</div>

Continues on next page



### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper *Continued*

	Action	Note
		 <p>xx2100002426</p>
3	Refit the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 6.5 Nm For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1800002860</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900001642</p>

*Continues on next page*


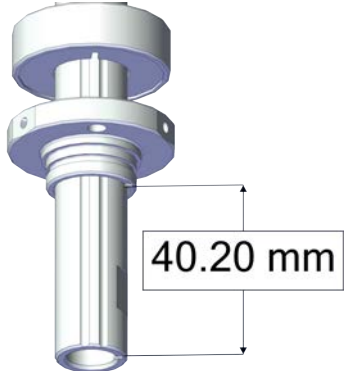
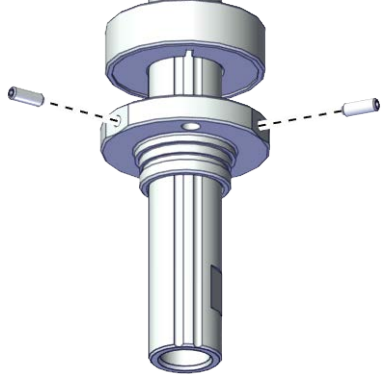


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

*Continued*


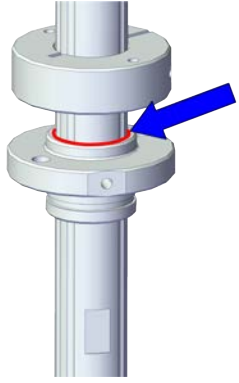

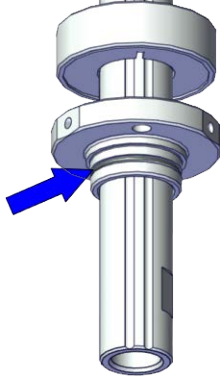
#### Refitting the shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the shaft to the ball screw at 40.2 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx1900001617</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Secure the shaft to the ball screw with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1900001616</p>


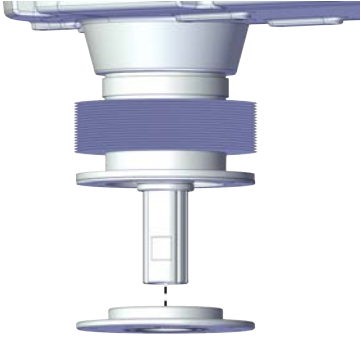
*Continues on next page*



5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper  
Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Apply the glue to the upper contacted zone between the shaft and the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Fulfill the gaps on the ball screw in this contacted zone to make a sealing structure.</p>	 <p>xx1900001805</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Insert the O-ring to the shaft.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Replace the o-ring if needed.</p>	 <p>xx1900001615</p>

## Refitting the lower cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>

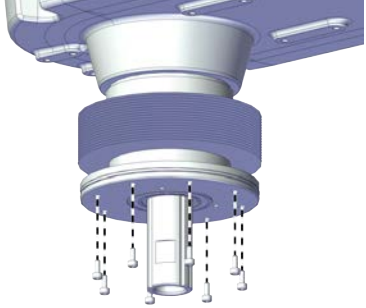
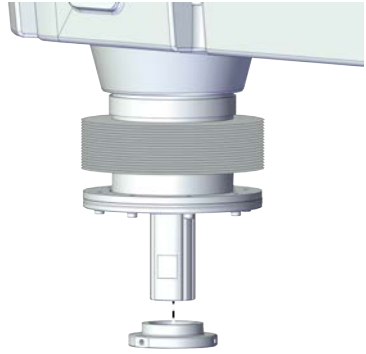
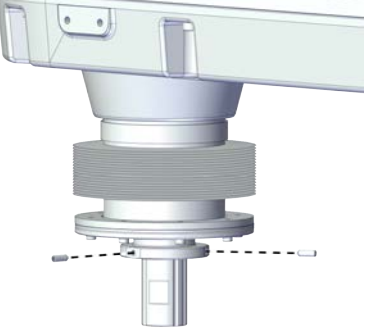
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper



*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002406</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the lower cover to the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002405</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002404</p>

*Continues on next page*



## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	



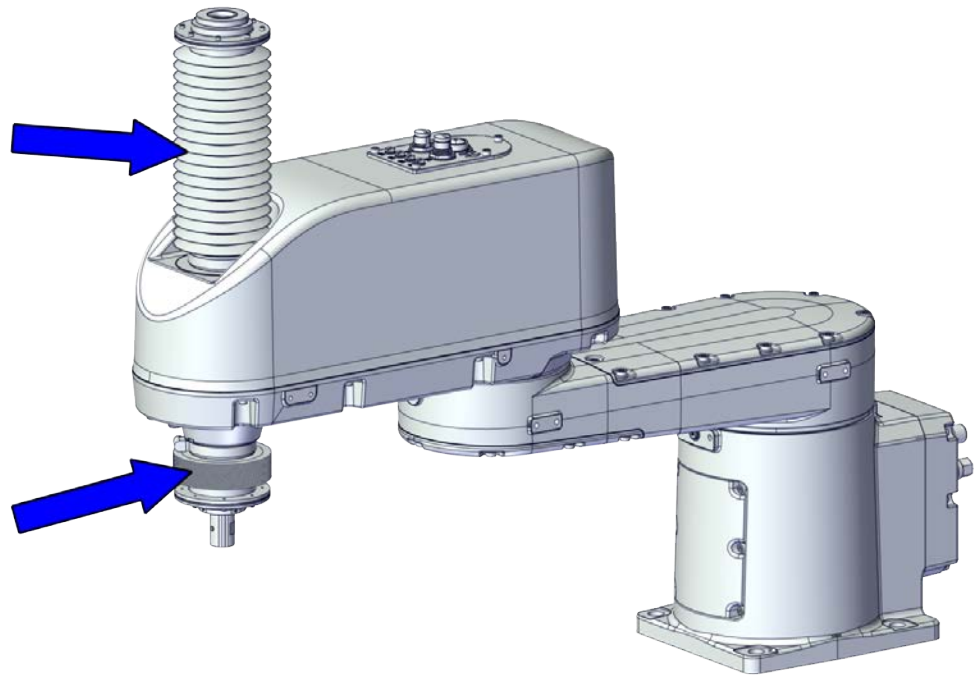
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows

### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows

#### Location of the bellows

The bellows are located as shown in the figure.



xx2100002397

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Bellow 140	3HAC073494-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Below, Long stroke	3HAC073495-001	Used with protection type Clean Room.
Bellow Gasket	3HAC071547-001	Replace if damaged.
Top Cover	3HAC073487-001	Replace if damaged.
Lower Cover	3HAC073491-001	Replace if damaged.
Extension shaft	3HAC073489-001	Replace if damaged.
Extension shaft, Long stroke	3HAC073492-001	Replace if damaged.
Gasket	3HAC066658-001	Used with protection class IP54.
Shaft	3HAC073490-001	Replace if damaged.

*Continues on next page*



Spare part	Article number	Note
O-ring	3HAC061327-023	Replace if damaged.
Flange with bearing	3HAC081473-001	Replace if damaged.

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1
Locking liquid	-	Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)
Sealing compound	3HAC026759-003	Sikaflex 521FC Color white. For robots with protection class IP54

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows



*Continued*

Action	Note
<p><b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b></p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a>.</p>
<p><b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b></p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	


#### Removing the upper bellow parts

Use these procedures to remove the upper bellow parts.

#### Preparations before removing the upper bellow parts


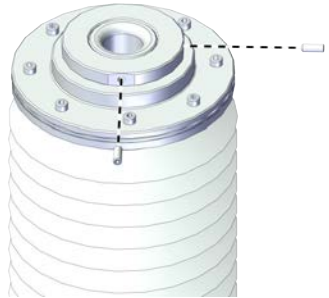

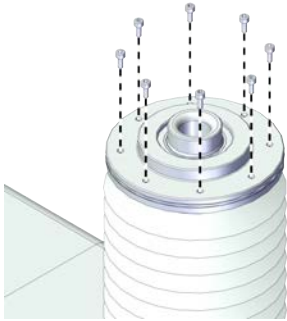
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	 <b>DANGER</b>  Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

#### Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

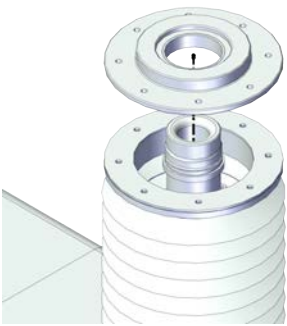
Continues on next page





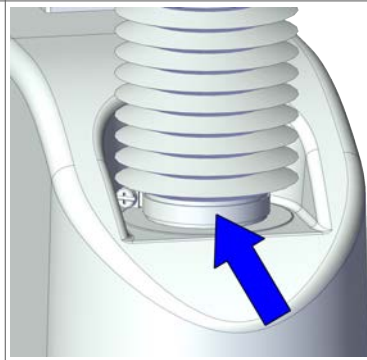
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows

*Continued*



	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the upper bellow

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!  See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loosen the lower bellow clamp by loosening the screw and pull the clamp apart slightly.</p>	 <p>xx2100002400</p>

*Continues on next page*


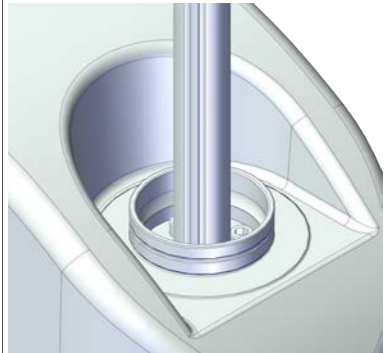


	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the bellow from the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Clean the outer arm casting cover from the glue if it will be reused.</p>	
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Take out the released the bellow.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Clean the bellow from the glue if it will be reused.</p>	

**Refitting the upper bellow parts**

Use these procedures to refit the upper bellow parts.

**Refitting the upper bellow to outer arm**

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Apply the glue to the outer arm.</p>	 <p>xx2100002403</p>


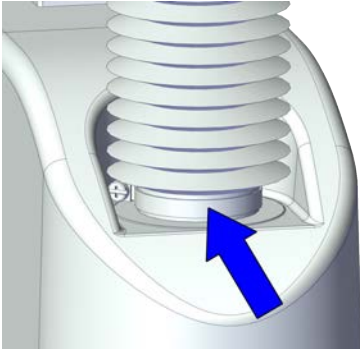

Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the bellow to the extension shaft.	
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Pull the lower end of the bellow to the outer arm.   <b>Tip</b>  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Hold the bellow for a little while until it's attached to the housing.	Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm $\pm$ 10%   xx2100002400
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Secure them with the clamp.   <b>Tip</b>  The opening part of the clamp should be in the opposite position to the gap on the bellow gasket.	

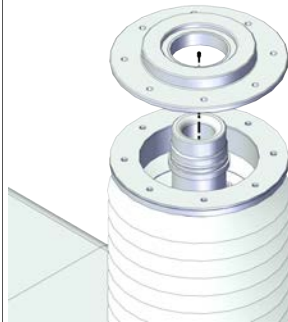
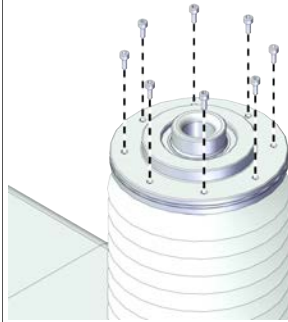


### Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b>  After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

*Continues on next page*



### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows *Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

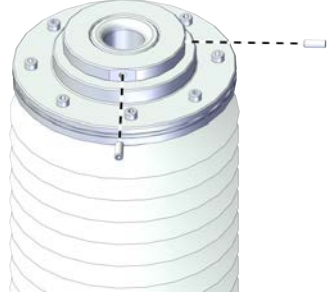
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.	Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002398

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	

#### Removing the lower bellow parts



Use these procedures to remove the lower bellow parts.

#### Preparations before removing the lower bellow parts



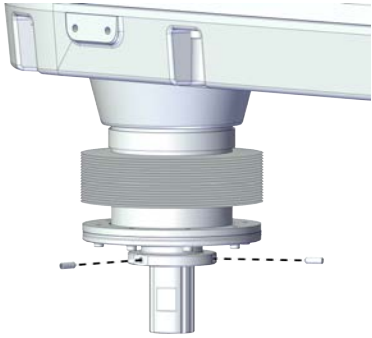
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

#### Removing the lower cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002404


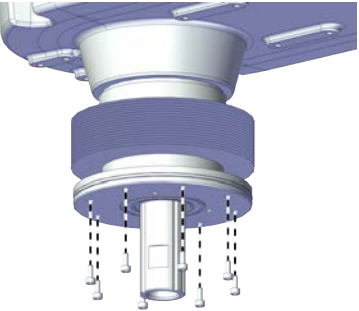
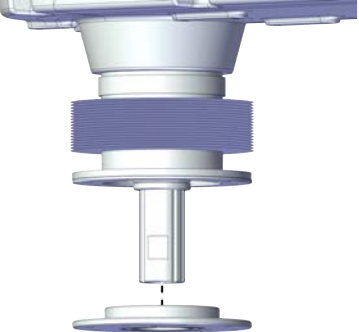
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows

*Continued*


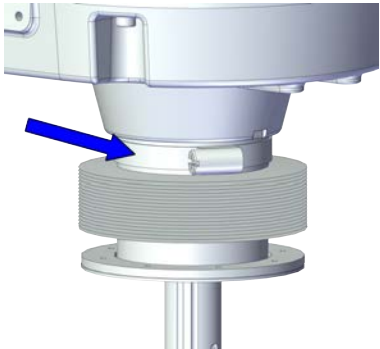



	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the lower cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002405</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002406</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>

#### Removing the lower bellow

	Action	Note
1	 <p><b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loosen the upper bellow clamp by loosening the screw and pull the clamp apart slightly.	 xx2100002408
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the bellow from the outer arm.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Clean the bellow from the glue if it will be reused.	
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Remove the bellow gasket from the bellow.  <b>Note</b> Clean the bellow gasket from the glue if it will be reused.  <b>Note</b> Be careful when removing the bellow gaskets. If any broken, replace it.	

### Refitting the lower bellow parts

Use these procedures to refit the lower bellow parts.

Continues on next page


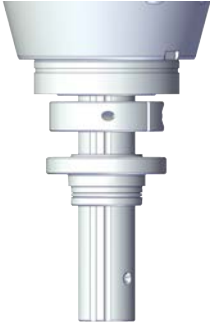


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows


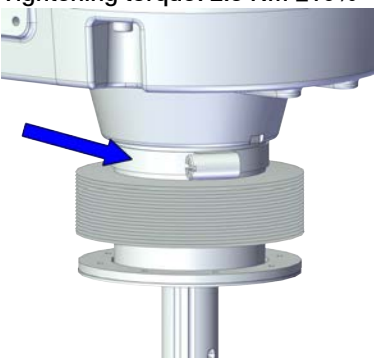


*Continued*

Refitting the lower bellow to outer arm


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Apply the glue to the outer arm.</p>	  xx2100002409
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the bellow to the shaft.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Pull the upper end of the bellow to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Hold the bellow for a little while until it's attached to the housing.</p>	<p>Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002408</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Install the bellow gaskets to the bellow.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The angle between the gap on the bellow gasket and gap on the inner bellow gasket should be 90 degrees.</p>	
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Secure them with the clamp.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The opening part of the clamp should be in the opposite position to the gap on the bellow gasket.</p>	

## Refitting the lower cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

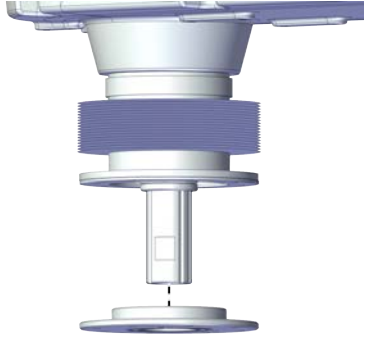
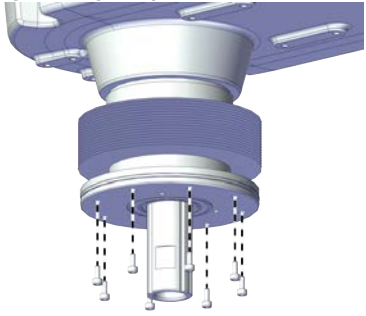

Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

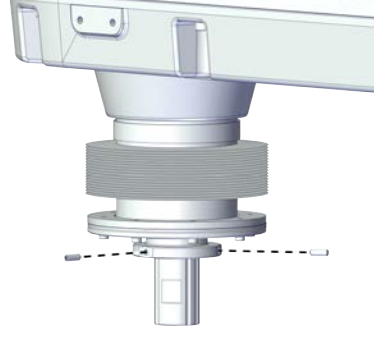
### 5.6.2 Replacing the bellows

*Continued*



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002406</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the lower cover to the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002405</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002404</p>

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	



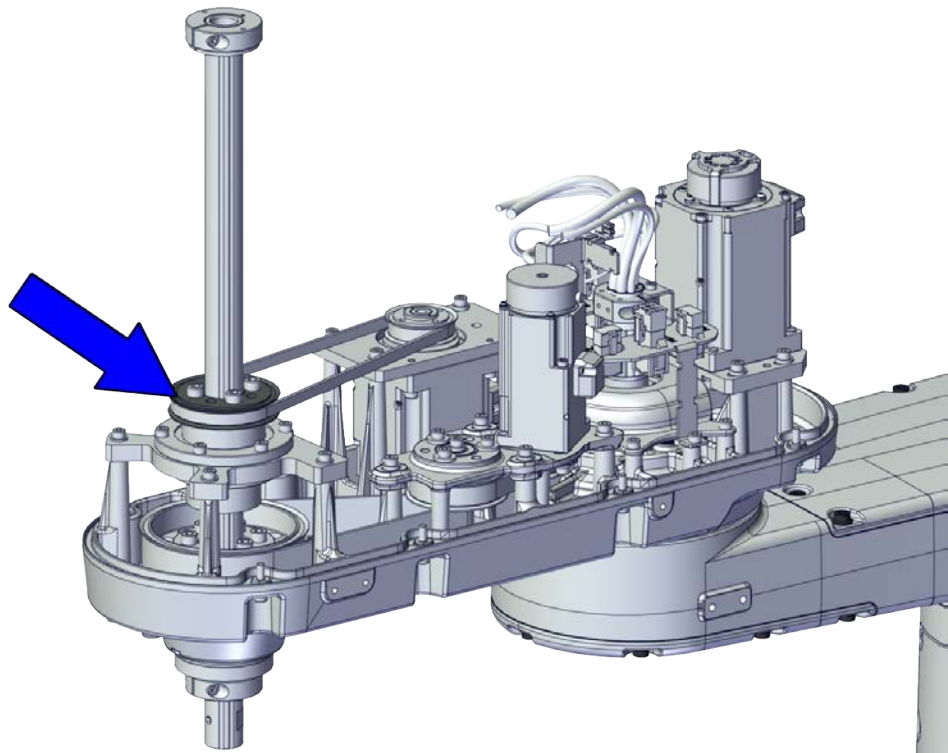
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

#### Location of the pulley

The pulley is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001016

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Ax3 pulley Z2	3HAC070480-001	
Mechanical-Stop top, D20	3HAC073068-001	With bolt
Timing belt A3	3HAC070464-001	

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

**Required consumables**

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

**Removing the pulley on the ball screw upper position**

Use these procedures to remove the pulley.

*Continues on next page*






## 5 Repair



### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the pulley

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
4	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws



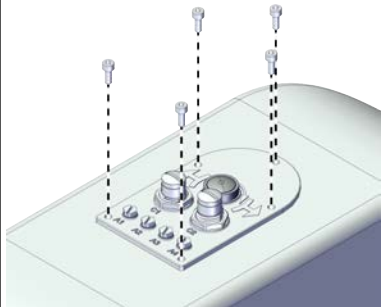
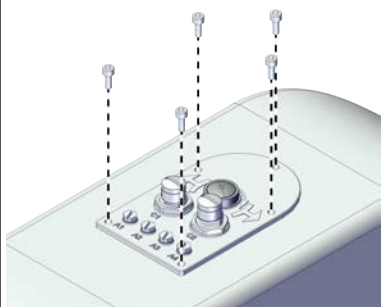
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*





## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p>
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

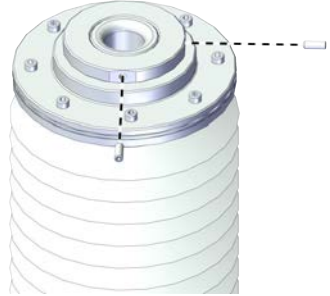

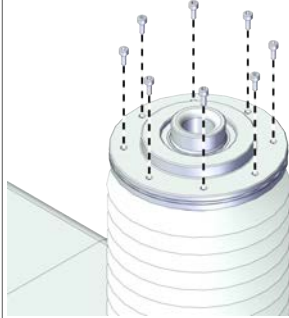
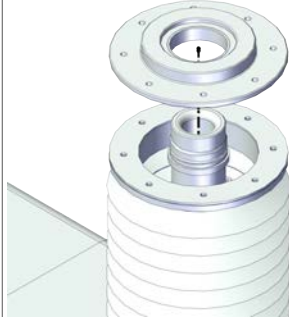
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position



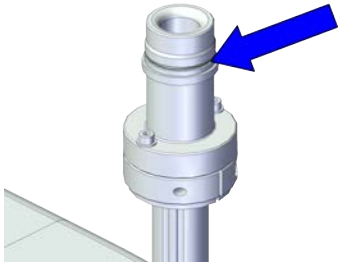

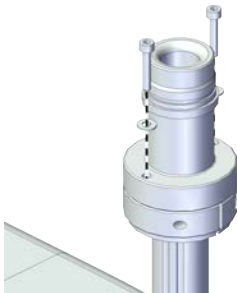


*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the locking screws.</p>	 <p>xx2100002398</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the top cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

*Continues on next page*



## Removing the extension shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the O-ring from the upper housing.	 xx2100002419
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the attachment screws.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Clean the upper housing from the glue if it will be reused.	 xx2100002420
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the extension shaft from the mechanical stopper.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Check the gasket for the extension shaft and replace it if needed.	 xx2100002421

Continues on next page




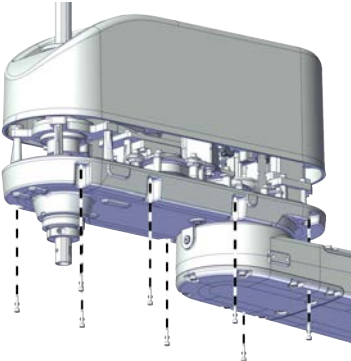
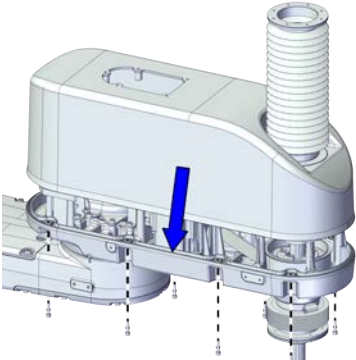


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p>  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the cover with bellow and housing.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>




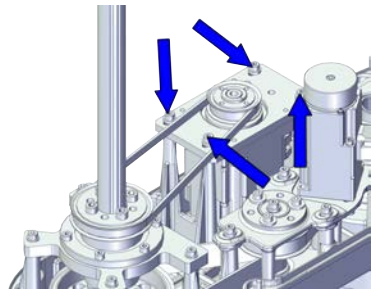
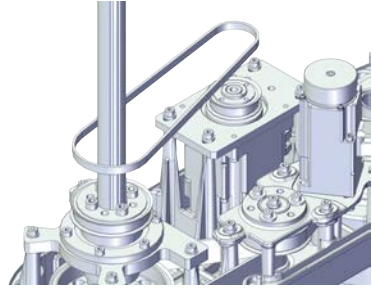
*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

## Removing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2100001078
5	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001079

*Continues on next page*



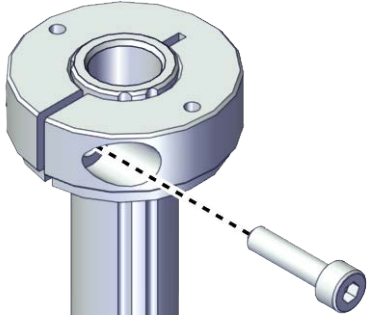


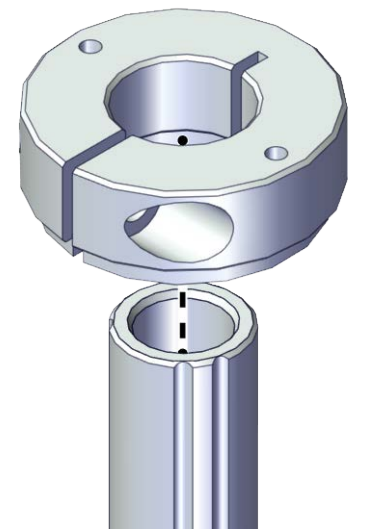


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

#### Removing the upper mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screw.	 xx1800002858
4	Remove the mechanical stopper.  <b>Tip</b> Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.  <b>CAUTION</b> If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 xx1800002859




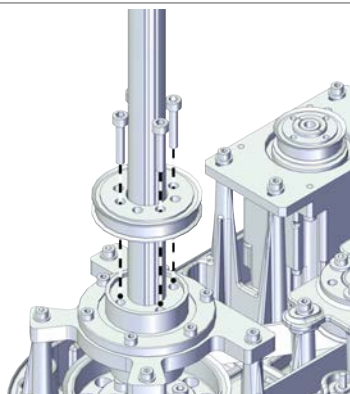


*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued


## Removing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Remove the screws.	 xx2100001080
5	Remove the pulley carefully.   <b>Tip</b> Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.   <b>CAUTION</b> If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

## Refitting the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Use these procedures to refit the pulley.

## Refitting the pulley on the ball screw upper position

	Action	Note
1	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	




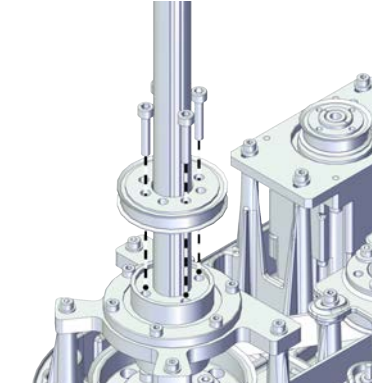

Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
3	<p>Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x25 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001080</p>
4	<p>Refit the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.</p>	

### Refitting the upper mechanical stopper




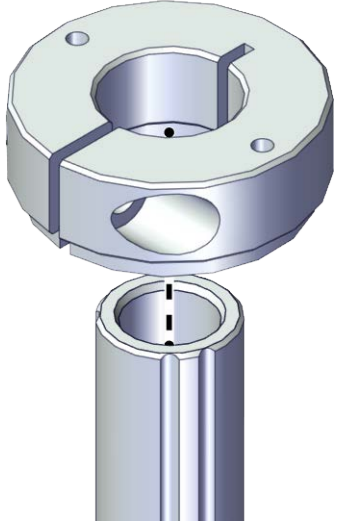
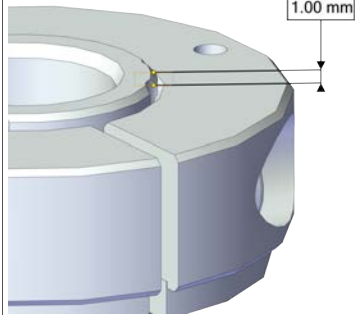
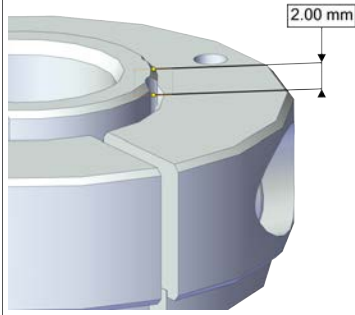
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 1 mm position to the upper of the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 2 mm position to the upper of the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 <p>xx1800002859</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1900002012</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900002011</p>

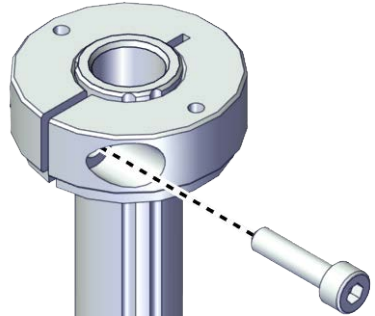
*Continues on next page*




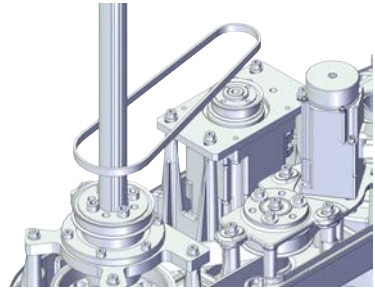
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 6.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002858</p>

### Refitting the axis-3 timing belt

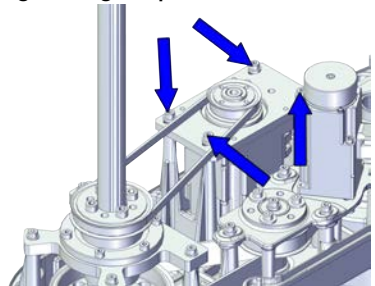

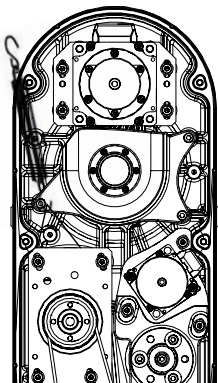
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001</p>  <p>xx2100001079</p>

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)  Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs)  Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001078</p>
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N  New belt: 40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 92-109 Hz  New belt: 110-145 Hz</p>
7	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

## Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:  Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




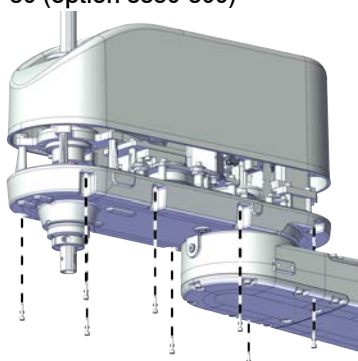
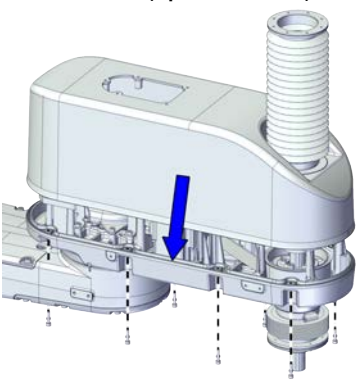
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the extension shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots





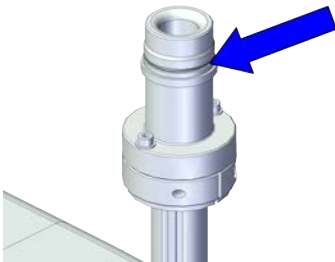
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the extension shaft to the ball screw on the upper side of the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the extension shaft and replace it if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100002421</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Secure the extension shaft to the mechanical stopper with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002420</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Insert the O-ring to the extension shaft.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Replace the o-ring if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100002419</p>

*Continues on next page*


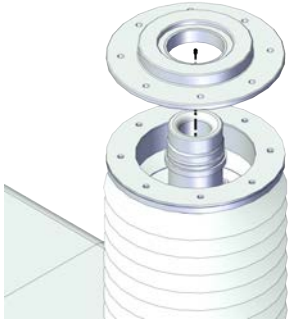
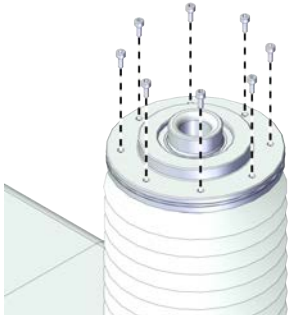




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

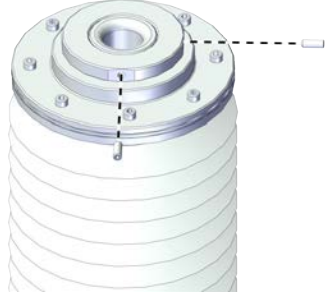
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




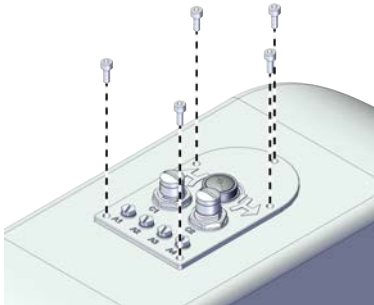
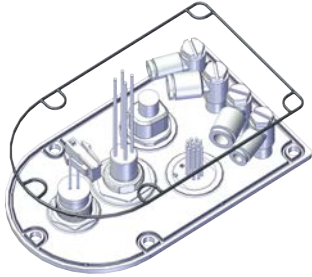
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Concluding procedure


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page



## 5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



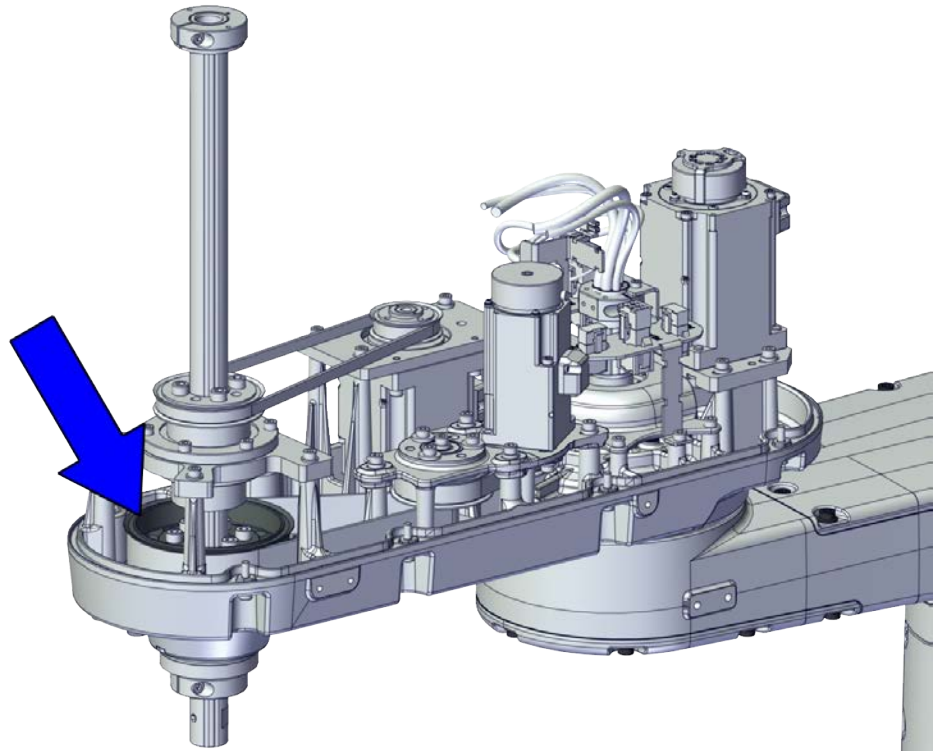
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

#### Location of the pulley

The pulley is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001017

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Ax4-2 pulley Z2, 2020A	3HAC070481-001	
Mechanical-Stop bottom, D20	3HAC073069-001	With bolt
Outer arm cover	3HAC076611-001	

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
IRB 920 special tool	3HAC077249-001	Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

**Required consumables**

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

**Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position**

Use these procedures to remove the pulley.

*Continues on next page*




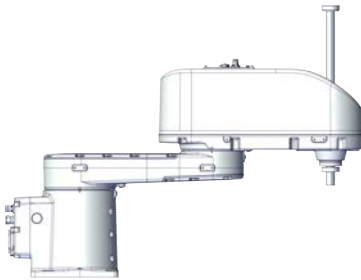


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position


*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the pulley

Remove the robot from the wall.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight.</p> <p>If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws




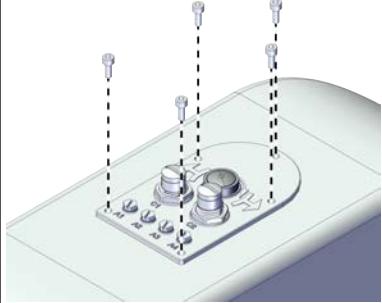
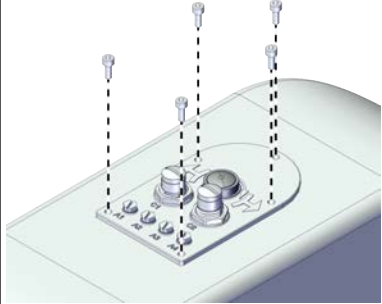
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


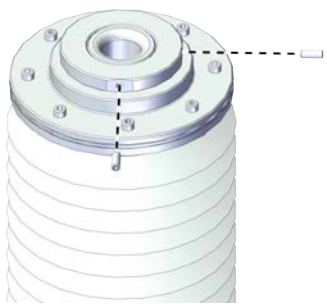

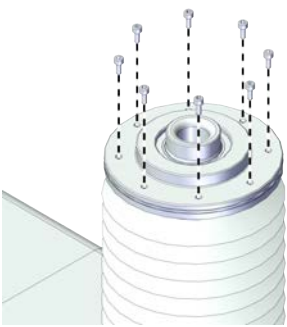
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

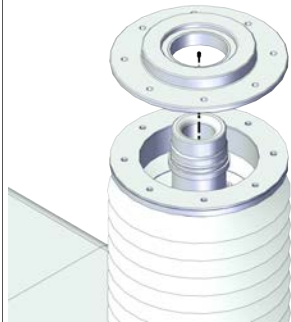
	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

*Continues on next page*





## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

## Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	




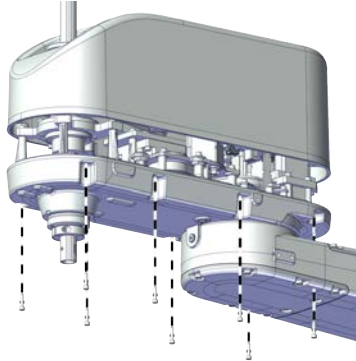
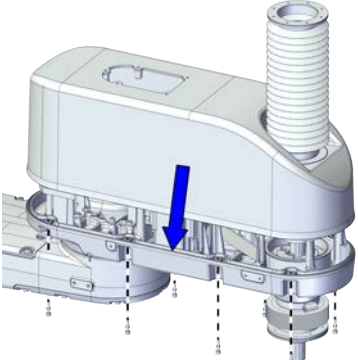
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair



### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)            Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the lower cover and the flange with bearing

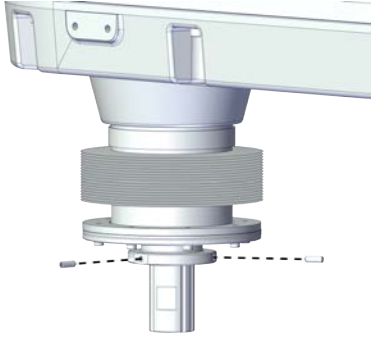
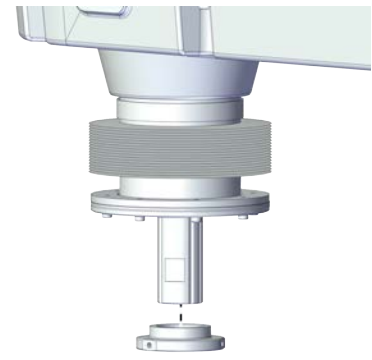
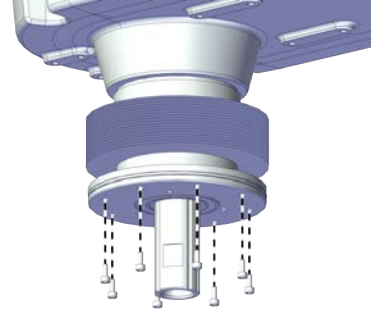
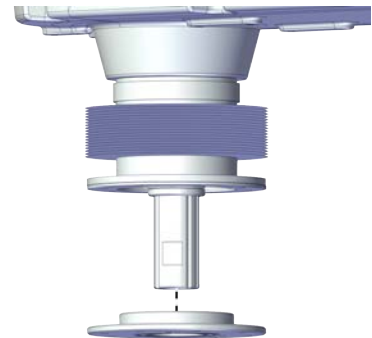
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room            Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!            See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the locking screws.</p>	 <p>xx2100002404</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the lower cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002405</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002406</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>

*Continues on next page*



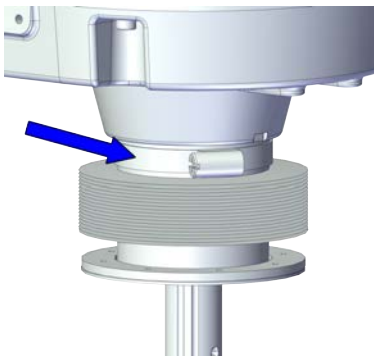





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

#### Removing the lower bellow

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loosen the upper bellow clamp by loosening the screw and pull the clamp apart slightly.	 xx2100002408
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the bellow from the outer arm.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Clean the bellow from the glue if it will be reused.	
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Remove the bellow gasket from the bellow.  <b>Note</b> Clean the bellow gasket from the glue if it will be reused.  <b>Note</b> Be careful when removing the bellow gaskets. If any broken, replace it.	



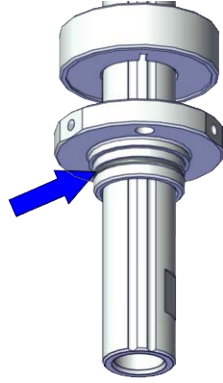
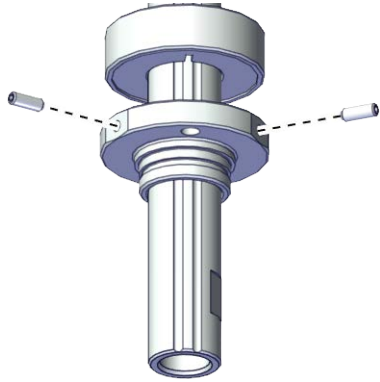

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

## Removing the shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the O-ring from the lower housing.	 xx1900001615
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the attachment screws.	 xx1900001616
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the shaft from the mechanical stopper.  <b>Note</b> The shaft is glued to the ball screw. Be careful with the glue when removing the shaft.	

Continues on next page




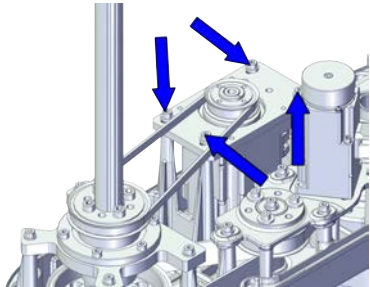
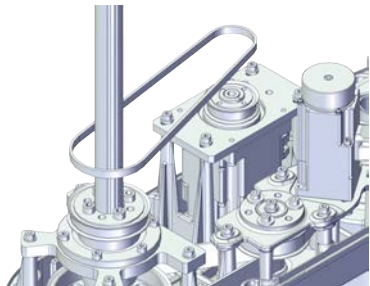


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

#### Removing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2100001078
5	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001079



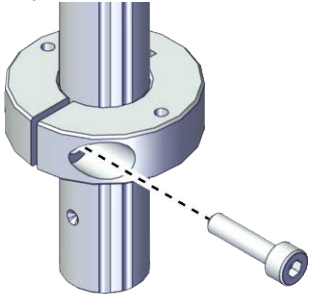
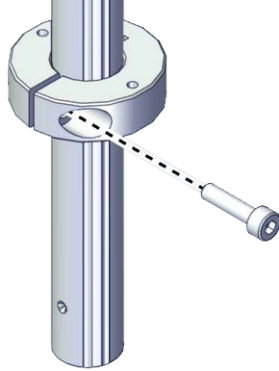
*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

## Removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screw.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1800002860</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900001642</p>


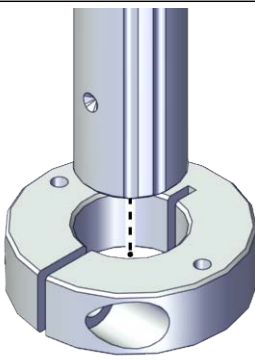
*Continues on next page*






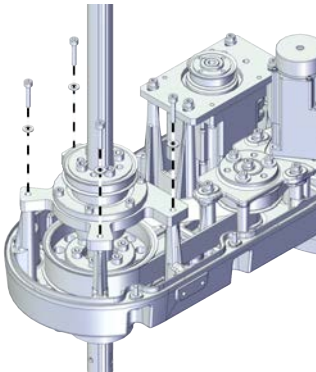
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>Remove the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 <p>xx1800002861</p>

### Removing the ball screw with the flange

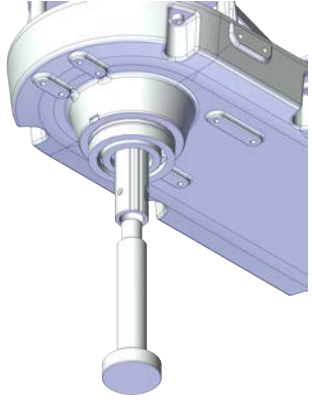
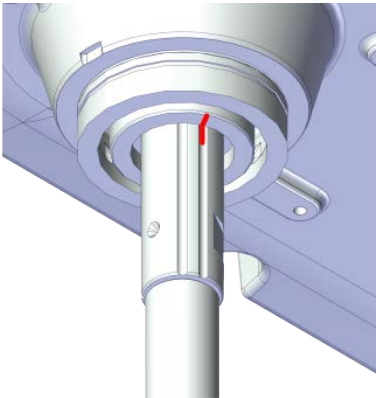

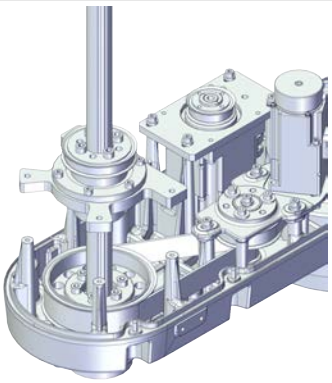

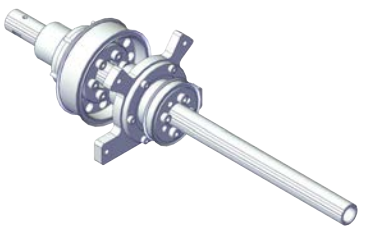
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	
3	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
4	<p>Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.</p>	 <p>xx2100001082</p>

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	Insert the special tool into the ball screw shaft.	<p>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</p>  <p>xx2100001129</p>
6	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 <p>xx2100001187</p>
7	<p>Take out the ball screw with the flange assembly carefully.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status.</p> <p>When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing.</p> <p>Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001083</p>
8	<p>Lay down the ball screw assembly.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed.</p> <p>Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 <p>xx2100001084</p>

*Continues on next page*




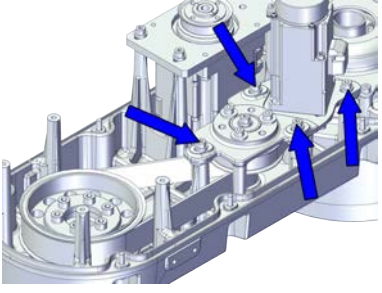


## 5 Repair



### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

#### Loosening the transmission module screws

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Loosen the screws of the transmission module to let the axis-4-2 timing belt free.	 xx2100001081

#### Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position


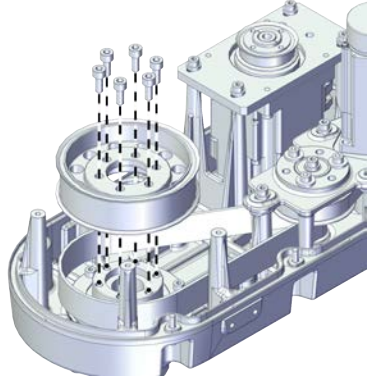

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position



*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001085
5	Remove the pulley carefully.   <b>CAUTION</b> If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

**Refitting the pulley on the ball screw lower position**

Use these procedures to refit the pulley.

**Refitting the pulley on the ball screw lower position**

	Action	Note
1	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
2	<b>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</b> Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	


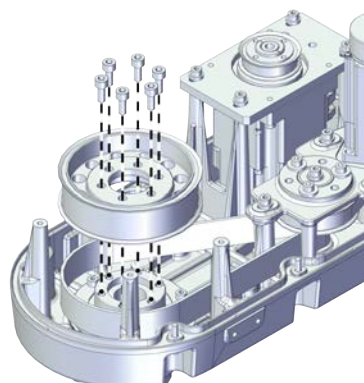

*Continues on next page*




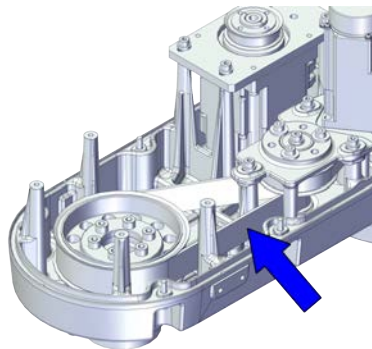
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001085</p>
4	<p>Refit the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.</p>	

### Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the pulley

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the belt to the pulley. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.</p>	<p>Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001</p>  <p>xx2100001086</p>




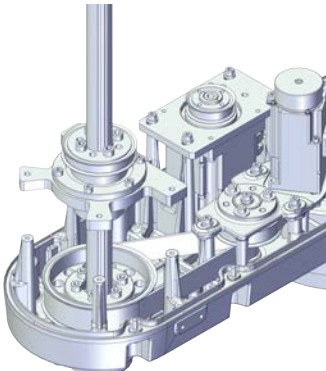

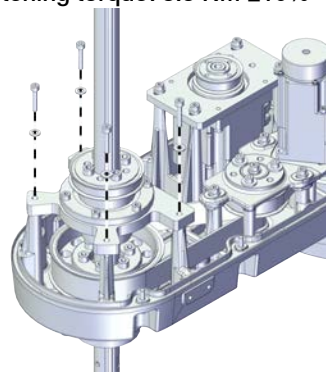
Continues on next page



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

## Refitting the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the ball screw assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make sure the marked location is aligned with the ball screw shaft grooves.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>With the inserting of the ball screw shaft, remove the special tool along with the ball screw shaft carefully.</p>	<p>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</p>  <p>xx2100001083</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws and washers to the secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 3.8Nm to secure it.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Spring washer 9x4.3x1 Steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001082</p>

*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

---

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

#### Refitting the mechanical stopper





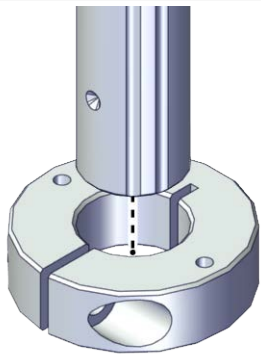
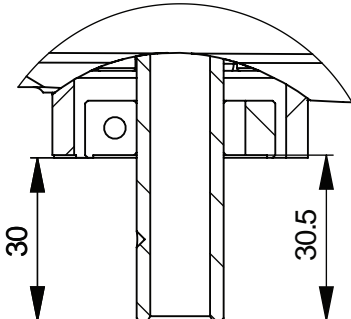
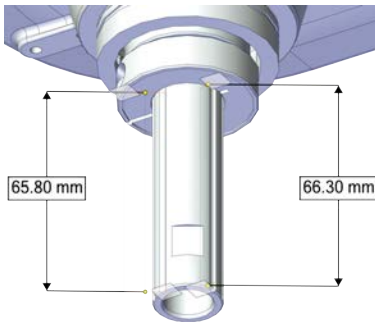
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

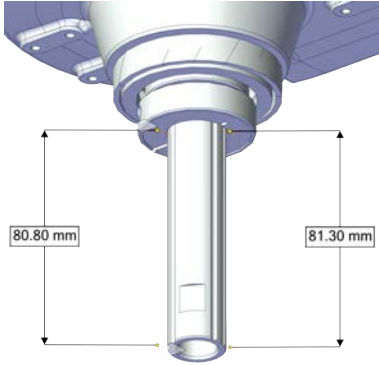
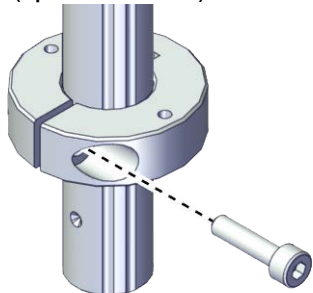
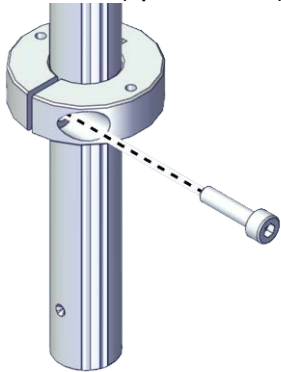
	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 30.5 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>For 180 mm ball screw, refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 65.8 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p>For 300 mm ball screw, refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 80.8 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper.</p> <p>The flat side is on the upper side.</p>	 <p>xx1800002861</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1900000144</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>For 180 mm ball screw</p>  <p>xx2100002425</p> <p>For 300 mm ball screw</p>

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position  
Continued

Action	Note
	 <p>xx2100002426</p>
3 Refit the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 6.5 Nm For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1800002860</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900001642</p>


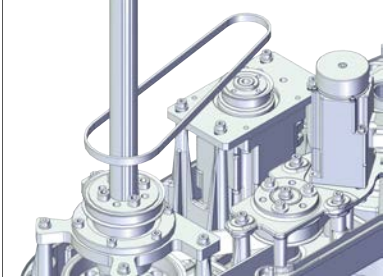
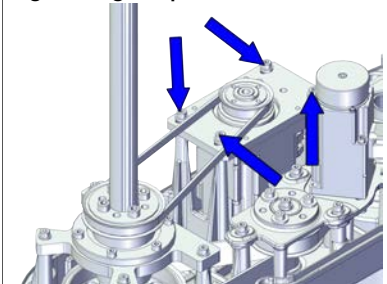
Continues on next page



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

## Refitting the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001</p>  <p>xx2100001079</p>
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001078</p>
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	


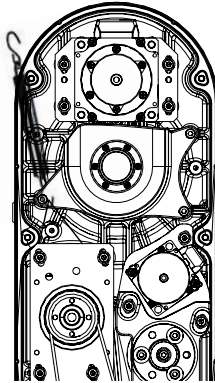
Continues on next page






## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

	Action	Note
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N New belt: 40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 92-109 Hz New belt: 110-145 Hz
7	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

### Fastening the transmission module screws and tension axis-4-2 timing belt

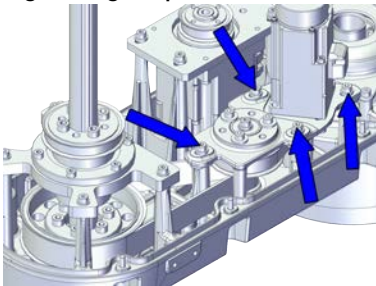

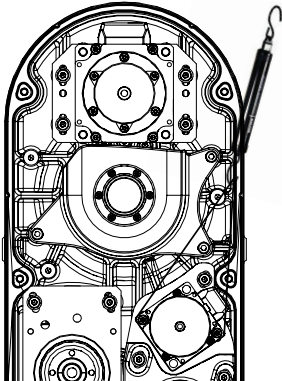
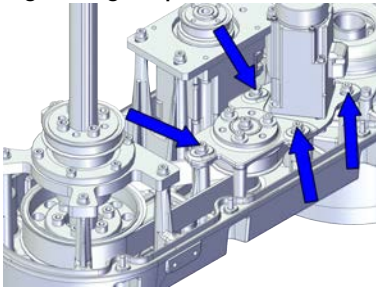
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	

Continues on next page



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Refit the screws of the transmission module without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)  Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs)  Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001087</p>
5	Hang a strong strap to the motor.	
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 168-189 N  New belt: 240-270 N</p>  <p>xx2100001127</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	<p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001087</p>
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 151-179 Hz  New belt: 180-240 Hz</p>
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

*Continues on next page*




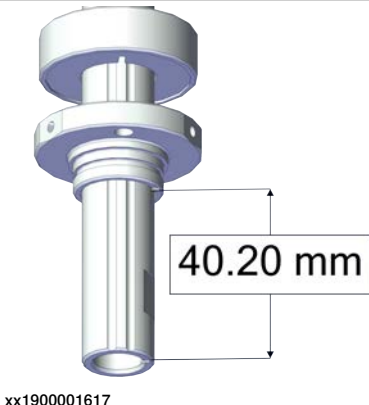
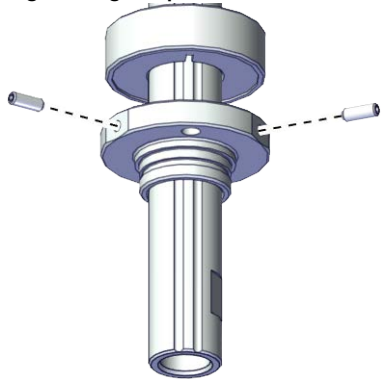
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots


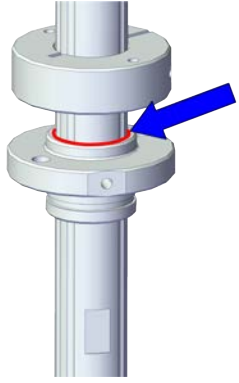

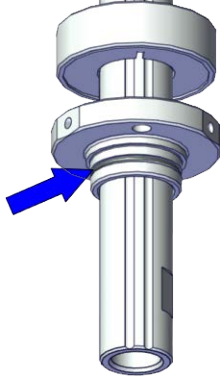
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the shaft to the ball screw at 40.2 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx1900001617</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Secure the shaft to the ball screw with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1900001616</p>

*Continues on next page*


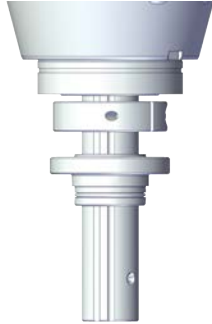


### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Apply the glue to the upper contacted zone between the shaft and the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Fulfill the gaps on the ball screw in this contacted zone to make a sealing structure.</p>	 <p>xx1900001805</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Insert the O-ring to the shaft.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Replace the o-ring if needed.</p>	 <p>xx1900001615</p>

#### Refitting the lower bellows to outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Apply the glue to the outer arm.</p>	 <p>xx2100002409</p>


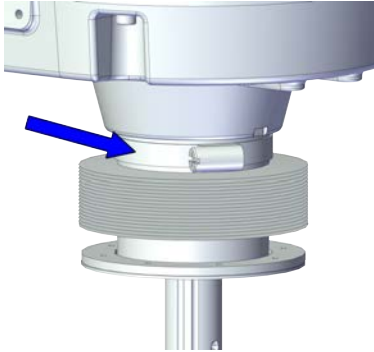


*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the bellow to the shaft.	
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Pull the upper end of the bellow to the outer arm.   <b>Tip</b>  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Hold the bellow for a little while until it's attached to the housing.	Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002408
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Install the bellow gaskets to the bellow.   <b>Tip</b>  The angle between the gap on the bellow gasket and gap on the inner bellow gasket should be 90 degrees.	
6	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Secure them with the clamp.   <b>Tip</b>  The opening part of the clamp should be in the opposite position to the gap on the bellow gasket.	

Refitting the lower cover and the flange with bearing

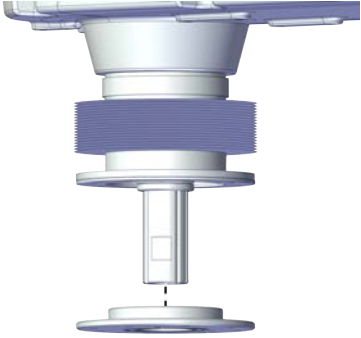
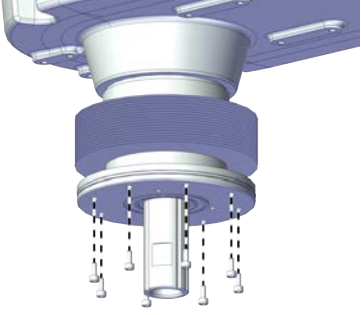
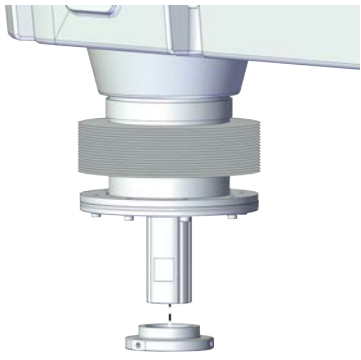
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b>  After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002406</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the lower cover to the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002405</p>

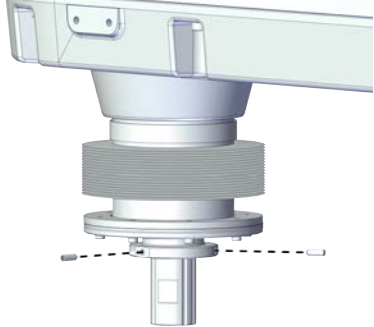
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002404</p>

### Refitting the cover of the outer arm




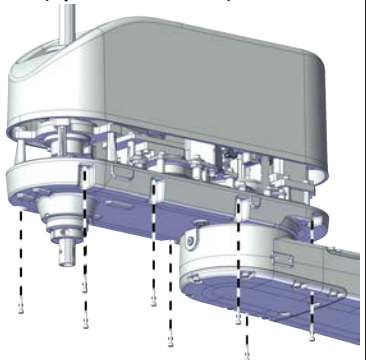
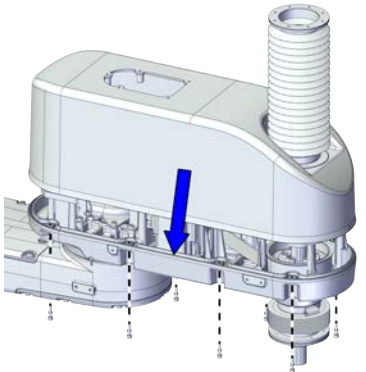
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

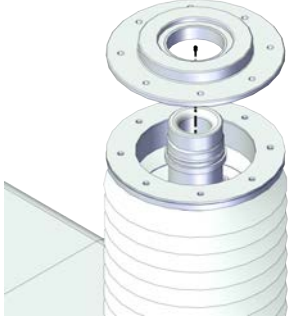
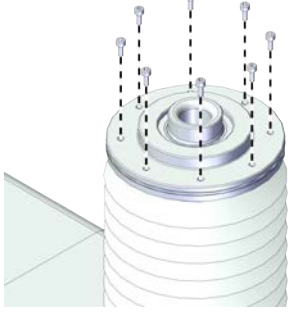


Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

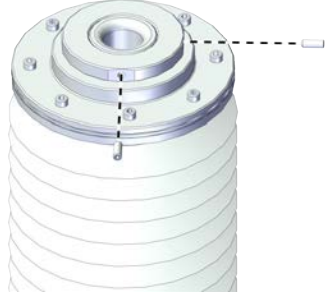
	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




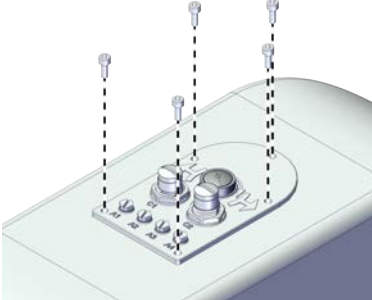
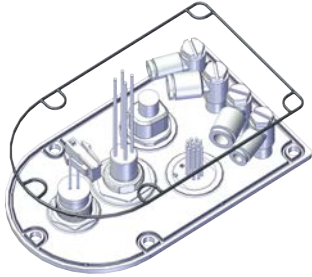
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Concluding procedure


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page



## 5.6.4 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



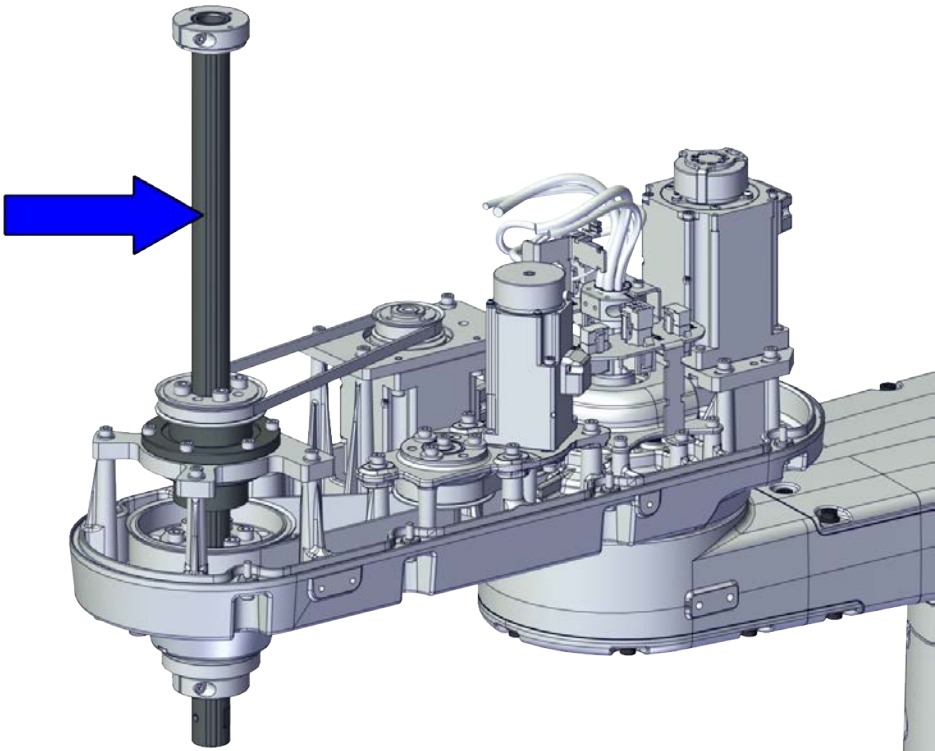
5 Repair

5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

Location of the ball screw

The ball screw is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001019

IP30	Clean Room/IP54
<p>xx2100001019</p>	<p>xx2100002431</p>

Continues on next page



**CAUTION**

For the robots with protection type Clean Room and protection class IP54, the ball screw spline unit is inside the bellows. If needed, remove the bellows to inspect the ball screw spline unit.

For details about how to remove the bellows, see [Replacing the bellows](#).

**Required spare parts****Note**

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Ball screw, BNS2020A+395LC5	3HAC070477-001	Used for IRB 920T-6/0.45_0.18, IRB 920T-6/0.55_0.18 and IRB 920T-6/0.65_0.18
Ball screw, PBSA20-20-335-395	3HAC077739-001	Used for IRB 920-6/0.55_0.18 and IRB 920-6/0.65_0.18
Ball screw, BNS2020A+515LC5	3HAC072983-001	Used for IRB 920T-6/0.45_0.3, IRB 920T-6/0.55_0.3 and IRB 920T-6/0.65_0.3
Ball Screw Flange	3HAC070479-001	
Mechanical-Stop top, D20	3HAC073068-001	With bolt
Mechanical-Stop bottom, D20	3HAC073069-001	With bolt

**Required tools and equipment**

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
IRB 920 special tool	3HAC077249-001	Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

#### Deciding calibration routine


Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.  If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the ball screw



Use these procedures to remove the ball screw.

#### Preparations before removing the ball screw



	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.   <b>CAUTION</b>  Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
4	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

## Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	



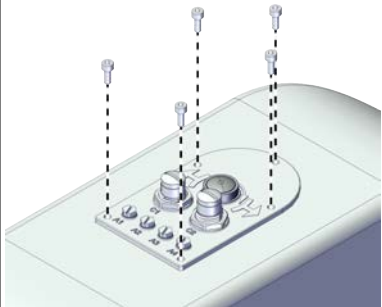
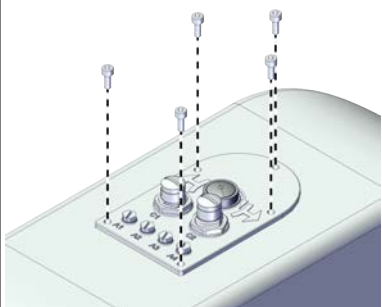
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair



### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p>
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

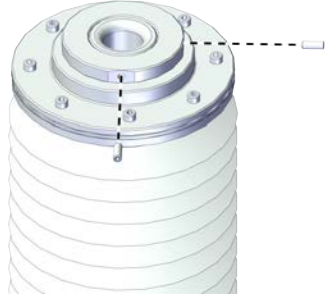

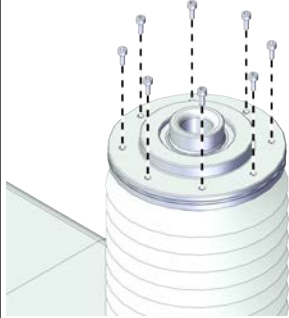
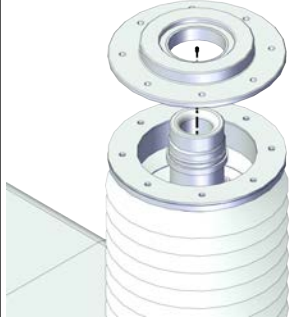
Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw  
*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the locking screws.</p>	 <p>xx2100002398</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the top cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

*Continues on next page*



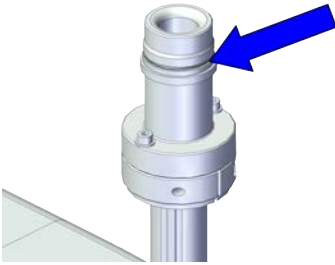






## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*






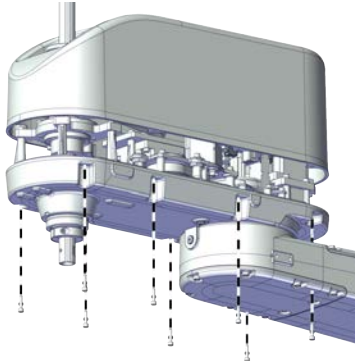
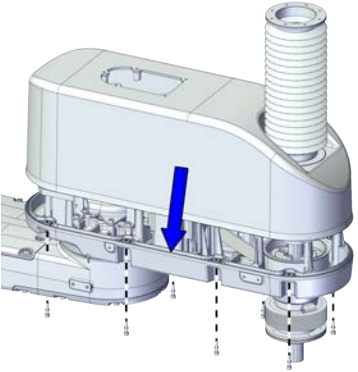
#### Removing the extension shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the O-ring from the upper housing.	 xx2100002419
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the attachment screws.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Clean the upper housing from the glue if it will be reused.	 xx2100002420
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the extension shaft from the mechanical stopper.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Check the gasket for the extension shaft and replace it if needed.	 xx2100002421

*Continues on next page*



## Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.   <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the cover with bellow and housing.   <b>Note</b> The bellow does not need to be removed separately.   <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30   xx2100000933  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)   xx2100002427

Continues on next page





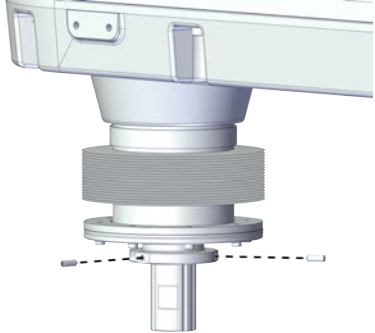

## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

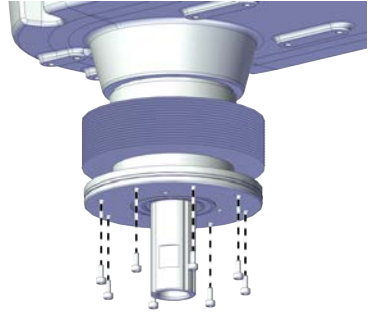
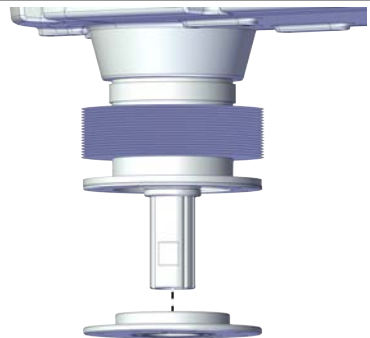
Removing the lower cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002404
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the lower cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002405



*Continues on next page*



### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw Continued

	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002406</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>

#### Removing the lower bellow

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

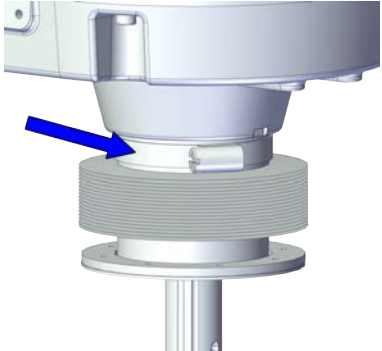



Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

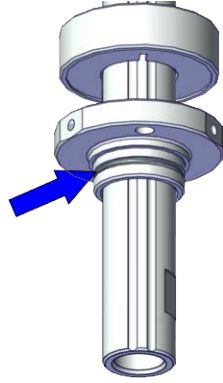
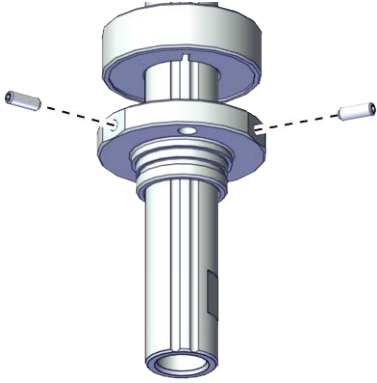

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loosen the upper bellow clamp by loosening the screw and pull the clamp apart slightly.</p>	 <p>xx2100002408</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the bellow from the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Clean the bellow from the glue if it will be reused.</p>	
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Remove the bellow gasket from the bellow.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Clean the bellow gasket from the glue if it will be reused.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Be careful when removing the bellow gaskets. If any broken, replace it.</p>	

#### Removing the shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the O-ring from the lower housing.</p>	 <p>xx1900001615</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the attachment screws.</p>	 <p>xx1900001616</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the shaft from the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The shaft is glued to the ball screw. Be careful with the glue when removing the shaft.</p>	

#### Removing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	


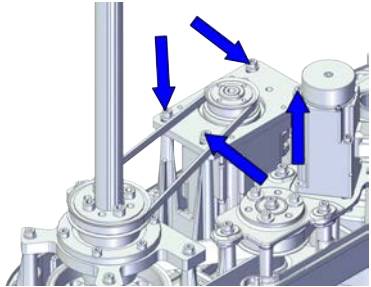
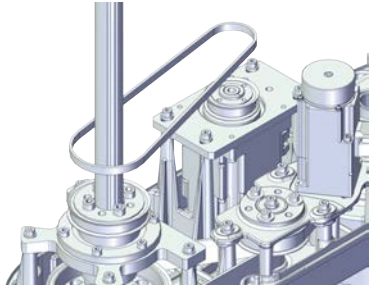
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2100001078
5	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001079

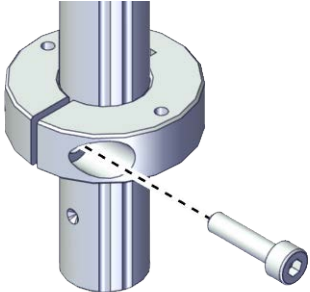
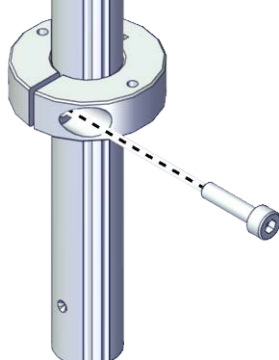

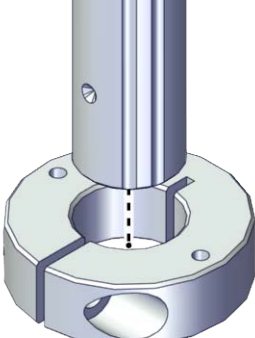
### Removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a>	


*Continues on next page*



5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw  
*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screw.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1800002860</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900001642</p>
4	<p>Remove the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 <p>xx1800002861</p>

## Removing the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	



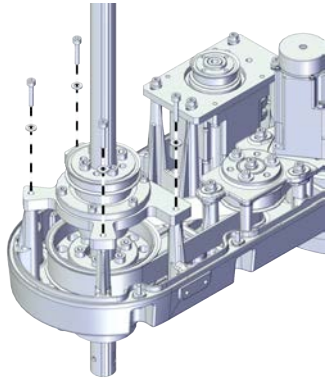
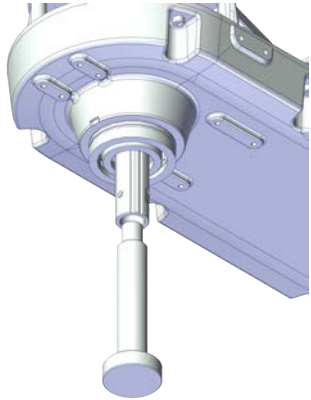
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

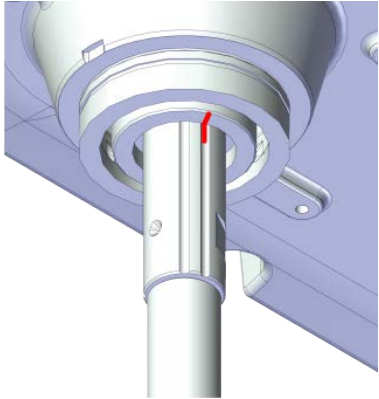

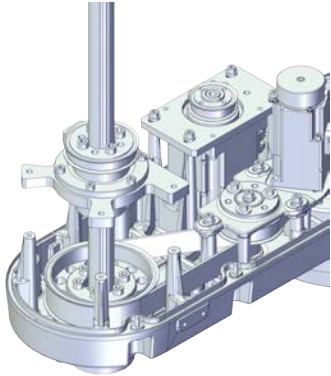

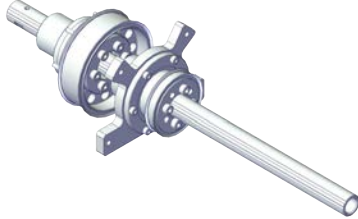
*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b>  The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.	  xx2100001082
5	Insert the special tool into the ball screw shaft.	<b>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</b>   xx2100001129


*Continues on next page*



5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw  
Continued

	Action	Note
6	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 xx2100001187
7	<p>Take out the ball screw with the flange assembly carefully.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status.</p> <p>When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing.</p> <p>Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.</p>	 xx2100001083
8	<p>Lay down the ball screw assembly.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed.</p> <p>Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 xx2100001084

## Loosening the transmission module screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	



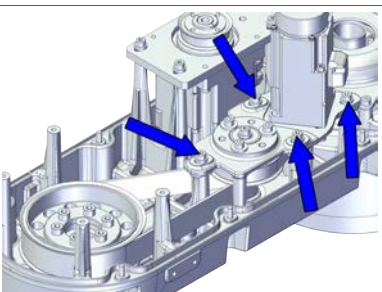
Continues on next page






## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Loosen the screws of the transmission module to let the axis-4-2 timing belt free.	 xx2100001081

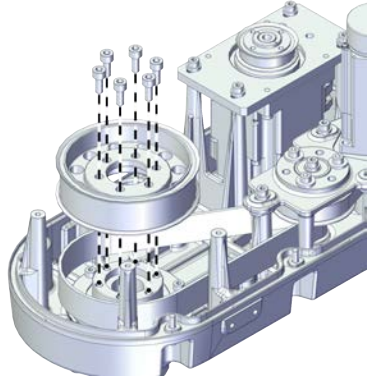

#### Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	



*Continues on next page*



### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw *Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001085
5	Remove the pulley carefully.   <b>CAUTION</b>  If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

#### Removing the ball screw lower nut

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	


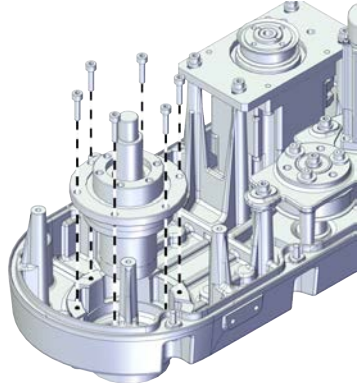


*Continues on next page*





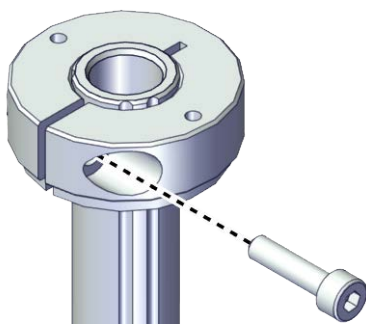
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*



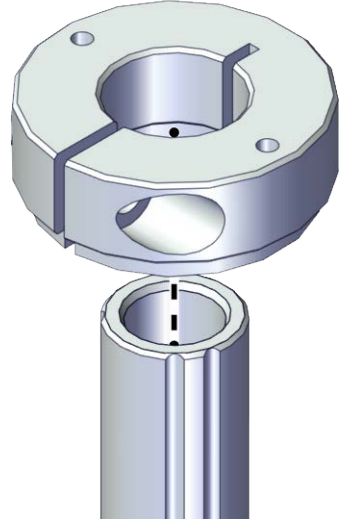
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the lower nut to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p>	<p>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</p>  <p>xx2100001088</p>
4	<p>Raise the ball screw lower nut with the special tool to take them out of the outer arm carefully.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Hold the lower part of the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	

### Removing the upper mechanical stopper




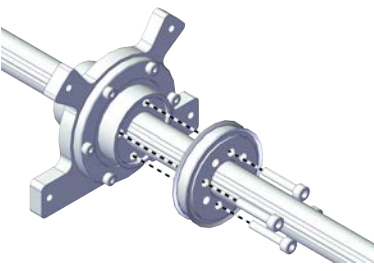

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screw.</p>	 <p>xx1800002858</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	<p>Remove the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 <p>xx1800002859</p>

## Removing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	
3	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
4	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx2100001089</p>
5	<p>Remove the pulley carefully.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	

Continues on next page



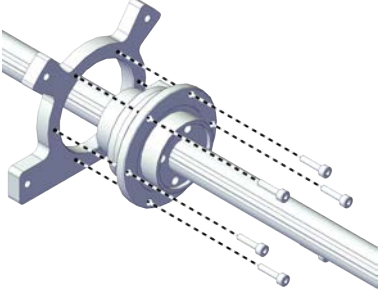



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*


#### Removing the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws.	 xx2100001090
4	Remove the ball screw flange from the ball screw shaft.  <b>CAUTION</b> If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

#### Refitting the ball screw

Use these procedures to refit the ball screw.




#### Preparing the new ball screw

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	


*Continues on next page*



### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw Continued

	Action	Note
2	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 xx2100001184
3	Insert the special tool into the ball screw shaft.	<b>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</b>  xx2100001185
4	Move the ball screw nut from the ball screw shaft to the special tool.	 xx2100001186

#### Refitting the ball screw lower nut

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	



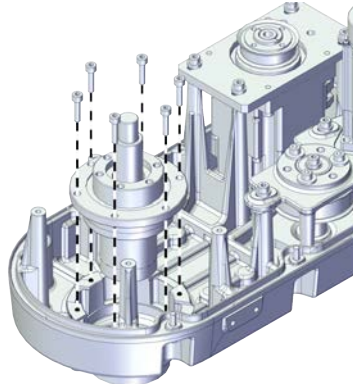
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*


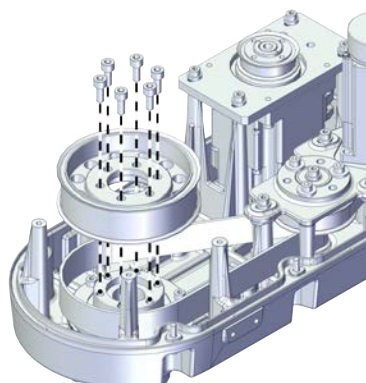

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Put the ball screw lower nut to the outer arm carefully.   <b>CAUTION</b> Make sure the ball screw nut works fluently.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm $\pm 10\%$
4	Secure the screws on the lower nut to the outer arm.	 xx2100001088

### Refitting the pulley on the ball screw lower position



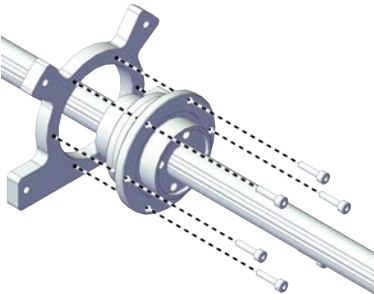
	Action	Note
1	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001085</p>
4	<p>Refit the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.</p>	

#### Refitting the flange to the ball screw shaft

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the ball screw flange to the ball screw shaft.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001090</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




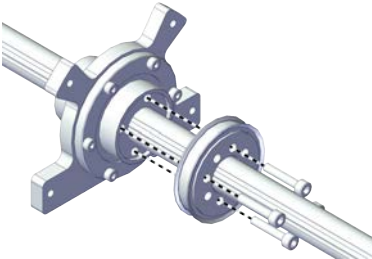



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

#### Refitting the pulley on the ball screw upper position




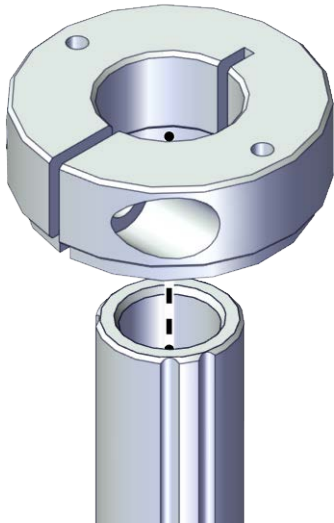
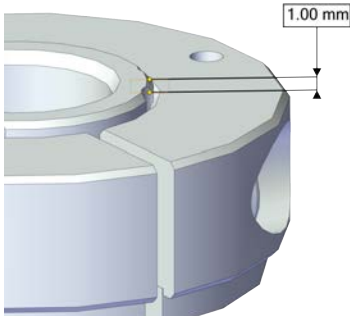
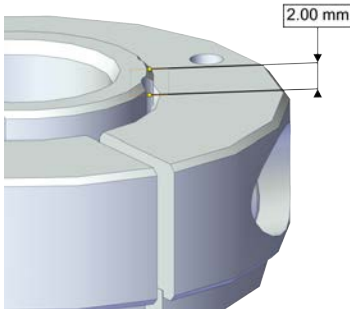
	Action	Note
1	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
2	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
3	Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.  <b>CAUTION</b> If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001089
4	Refit the screws.  <b>Tip</b> Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.	

#### Refitting the upper mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 1 mm position to the upper of the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 2 mm position to the upper of the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 <p>xx1800002859</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1900002012</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900002011</p>

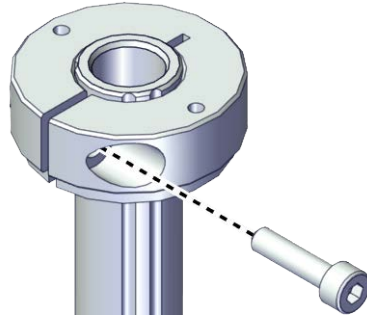
Continues on next page






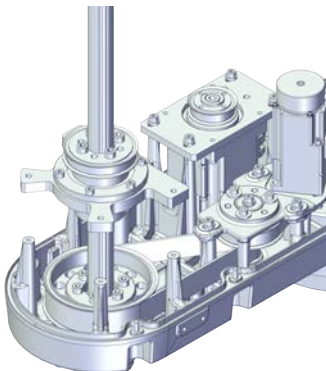
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*


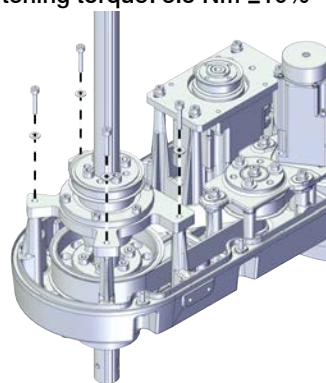
	Action	Note
3	Refit the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 6.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002858</p>

### Refitting the ball screw with the flange


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the ball screw assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make sure the marked location is aligned with the ball screw shaft grooves.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>With the inserting of the ball screw shaft, remove the special tool along with the ball screw shaft carefully.</p>	<p>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</p>  <p>xx2100001083</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the screws and washers to the secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 3.8Nm to secure it.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Spring washer 9x4.3x1 Steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001082</p>

## Refitting the mechanical stopper

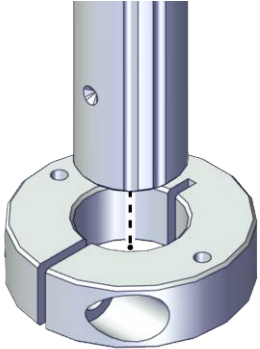
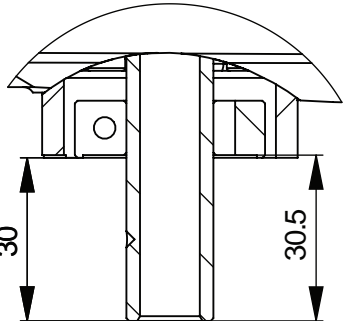
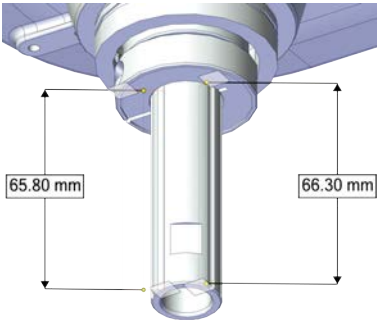
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



5 Repair

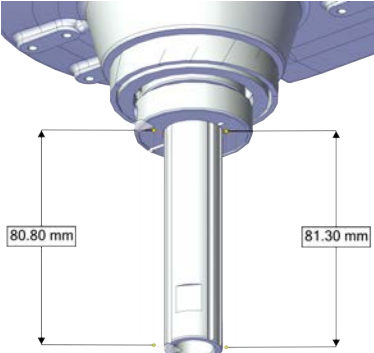
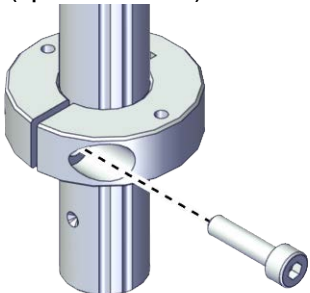
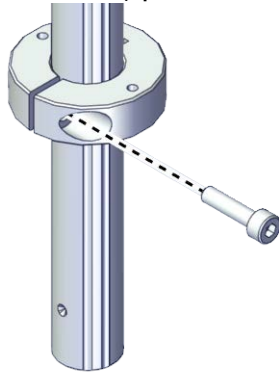
5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw  
Continued

Action	Note
<div>2</div> <div><div><div></div><div>Note</div></div><div>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) For 180 mm ball screw, refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 65.8 mm position to the lower of the ball screw. For 300 mm ball screw, refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 80.8 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</div><div><div></div><div>Tip</div></div><div>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</div><div><div></div><div>CAUTION</div></div><div>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</div><div><div></div><div>Note</div></div><div>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper. The flat side is on the upper side.</div></div>	<div></div> <div>xx1800002861</div> <div>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</div> <div></div> <div>xx1900000144</div> <div>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) For 180 mm ball screw</div> <div></div> <div>xx2100002425</div> <div>For 300 mm ball screw</div>

Continues on next page



### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw *Continued*

	Action	Note
		 <p>xx2100002426</p>
3	Refit the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 6.5 Nm For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1800002860</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900001642</p>

*Continues on next page*


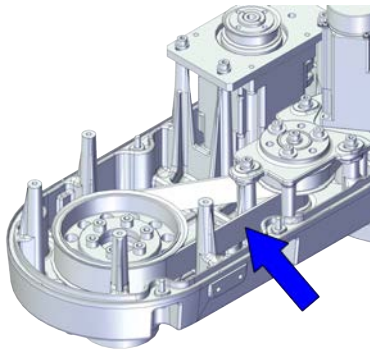


## 5 Repair




### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

#### Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the pulley

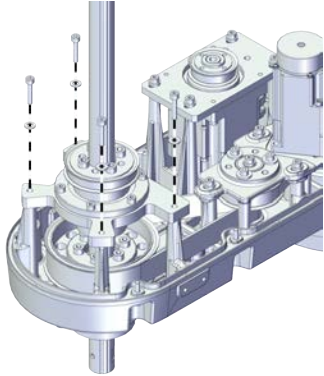
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the belt to the pulley. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.</p>	<p>Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001</p>  <p>xx2100001086</p>

#### Fastening the ball screw flange




	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	Tighten the screws of the ball screw flange.	 <p>xx2100001082</p>

#### Fastening the transmission module screws and tension axis-4-2 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	

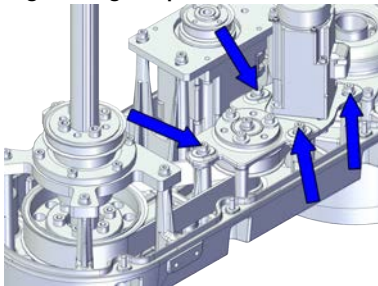

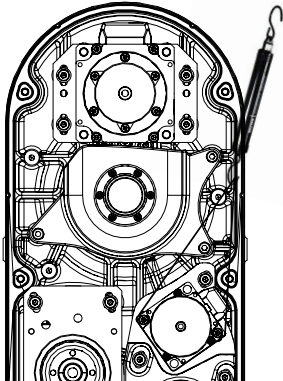
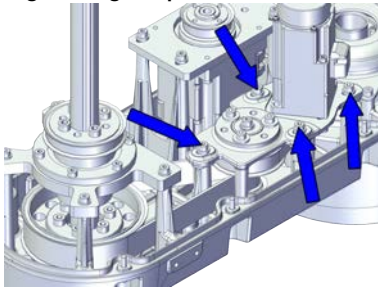
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw


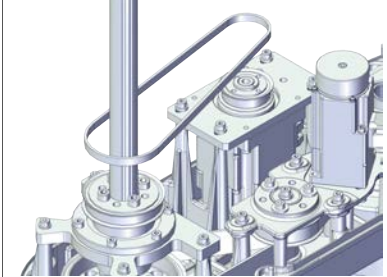
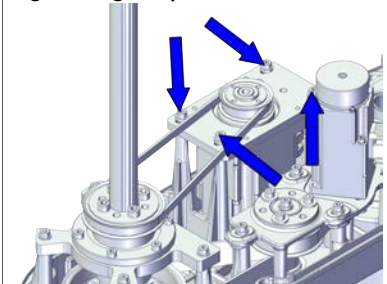
*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Refit the screws of the transmission module without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)  Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs)  Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001087</p>
5	Hang a strong strap to the motor.	
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 168-189 N  New belt: 240-270 N</p>  <p>xx2100001127</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	<p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001087</p>
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 151-179 Hz  New belt: 180-240 Hz</p>
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001</p>  <p>xx2100001079</p>
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001078</p>
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	


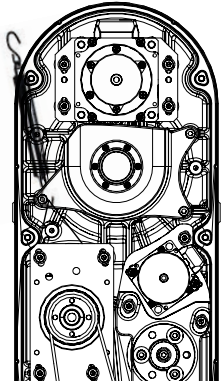
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


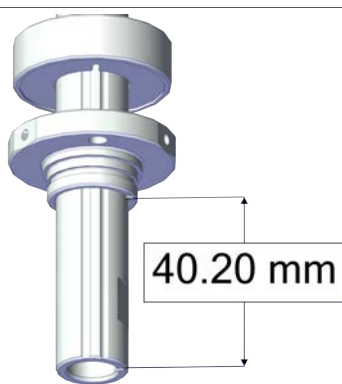
### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N New belt: 40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 92-109 Hz New belt: 110-145 Hz</p>
7	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

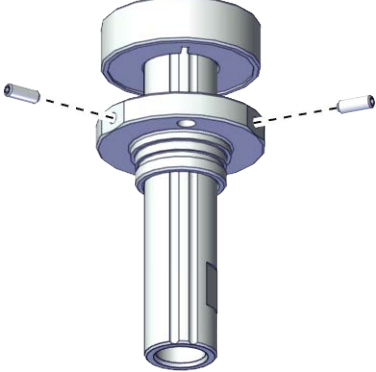

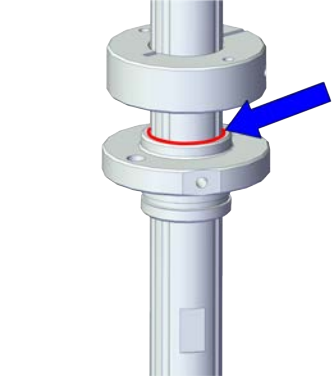

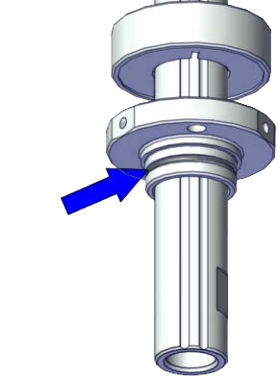
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the shaft to the ball screw at 40.2 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx1900001617</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)            Secure the shaft to the ball screw with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)            Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1900001616</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            Apply the glue to the upper contacted zone between the shaft and the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Fulfill the gaps on the ball screw in this contacted zone to make a sealing structure.</p>	 <p>xx1900001805</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)            Insert the O-ring to the shaft.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Replace the o-ring if needed.</p>	 <p>xx1900001615</p>

Continues on next page


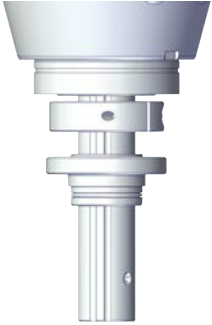


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw


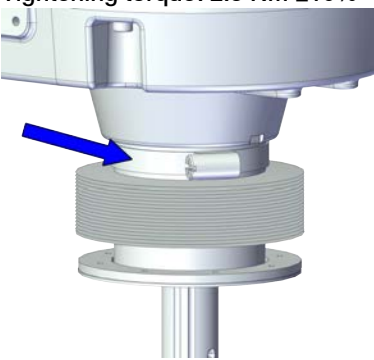


*Continued*

Refitting the lower bellow to outer arm


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) Apply the glue to the outer arm.</p>	  xx2100002409
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the bellow to the shaft.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Pull the upper end of the bellow to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Hold the bellow for a little while until it's attached to the housing.</p>	<p>Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002408</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Install the bellow gaskets to the bellow.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The angle between the gap on the bellow gasket and gap on the inner bellow gasket should be 90 degrees.</p>	
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Secure them with the clamp.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The opening part of the clamp should be in the opposite position to the gap on the bellow gasket.</p>	

## Refitting the lower cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

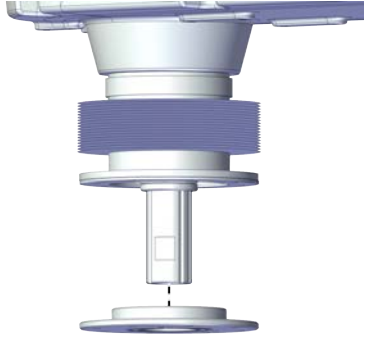
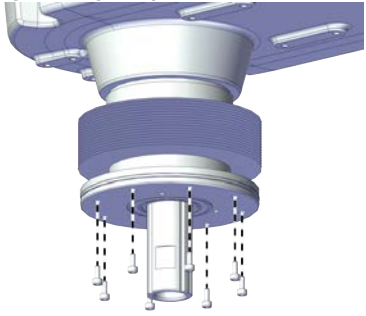

Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

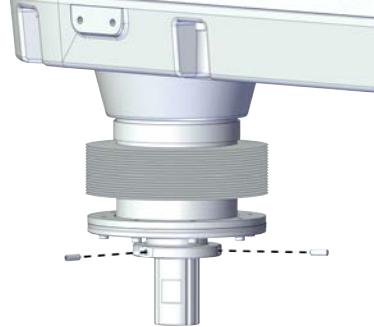
### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

*Continued*


	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002406</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the lower cover to the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002405</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002404</p>

## Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




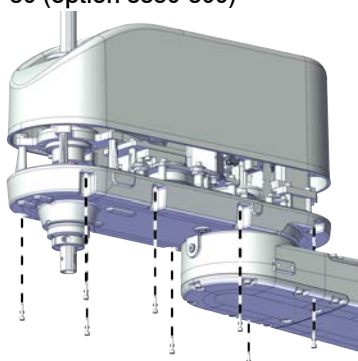
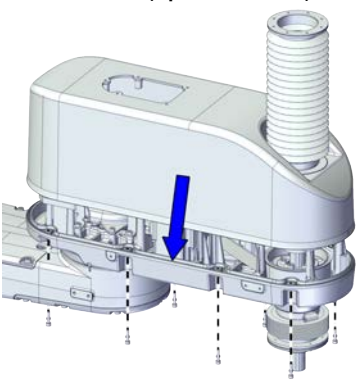
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>



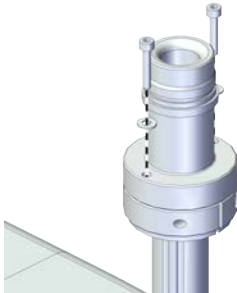

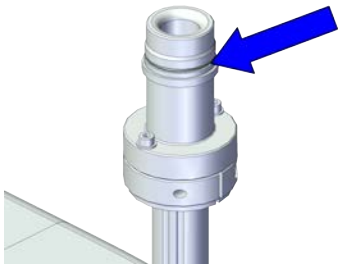
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the extension shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the extension shaft to the ball screw on the upper side of the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the extension shaft and replace it if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100002421</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Secure the extension shaft to the mechanical stopper with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002420</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Insert the O-ring to the extension shaft.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Replace the o-ring if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100002419</p>

*Continues on next page*


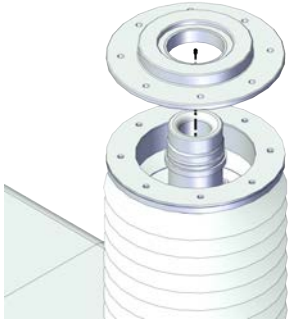
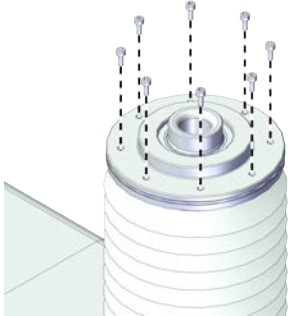




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

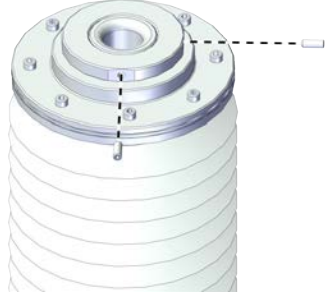
*Continued*

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




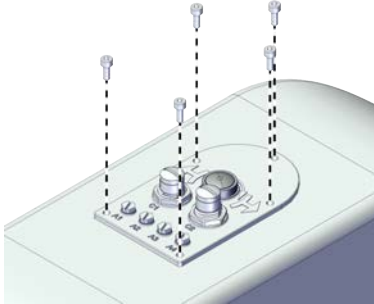
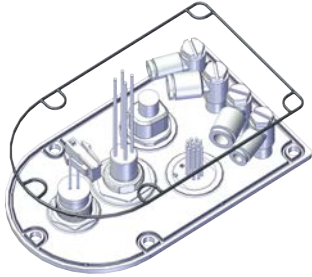
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.5 Replacing the ball screw

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



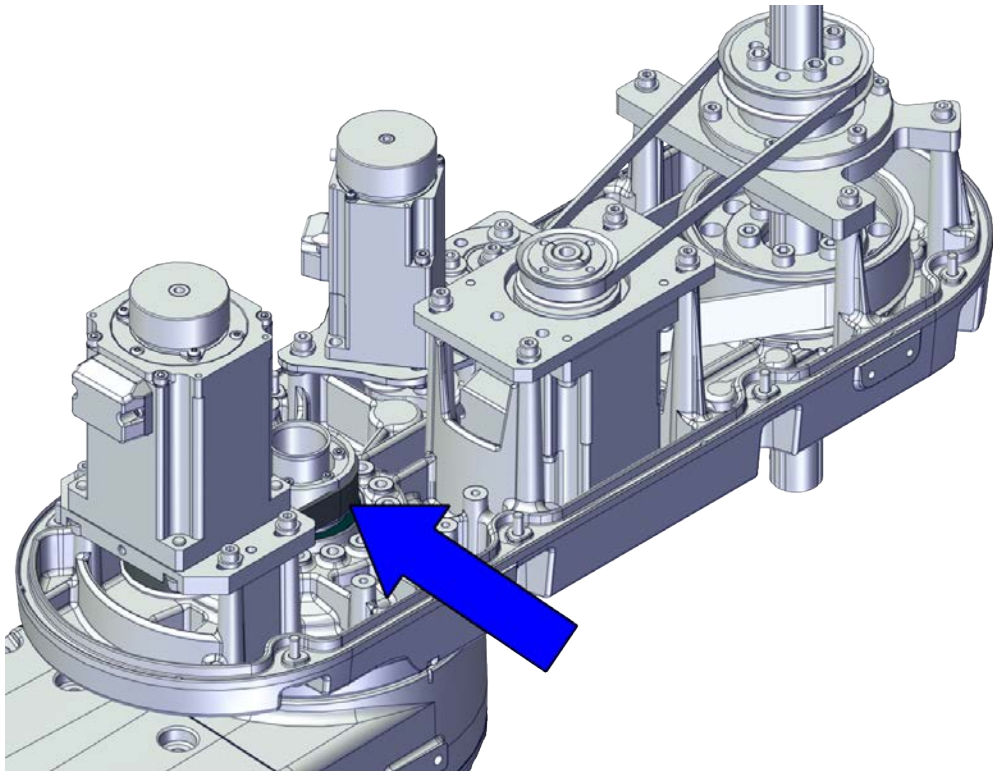
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

#### Location of the axis-2 timing belt

The axis-2 timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001024

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt A2	3HAC061861-001	

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

Continues on next page



Equipment	Article number	Note
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

**Required consumables**

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.  If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

**Removing the axis-2 timing belt**

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 timing belt.

**Preparations before removing the axis-2 timing belt**

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	


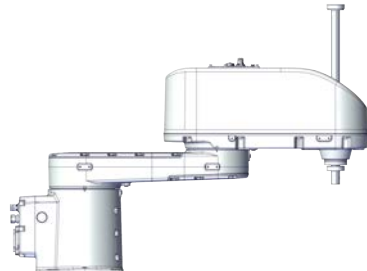


*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

*Continued*




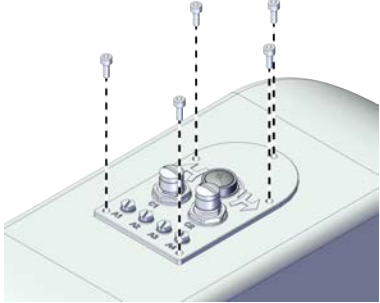
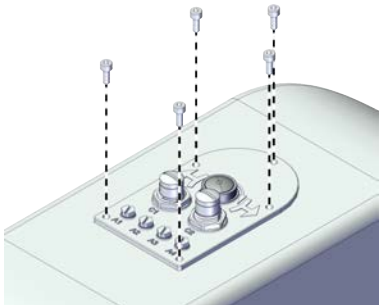
	Action	Note
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p>Jog all axes to zero position.</p>	 xx2100000930
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


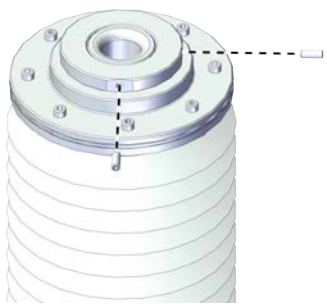

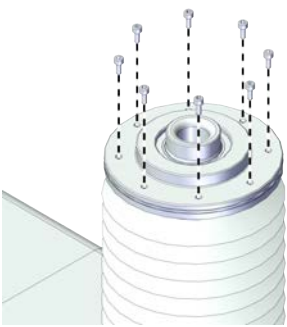
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

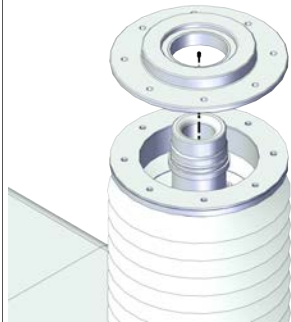
### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

*Continued*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!  See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	




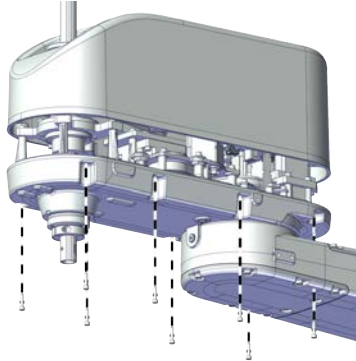
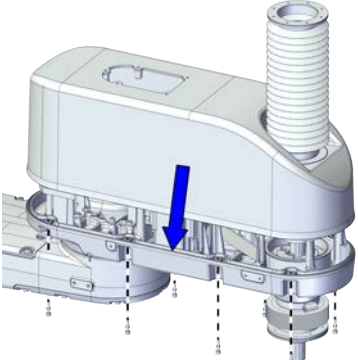
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

Continued

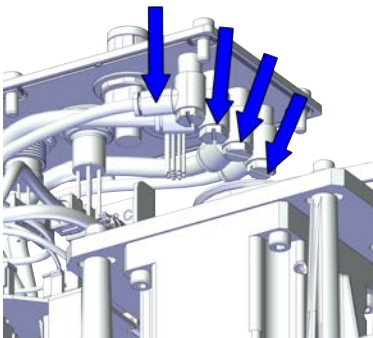
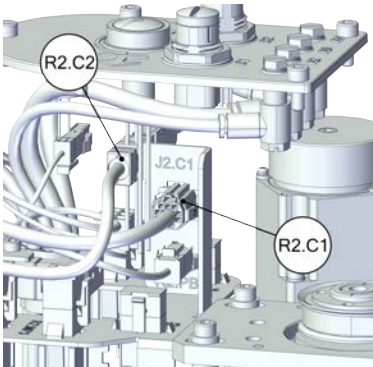



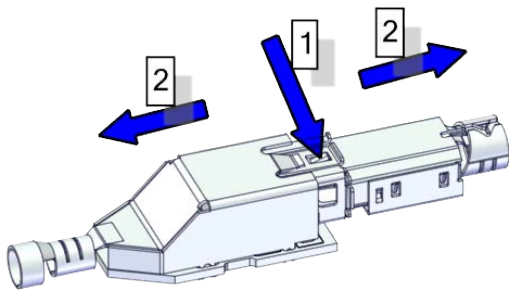
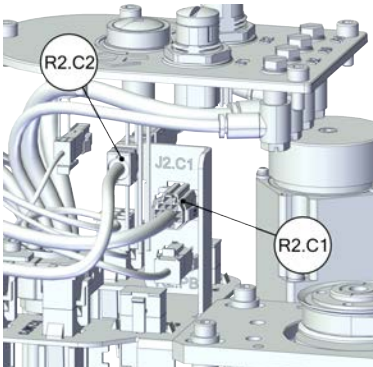
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

#### Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page




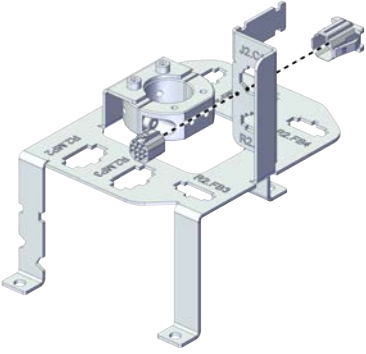
	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	 xx2100001033

Continues on next page



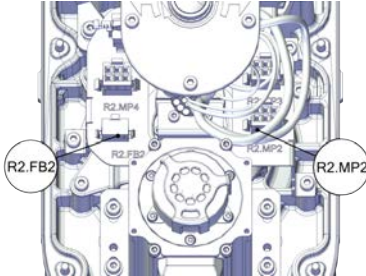


5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt  
Continued


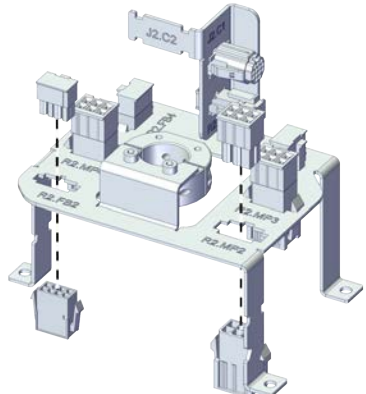
	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor



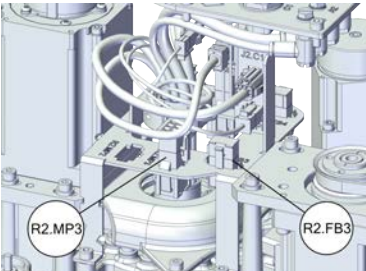
	Action	Note
1	<div> <b>DANGER</b></div> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<div> <b>CAUTION</b></div> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• R2.MP2</li><li>• R2.FB2</li></ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>


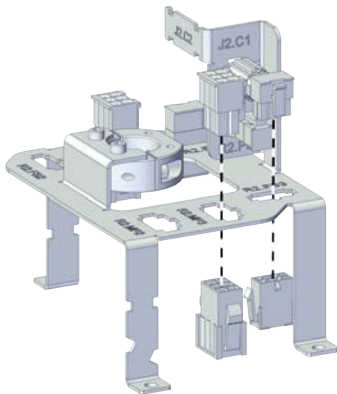
Continues on next page




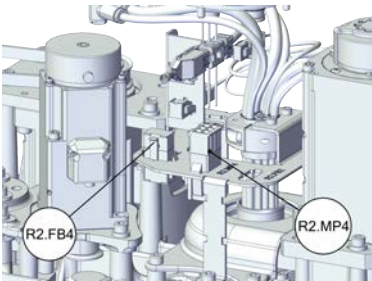

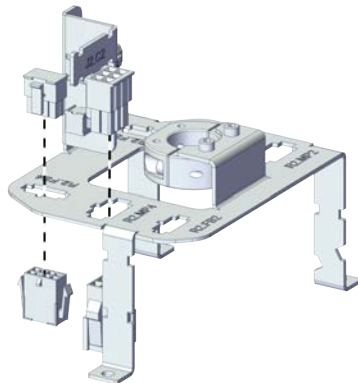
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>



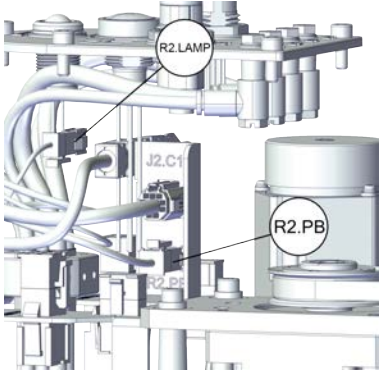

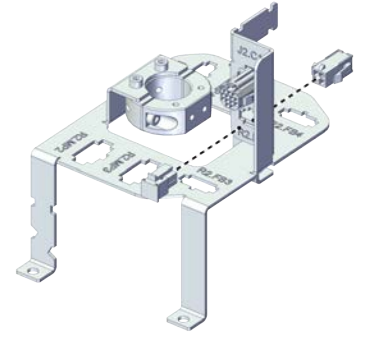
### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>


*Continues on next page*



## Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

## Pull out the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	





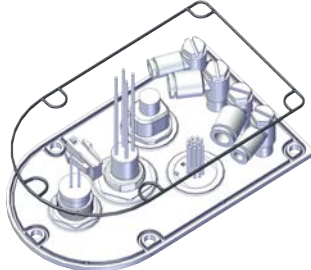
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

### Removing the cable ferrule and bracket


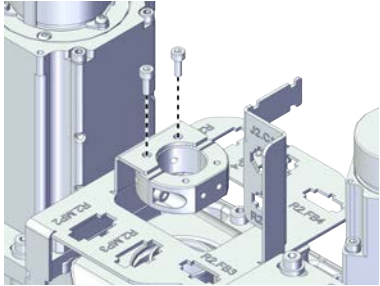

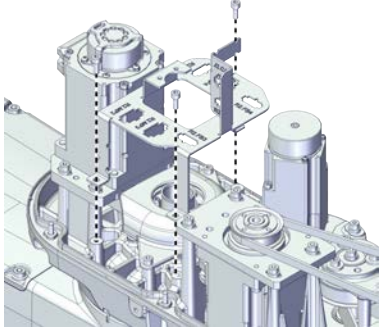
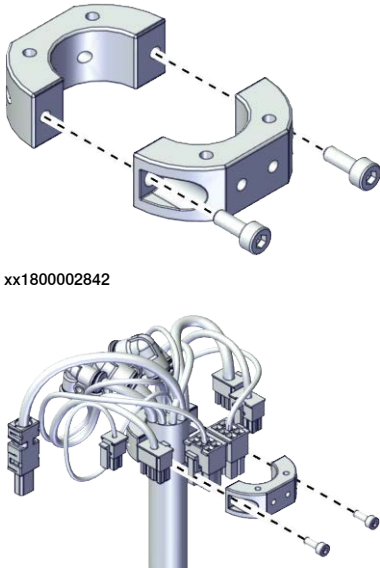
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

Continues on next page




## 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p> <p>xx1800002849</p>

## Removing the gear-2 pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


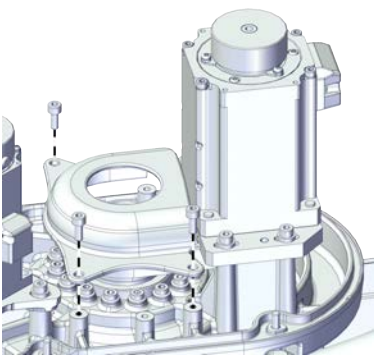
*Continues on next page*





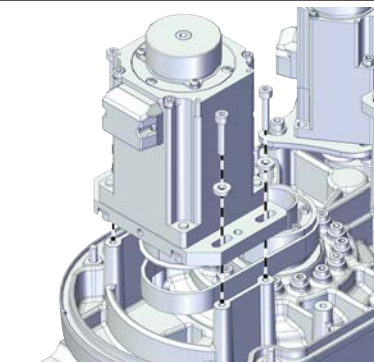

## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to release the pulley protection cover.	 xx2100001047



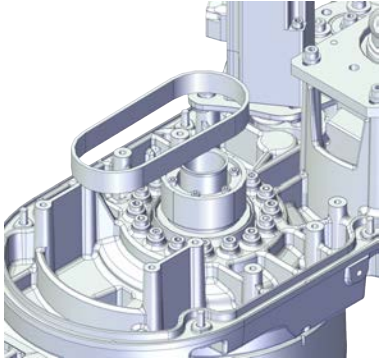
### Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001046
4	Remove the motor.  <b>Tip</b> Move the internal harness out of the way.	

Continues on next page




## Removing the axis-2 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the timing belt from the outer arm.	 xx2100001048

## Refitting the axis-2 timing belt

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 timing belt.

## Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

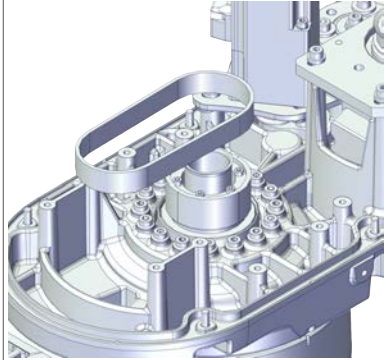
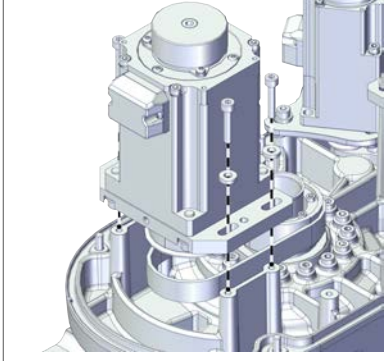
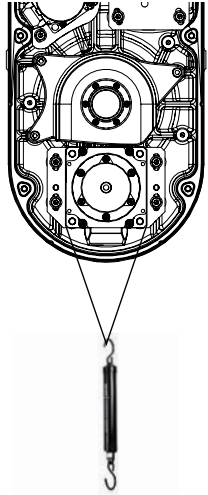
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

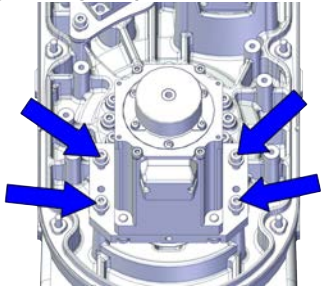
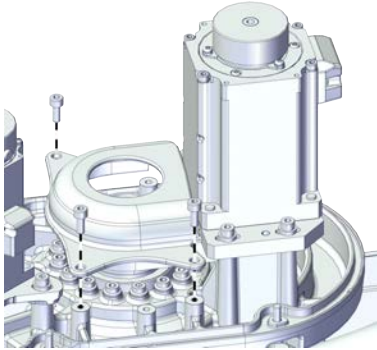
### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

Continued


	Action	Note
2	Refit the axis-2 timing belt onto the pulley on the axis-2 gearbox.	 xx2100001048
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	 xx2100001046 Timing belt A2: 3HAC061861-001
5	Hang a strap to the motor.	
6	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range. <div></div> <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction. <div></div> <b>Tip</b> If the ball screw will interfere with the handheld dynamometer, adjust the ball screw manually.	Used belt: 49-69 N New belt: 70-100 N  xx2100001125

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001176
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 218-259 Hz New belt: 260-390 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	
10	Refit the pulley protection cover and secure with screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001047

## Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	




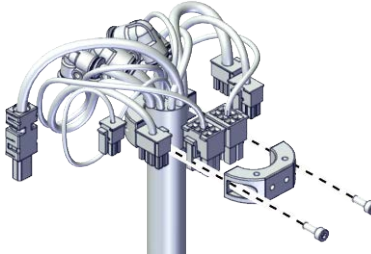


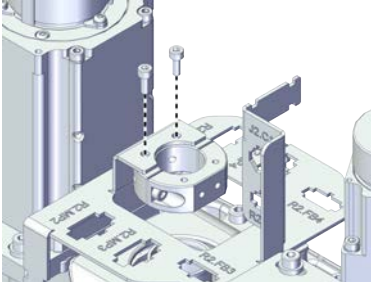


Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt




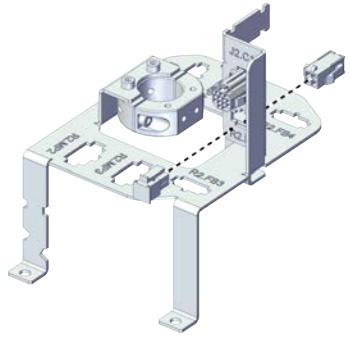

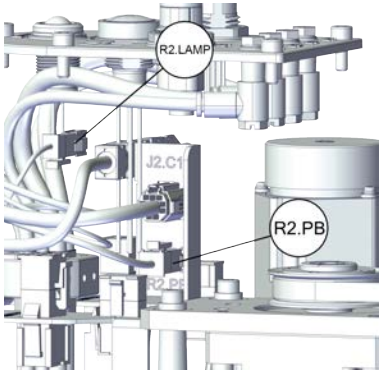

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

Continues on next page



## Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




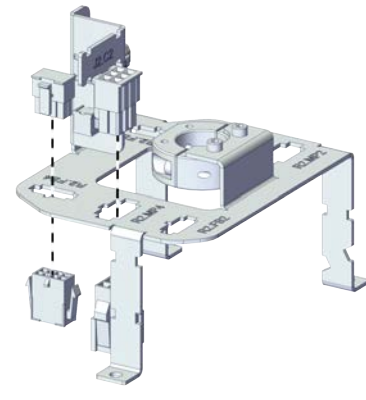

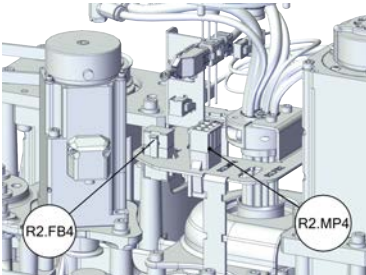



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

*Continued*




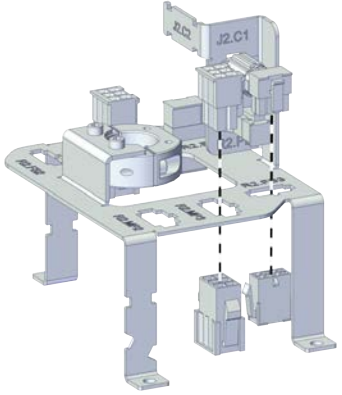

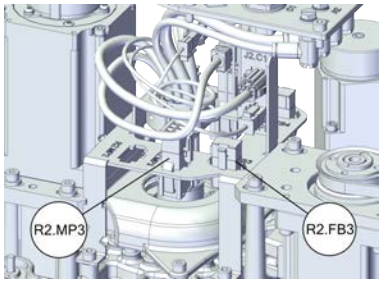

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




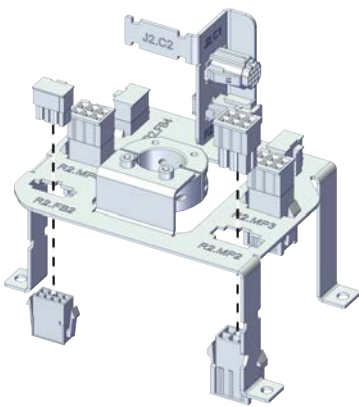

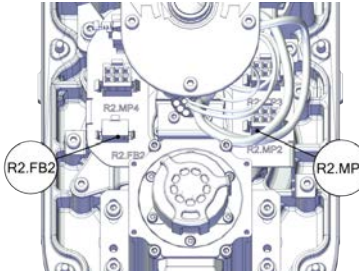



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

*Continued*



#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



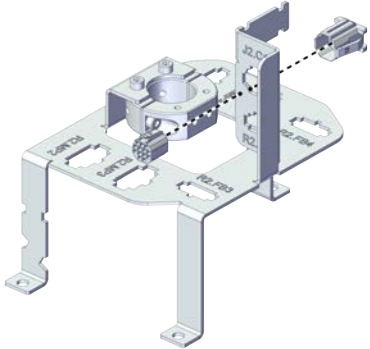

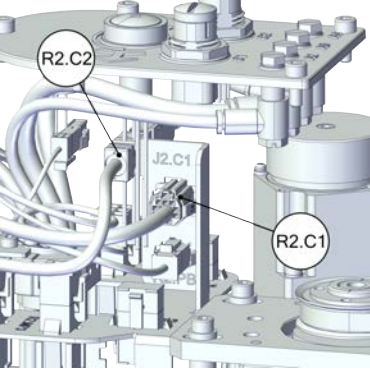


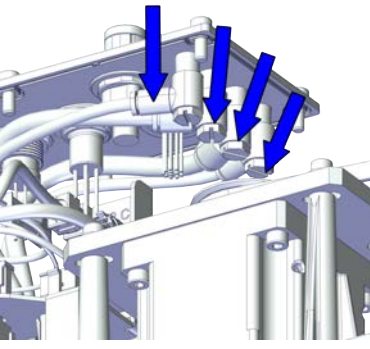
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

Continued




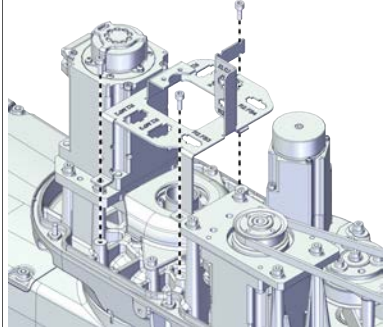
	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>

Continues on next page




	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

## Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




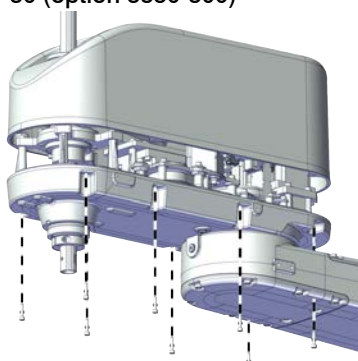
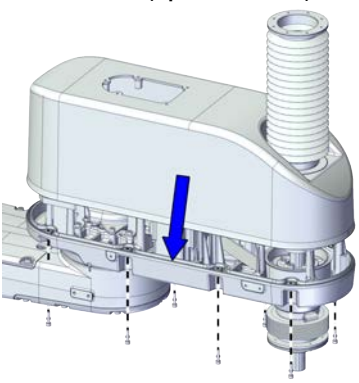
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

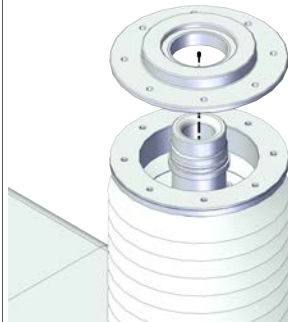
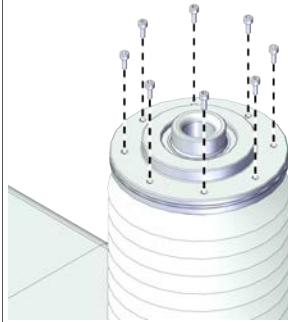


For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

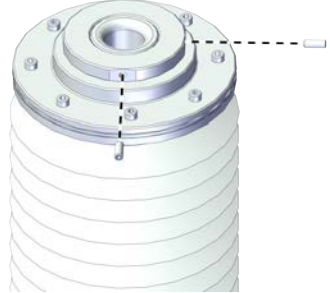
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt

*Continued*




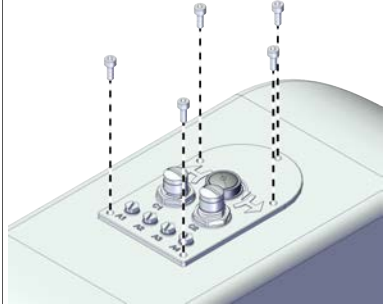
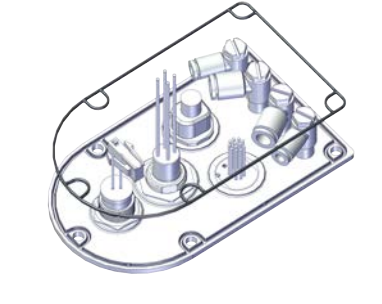
	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <div> </div> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Concluding procedure


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-2 timing belt  
Continued

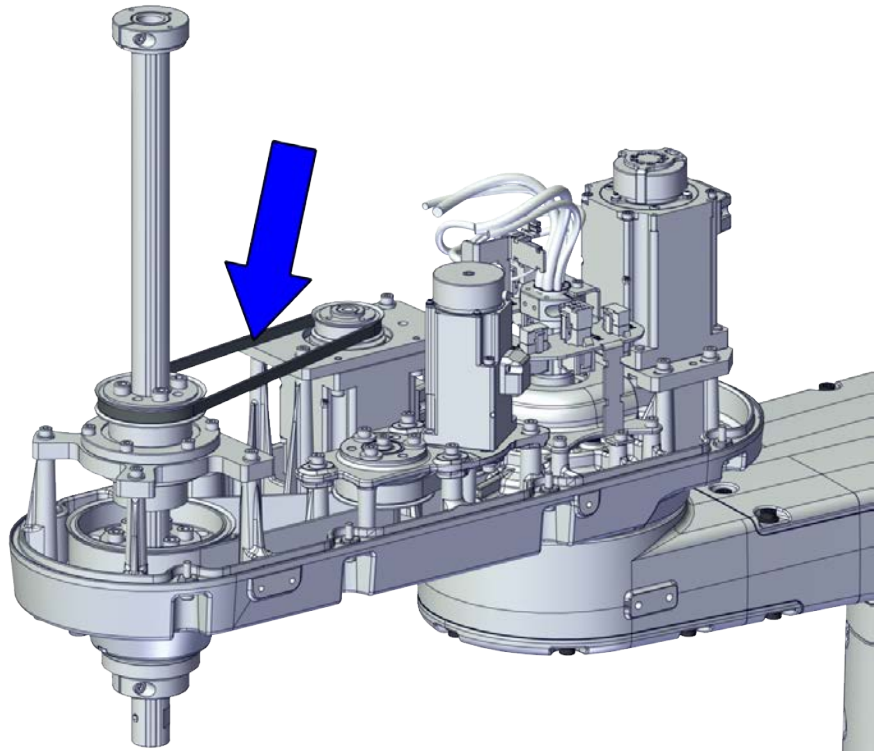
	Action	Note
3	<div> <b>DANGER</b></div> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	



## 5.6.7 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

### Location of the axis-3 timing belt

The axis-3 timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001020

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt A3	3HAC070464-001	

### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.7 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the axis-3 timing belt




Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 timing belt.

#### Preparations before removing the axis-3 timing belt



	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
4	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

## Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	



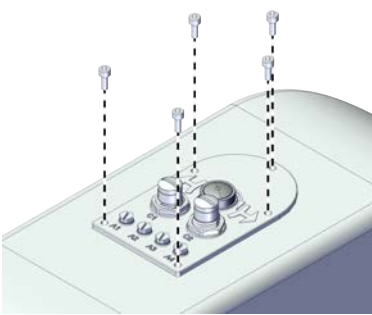
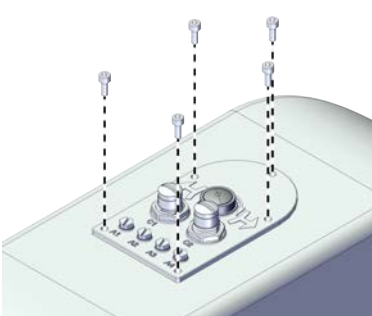
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair



### 5.6.7 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p>
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

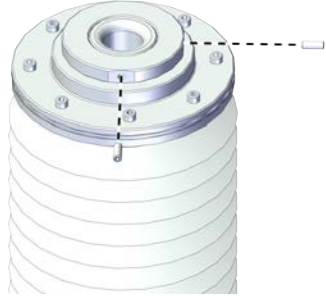

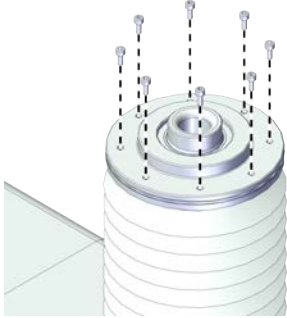
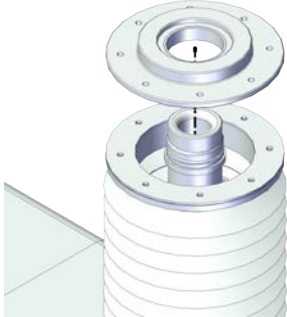
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the locking screws.</p>	 <p>xx2100002398</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the top cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

*Continues on next page*




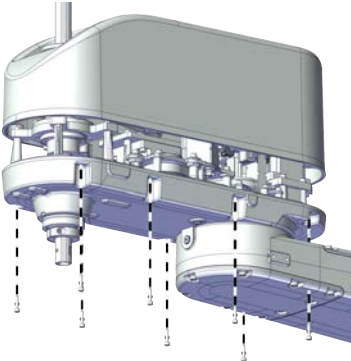
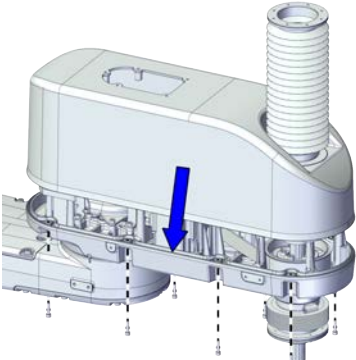


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.7 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

*Continued*




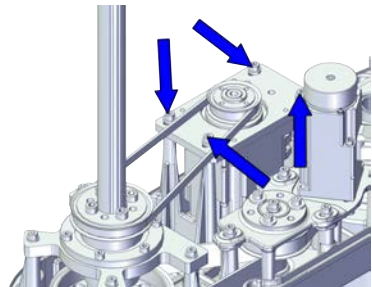
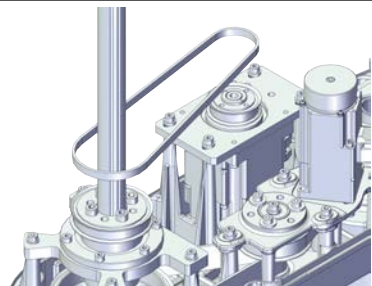
#### Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p>  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the cover with bellow and housing.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx210000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

*Continues on next page*



## Removing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2100001078
5	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001079

## Refitting the axis-3 timing belt

Use these procedures to refit the axis-3 timing belt.

Continues on next page


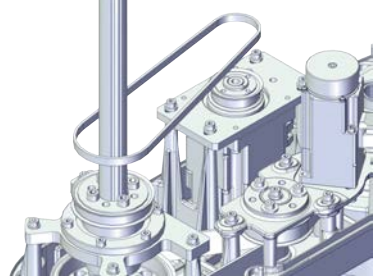
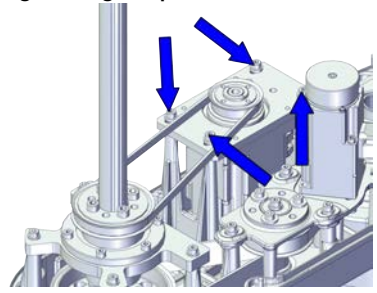


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.7 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt


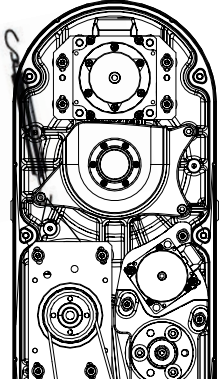
*Continued*

#### Refitting the axis-3 timing belt


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001</p>  <p>xx2100001079</p>
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001078</p>
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N New belt: 40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 92-109 Hz New belt: 110-145 Hz
7	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

## Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




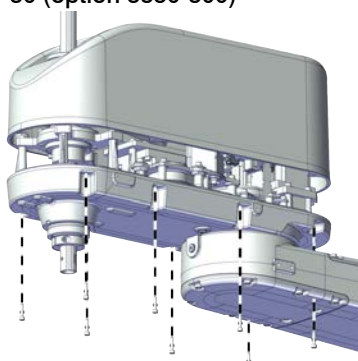
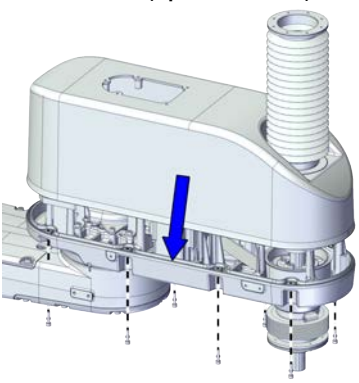
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.7 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

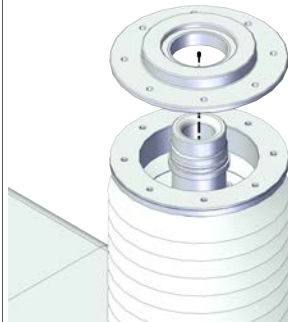
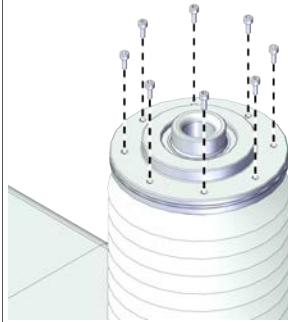


For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

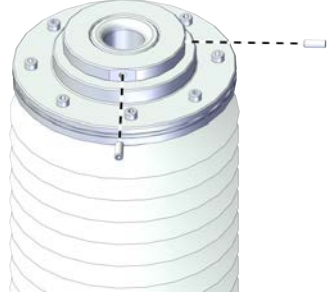
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.7 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

*Continued*




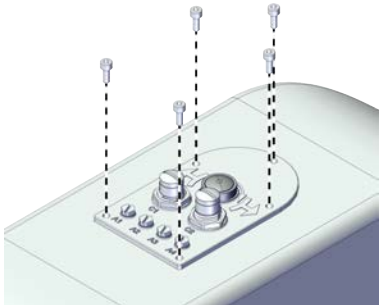
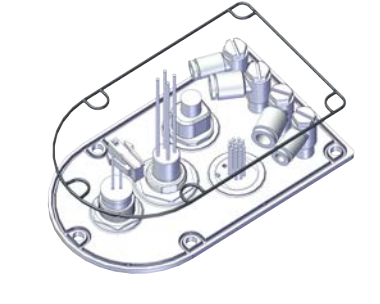
	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.	Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002398

### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

---

### 5.6.7 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

*Continued*

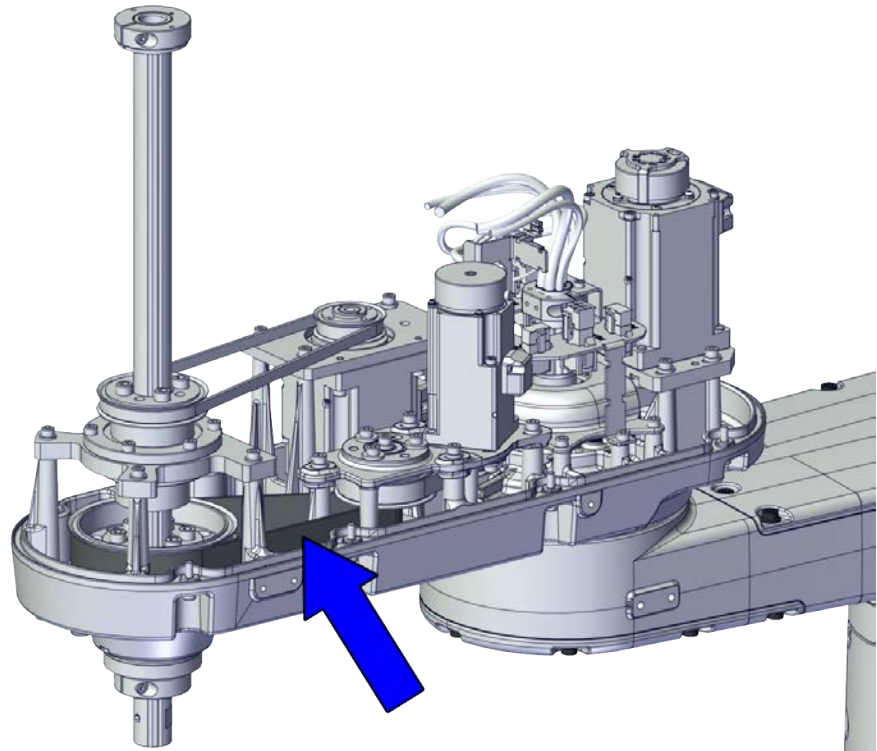
	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



## 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

### Location of the axis-4 second timing belt

The axis-4 second timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001021

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt, A4-2	3HAC070471-001	

### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.  If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.  Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.  Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b>  Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the axis-4 second timing belt


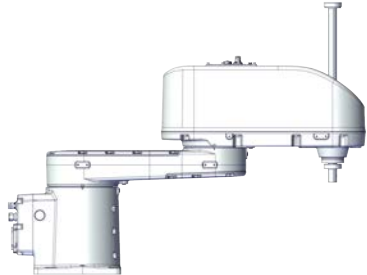


Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 second timing belt.

#### Preparations before removing the axis-4 second timing belt


	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

## Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




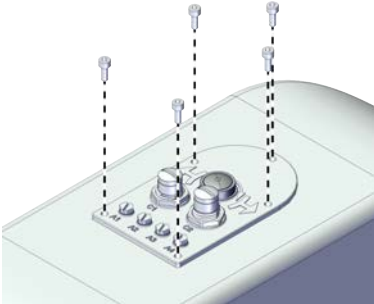
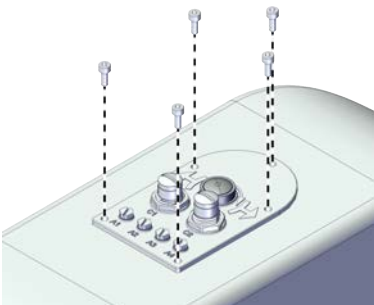
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	


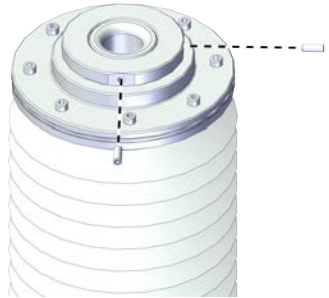

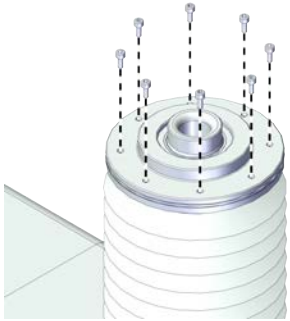
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

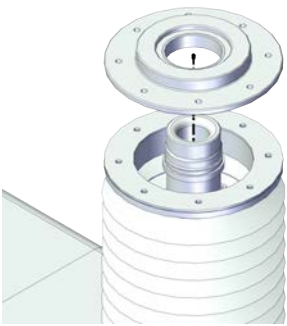
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm




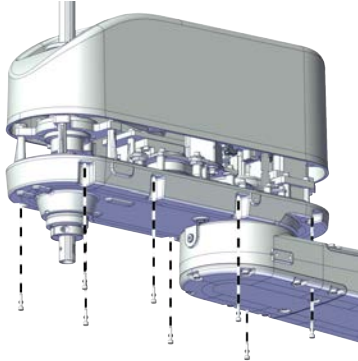
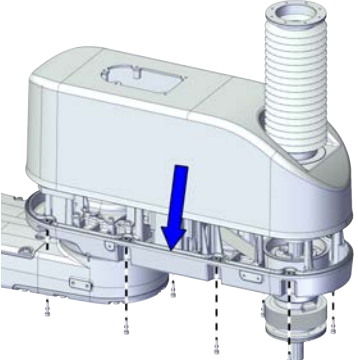
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

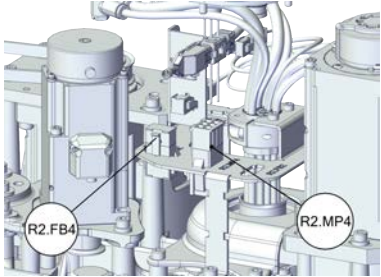

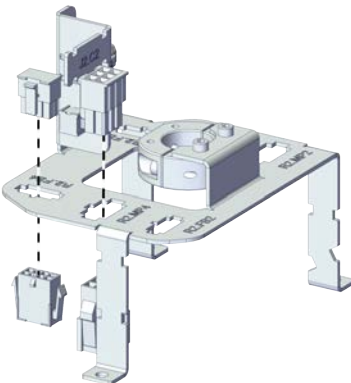
*Continues on next page*






## 5 Repair

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket. <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; margin-top: 10px;">  <div> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p> </div> </div>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>

### Removing the axis-3 timing belt

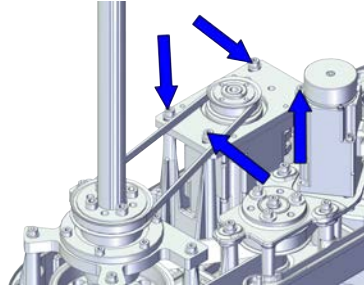
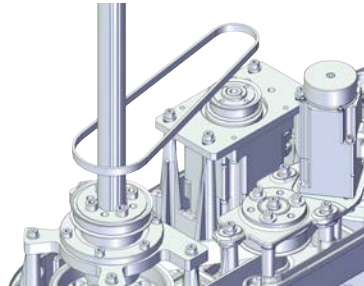
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room            Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!            See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something.            The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



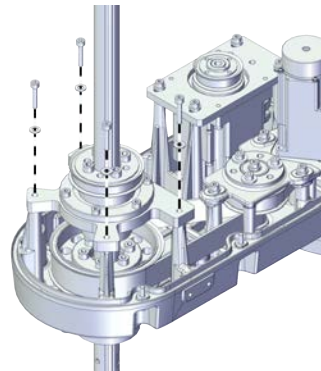


## 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

Continued

	Action	Note
4	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2100001078
5	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001079

## Releasing the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Removing the screws of the ball screw flange to make enough space for removing the axis-4 second timing belt.	 xx2100001082

Continues on next page



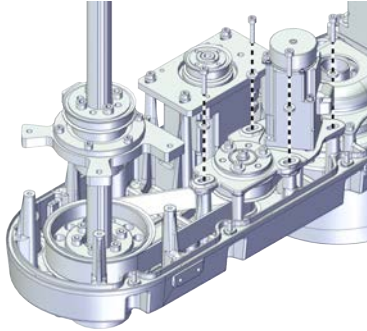


## 5 Repair



### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

#### Removing the transmission module assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Removing the screws of the transmission module assembly.	 xx2100001091
4	Take out the transmission module assembly with the axis-4-2 timing belt.	

#### Removing the axis-4 second timing belt

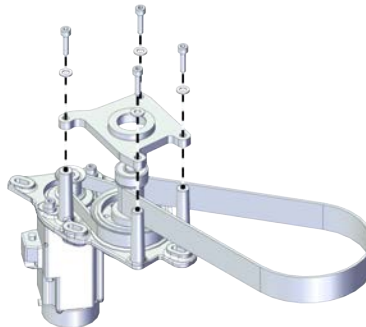
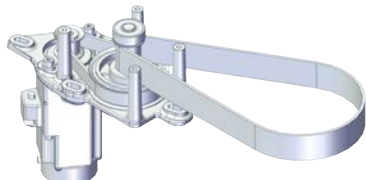
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*



## 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt


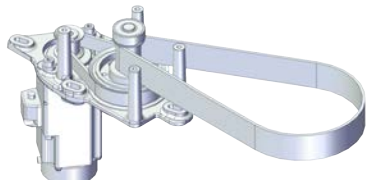
*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws and washers on the transmission module flange to let the axis-4 second timing belt be free.	 xx2100001092
4	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001093

**Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt**

Use these procedures to refit the axis-4 second timing belt.

**Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the transmission module**

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the transmission module.	 xx2100001093 Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001

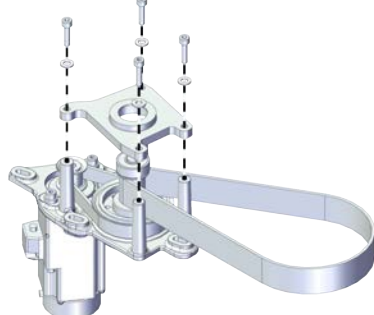
*Continues on next page*





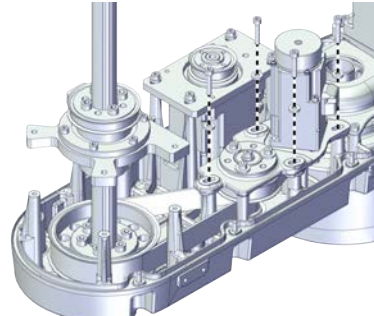
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Refit the transmission module flange and secure with the screws and washers.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Spring washer 9x4.3x1 Steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001092</p>


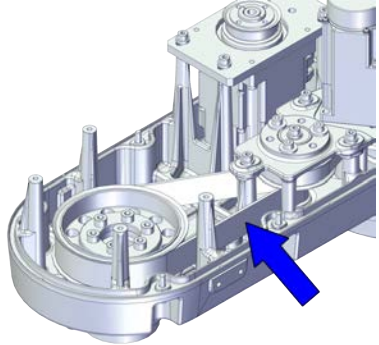
#### Refitting the transmission module assembly to the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the transmission module assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Place the axis-4 second timing belt through the ball screw flange.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001091</p>
3	Secure with the screws without fully tightened.	




*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the pulley

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the belt to the pulley. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.</p>	<p>Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001</p>  <p>xx2100001086</p>

## Fastening the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	

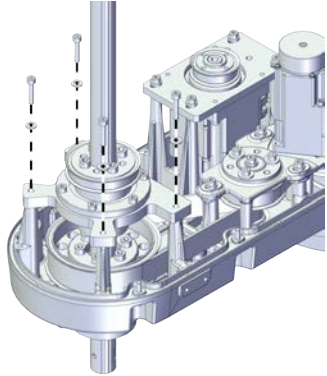
Continues on next page






## 5 Repair

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Tighten the screws of the ball screw flange.	 <p>xx2100001082</p>

### Adjusting the axis-4 second timing belt tension


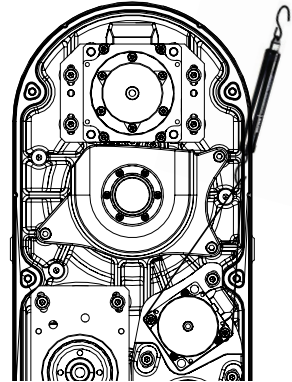
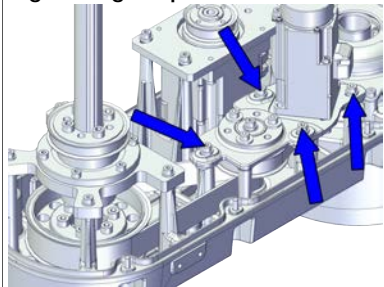
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Hang a strong strap to the motor.	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 168-189 N New belt: 240-270 N</p>  <p>xx2100001127</p>
6	Fasten the screws on the transmission module to the recommended tightening torque.	<p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001087</p>
7	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 151-179 Hz New belt: 180-240 Hz</p>
8	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	



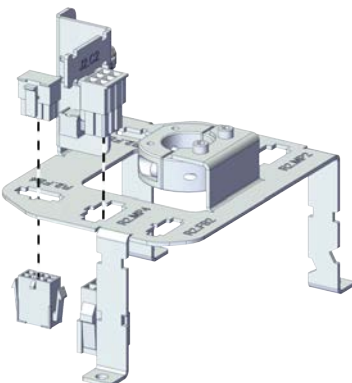

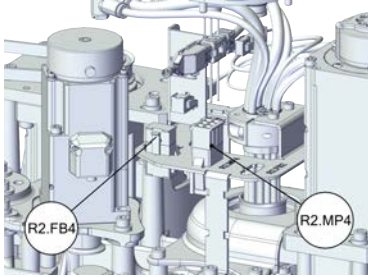

*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

Continued

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

### Refitting the axis-3 timing belt

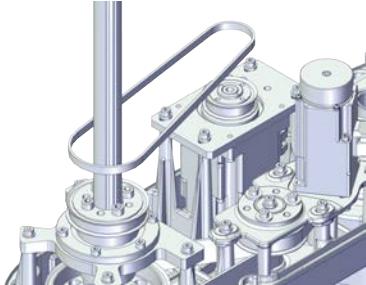
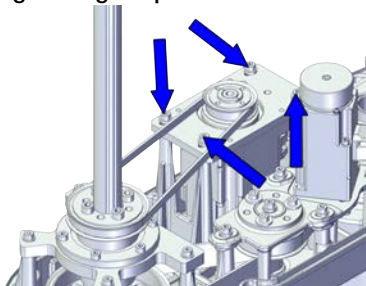

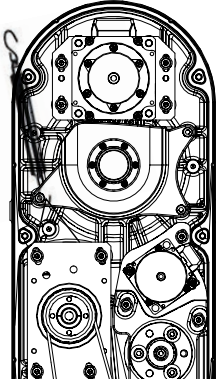
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



## 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001  xx2100001079
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001078
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	
5	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.	Used belt: 28-37 N New belt: 40-53 N  xx2100001126
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 92-109 Hz New belt: 110-145 Hz
7	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

*Continues on next page*





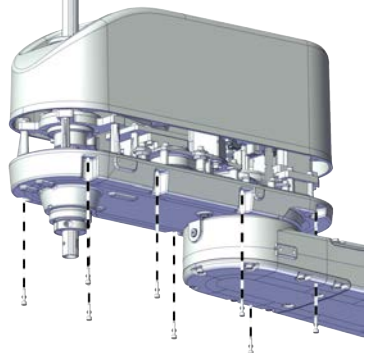
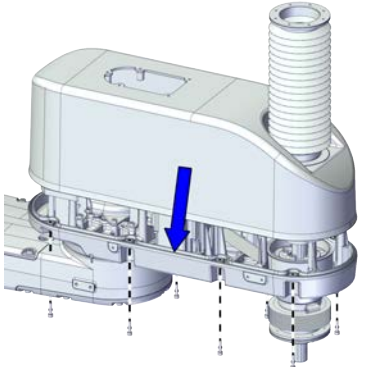


## 5 Repair

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm


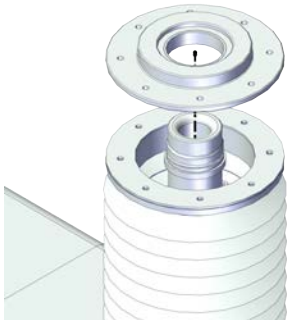
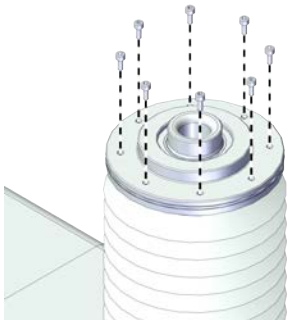
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

*Continues on next page*



For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>



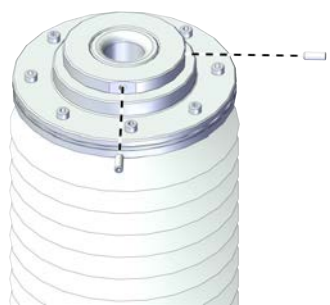
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover




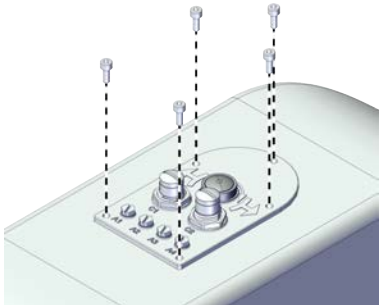
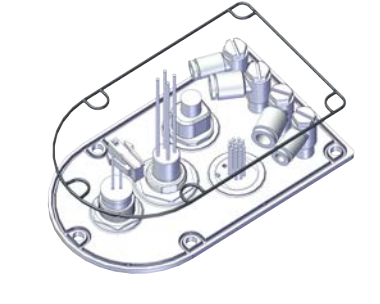
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

---

### 5.6.8 Replacing the axis-4 second timing belt

*Continued*

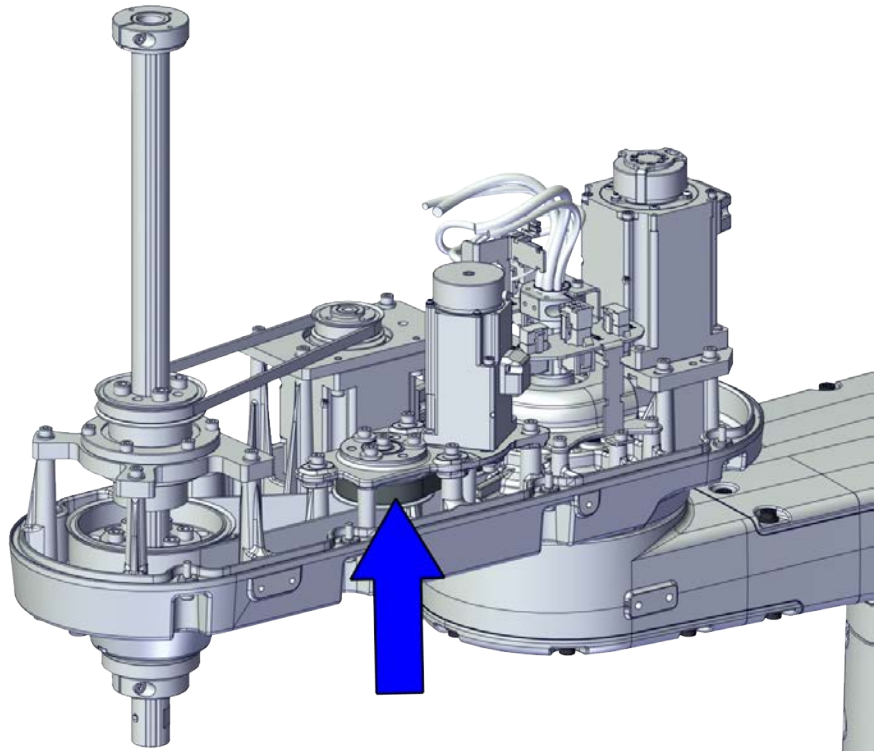
	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



## 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

### Location of the axis-4 timing belt

The axis-4 timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001022

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt, A4-1	3HAC070470-001	

### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the axis-4 timing belt


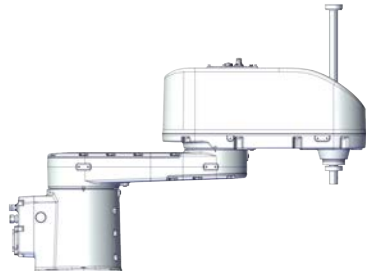


Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 timing belt.

#### Preparations before removing the axis-4 timing belt


	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

## Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




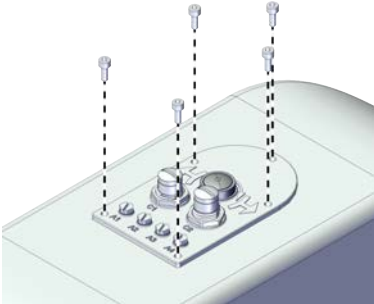
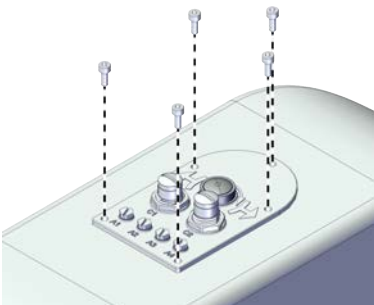
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	


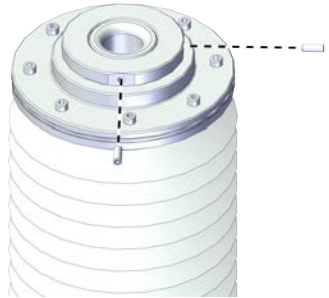

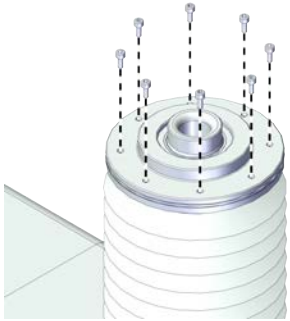
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

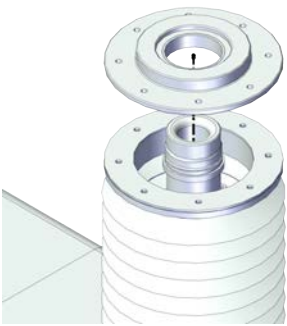
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*




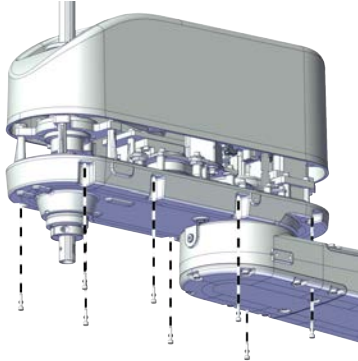
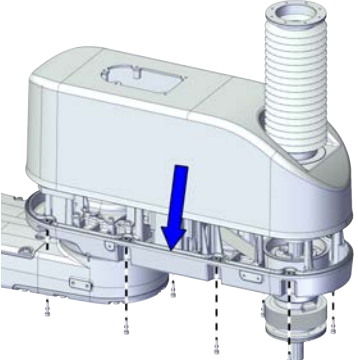
	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 xx2100002402

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

## Removing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	


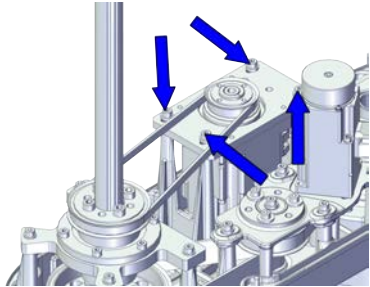
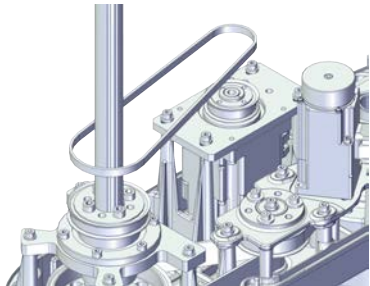
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

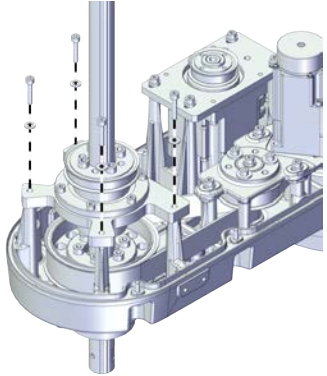
	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2100001078
5	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001079

#### Releasing the ball screw flange



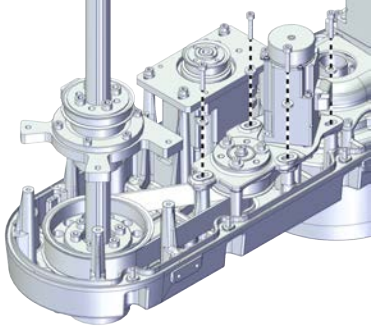
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	Removing the screws of the ball screw flange to make enough space for removing the axis-4 second timing belt.	 <p>xx2100001082</p>

#### Removing the transmission module assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Removing the screws of the transmission module assembly.	 <p>xx2100001091</p>
4	Take out the transmission module assembly with the axis-4-2 timing belt.	

*Continues on next page*



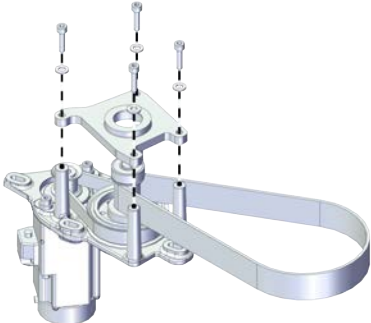
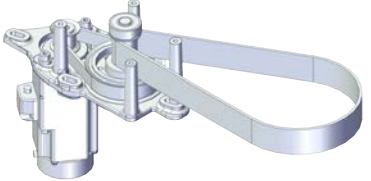


## 5 Repair


### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

#### Removing the axis-4 second timing belt


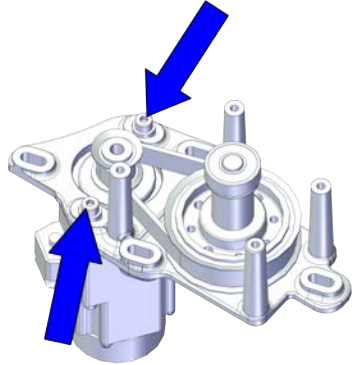
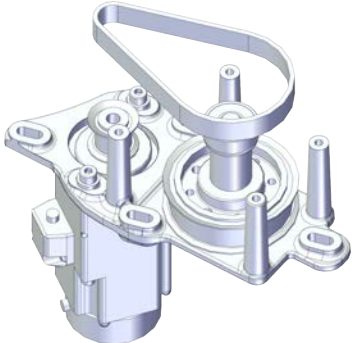
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers on the transmission module flange to let the axis-4 second timing belt be free.	 xx2100001092
4	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001093

#### Removing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*




	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Loosen the screws of the axis-4 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-4 timing belt be free.	 xx2100001095
4	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001096

**Refitting the axis-4 timing belt**

Use these procedures to refit the axis-4 timing belt.

**Refitting the axis-4 timing belt**

	Action	Note
1	<b>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</b> Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

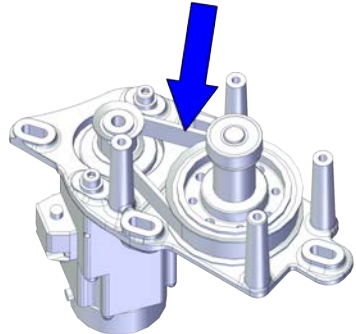
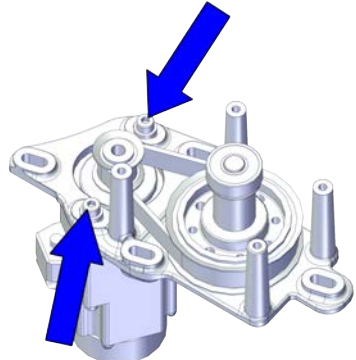

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair



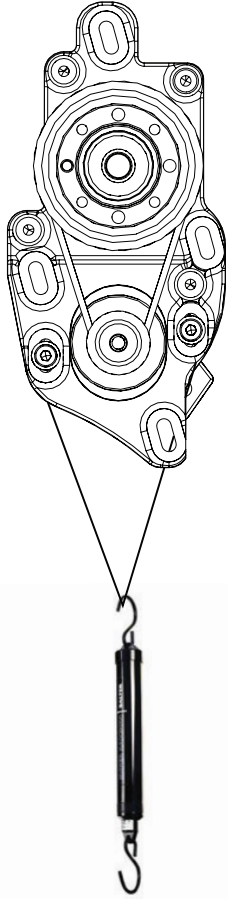
### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*


	Action	Note
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley.	Timing belt, A4-1: 3HAC070470-001  xx2100001097
3	Refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001095
5	Hang a strap to the motor and hold the transmission module.  <b>Note</b> Just tighten the tool.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>If the ball screw will interfere with the handheld dynamometer, adjust the ball screw manually.</p>	<p>Used belt: 24.5-34 N New belt: 35-50 N</p>  <p>xx2100001128</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 205-244 Hz New belt: 245-340 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	
10	Remove the axis-4 belt tension adjustment tool.	

## Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the transmission module

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

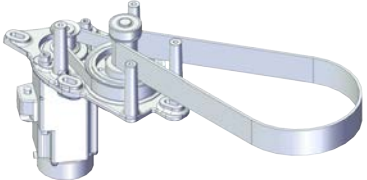
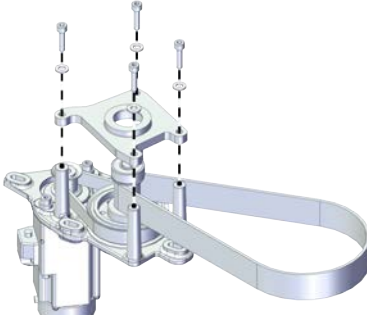
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the timing belt to the transmission module.	 <p>xx2100001093</p> <p>Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001</p>
3	Refit the transmission module flange and secure with the screws and washers.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Spring washer 9x4.3x1 Steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001092</p>

#### Refitting the transmission module assembly to the outer arm


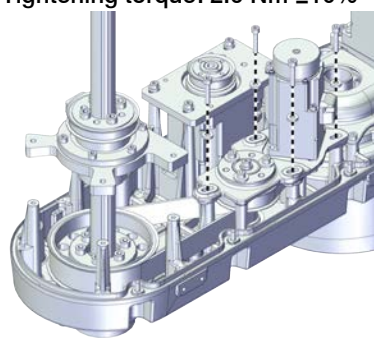
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*


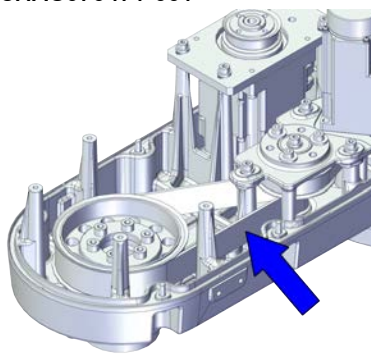


## 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the transmission module assembly to the outer arm.   <b>Tip</b>  Place the axis-4 second timing belt through the ball screw flange.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%    xx2100001091
3	Secure with the screws without fully tightened.	

## Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the pulley

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b>  After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Refit the belt to the pulley. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001    xx2100001086

*Continues on next page*




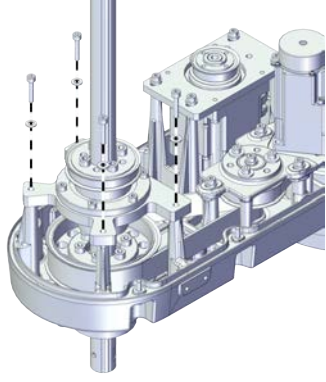


## 5 Repair


### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

#### Fastening the ball screw flange




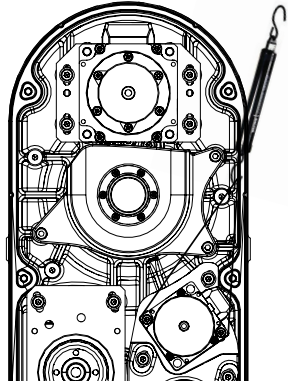
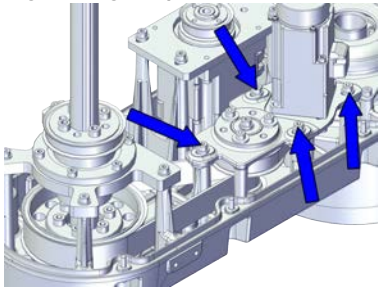
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Tighten the screws of the ball screw flange.	  xx2100001082

#### Adjusting the axis-4 second timing belt tension

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Hang a strong strap to the motor.	
5	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.	Used belt: 168-189 N New belt: 240-270 N  xx2100001127
6	Fasten the screws on the transmission module to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001087
7	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 151-179 Hz New belt: 180-240 Hz
8	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

Continues on next page




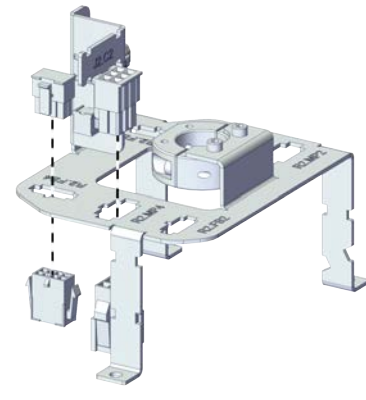

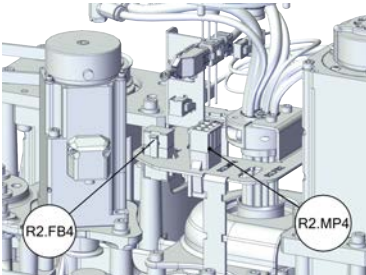



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*


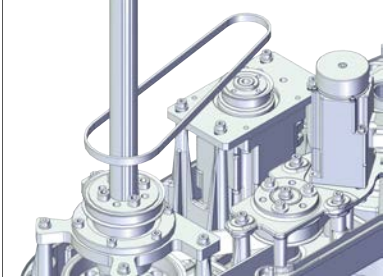
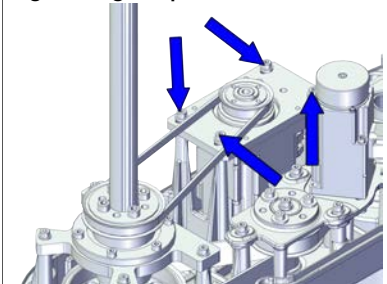
#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001</p>  <p>xx2100001079</p>
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm 10\%</math></p>  <p>xx2100001078</p>
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	


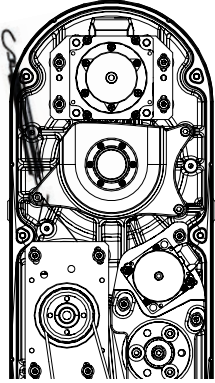
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*




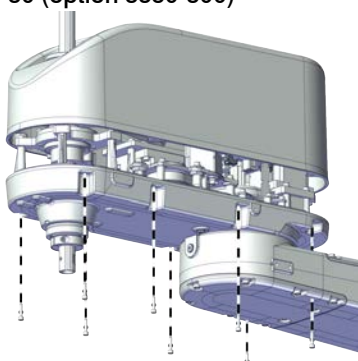
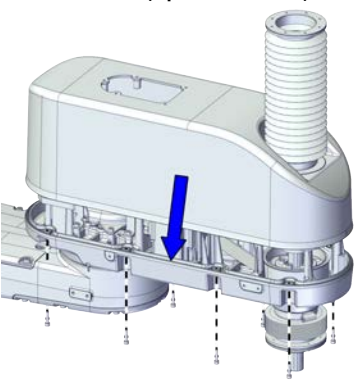
	Action	Note
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N New belt:40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
6	<p>Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.</p>	<p>Used belt: 92-109 Hz New belt:110-145 Hz</p>
7	<p>If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.</p>	

### Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	


*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

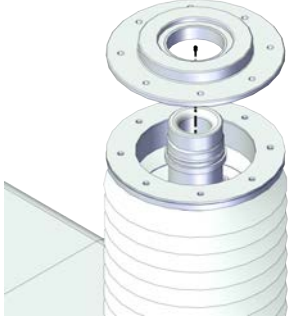
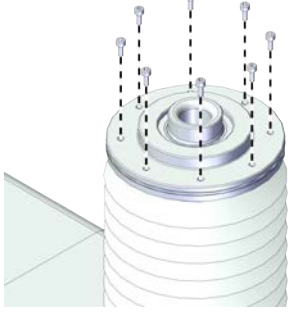


Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

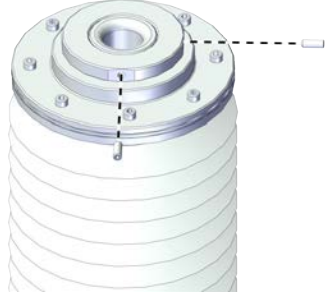
	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*




## 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




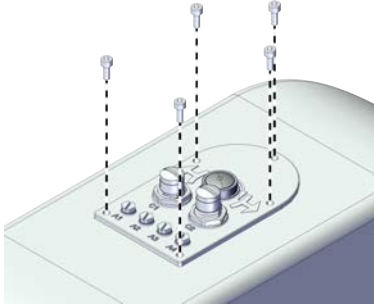
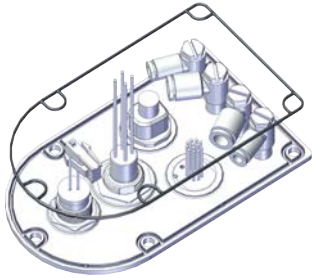
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.9 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



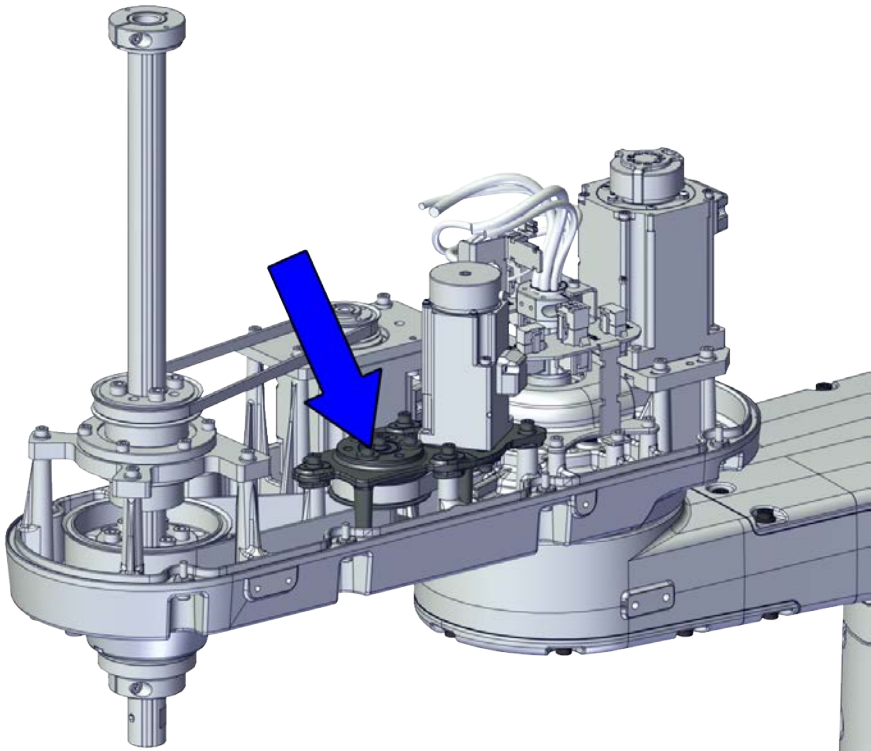
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

#### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

##### Location of the transmission module

The transmission module is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001018

##### Required spare parts



##### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Transmission module	3HAC076579-001	

##### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

*Continues on next page*



Equipment	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

**Required consumables**

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	<p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<p><b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b></p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a>.</p>
	<p><b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b></p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

**Removing the transmission module**

Use these procedures to remove the transmission module.

**Preparations before removing the transmission module**

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	


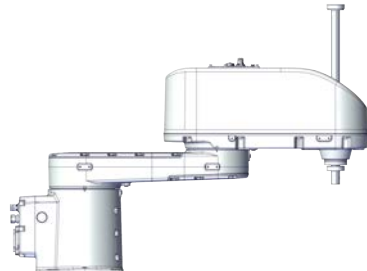


*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*




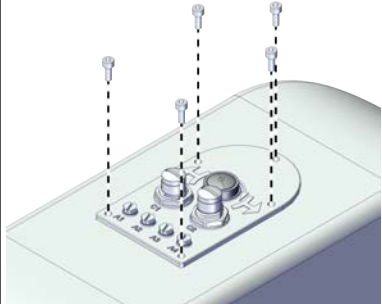
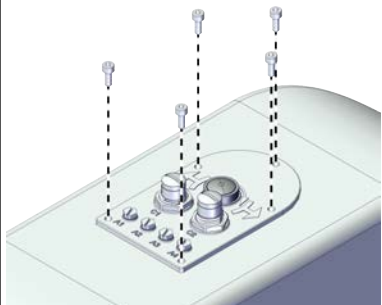
	Action	Note
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p>Jog all axes to zero position.</p>	 xx2100000930
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


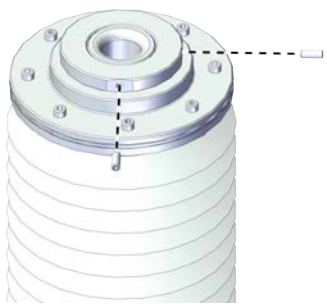

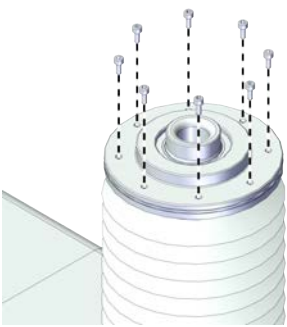
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

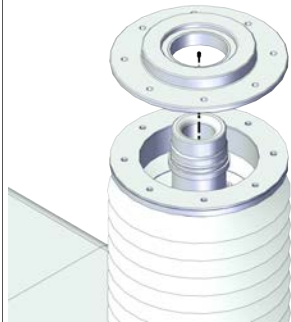
### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

## Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!  See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	




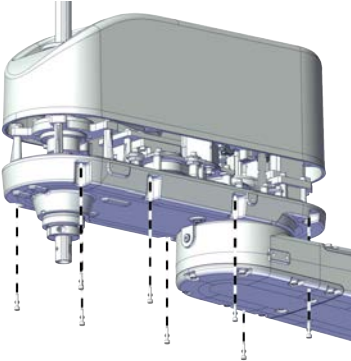
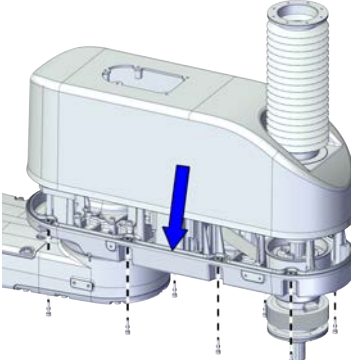
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

Continued

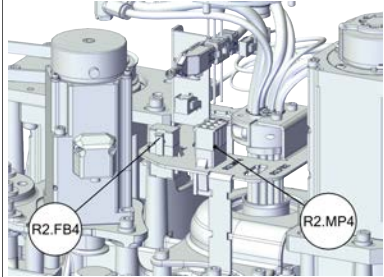

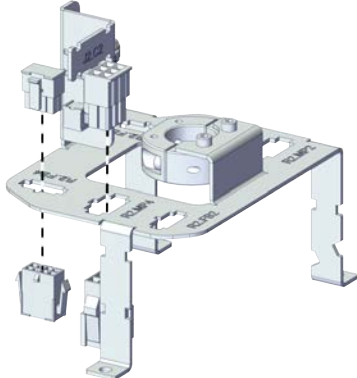
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor




	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 xx2100000938
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000939

## Removing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	

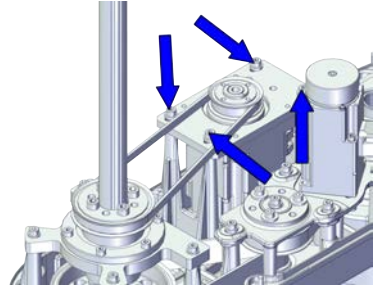
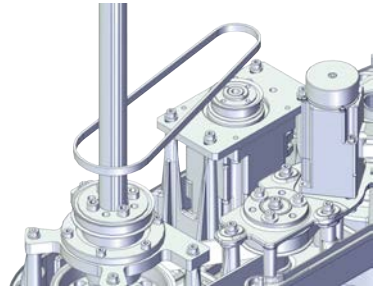
Continues on next page





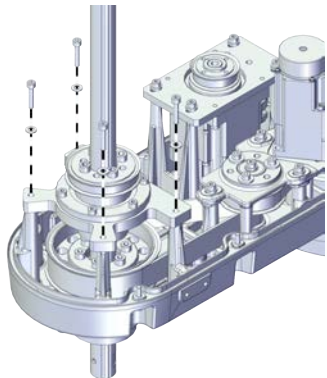
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2100001078
5	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001079



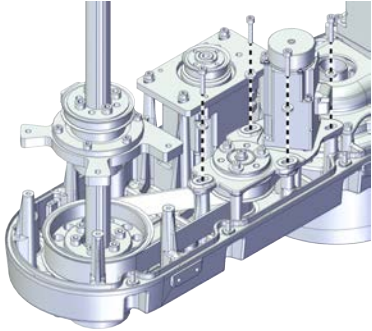
### Releasing the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Removing the screws of the ball screw flange to make enough space for removing the axis-4 second timing belt.	 xx2100001082



*Continues on next page*



## Removing the transmission module assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Removing the screws of the transmission module assembly.	 xx2100001091
4	Take out the transmission module assembly with the axis-4-2 timing belt.	

## Removing the axis-4 second timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

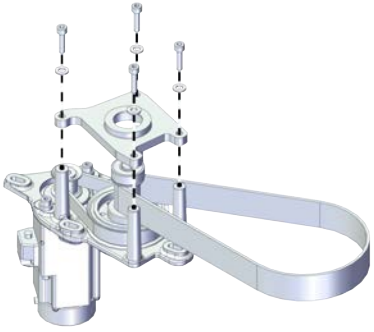
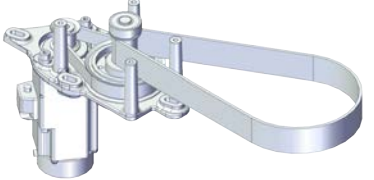
Continues on next page





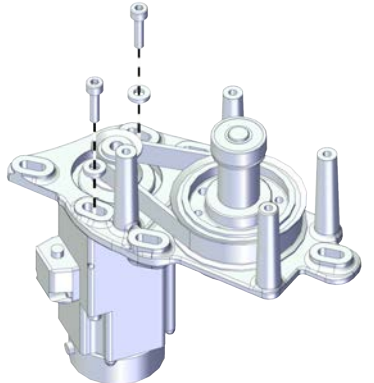

## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws and washers on the transmission module flange to let the axis-4 second timing belt be free.	 xx2100001092
4	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001093

#### Removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001094
4	Remove the motor from the transmission module.   <b>Tip</b> Move the internal harness out of the way.	

*Continues on next page*



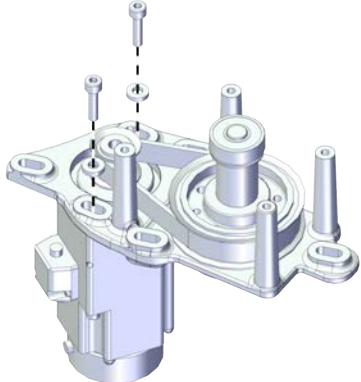


	Action	Note
5	Remove the timing belt from the transmission module.	


### Refitting the transmission module

Use these procedures to refit the transmission module.

#### Refitting the axis-4 motor sub-assembly to the transmission module

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the motor to the transmission module.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Move the internal harness out of the way.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
3	Refit the screws and washers.	 <p>xx2100001094</p>

#### Refitting the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

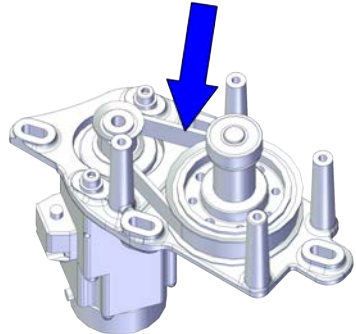
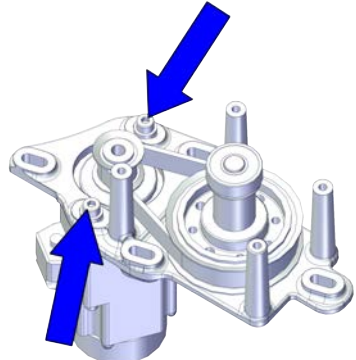

Continues on next page



## 5 Repair



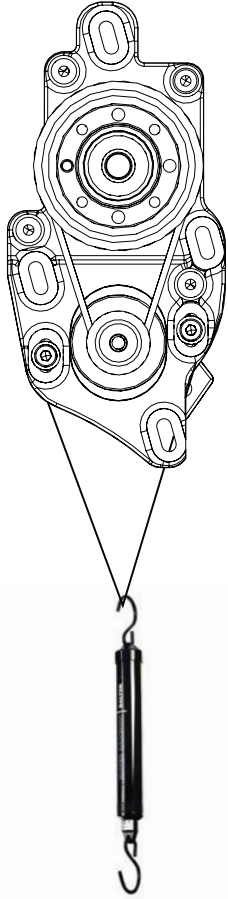
### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*


	Action	Note
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley.	Timing belt, A4-1: 3HAC070470-001  xx2100001097
3	Refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001095
5	Hang a strap to the motor and hold the transmission module.  <b>Note</b> Just tighten the tool.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>If the ball screw will interfere with the handheld dynamometer, adjust the ball screw manually.</p>	<p>Used belt: 24.5-34 N New belt: 35-50 N</p>  <p>xx2100001128</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 205-244 Hz New belt: 245-340 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	
10	Remove the axis-4 belt tension adjustment tool.	

## Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the transmission module

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

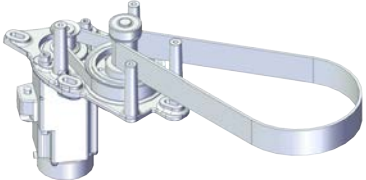
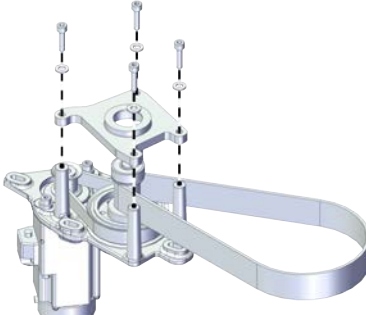
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the timing belt to the transmission module.	 <p>xx2100001093</p> <p>Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001</p>
3	Refit the transmission module flange and secure with the screws and washers.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Spring washer 9x4.3x1 Steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001092</p>

#### Refitting the transmission module assembly to the outer arm


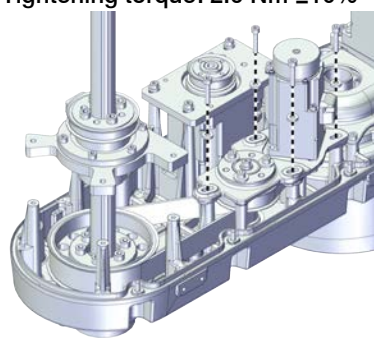
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*


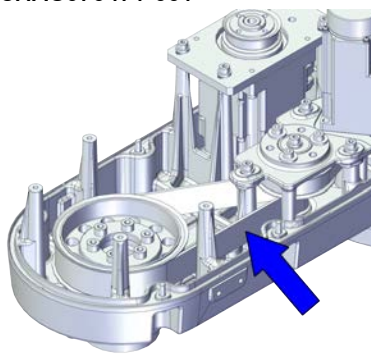


## 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the transmission module assembly to the outer arm.   <b>Tip</b>  Place the axis-4 second timing belt through the ball screw flange.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%
3	Secure with the screws without fully tightened.	  xx2100001091

## Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the pulley

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b>  After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Refit the belt to the pulley. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001    xx2100001086

*Continues on next page*




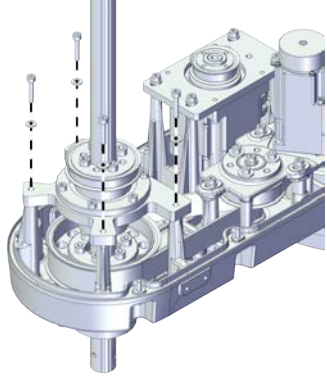


## 5 Repair


### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*

#### Fastening the ball screw flange




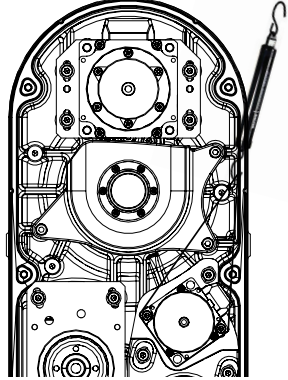
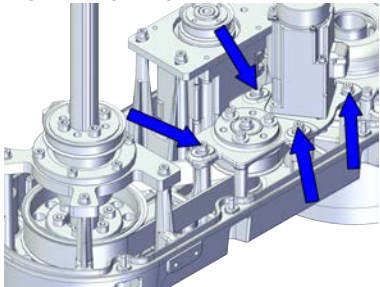
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Tighten the screws of the ball screw flange.	 xx2100001082

#### Adjusting the axis-4 second timing belt tension

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Hang a strong strap to the motor.	
5	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.	Used belt: 168-189 N New belt: 240-270 N  xx2100001127
6	Fasten the screws on the transmission module to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001087
7	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 151-179 Hz New belt: 180-240 Hz
8	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

Continues on next page




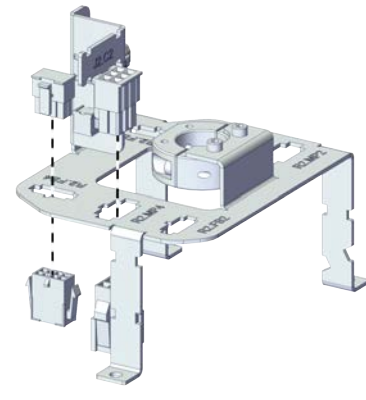

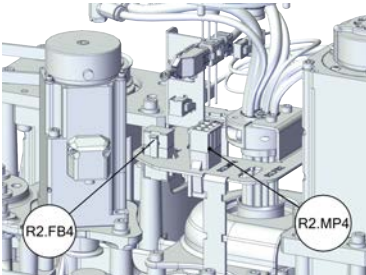



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*


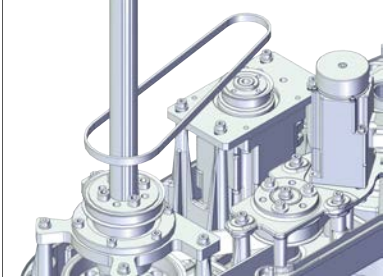
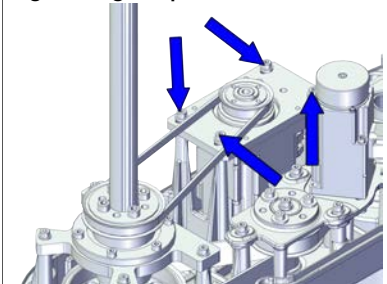
#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001</p>  <p>xx2100001079</p>
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001078</p>
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	


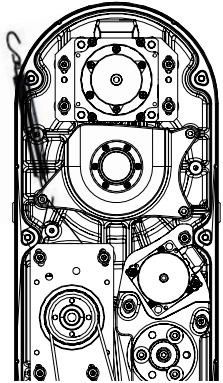
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*




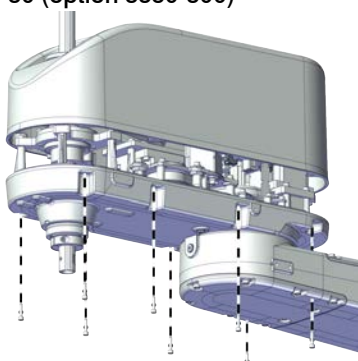
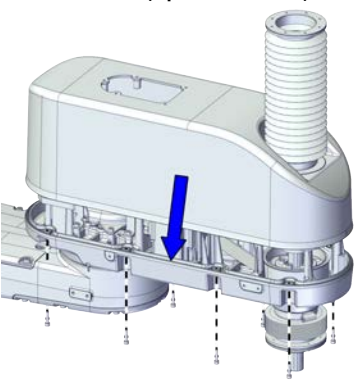
	Action	Note
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N New belt:40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
6	<p>Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.</p>	<p>Used belt: 92-109 Hz New belt:110-145 Hz</p>
7	<p>If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.</p>	

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	


*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

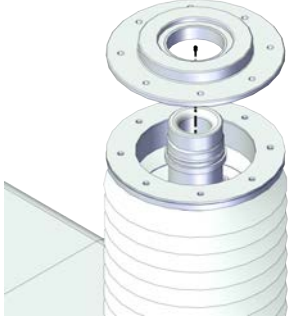
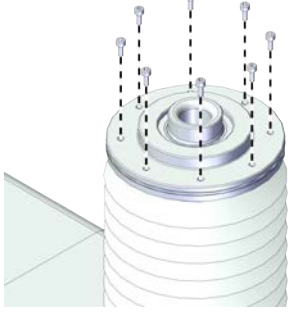


Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

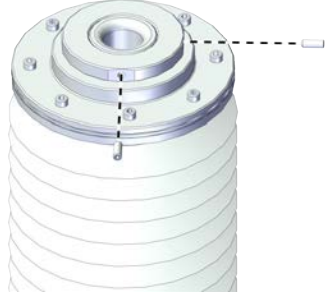
### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

*Continued*


	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




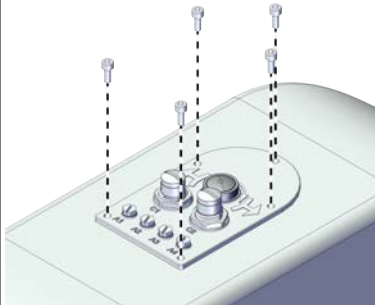
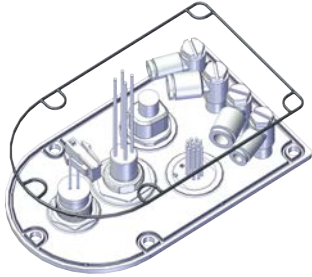
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.10 Replacing the transmission module

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



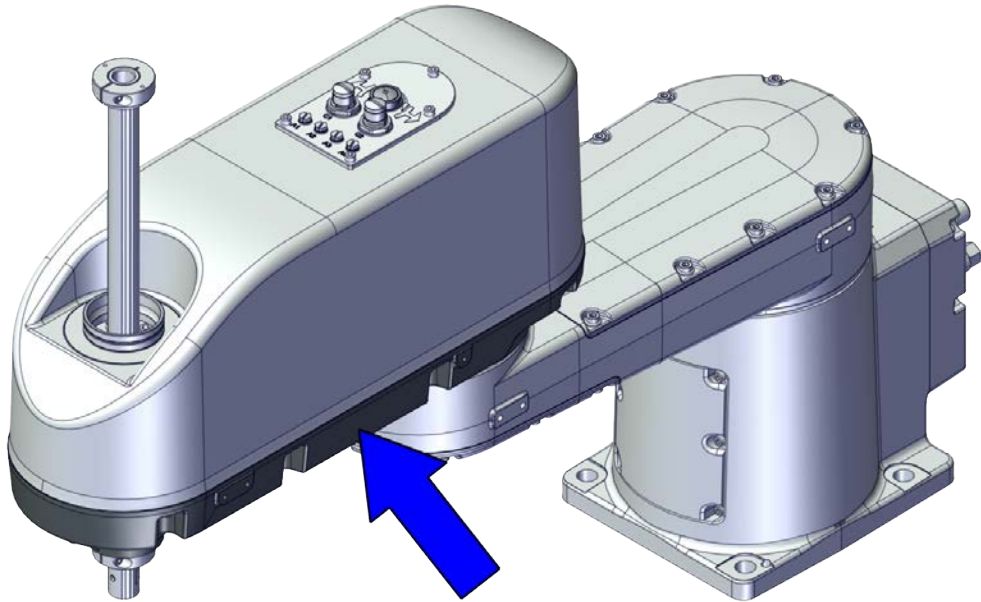
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

#### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

##### Location of the outer arm

The outer arm is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001013

##### Required spare parts



##### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Outer arm	3HAC076575-001	
Outer arm cover	3HAC076611-001	
Outer arm	3HAC081478-001	
Outer arm cover	3HAC081494-001	
Gasket	3HAC073493-001	

##### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .

*Continues on next page*



Equipment	Article number	Note
IRB 920 special tool	3HAC077249-001	Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

**Required consumables**

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	<p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<p><b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b></p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a>.</p>
	<p><b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b></p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

**Removing the outer arm**

Use these procedures to remove the outer arm.

*Continues on next page*






## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm



*Continued*

Preparations before removing the outer arm

Remove the robot from the wall or enough space.



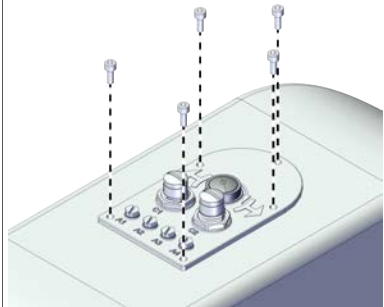
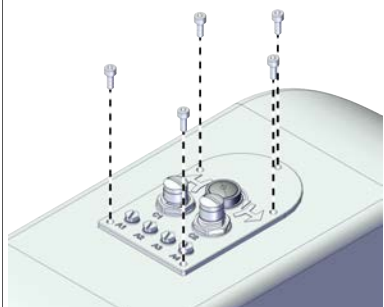
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight.</p> <p>If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
4	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	



*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p>
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

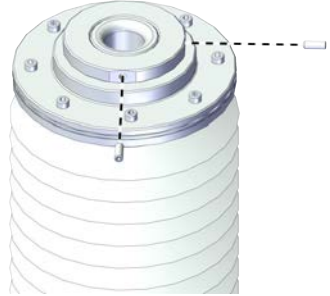

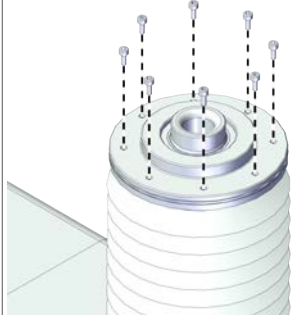
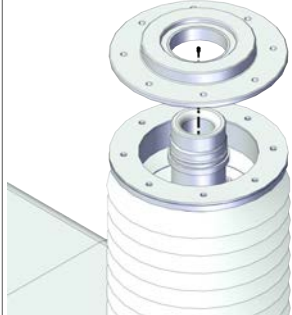
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm






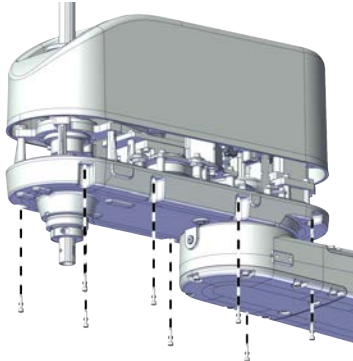
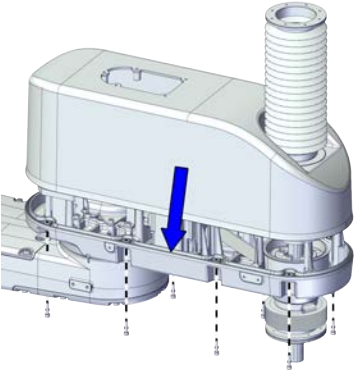
*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the locking screws.</p>	 <p>xx2100002398</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the top cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

*Continues on next page*



## Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.   <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the cover with bellow and housing.   <b>Note</b> The bellow does not need to be removed separately.   <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30   xx2100000933  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)   xx2100002427

Continues on next page





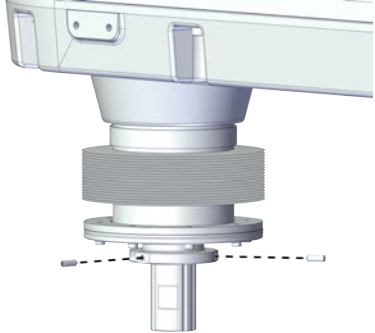

## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*

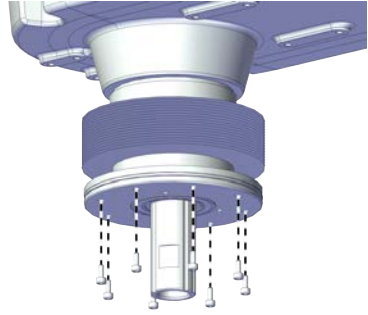
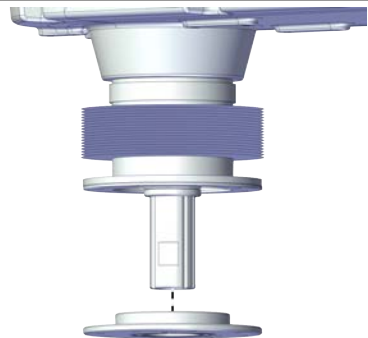
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the lower cover and the flange with bearing



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002404
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the lower cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002405

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002406</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>

#### Removing the lower bellow

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

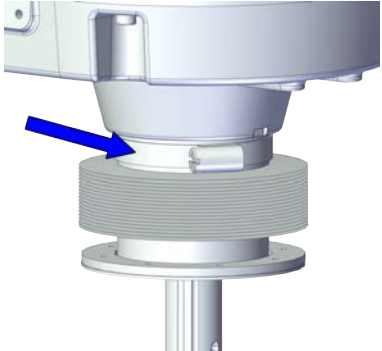



*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*

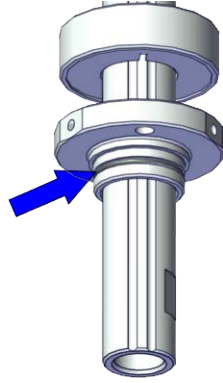
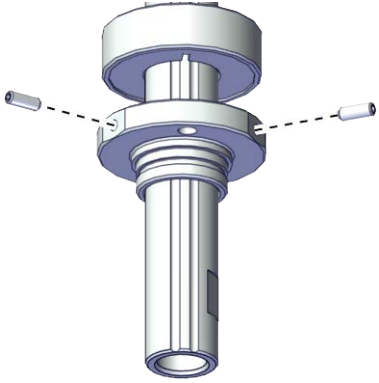

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loosen the upper bellow clamp by loosening the screw and pull the clamp apart slightly.</p>	 <p>xx2100002408</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the bellow from the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Clean the bellow from the glue if it will be reused.</p>	
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Remove the bellow gasket from the bellow.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Clean the bellow gasket from the glue if it will be reused.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Be careful when removing the bellow gaskets. If any broken, replace it.</p>	

#### Removing the shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the O-ring from the lower housing.</p>	 <p>xx1900001615</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the attachment screws.</p>	 <p>xx1900001616</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the shaft from the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The shaft is glued to the ball screw.</p> <p>Be careful with the glue when removing the shaft.</p>	

### Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

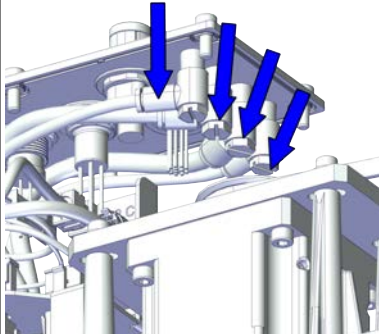
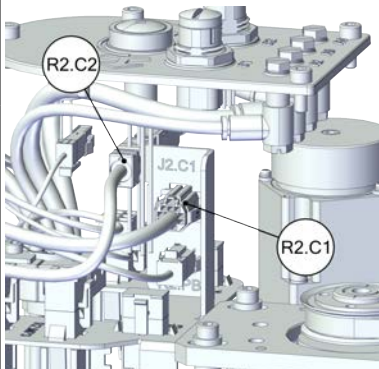



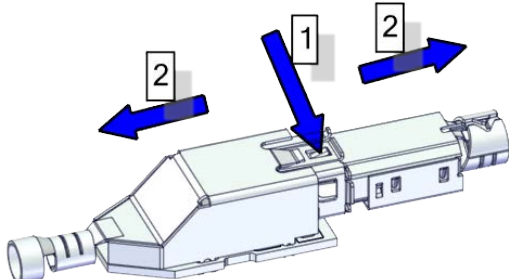
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page




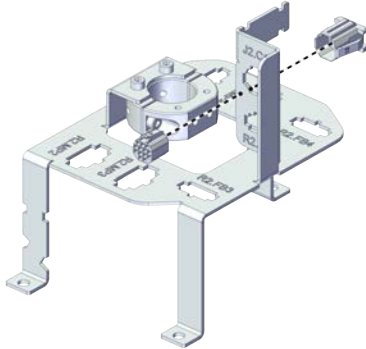
5 Repair

5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm  
Continued



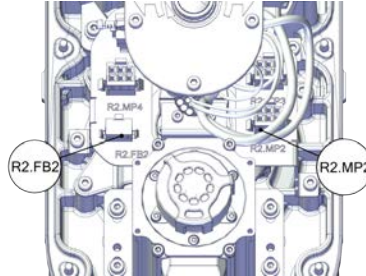
	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• J2.C1</li></ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• J2.C2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>


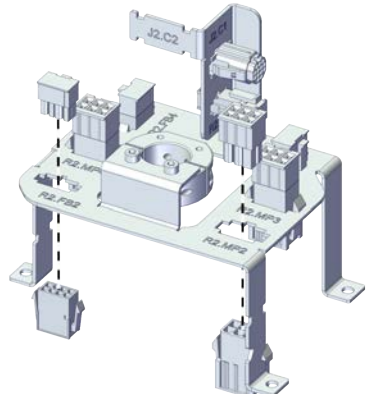
Continues on next page





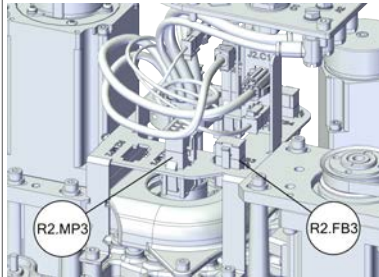
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

Continued


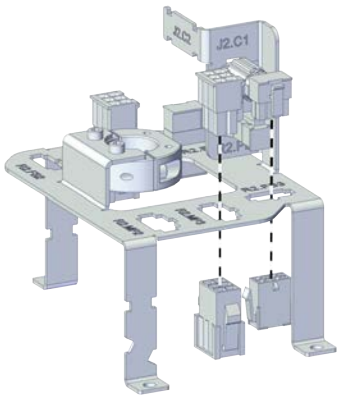
	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor


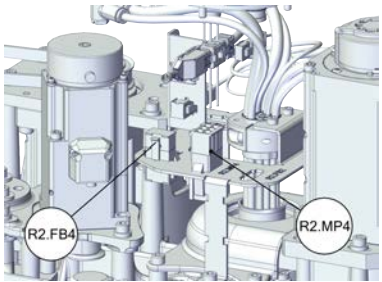

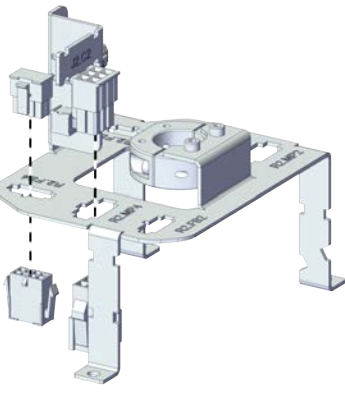
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>

Continues on next page



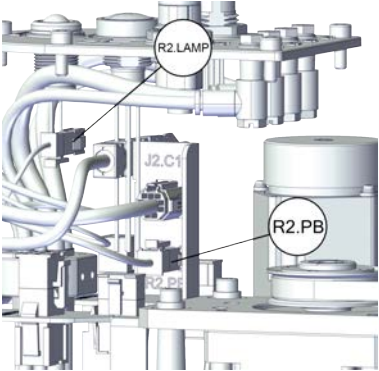

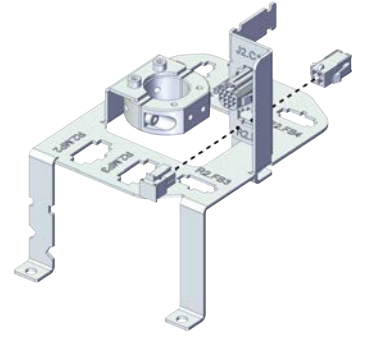


## 5 Repair


### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*

#### Disconnecting the connector for PB





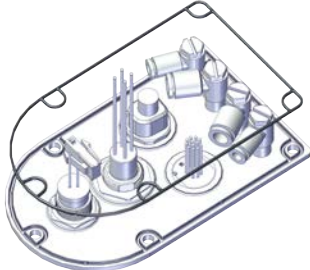
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a>	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

#### Pull out the process hub



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

## Removing the cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	


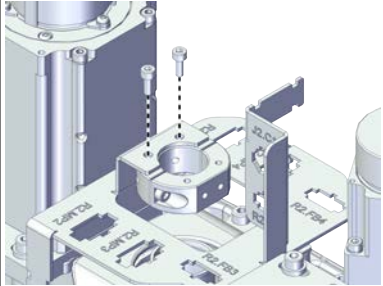

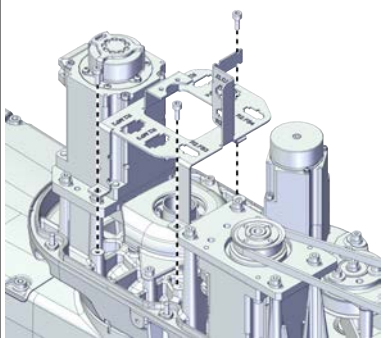
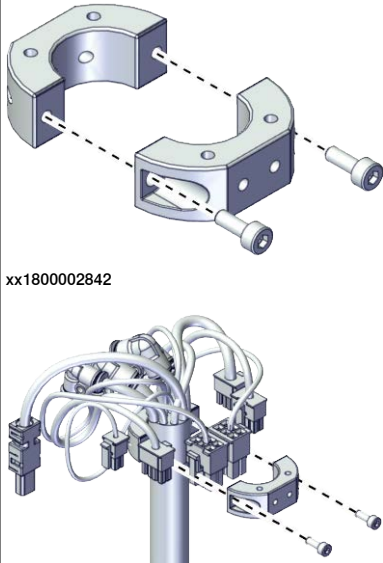
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*


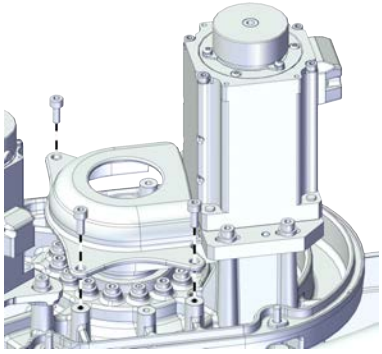
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p> <p>xx1800002849</p>

### Removing the gear-2 pulley protection cover



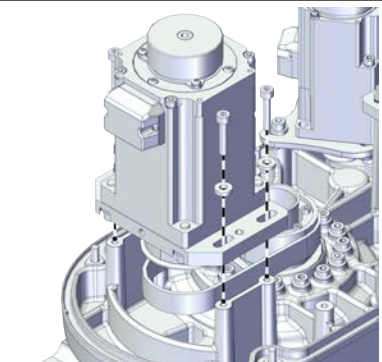

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to release the pulley protection cover.	 xx2100001047

## Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001046
4	Remove the motor.  <b>Tip</b> Move the internal harness out of the way.	

Continues on next page



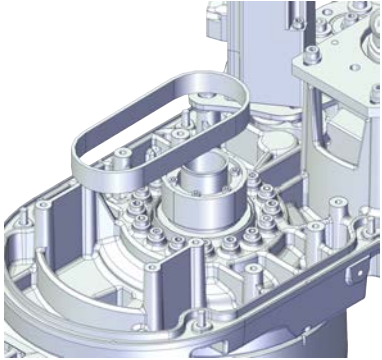


## 5 Repair




### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*

#### Removing the axis-2 timing belt

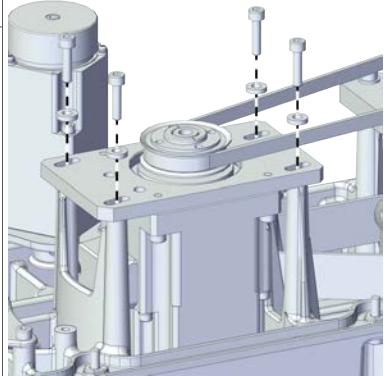
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the timing belt from the outer arm.	 xx2100001048

#### Removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws.	 xx2100001178
5	Remove the axis-3 motor sub-assembly and the timing belt.	

#### Removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

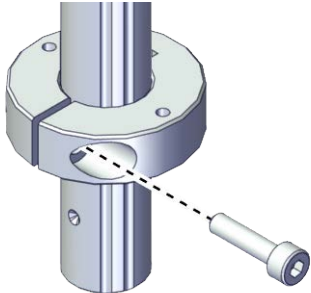
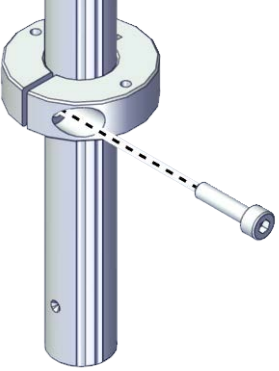

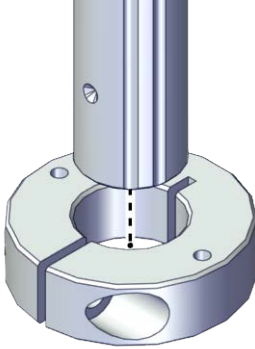
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*



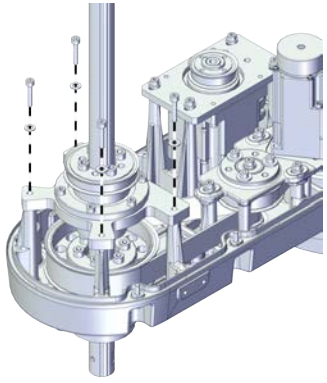
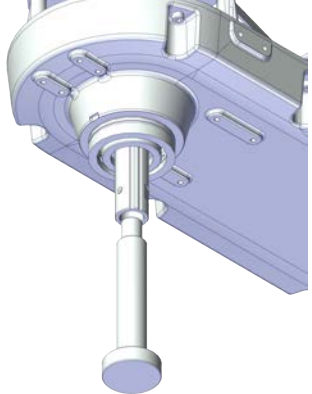
	Action	Note
3	Remove the screw.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1800002860</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900001642</p>
4	<p>Remove the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 <p>xx1800002861</p>

### Removing the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49.</i>	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
4	Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.	 xx2100001082
5	Insert the special tool into the ball screw shaft.	<b>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</b>  xx2100001129

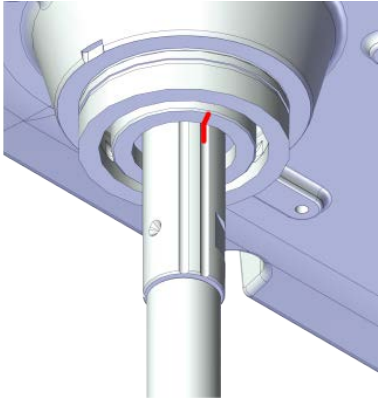

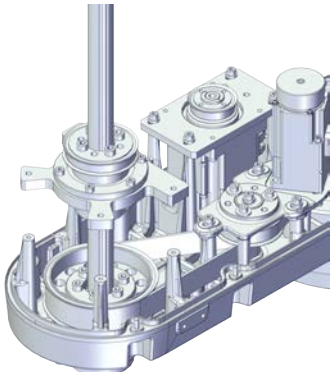

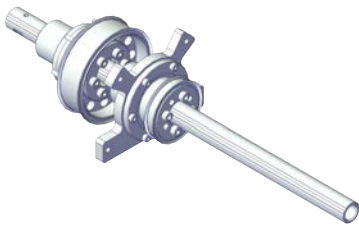
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*


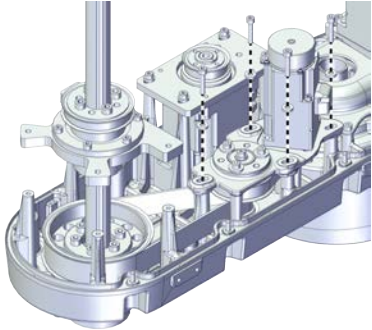
	Action	Note
6	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 xx2100001187
7	Take out the ball screw with the flange assembly carefully.   <b>CAUTION</b>  Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status. When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing. Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.	 xx2100001083
8	Lay down the ball screw assembly.   <b>CAUTION</b>  If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 xx2100001084

### Removing the transmission module assembly




	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Removing the screws of the transmission module assembly.	 xx2100001091
4	Take out the transmission module assembly with the axis-4-2 timing belt.	

## Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

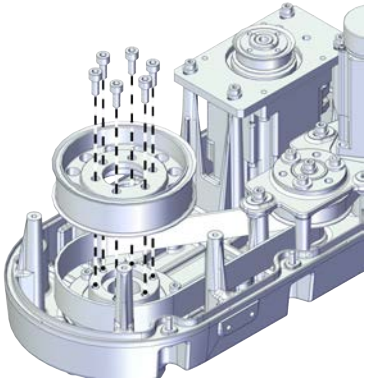

Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*


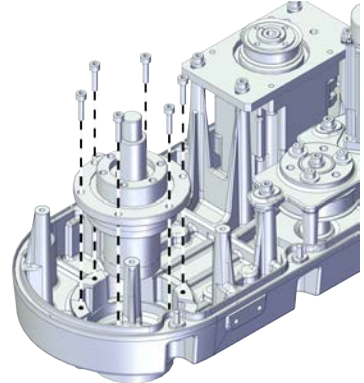


	Action	Note
4	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001085
5	Remove the pulley carefully.   <b>CAUTION</b>  If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

### Removing the ball screw lower nut



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the lower nut to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p>	<p>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</p>  <p>xx2100001088</p>
4	<p>Raise the ball screw lower nut with the special tool to take them out of the outer arm carefully.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Hold the lower part of the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	

## Removing the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

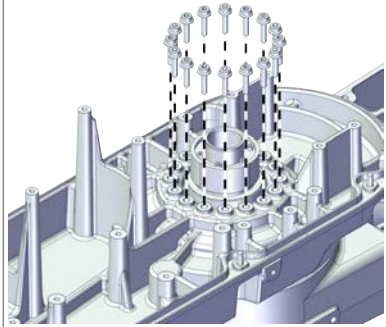
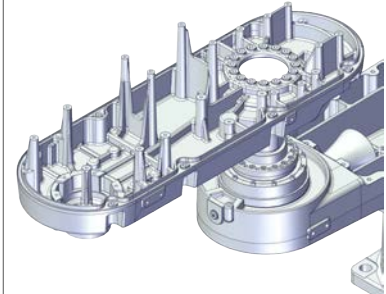
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm



*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the axis -2 gear inside the outer arm.	 xx2100001098
4	Remove the outer arm slightly.	 xx2100001099

### Refitting the outer arm


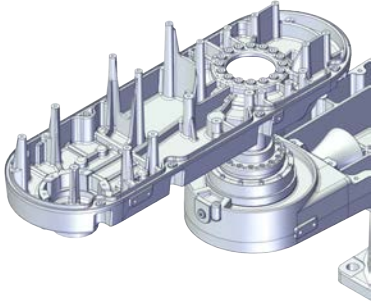
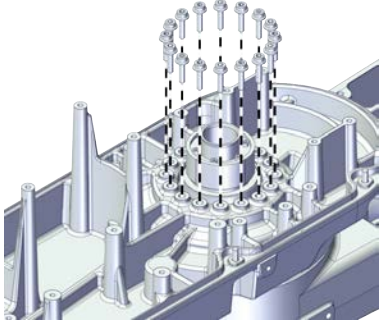
Use these procedures to refit the outer arm.

### Refitting the outer arm



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Insert the main harness through the outer arm.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	<p>Refit the outer arm to the axis-2 gear unit on the inner arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".</p>	 <p>xx2100001099</p>
5	Refit the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Spring washer 9x4.3x1 Steel (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001098</p>

## Refitting the ball screw lower nut

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	


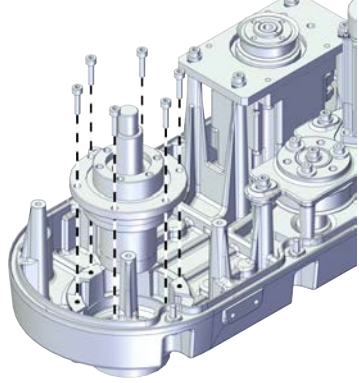
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*


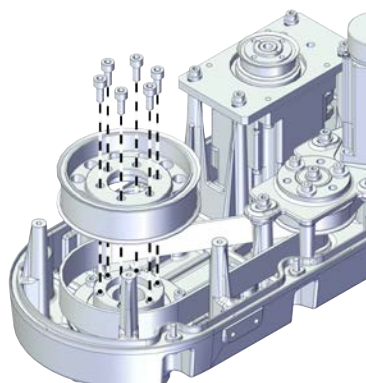

	Action	Note
3	<p>Put the ball screw lower nut to the outer arm carefully.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Make sure the ball screw nut works fluently.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001088</p>
4	Secure the screws on the lower nut to the outer arm.	

### Refitting the pulley on the ball screw lower position




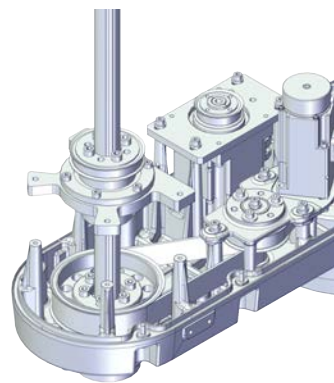
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001085</p>
4	<p>Refit the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.</p>	

#### Refitting the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the ball screw assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make sure the marked location is aligned with the ball screw shaft grooves.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>With the inserting of the ball screw shaft, remove the special tool along with the ball screw shaft carefully.</p>	<p>IRB 920 special tool:3HAC077249-001</p>  <p>xx2100001083</p>


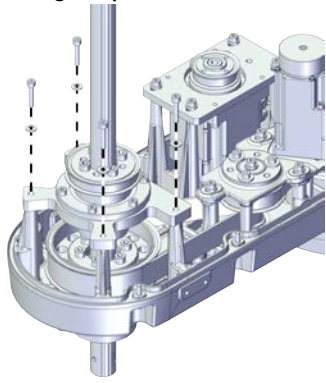
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*





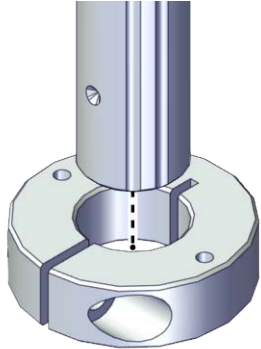
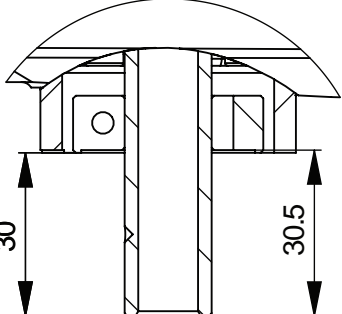
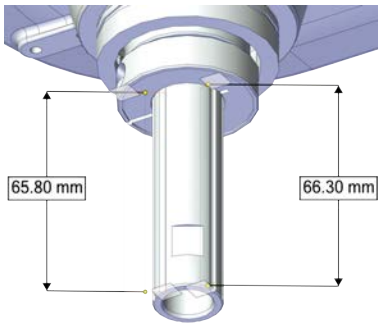
	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the screws and washers to the secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 3.8Nm to secure it.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Spring washer 9x4.3x1 Steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001082</p>

### Refitting the mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



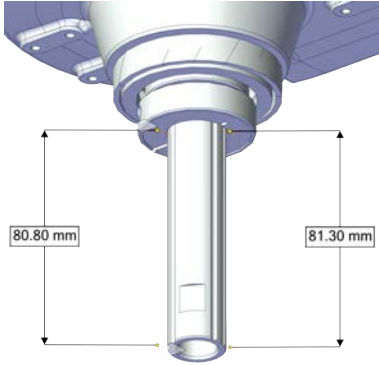
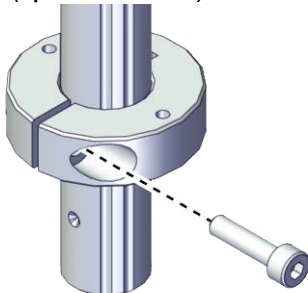
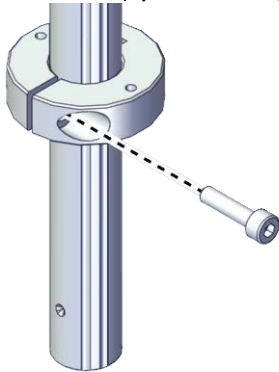
	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 30.5 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>For 180 mm ball screw, refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 65.8 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p>For 300 mm ball screw, refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 80.8 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper.</p> <p>The flat side is on the upper side.</p>	 <p>xx1800002861</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1900000144</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>For 180 mm ball screw</p>  <p>xx2100002425</p> <p>For 300 mm ball screw</p>

Continues on next page



5 Repair



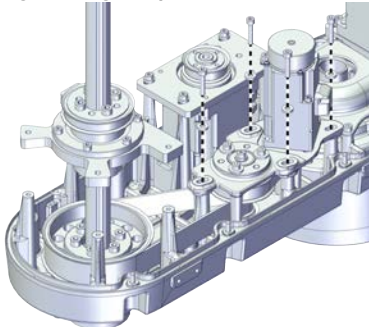
5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm  
Continued

Action	Note
	 <p>xx2100002426</p>
3 Refit the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 6.5 Nm For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx1800002860</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx1900001642</p>


Continues on next page



## Refitting the transmission module assembly to the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the transmission module assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Place the axis-4 second timing belt through the ball screw flange.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
3	Secure with the screws without fully tightened.	 <p>xx2100001091</p>

## Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the pulley

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

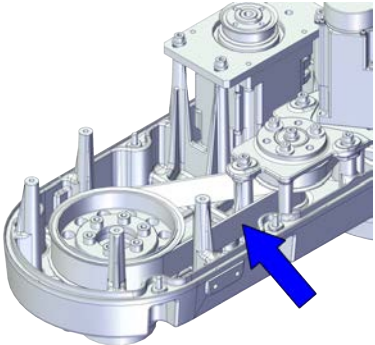
Continues on next page






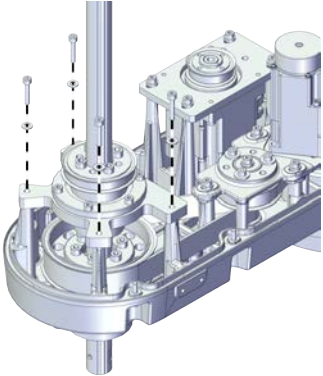
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the belt to the pulley. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001  xx2100001086





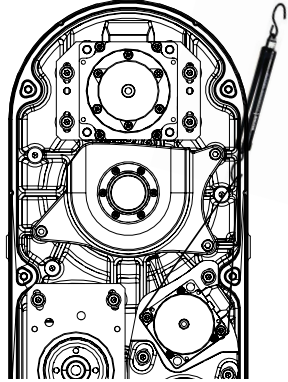
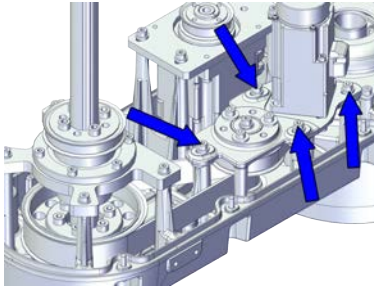
### Fastening the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Tighten the screws of the ball screw flange.	 xx2100001082

*Continues on next page*



## Adjusting the axis-4 second timing belt tension

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Hang a strong strap to the motor.	
5	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.	Used belt: 168-189 N New belt: 240-270 N  xx2100001127
6	Fasten the screws on the transmission module to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001087

Continues on next page





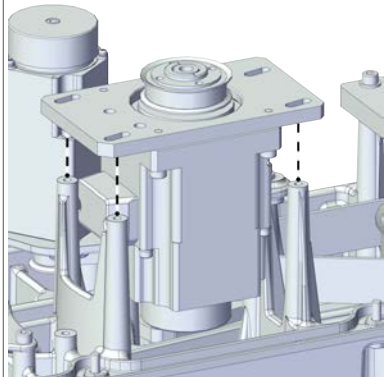
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*

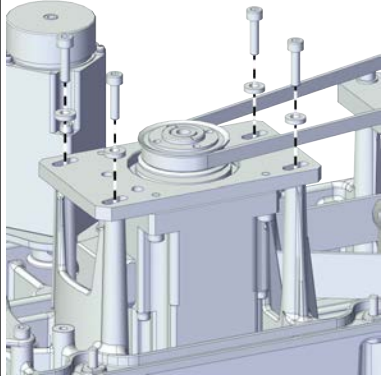

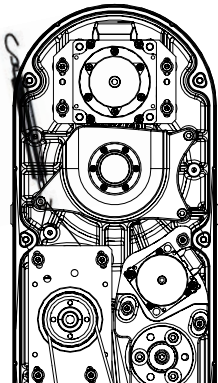
	Action	Note
7	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 151-179 Hz New belt:180-240 Hz
8	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

#### Refitting the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the motor to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Move the internal harness out of the way.</p>	 xx2100001181
3	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)  Washers: Washer 4.3x10x2 steel (4 pcs)  Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001178</p>
5	Hang a strap to the motor.	
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N  New belt: 40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 92-109 Hz  New belt: 110-145 Hz</p>

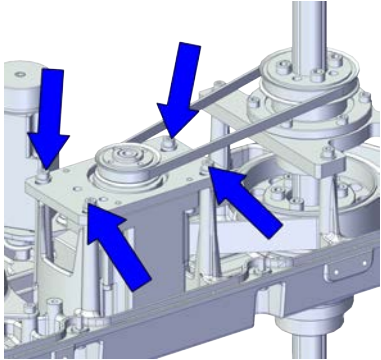
Continues on next page




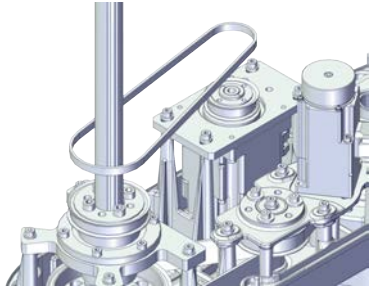
## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*

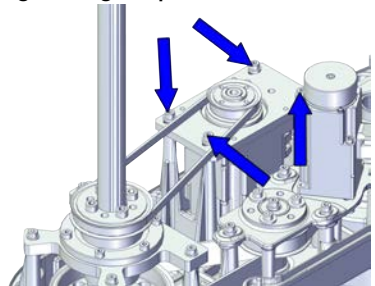

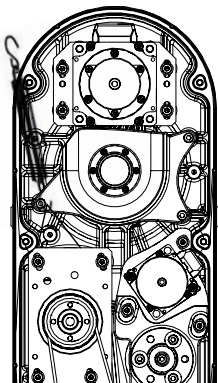
	Action	Note
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	 xx2100001179
10	Remove the axis-3 belt tension adjustment tool.	

### Refitting the axis-3 timing belt


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001</p>  xx2100001079

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001078</p>
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N</p> <p>New belt: 40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 92-109 Hz</p> <p>New belt: 110-145 Hz</p>
7	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

## Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

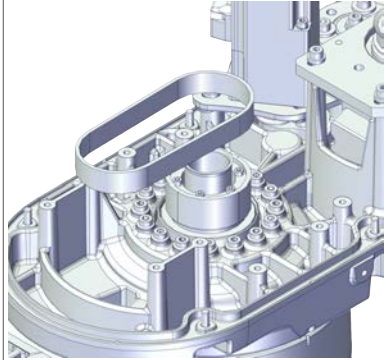
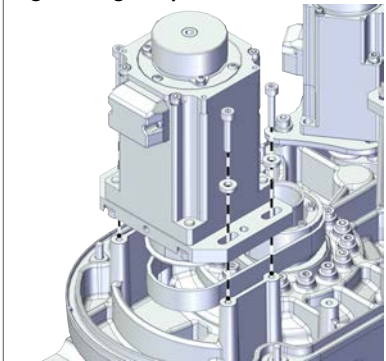


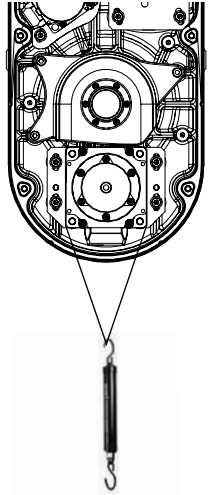
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

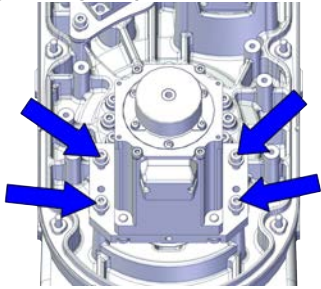
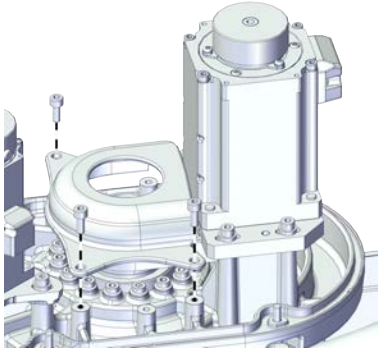
### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

Continued


	Action	Note
2	Refit the axis-2 timing belt onto the pulley on the axis-2 gearbox.	 xx2100001048
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	 xx2100001046 Timing belt A2: 3HAC061861-001
5	Hang a strap to the motor.	
6	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.  <b>Tip</b> If the ball screw will interfere with the handheld dynamometer, adjust the ball screw manually.	Used belt: 49-69 N New belt: 70-100 N  xx2100001125

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001176
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 218-259 Hz New belt: 260-390 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	
10	Refit the pulley protection cover and secure with screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001047

## Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	




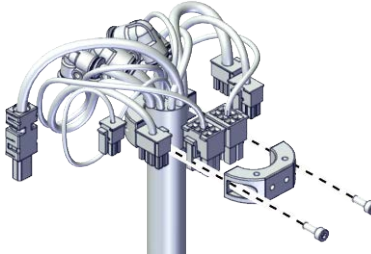


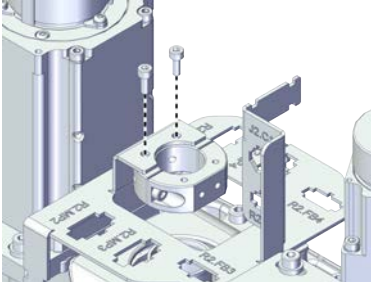


Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm




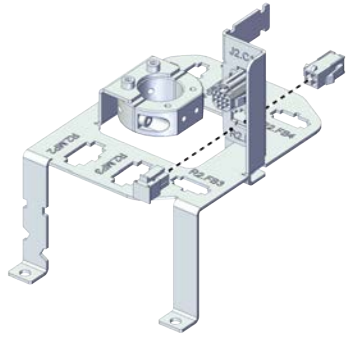

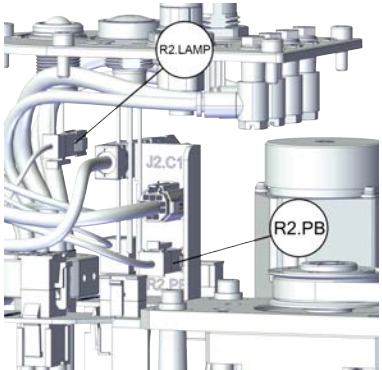

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

Continues on next page



## Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




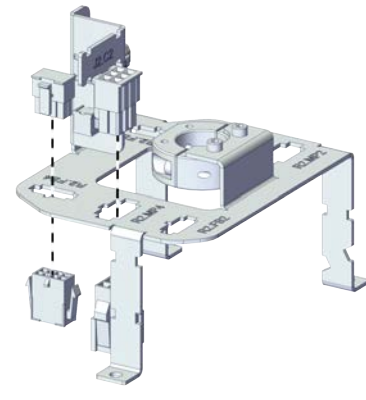

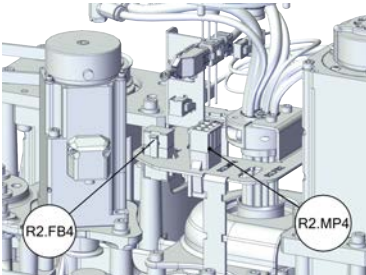



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*




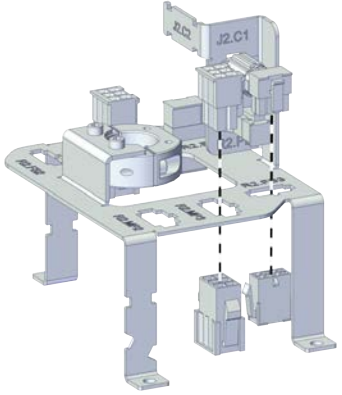

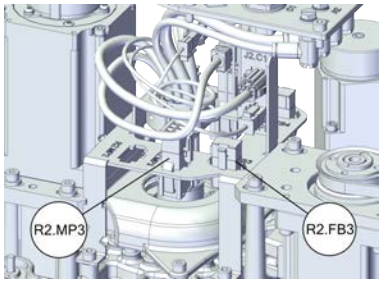

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




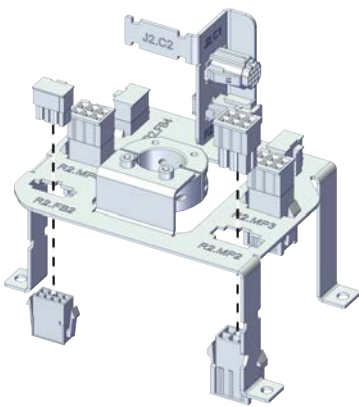

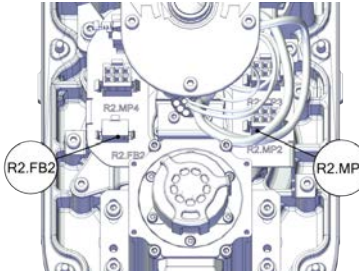



## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

Continued



#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page



Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



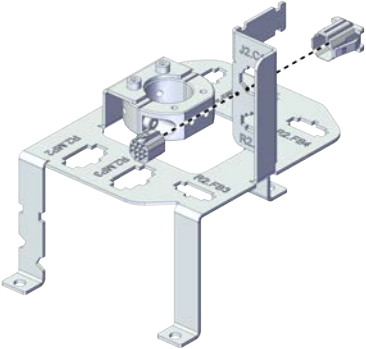

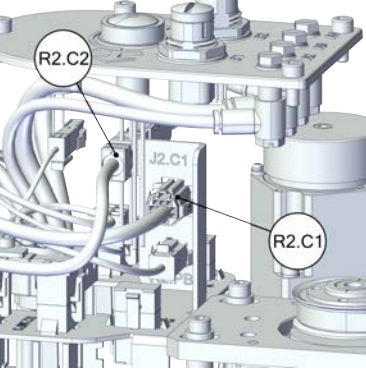


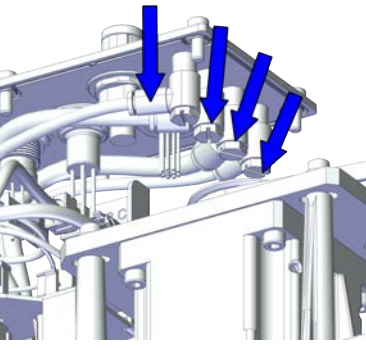
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

Continued




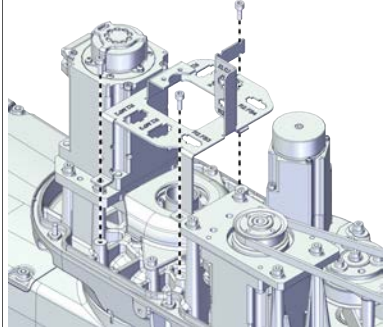
	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>

Continues on next page




	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

## Refitting the shaft for Clean Room/ IP54 robots

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

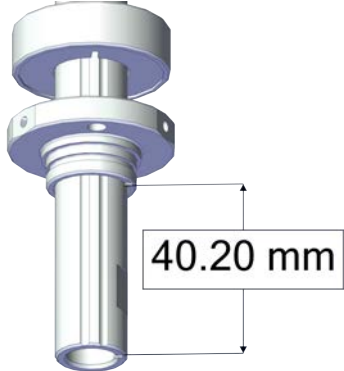
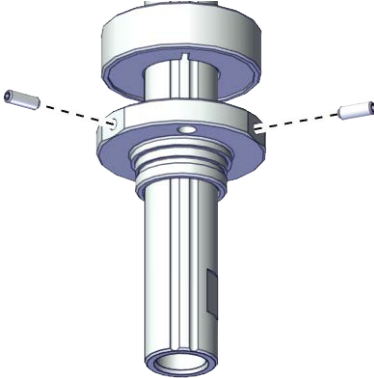

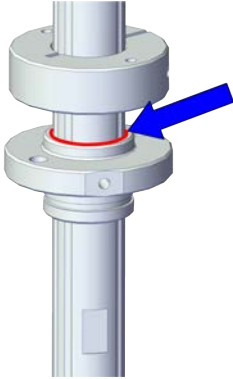
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


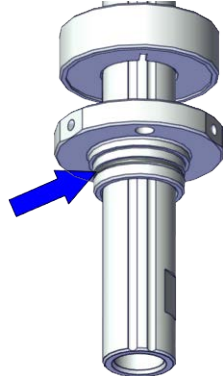
### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*


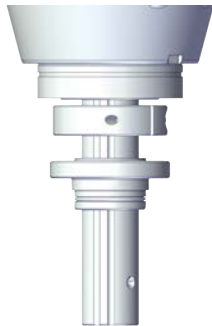
	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the shaft to the ball screw at 40.2 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx1900001617</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Secure the shaft to the ball screw with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1900001616</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Apply the glue to the upper contacted zone between the shaft and the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Fulfill the gaps on the ball screw in this contacted zone to make a sealing structure.</p>	 <p>xx1900001805</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Insert the O-ring to the shaft.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Replace the o-ring if needed.</p>	 <p>xx1900001615</p>

#### Refitting the lower bellow to outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Apply the glue to the outer arm.</p>	 <p>xx2100002409</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the bellow to the shaft.</p>	





*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*

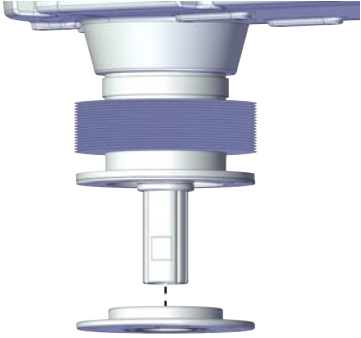
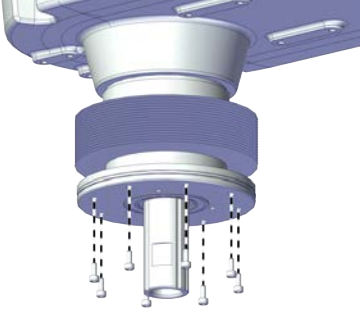
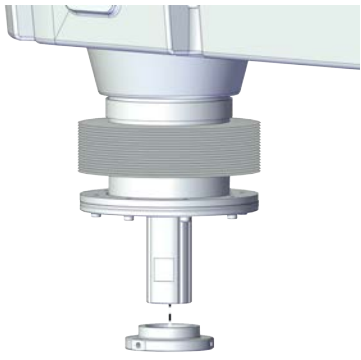
	Action	Note
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Pull the upper end of the bellow to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Hold the bellow for a little while until it's attached to the housing.</p>	<p>Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002408</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Install the bellow gaskets to the bellow.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The angle between the gap on the bellow gasket and gap on the inner bellow gasket should be 90 degrees.</p>	
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Secure them with the clamp.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The opening part of the clamp should be in the opposite position to the gap on the bellow gasket.</p>	

### Refitting the lower cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002407</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002406</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the lower cover to the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002405</p>

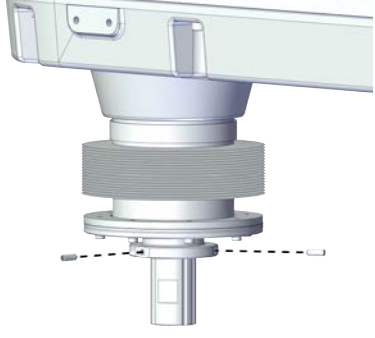
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*




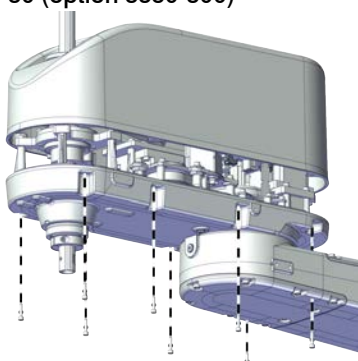
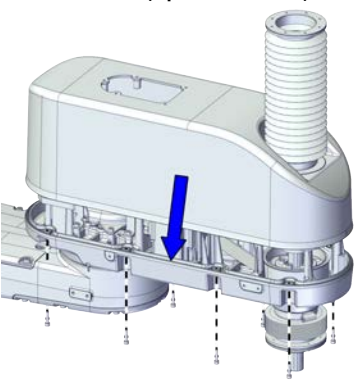
	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002404</p>

### Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	


*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx210000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

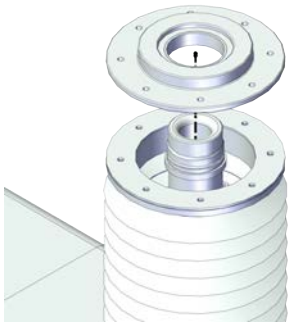
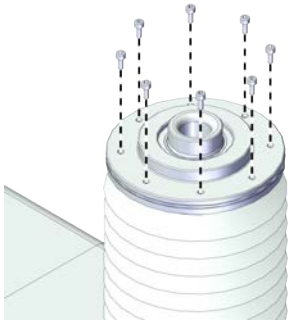


Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

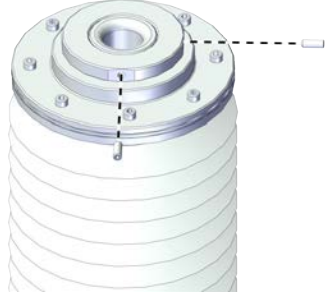
### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

*Continued*


	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




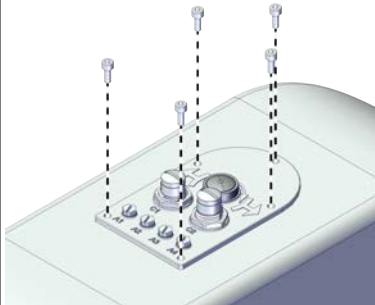
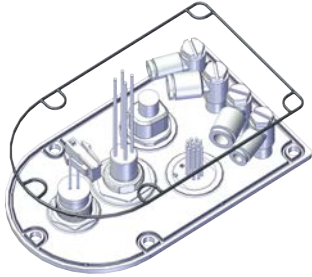
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.6.11 Replacing the outer arm

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



## 5 Repair

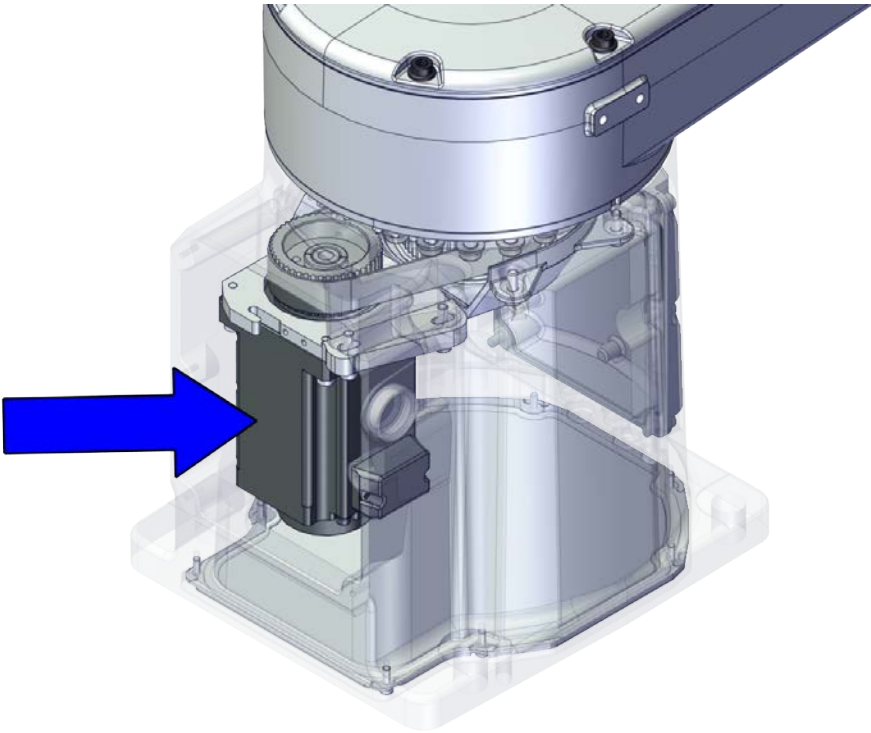
### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

## 5.7 Motors

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

#### Location of the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

The axis-1 motor sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001014

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Motor with pulley A1	3HAC076569-001	
Timing belt A1	3HAC070449-001	

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .

*Continues on next page*



## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

**Required consumables**

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	<p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<p><b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b></p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a>.</p>
	<p><b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b></p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

**Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly**

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 motor sub-assembly.

*Continues on next page*


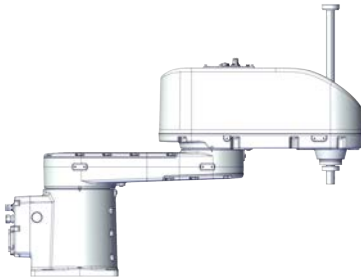




## 5 Repair


### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly




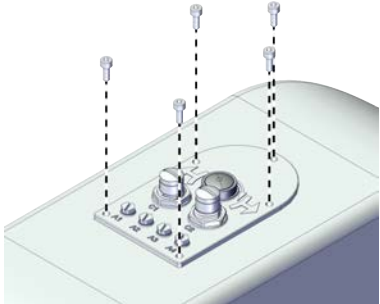
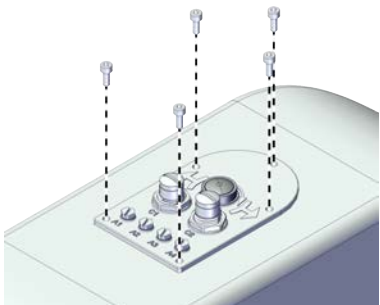
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


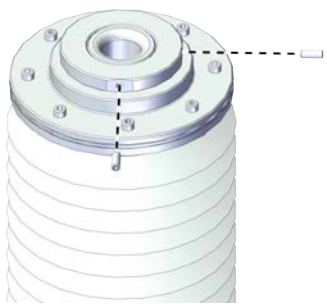

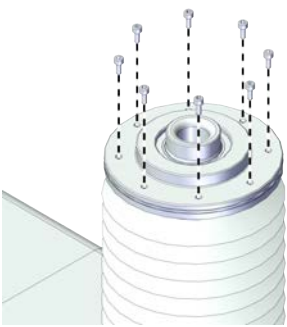
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

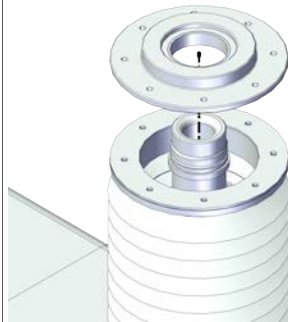
	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

*Continues on next page*





### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!  See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	




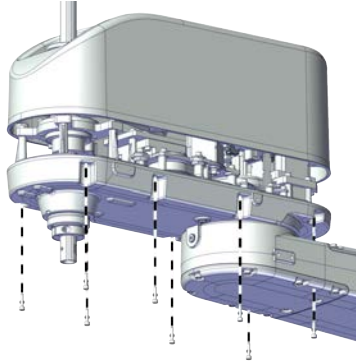
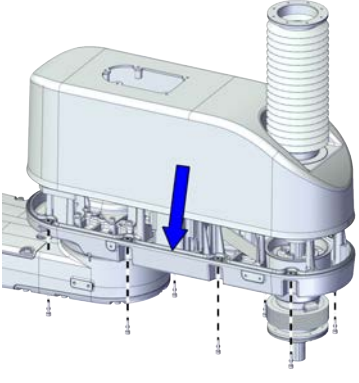
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

#### Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

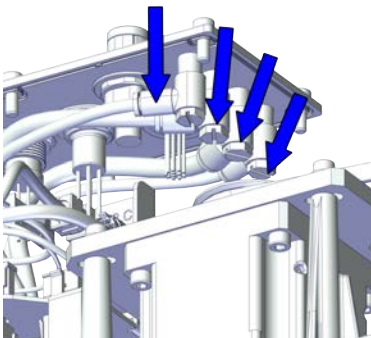
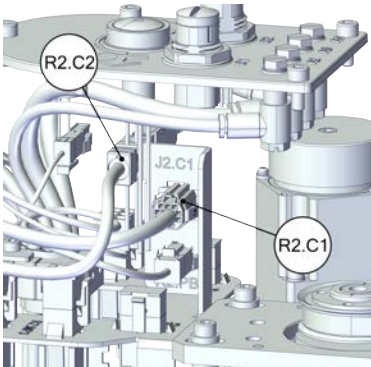



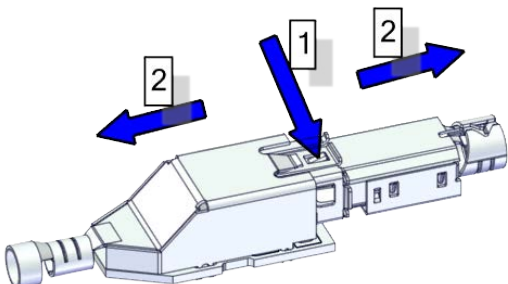
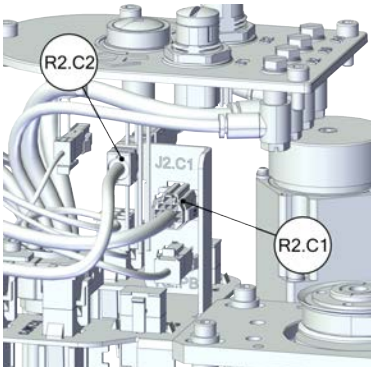
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page



## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	 xx2100001033


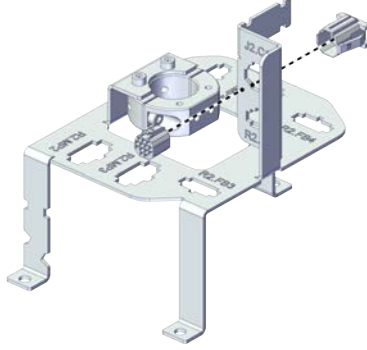
*Continues on next page*





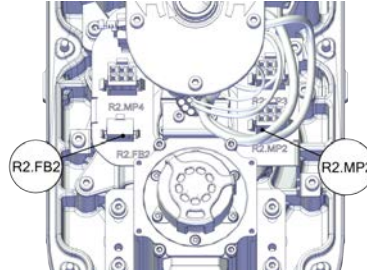
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor


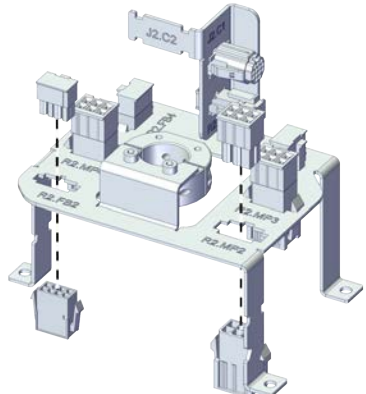
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>

*Continues on next page*



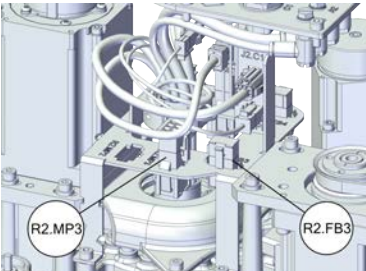


## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>


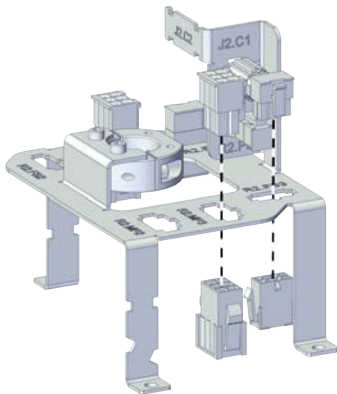
*Continues on next page*




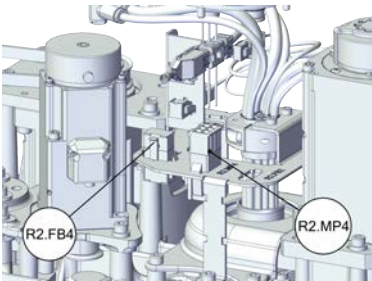

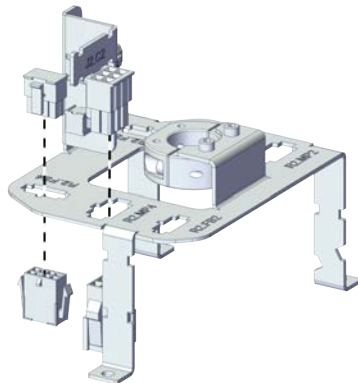
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>

### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>



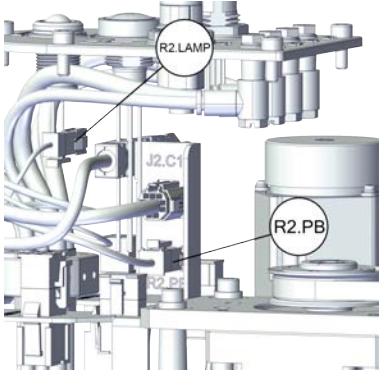

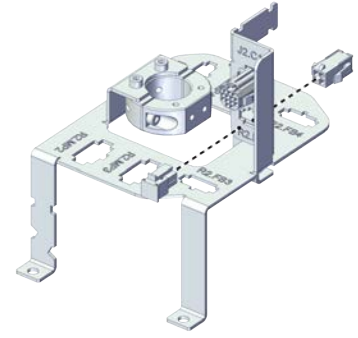
*Continues on next page*




### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2100001031</p>

#### Pull out the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	





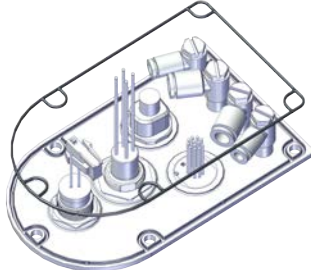
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

#### Removing the cable ferrule and bracket


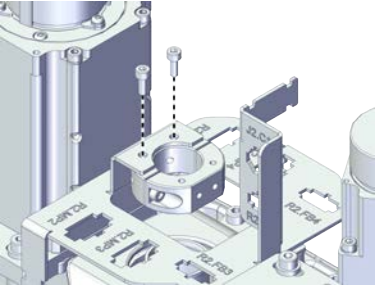

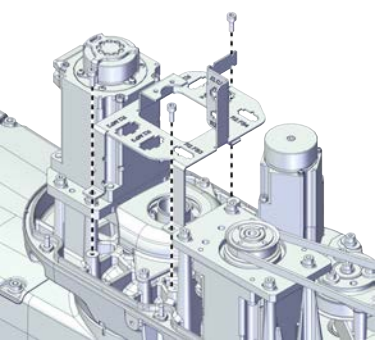
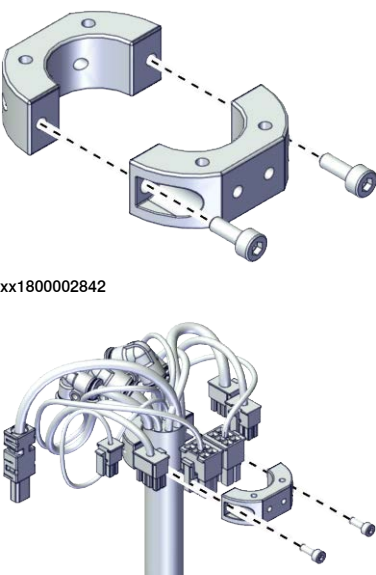
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

Continues on next page




### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p> <p>xx1800002849</p>

#### Removing the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




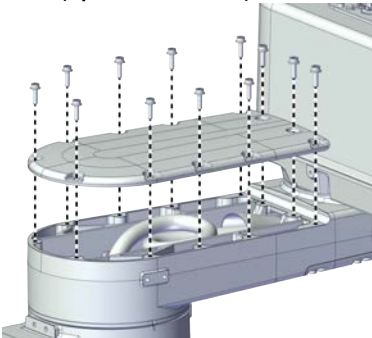
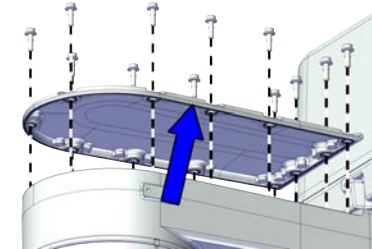
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Remove the cover.  <b>Note</b> <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the cover and check the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	 <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>

### Removing the axis-2 cover



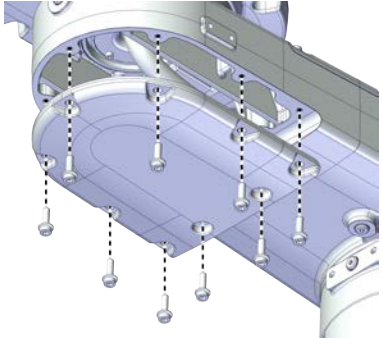
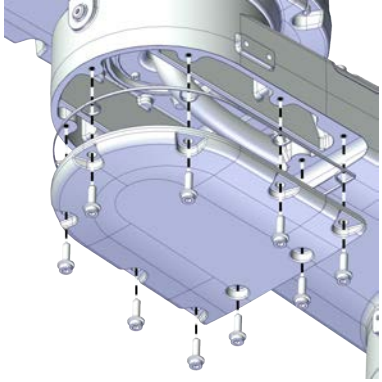
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	

Continues on next page





## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover and check the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000943</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002451</p>

## Removing the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	



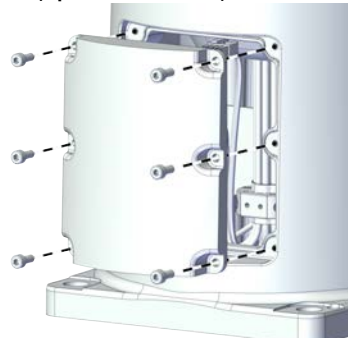


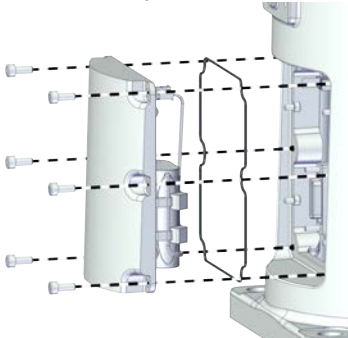
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the stainless screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
5	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the SMB cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	xx2100000944 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002433

#### Disconnecting the SMB cabling




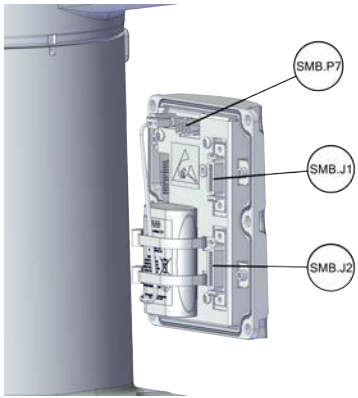
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page





### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Cut the strips.	
5	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul>  <b>Tip</b> Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 xx2100000945

#### Removing the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
4	Lay down the robot.	



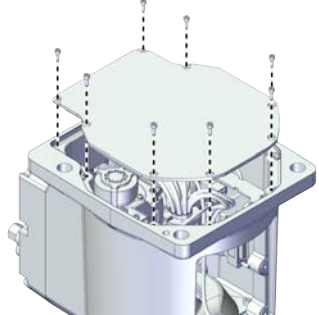
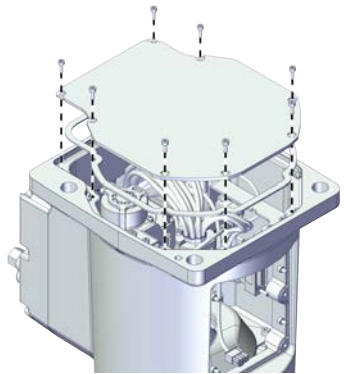
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*



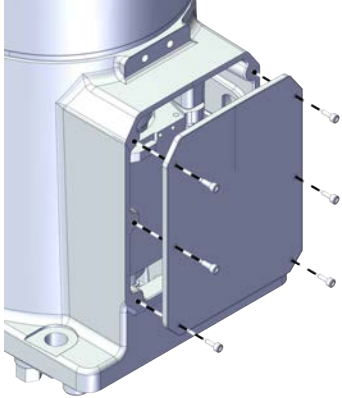
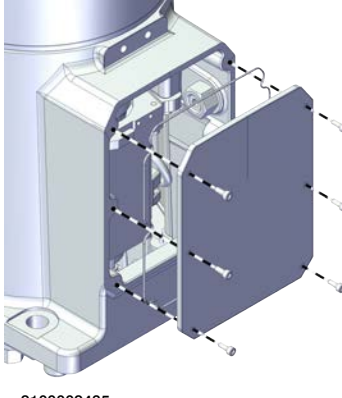
	Action	Note
5	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>

*Continues on next page*





## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
7	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
8	<p>Remove the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001202</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>

## Releasing the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i></p>	

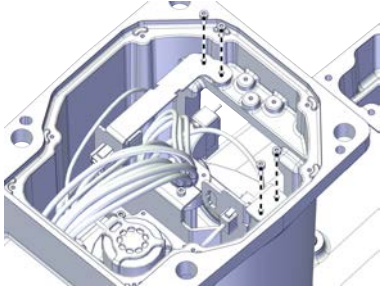
*Continues on next page*





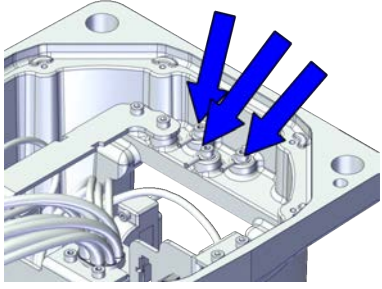
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly


*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base.	 xx2100000948

#### Disconnecting the grounding cable connectors

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the three grounding cables from the bracket by unscrew the screws.	 xx2100000947

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor


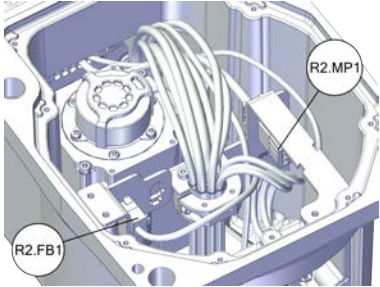

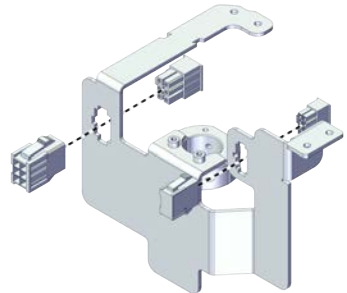
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*





### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul>	 xx2100000949
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000950

#### Removing the bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

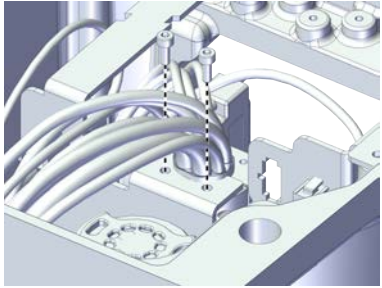
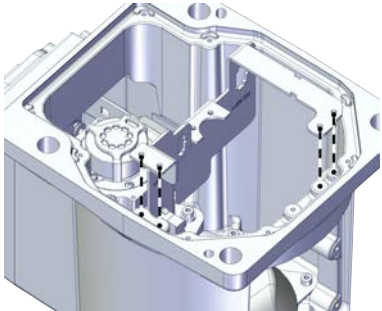
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Release the cable ferrule from the bracket.	 xx2100000951
4	Remove the bracket.	 xx2100000952

Removing the main harness from the axis -2 gearbox position



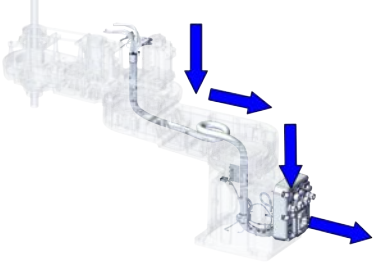
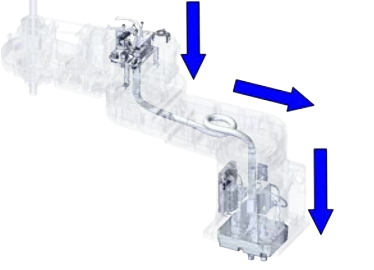
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*





### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the outer arm from the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

#### Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	


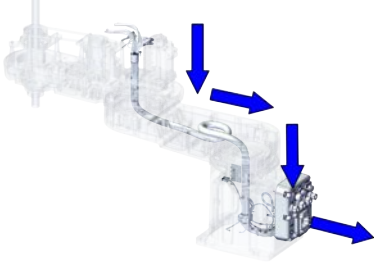
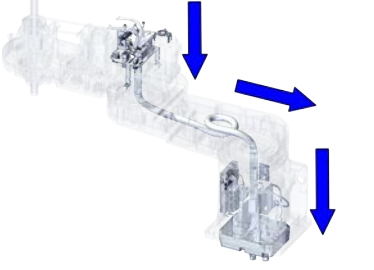
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

#### Removing the main harness



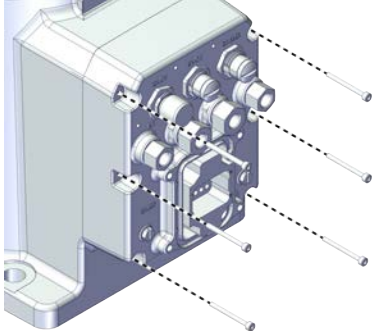
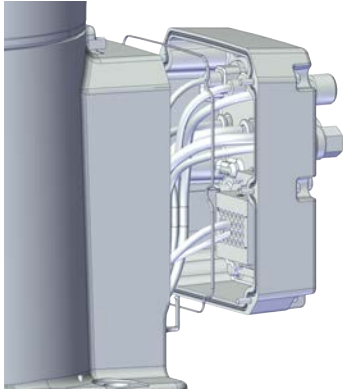
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the main harness.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the main harness.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>




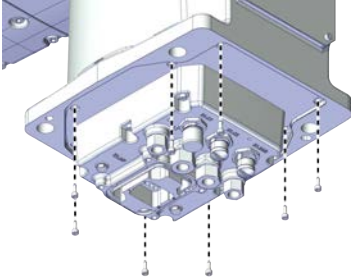
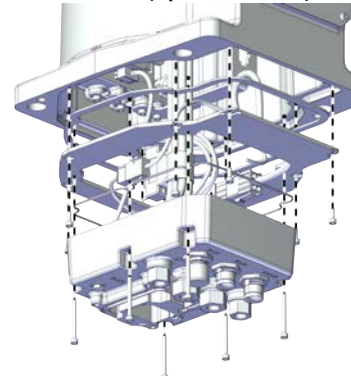
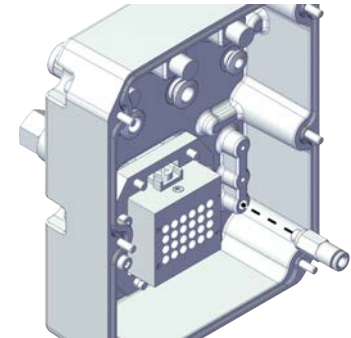
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002437</p>
7	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the one way valve by unscrewing it.</p>	 <p>xx2200000281</p>

#### Removing the pulley protection cover


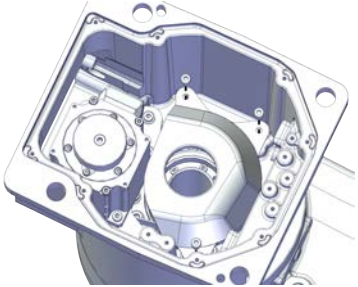
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



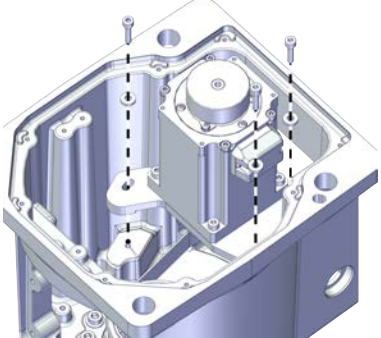


### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	 xx2100001037
4	Remove the pulley protection cover.	

#### Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001038
4	Remove the motor.	

*Continues on next page*



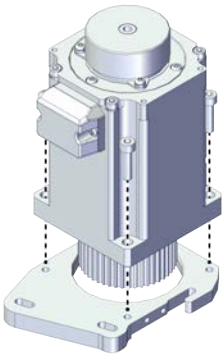


## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*


#### Separating the flange from axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001042
4	Separate the flange from the motor.	

#### Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-1 motor sub-assembly.

#### Refitting the flange to the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

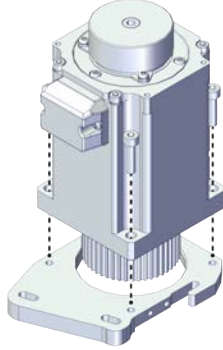
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

*Continues on next page*


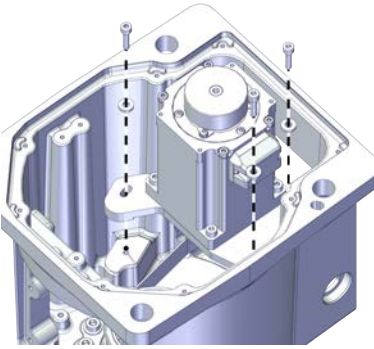


## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Install the flange to the motor.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001042</p>

## Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Put the timing belt into the pulley on the gear.	
3	<p>Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor.</p> <p>Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	 <p>xx2100001038</p> <p>Timing belt A1: 3HAC070449-001</p>
5	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	


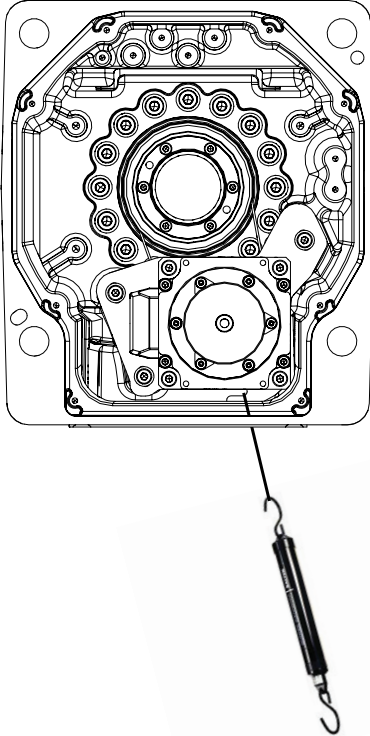
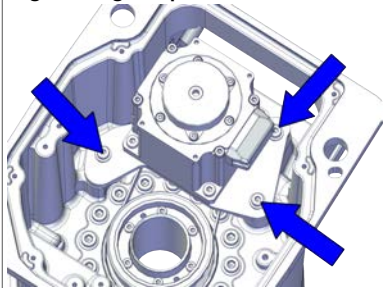
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 63-89 N New belt: 90-130 N</p>  <p>xx2100001043</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	<p>Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm <math>\pm</math> 10%</p>  <p>xx2100001044</p>
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 209-249 Hz New belt: 250-370 Hz</p>
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

#### Refitting the pulley protection cover


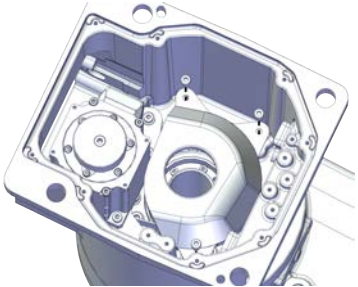
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page


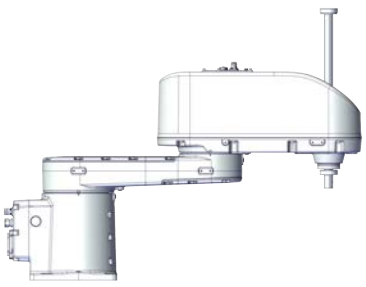


### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the pulley protection cover.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001037
4	Secure the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	

Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Make sure that the robot is at zero position.	 xx2100000930




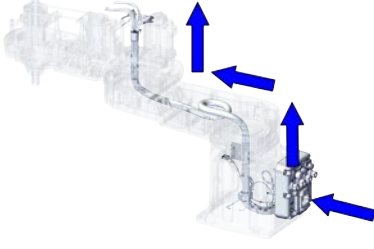
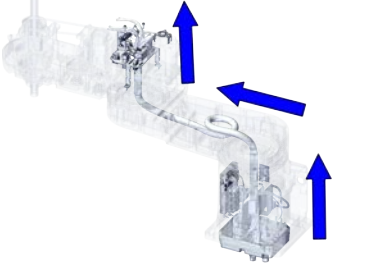
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the internal harness into the inner arm through the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>

Inserting the main harness through the axis -2 gearbox position


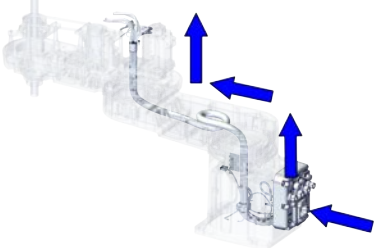
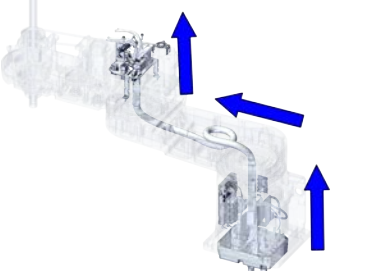
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




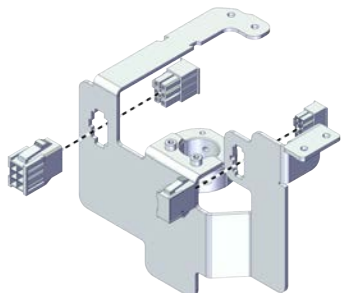


### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the internal harness into the outer arm through the plastic protection tube and the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>
3	Secure the R2.MP3 and R2.MP4 with cable straps.	

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000950</p>


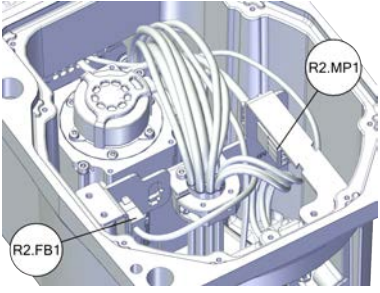

*Continues on next page*




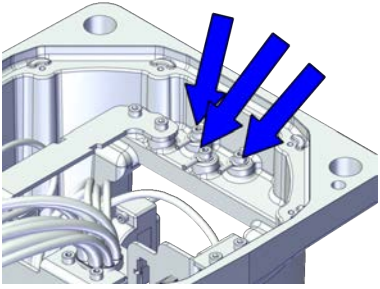
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000949</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Reconnecting the grounding cable connectors





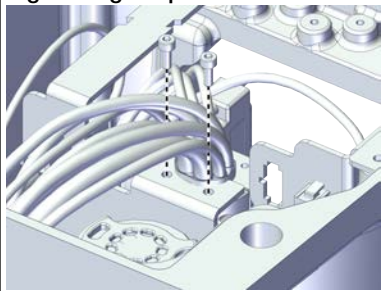
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Secure the three grounding cables to the bracket with the screw.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000947</p>

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.</p> <p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000951</p>

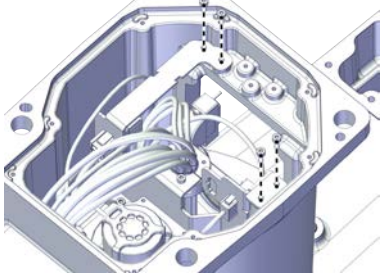
Continues on next page






## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000948</p>

### Refitting the SMB cover



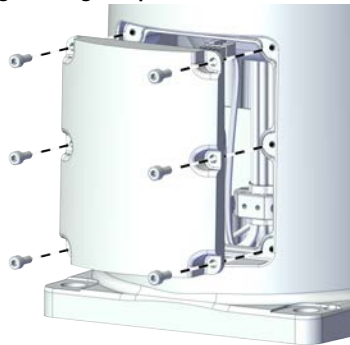
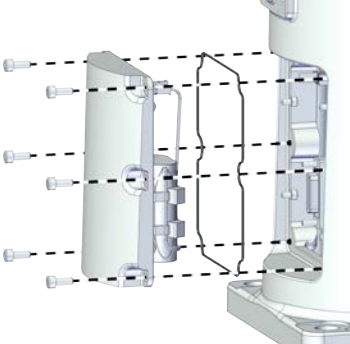
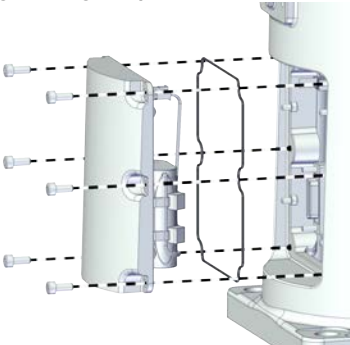
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

*Continues on next page*



## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the SMB cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100000944</p>
4	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Stainless Screw Hexagon Socket Head Cap, Clean Room 3HAC075438-001 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p>


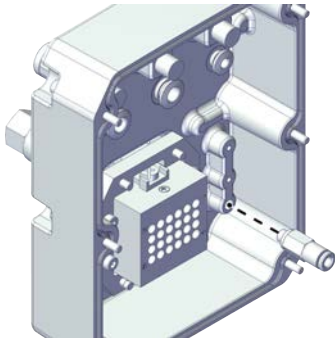
*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly  
Continued

Refitting the main harness

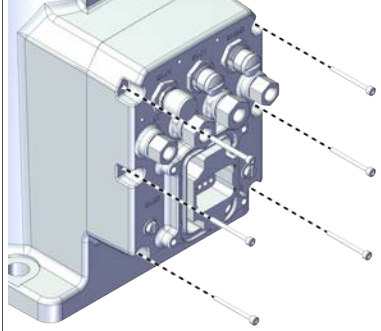
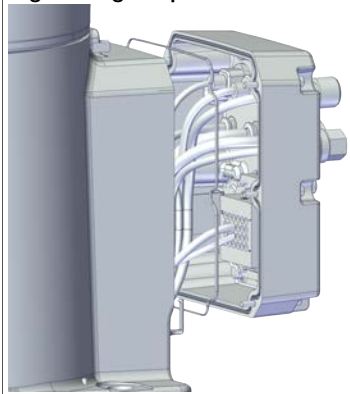
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the one way valve by screwing it into the main harness assembly.</p>	 xx2200000281

Continues on next page



## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Secure with the screws.	 <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>


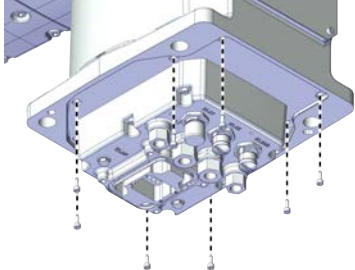
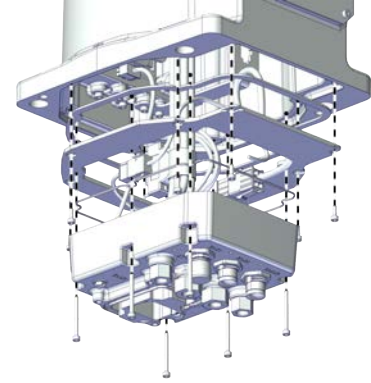
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
6	Secure with the screws.	<p></p> <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p></p> <p>xx2100002437</p>

#### Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	





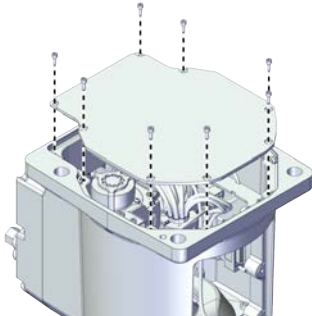
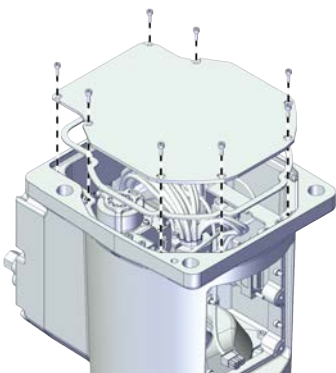
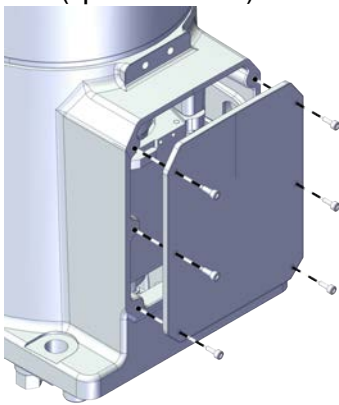
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

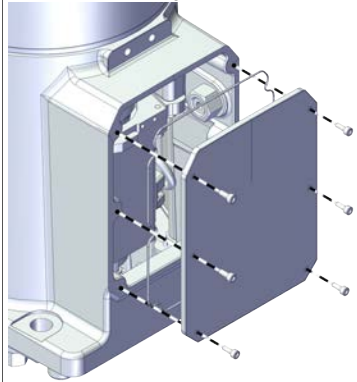
	Action	Note
3	<p>For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate before refitting the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate before refitting the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For rear outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>
4	<p>Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001202</p>

Continues on next page




### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
		<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>
5	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
6	Secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Steel</p> <p>Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 56 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>

#### Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	




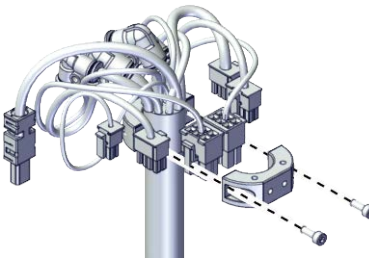


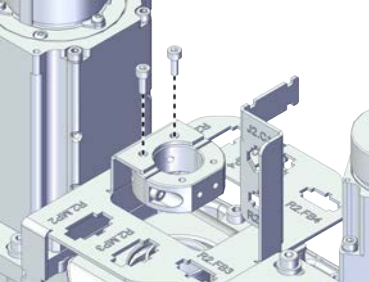


*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	




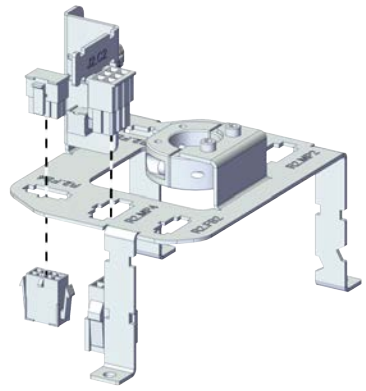

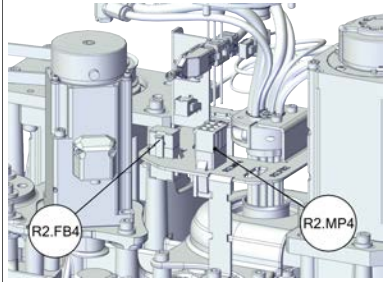

Continues on next page



### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




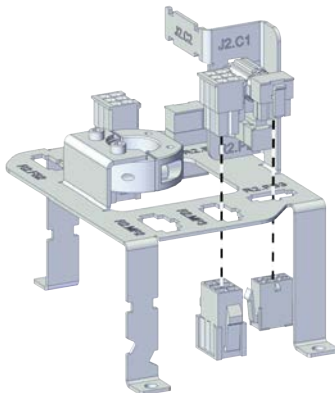

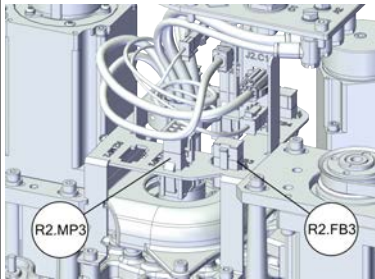



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*




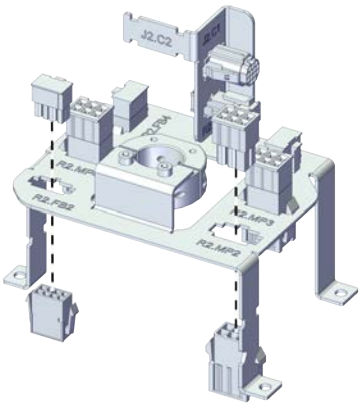

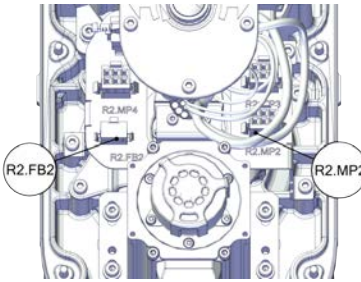

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




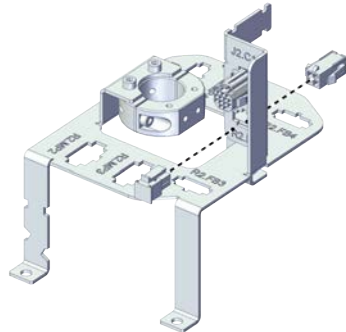

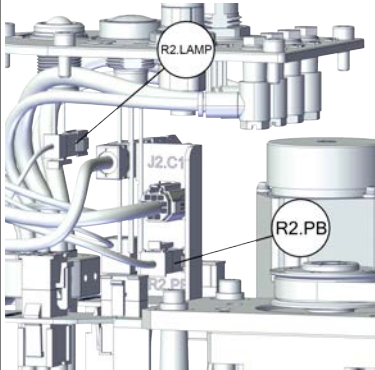



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued



#### Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page



Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



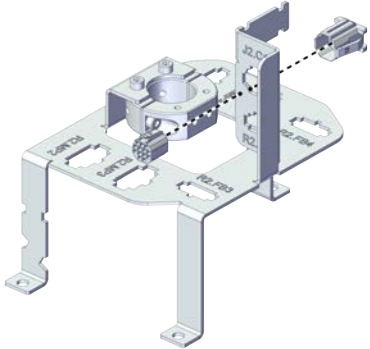

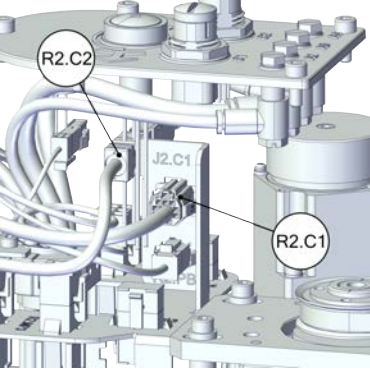


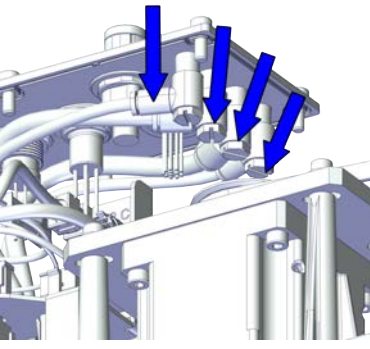
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>

Continues on next page




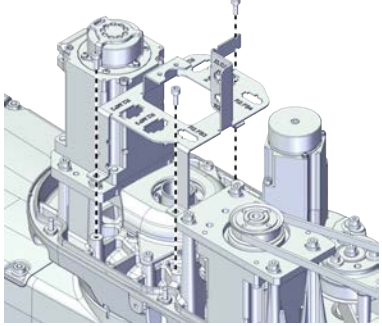


### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly


*Continued*

	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




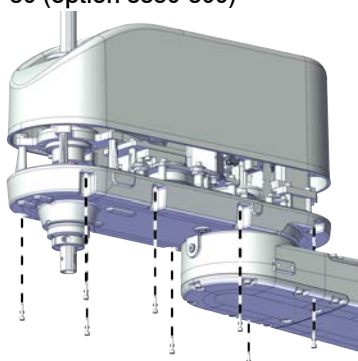
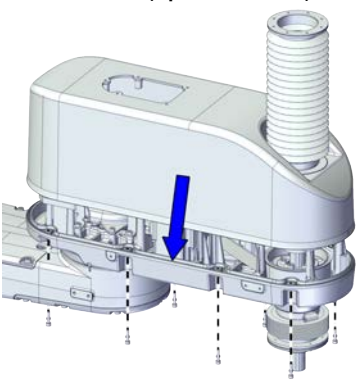
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

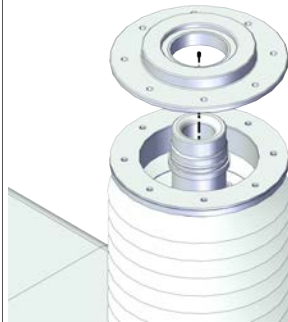
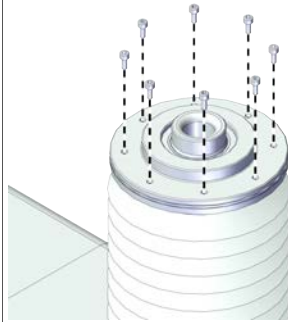


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

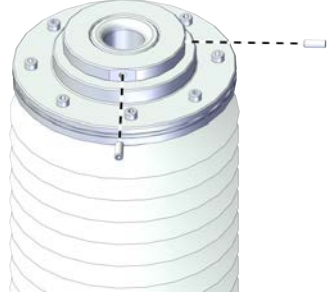
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.	Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002398

#### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover




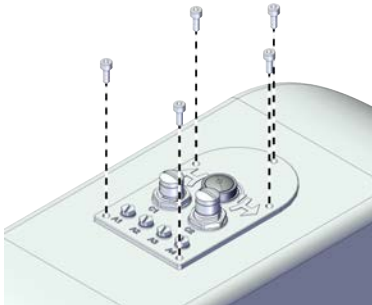
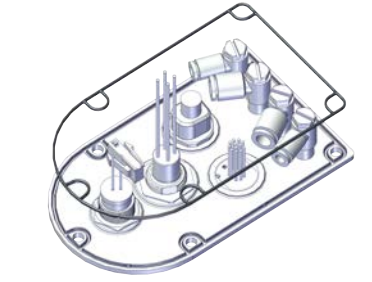
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	



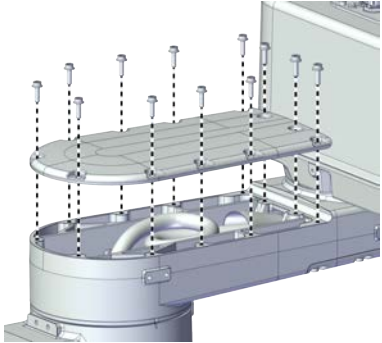
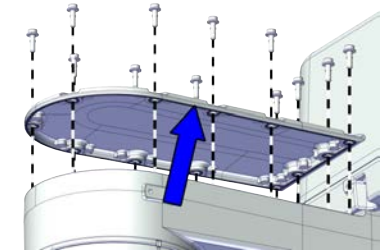
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued




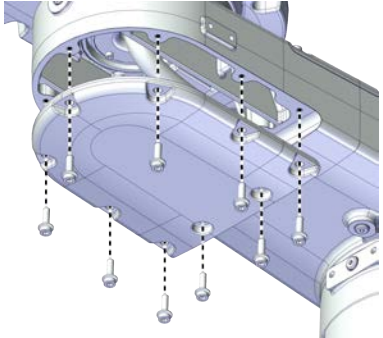
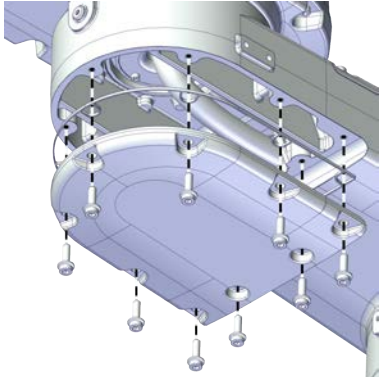
	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p>  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	<p>For 450 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (10 pcs)</p> <p>For 550 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (12 pcs)</p> <p>For 650 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>
3	Refit the screws.	 <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>

### Refitting the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the cover.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (9 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm $\pm 3\%$ For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2100000943 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002451
4	Refit the screws.	

Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Concluding procedure

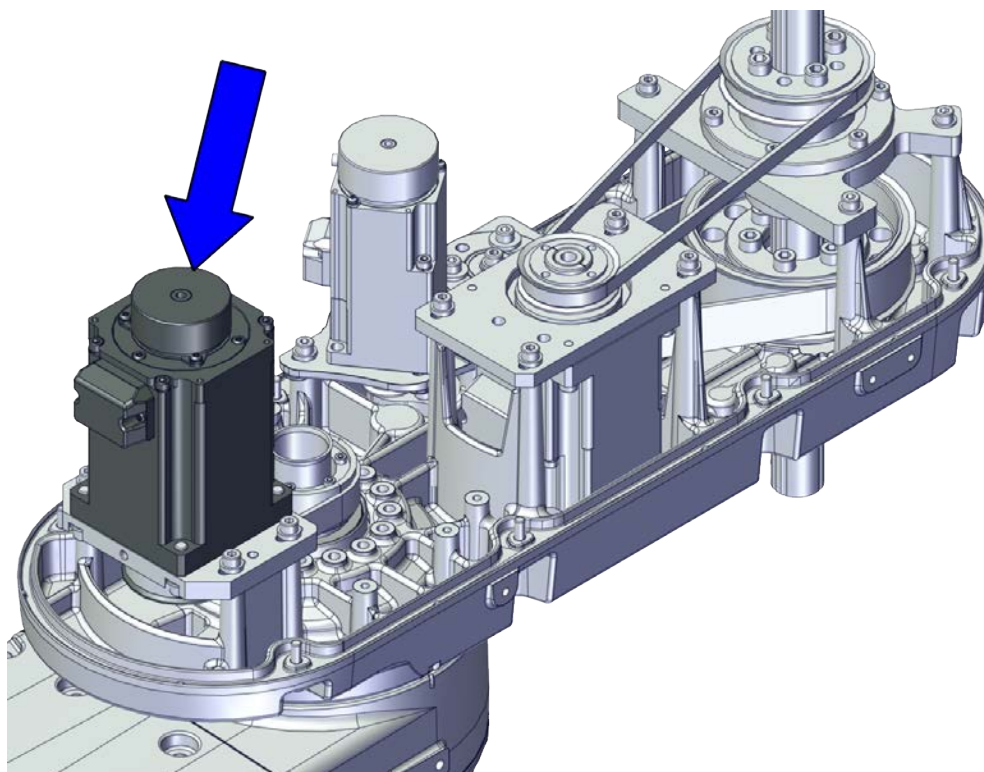
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	



## 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

### Location of the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

The axis-2 motor sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001023

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Motor with pulley A2	3HAC076576-001	Used for IRB 920T-6/0.45, IRB 920T-6/0.55 and IRB 920T-6/0.65
Motor with pulley A2	3HAC084967-001	Used for IRB 920-6/0.55_0.18 and IRB 920-6/0.65_0.18
Timing belt A2	3HAC061861-001	

### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.  If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.  Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.  Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 motor sub-assembly.


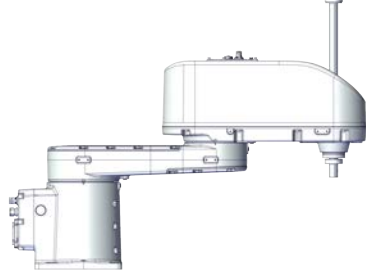


*Continues on next page*




### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




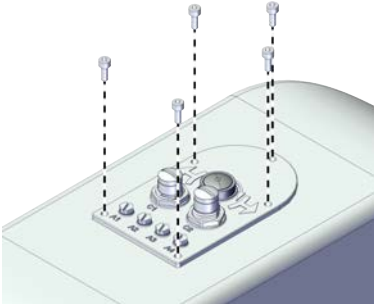
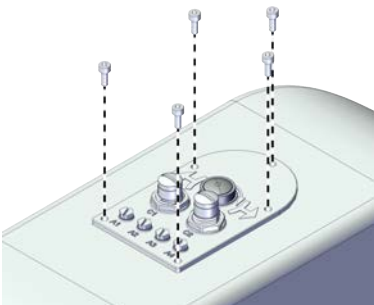
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	<b>For robots with protection class IP30</b>  xx2100000932 <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b>  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing


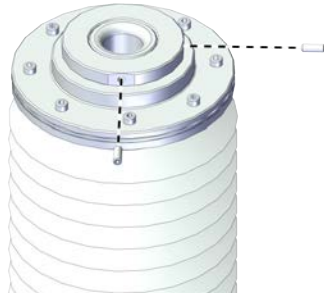

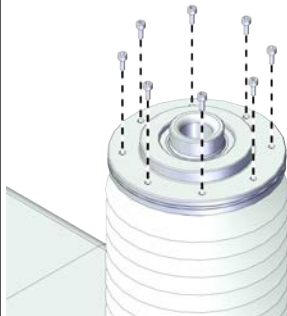
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page



### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

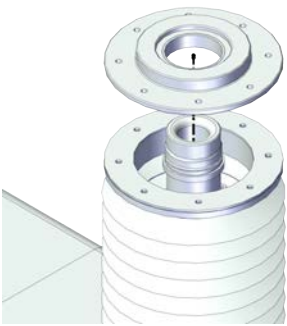
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm




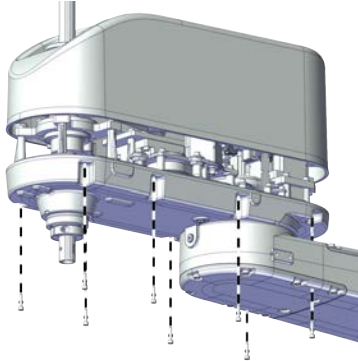
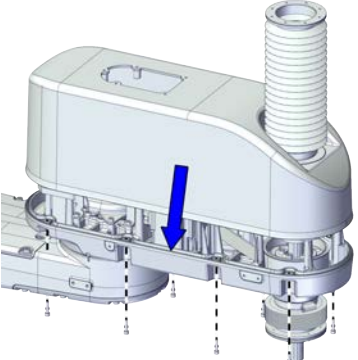
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*





### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

#### Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

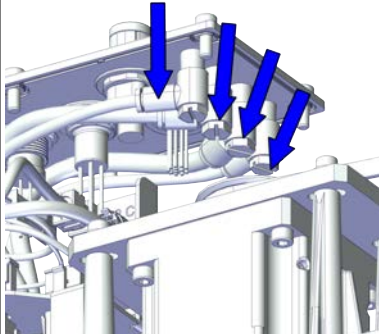
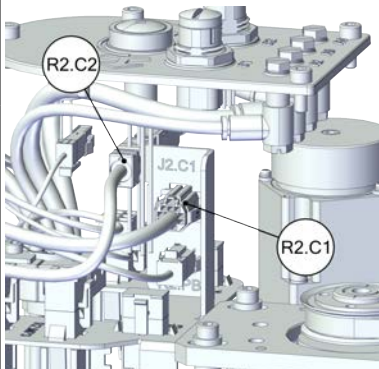



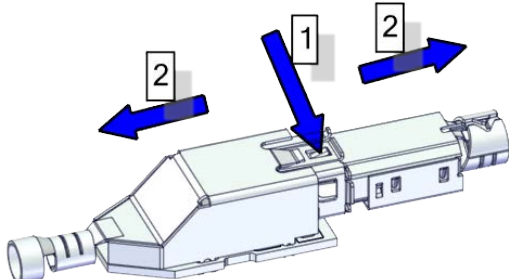
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




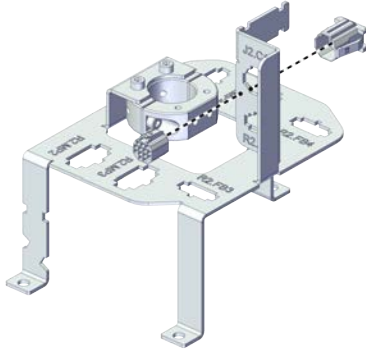
5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly  
Continued



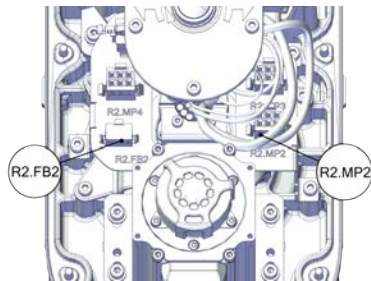
	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C1</li></ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>


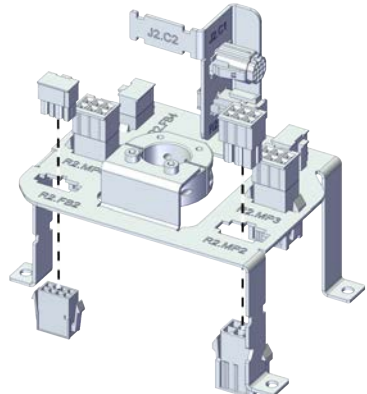
Continues on next page





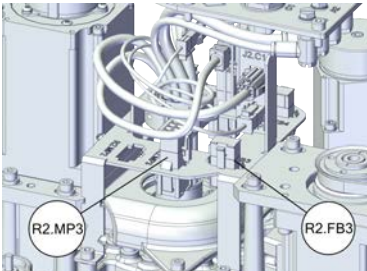
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor


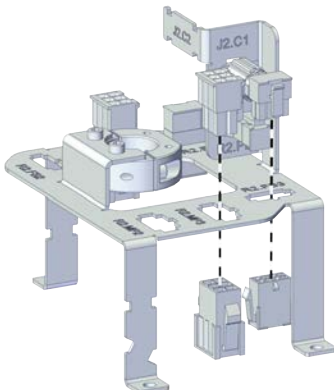
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>

Continues on next page


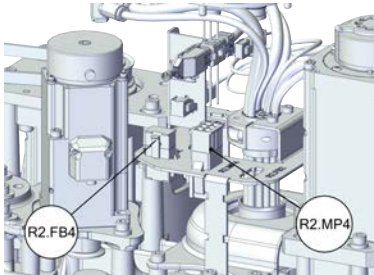

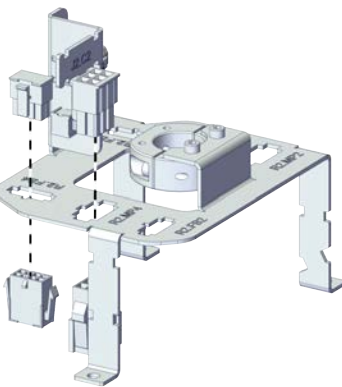


## 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>

*Continues on next page*



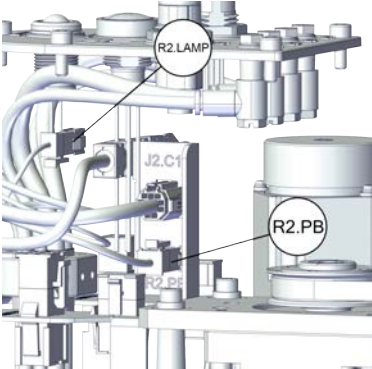

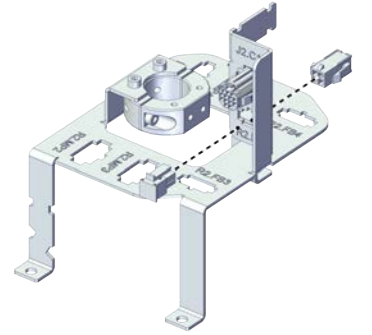


## 5 Repair


### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

#### Pull out the process hub





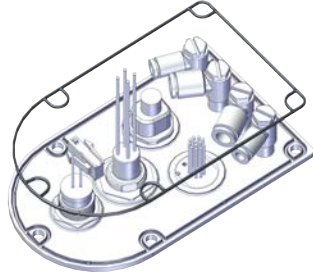
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*





### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

#### Removing the cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	


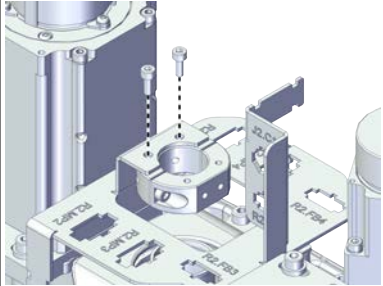

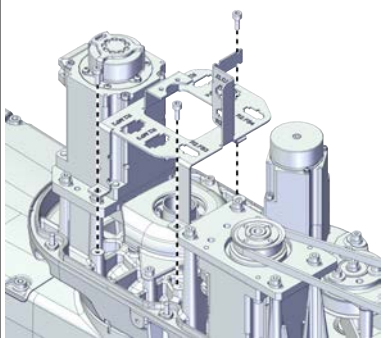
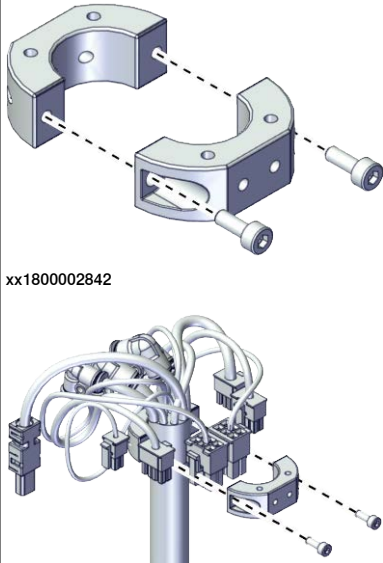
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p> <p>xx1800002849</p>

### Removing the gear-2 pulley protection cover


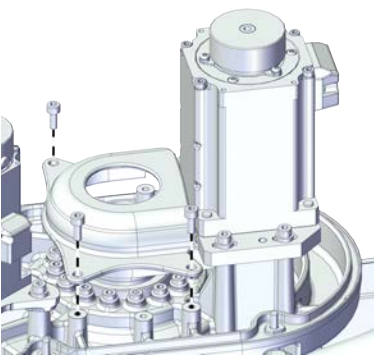
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page



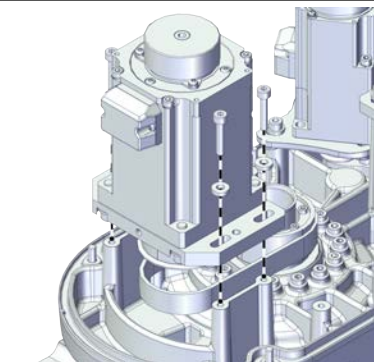



### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to release the pulley protection cover.	 xx2100001047

#### Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001046
4	Remove the motor.  <b>Tip</b> Move the internal harness out of the way.	

*Continues on next page*



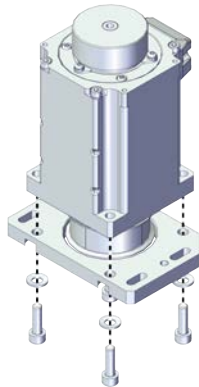


## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*


#### Separating the flange from axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001177
4	Remove the motor.	

#### Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 motor sub-assembly.

#### Refitting the flange to the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

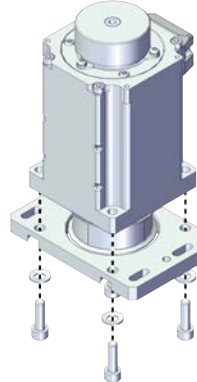
	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

*Continues on next page*


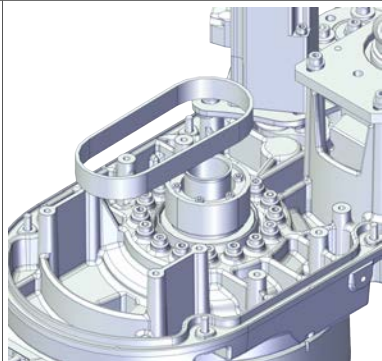


### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Install the flange to the motor and secure with screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer 11x5.3x1.2 Steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 5.7 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001177</p>

#### Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the axis-2 timing belt onto the pulley on the axis-2 gearbox.	 <p>xx2100001048</p>

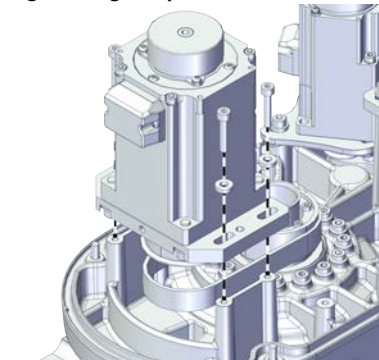


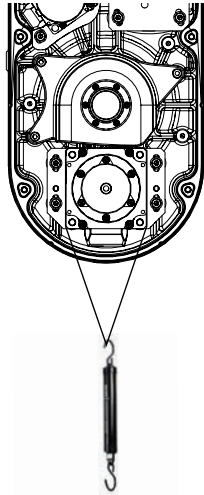
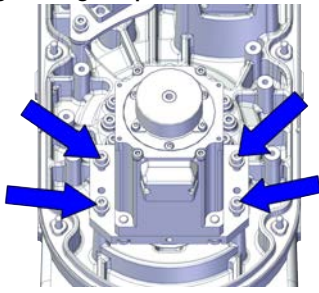
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

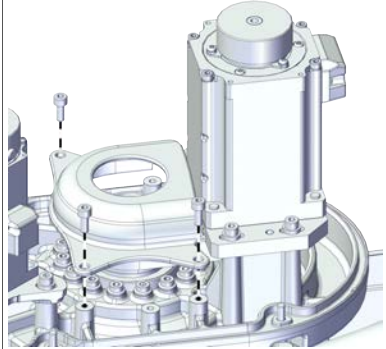
### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued





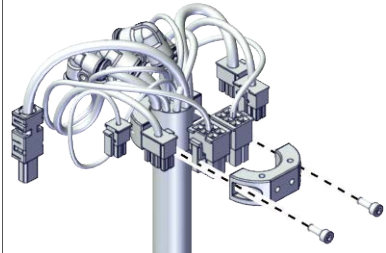
	Action	Note
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	 xx2100001046 Timing belt A2: 3HAC061861-001
5	Hang a strap to the motor.	
6	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.   <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.   <b>Tip</b> If the ball screw will interfere with the handheld dynamometer, adjust the ball screw manually.	Used belt: 49-69 N New belt: 70-100 N   xx2100001125
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%   xx2100001176

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 218-259 Hz New belt: 260-390 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	
10	Refit the pulley protection cover and secure with screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100001047</p>

## Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm 10\%</math></p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>



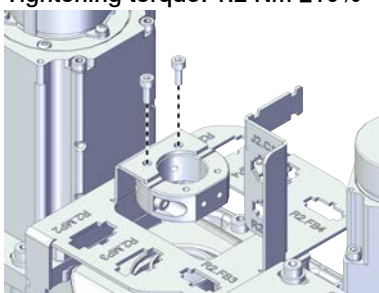


Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued



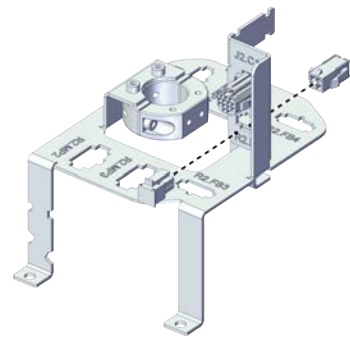

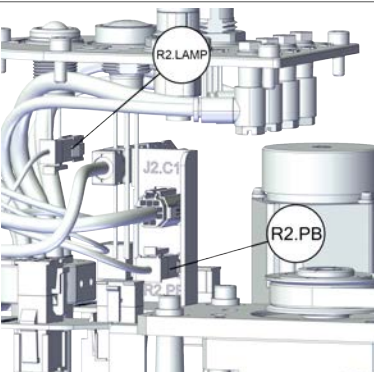

	Action	Note
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

### Reconnecting the connector for PB


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	



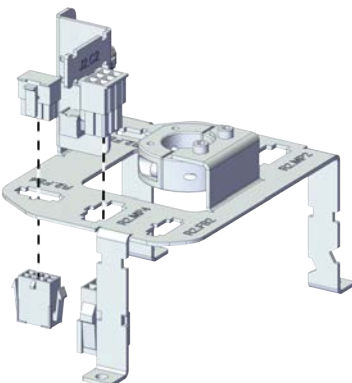

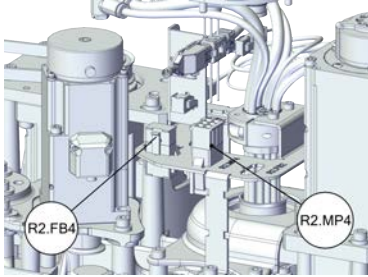

Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor



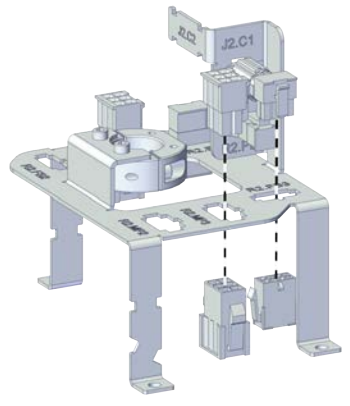

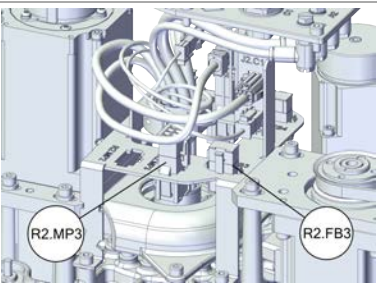

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page




### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	



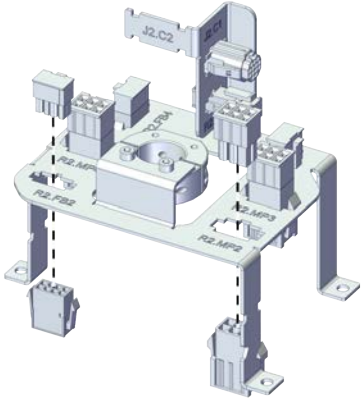

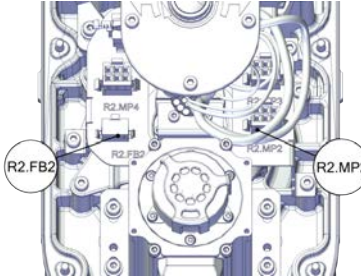

*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued



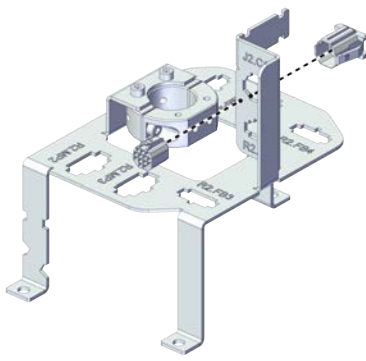

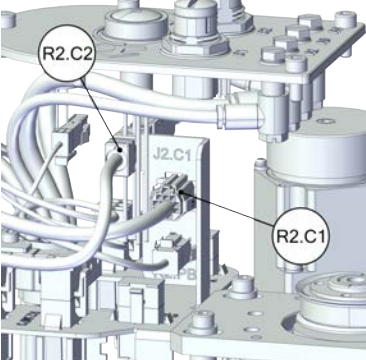


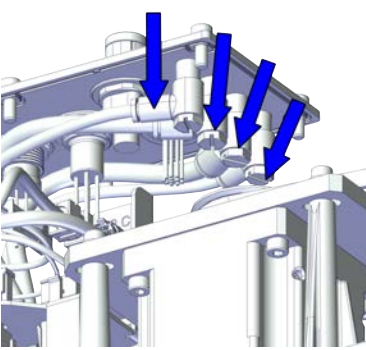
	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>


Continues on next page






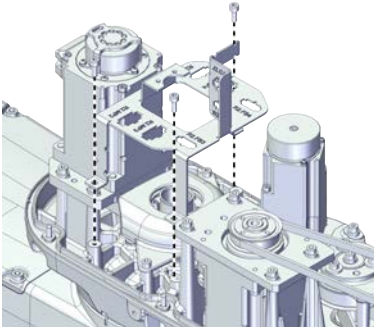
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly


Continued

	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm




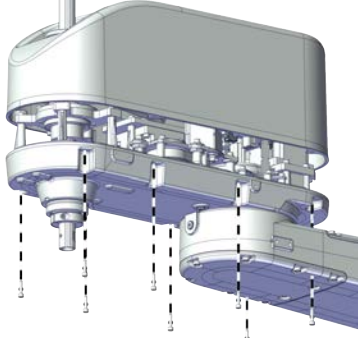
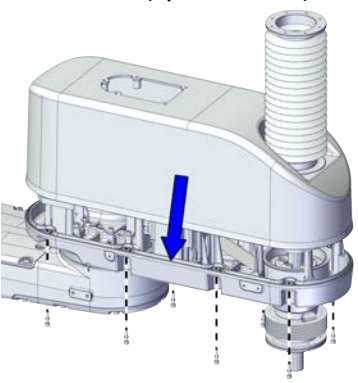
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page




### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

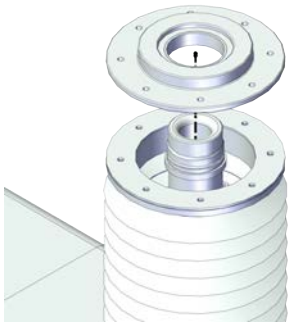
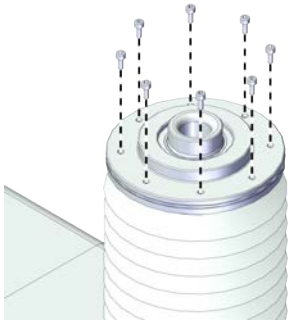


*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

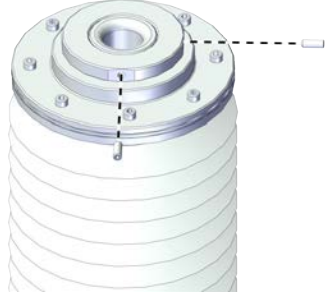
### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*


	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




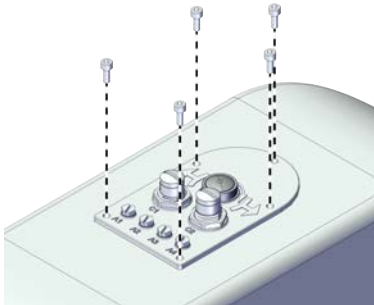
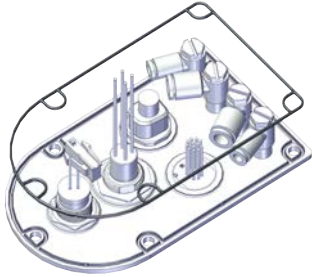
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



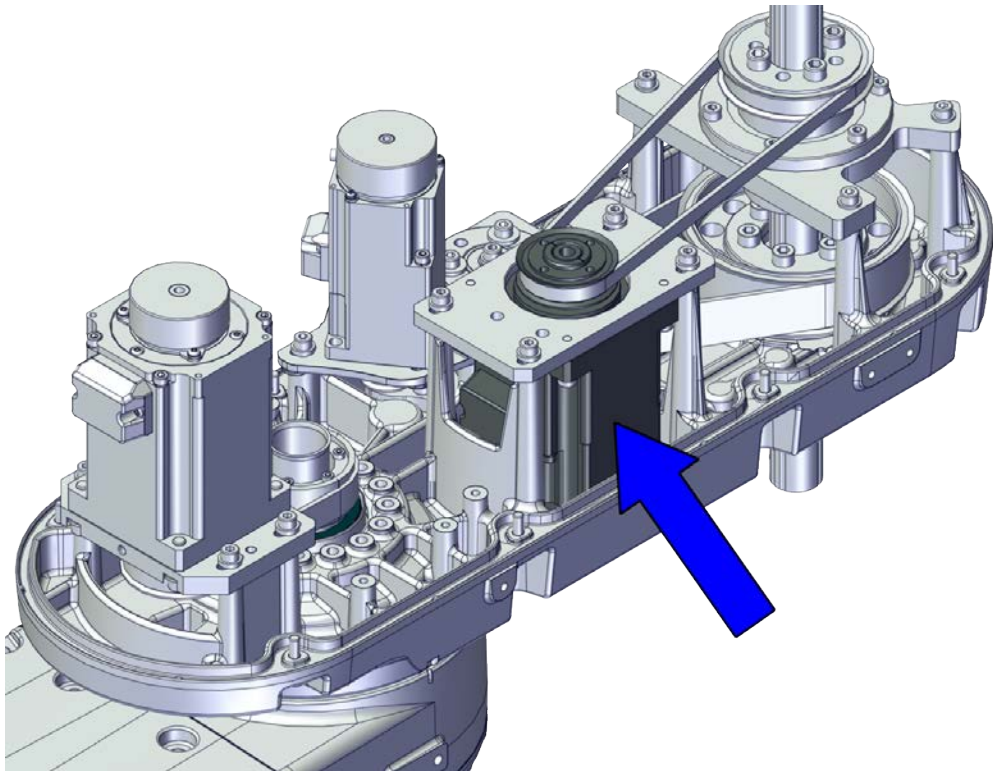
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

#### Location of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

The axis-3 motor sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001025

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Motor with pulley A3	3HAC076577-001	
Timing belt A3	3HAC070464-001	

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .

*Continues on next page*



## 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

**Required consumables**

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.  If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.  Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.  Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

**Removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly**

Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 motor sub-assembly.

*Continues on next page*






## 5 Repair



### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
4	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws



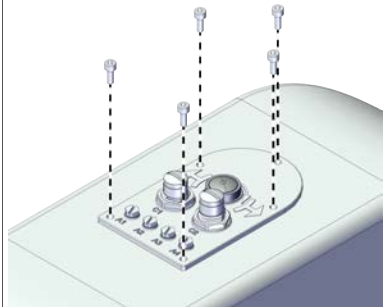
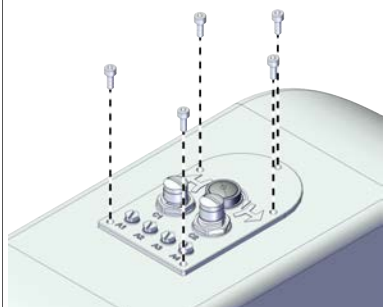
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*





### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p>
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

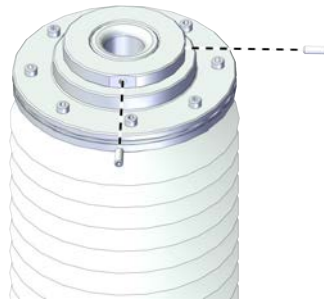

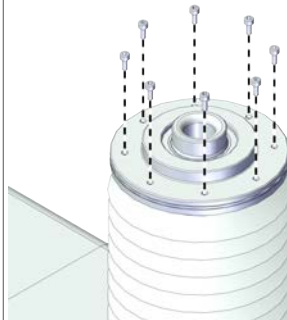
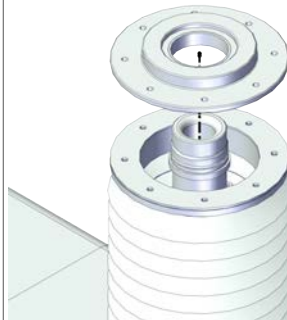
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly






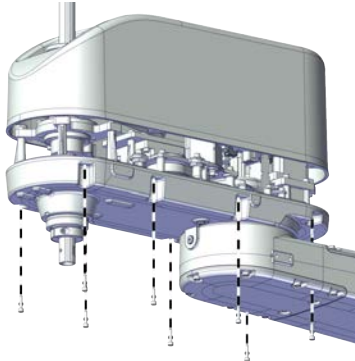
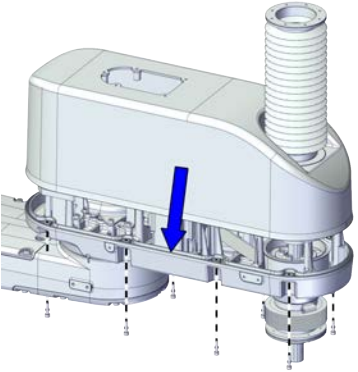
*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Loose the locking screws.</p>	 <p>xx2100002398</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the top cover from the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

*Continues on next page*



## Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.   <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the cover with bellow and housing.   <b>Note</b> The bellow does not need to be removed separately.   <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	<b>For robots with protection class IP30</b>  xx2100000933  <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b>  xx2100002427

Continues on next page



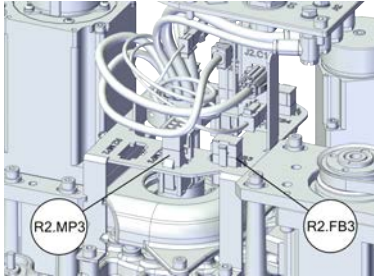

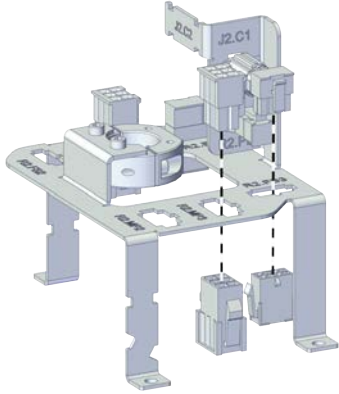


## 5 Repair


### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 xx2100000936
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000937

#### Removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly



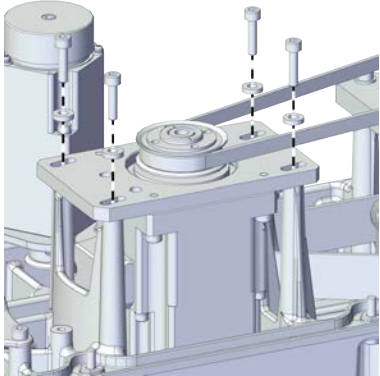
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*





## 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Remove the screws.	 xx2100001178
5	Remove the axis-3 motor sub-assembly and the timing belt.	

## Separating the flange from axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	

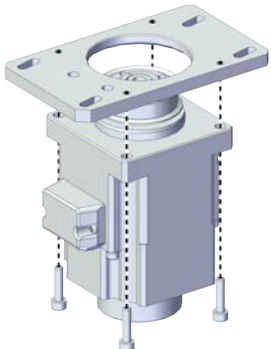
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly


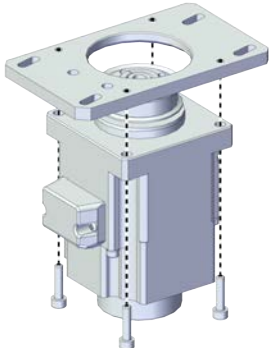
*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001180
4	Remove the motor.	

### Refitting the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-3 motor sub-assembly.

#### Refitting the flange to the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Install the flange to the motor and secure with screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm <math>\pm</math>10% 3HAB3409-212</p>  xx2100001180



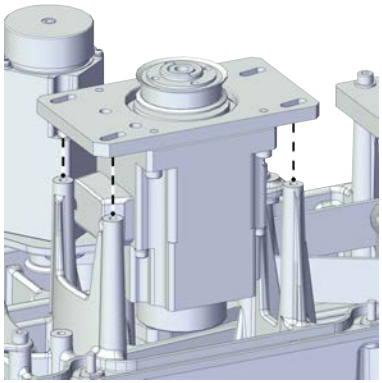
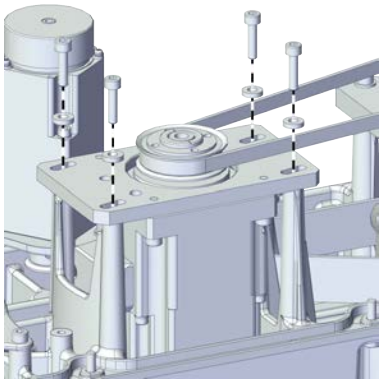
*Continues on next page*



### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Refitting the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the motor to the outer arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Move the internal harness out of the way.</p>	 <p>xx2100001181</p>
3	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Washer 4.3x10x2 steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2100001178</p>
5	Hang a strap to the motor.	


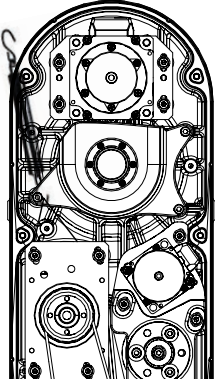
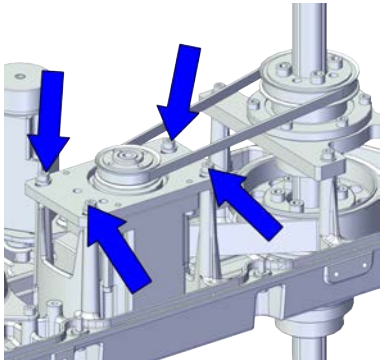
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Continued



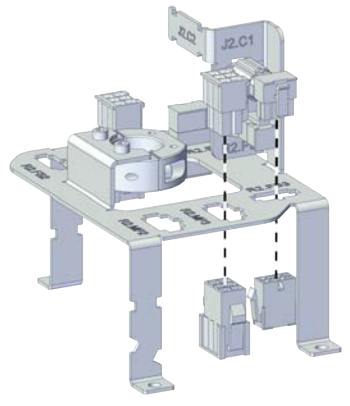

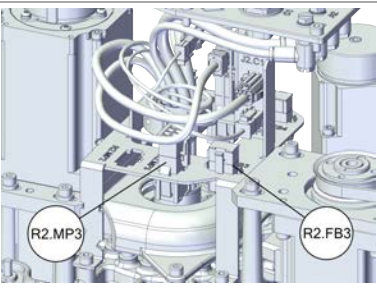

	Action	Note
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N New belt: 40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 92-109 Hz New belt: 110-145 Hz</p>
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	 <p>xx2100001179</p>
10	Remove the axis-3 belt tension adjustment tool.	

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




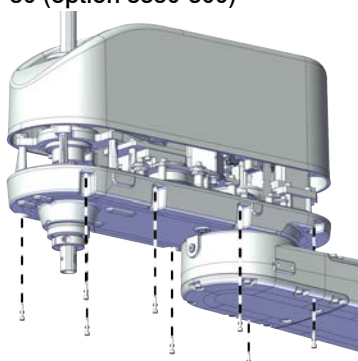
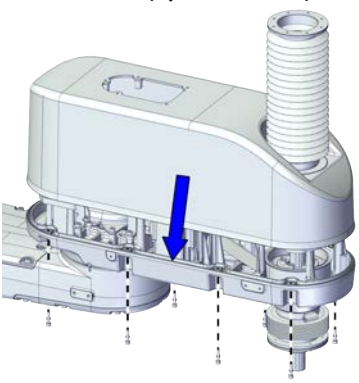
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair


### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

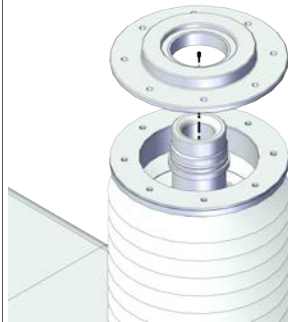
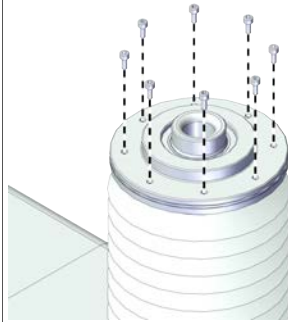


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

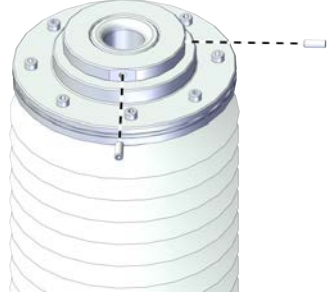
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*




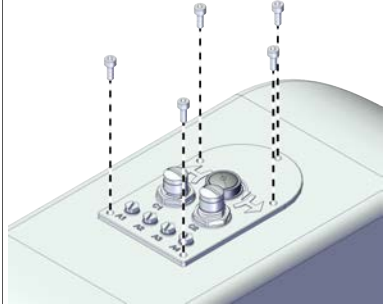
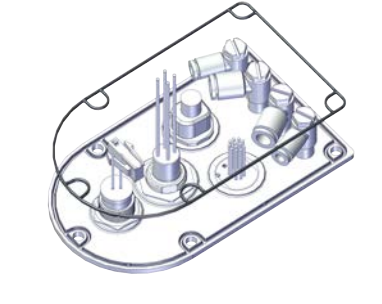
	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

#### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p> </div> </div>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

---

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

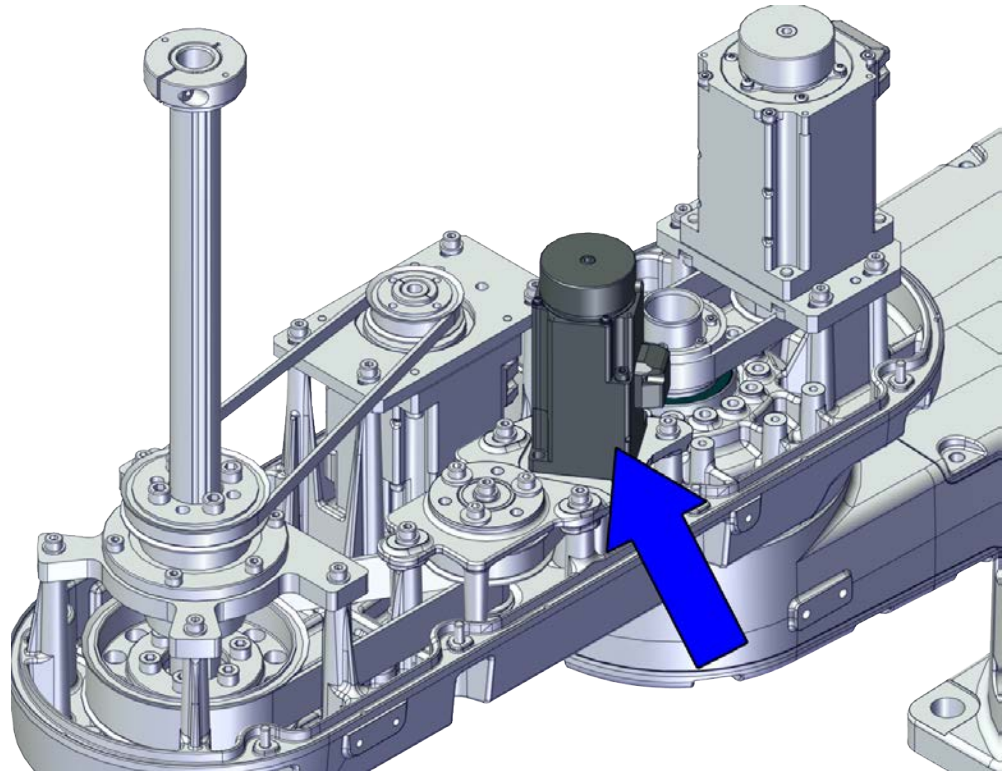
	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

#### Location of the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

The axis-4 motor sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001026

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Motor with pulley A4	3HAC076578-001	
Timing belt, A4-1	3HAC070470-001	
Timing belt, A4-2	3HAC070471-001	
Transmission module	3HAC076579-001	

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

#### Removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 motor sub-assembly.


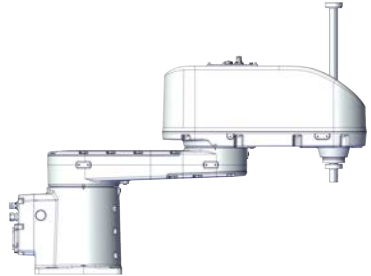


*Continues on next page*




### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




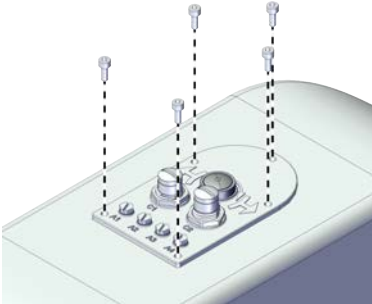
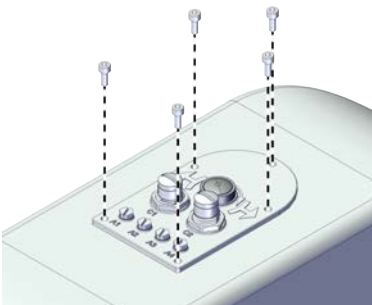
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	


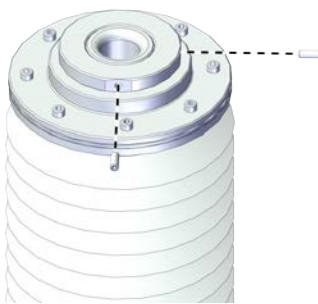

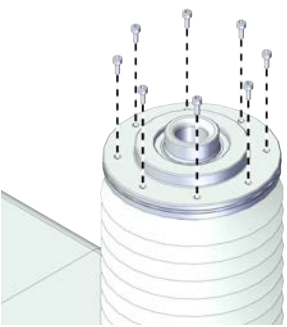
For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

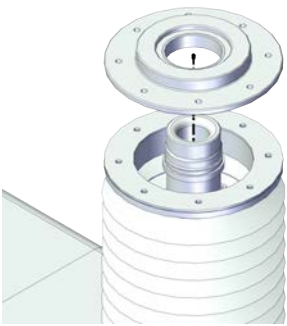
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm




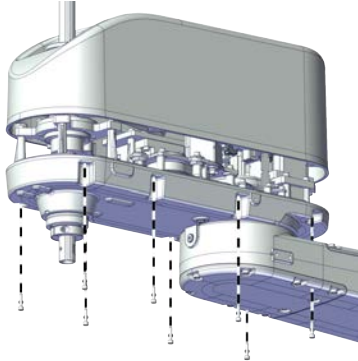
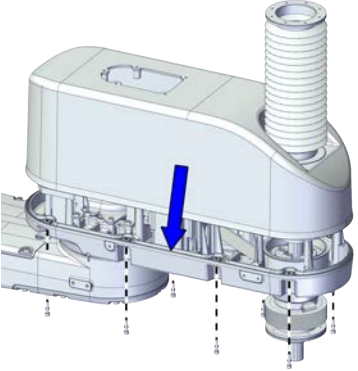
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

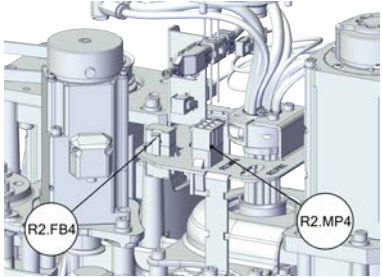

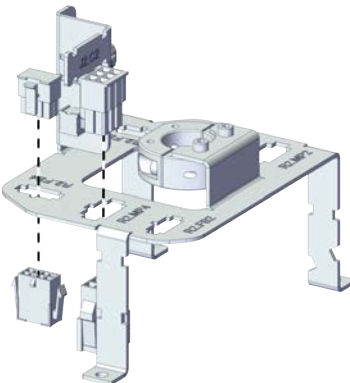
*Continues on next page*






## 5 Repair

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket. <div>  <b>Note</b> </div> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>

### Removing the axis-3 timing belt

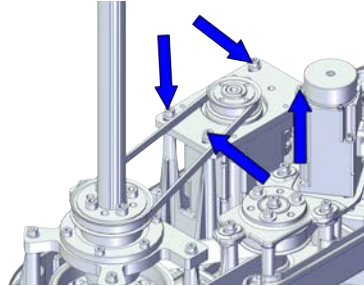
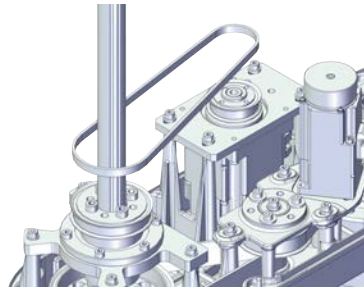
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	

Continues on next page



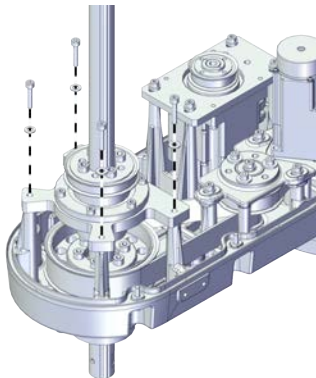


## 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
4	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2100001078
5	Remove the timing belt.	 xx2100001079

## Releasing the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Removing the screws of the ball screw flange to make enough space for removing the axis-4 second timing belt.	 xx2100001082

Continues on next page



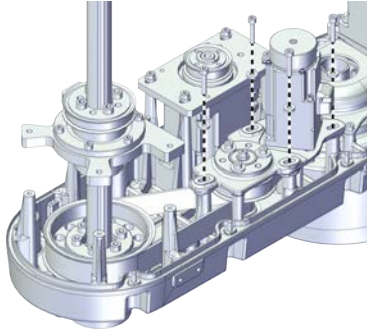


## 5 Repair



### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Removing the transmission module assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Removing the screws of the transmission module assembly.	 xx2100001091
4	Take out the transmission module assembly with the axis-4-2 timing belt.	

#### Removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

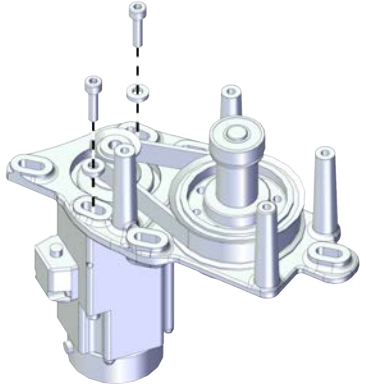

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*



## 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly



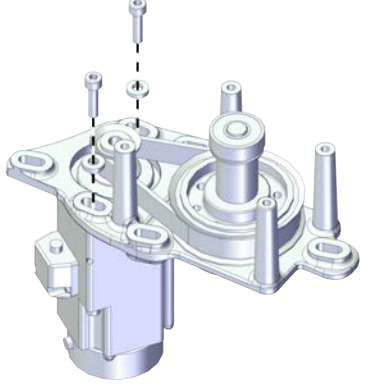
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001094
4	Remove the motor from the transmission module.  <b>Tip</b> Move the internal harness out of the way.	
5	Remove the timing belt from the transmission module.	

## Refitting the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-4 motor sub-assembly.

## Refitting the axis-4 motor sub-assembly to the transmission module

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Refit the motor to the transmission module.  <b>Tip</b> Move the internal harness out of the way.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%
3	Refit the screws and washers.	 xx2100001094

Continues on next page


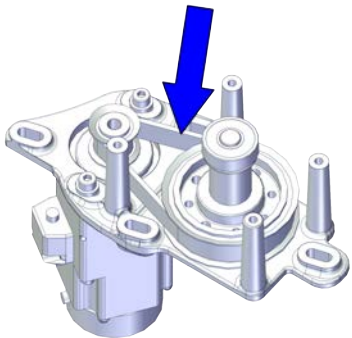
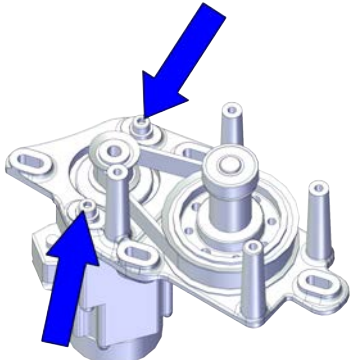



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly



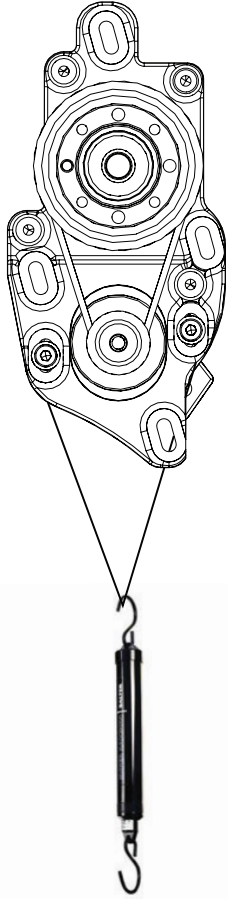
*Continued*

#### Refitting the axis-4 timing belt


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley.	<p>Timing belt, A4-1: 3HAC070470-001</p>  <p>xx2100001097</p>
3	Refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001095</p>
5	<p>Hang a strap to the motor and hold the transmission module.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Just tighten the tool.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>If the ball screw will interfere with the handheld dynamometer, adjust the ball screw manually.</p>	<p>Used belt: 24.5-34 N New belt: 35-50 N</p>  <p>xx2100001128</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 205-244 Hz New belt: 245-340 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	
10	Remove the axis-4 belt tension adjustment tool.	

## Refitting the transmission module assembly to the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	


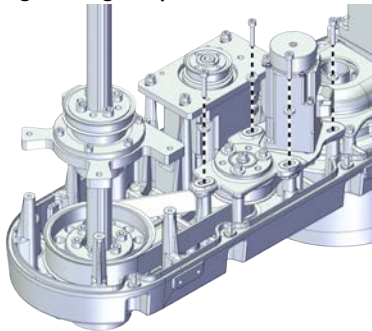
Continues on next page




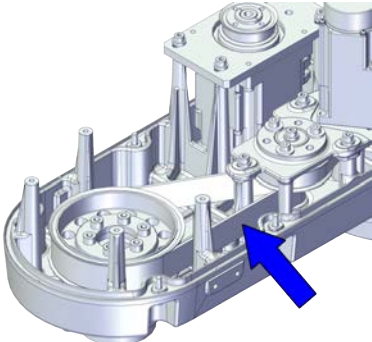
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Refit the transmission module assembly to the outer arm.   <b>Tip</b>  Place the axis-4 second timing belt through the ball screw flange.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%    xx2100001091
3	Secure with the screws without fully tightened.	




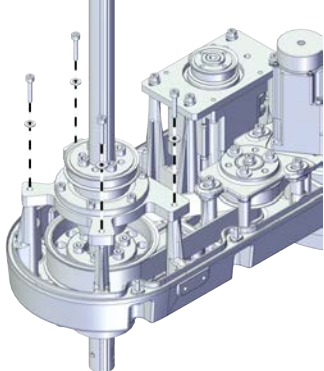
#### Refitting the axis-4 second timing belt to the pulley

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>   <b>Note</b>  After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Refit the belt to the pulley. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt, A4-2: 3HAC070471-001    xx2100001086


Continues on next page



## Fastening the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Tighten the screws of the ball screw flange.	 xx2100001082

## Adjusting the axis-4 second timing belt tension

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	




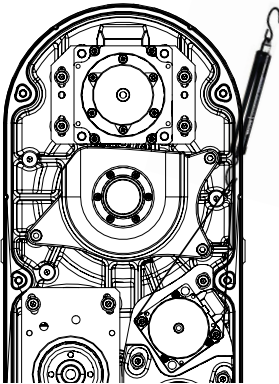
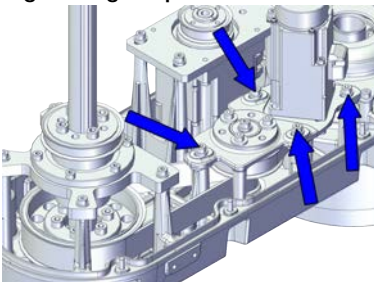
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly




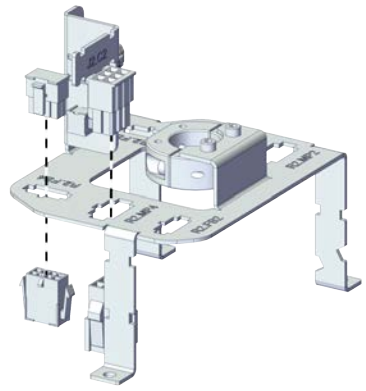

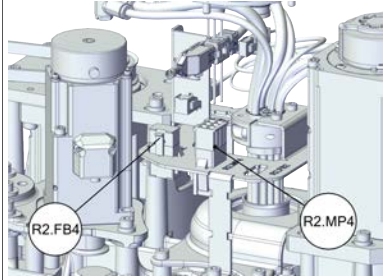

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a>	
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
4	Hang a strong strap to the motor.	
5	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.	Used belt: 168-189 N New belt: 240-270 N  xx2100001127
6	Fasten the screws on the transmission module to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001087
7	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 151-179 Hz New belt: 180-240 Hz
8	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

Continues on next page



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page


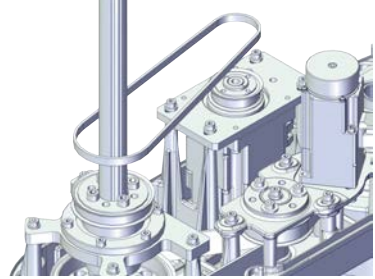
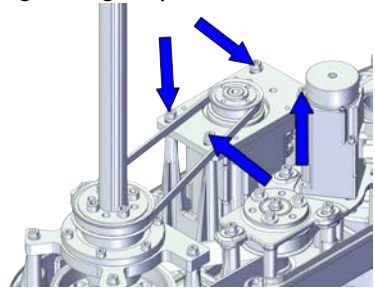


## 5 Repair

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Refitting the axis-3 timing belt


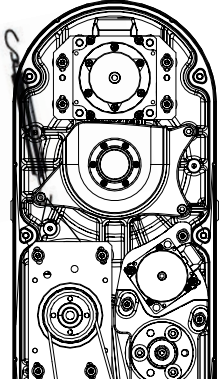
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt A3: 3HAC070464-001</p>  <p>xx2100001079</p>
3	Secure the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001078</p>
4	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 28-37 N New belt: 40-53 N</p>  <p>xx2100001126</p>
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 92-109 Hz New belt: 110-145 Hz
7	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	

## Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	




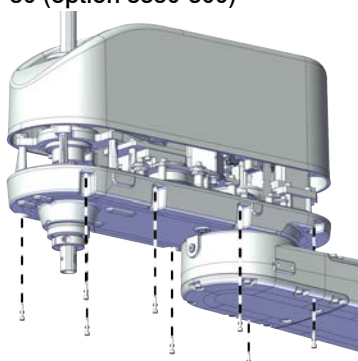
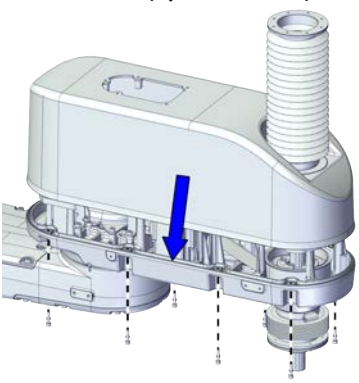
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair


### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

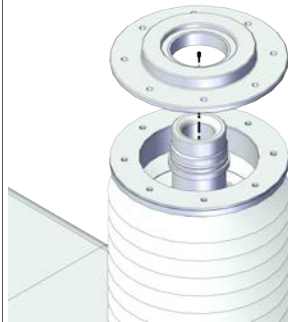
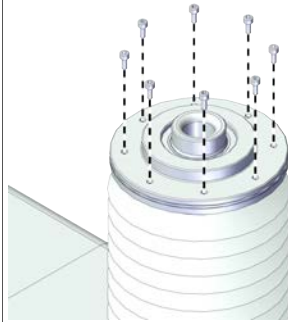


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page



### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

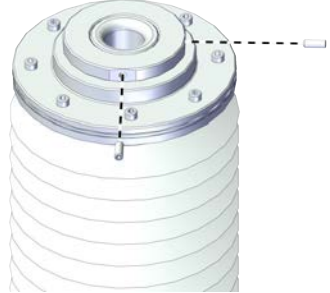
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*




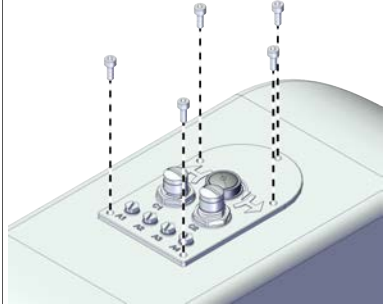
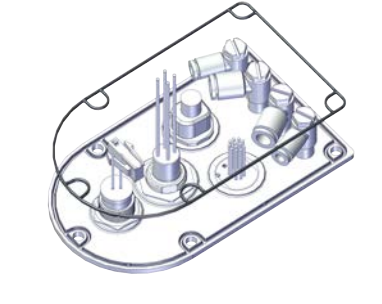
	Action	Note
5	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the locking screws.	Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100002398

#### Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

---

### 5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	

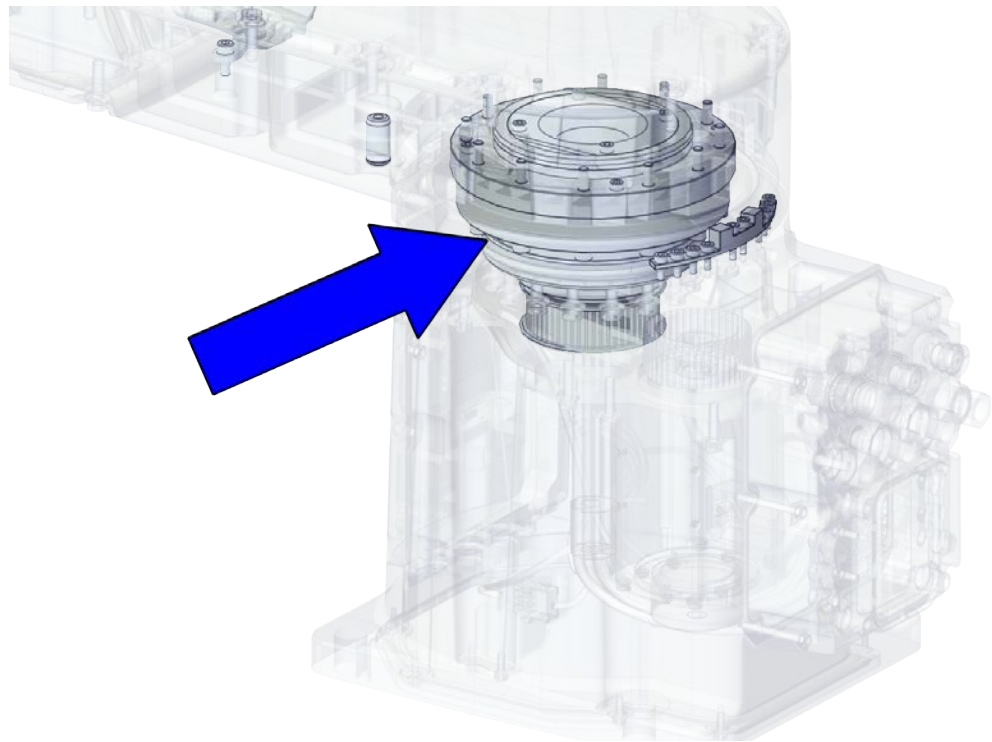


## 5.8 Gearboxes

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

#### Location of the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

The axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001027

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly	3HAC076573-001	Without tube&bolt; flange screw. Used for IRB 920T-6/0.45, IRB 920T-6/0.55 and IRB 920T-6/0.65
Pulley cover	3HAC079523-001	Replace if damaged.
Axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly	3HAC084965-001	Without tube&bolt; flange screw. Used for IRB 920-6/0.55_0.18 and IRB 920-6/0.65_0.18
Oil absorbing pad	3HAC079524-001	Replace if damaged.
O-ring	3HAB3772-115	Replace if damaged.

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Belt tension adjustment tool set, axis 1&2	-	Included in the special toolkit 3HAC073070-001. Used to adjust the tension of axis-1&2 timing belts. Special tool for L2
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

#### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	


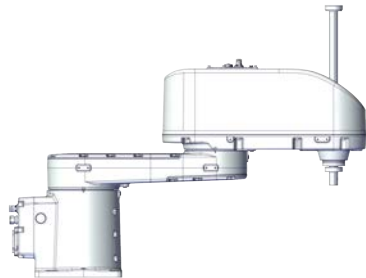


*Continues on next page*



**Removing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly**

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly.

**Preparations before removing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly**

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page





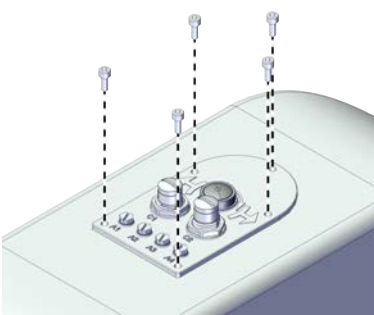
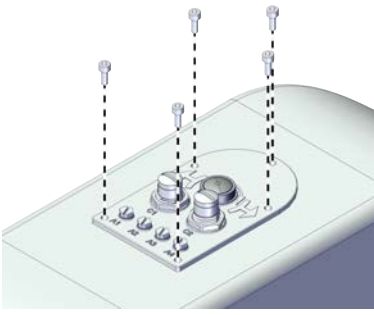


## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

*Continues on next page*



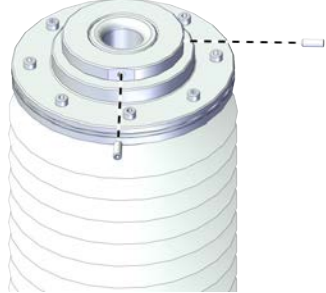



### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399

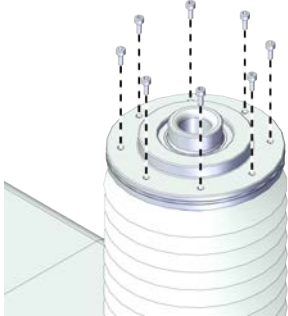
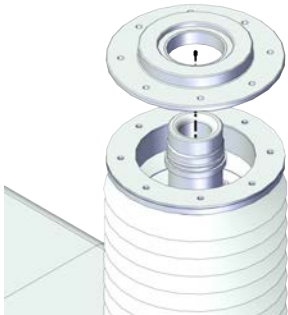
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*




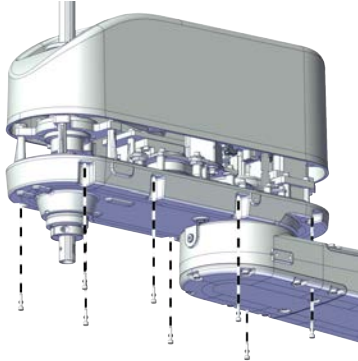
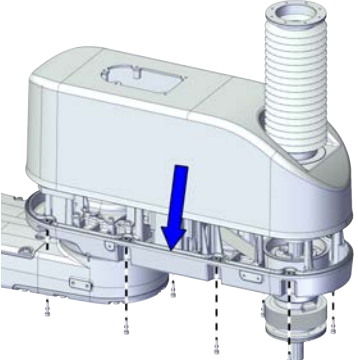
	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002401</p>
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

#### Removing the cover of the outer arm



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!  See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a></p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

## Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

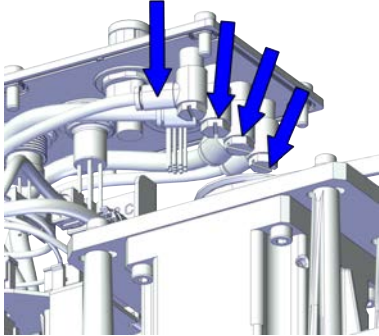
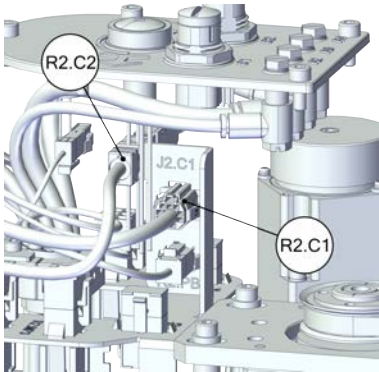



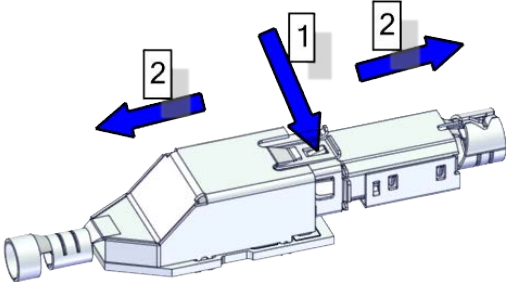
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly  
Continued


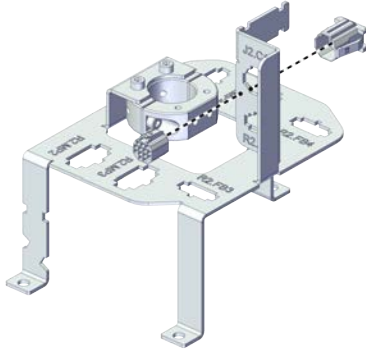
	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C1</li></ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>J2.C2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	

Continues on next page



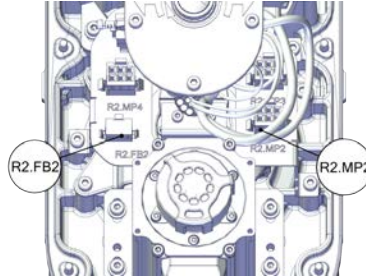


## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>


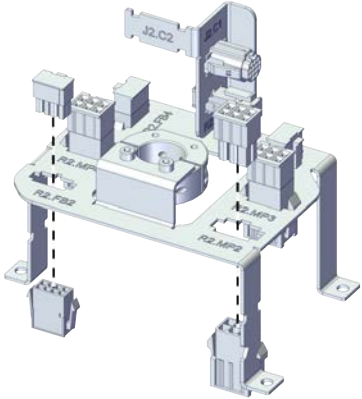
Continues on next page





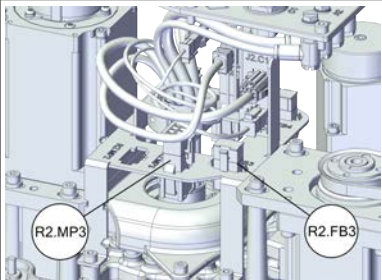
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor


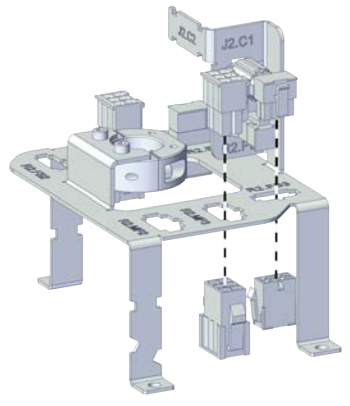
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>

Continues on next page


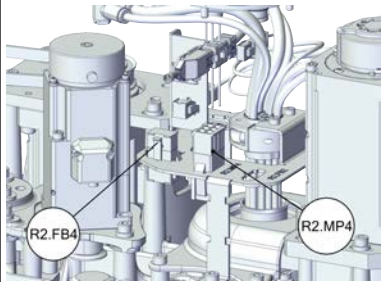

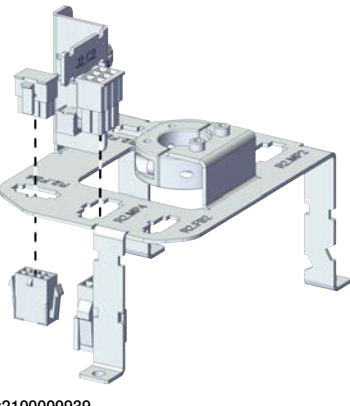


## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>

## Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>

*Continues on next page*



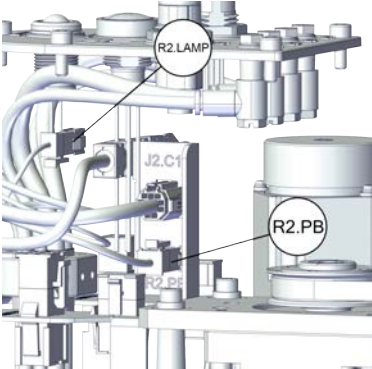

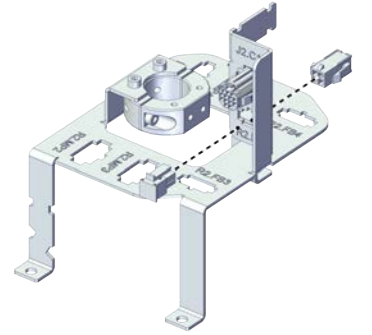


## 5 Repair


### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Disconnecting the connector for PB





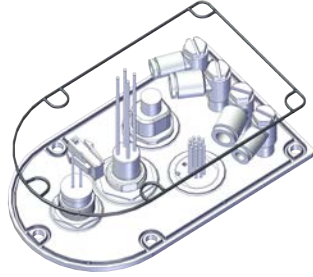
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

#### Pull out the process hub



	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

## Removing the cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	


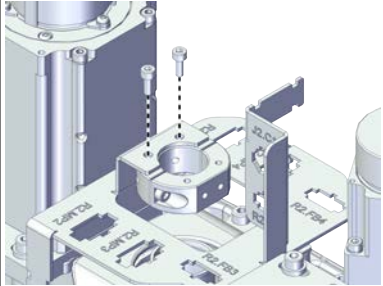

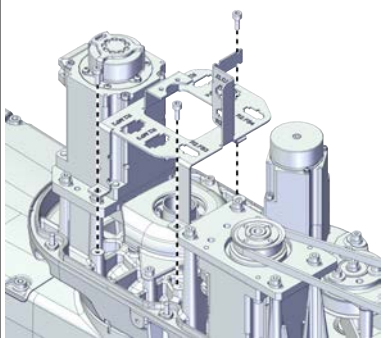
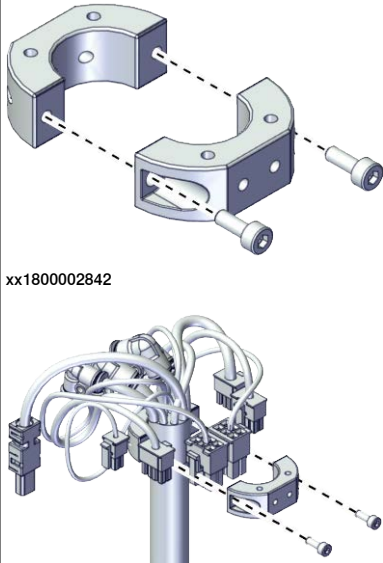
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*




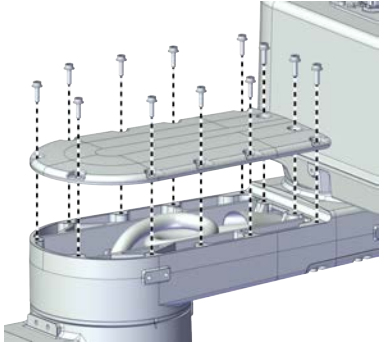
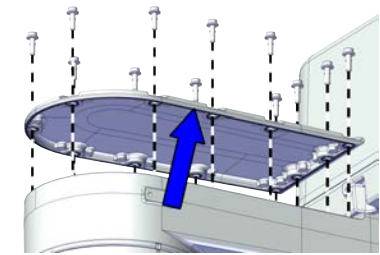
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p> <p>xx1800002849</p>

#### Removing the axis-1 cover



	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Remove the cover.  <b>Note</b> <b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the cover and check the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.	 <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)            For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>

## Removing the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	



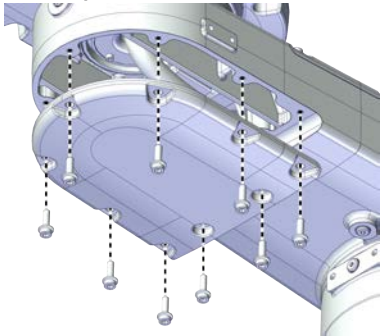
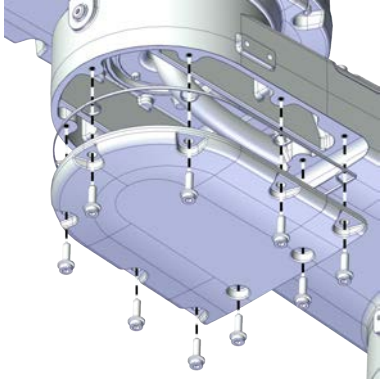
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<p>Remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the cover and check the gasket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000943</p>  <p>xx2100002451</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>

#### Removing the SMB cover



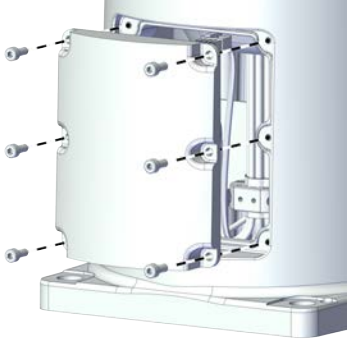


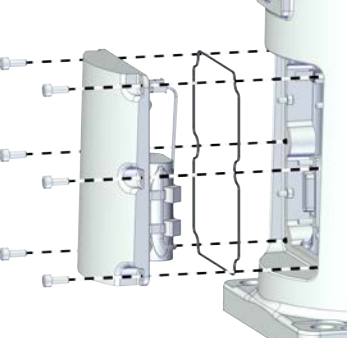
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page




### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.   <b>Note</b>  For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the stainless screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  
5	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.   <b>Note</b>  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the SMB cover.   <b>Tip</b>  Replace the gasket if needed.	xx2100000944  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  

#### Disconnecting the SMB cabling

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	




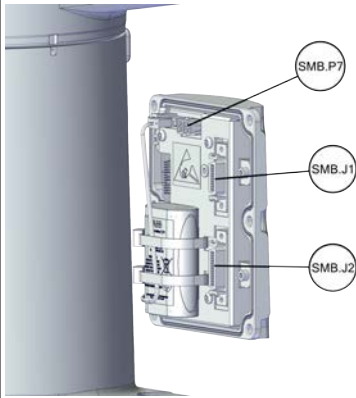
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b> The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 49</a> .	
3	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
4	Cut the strips.	
5	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SMB.P7</li> <li>• SMB.J1</li> <li>• SMB.J2</li> </ul>  <b>Tip</b> Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

### Removing the base plate/ rear plate



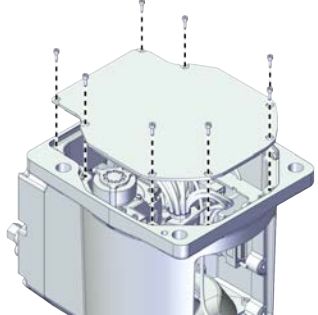
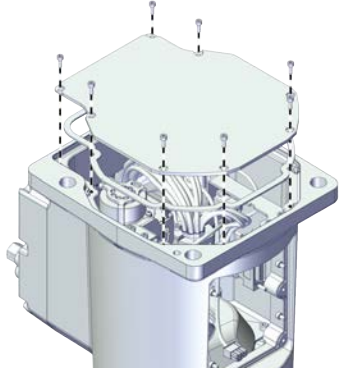
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
4	Lay down the robot.	

Continues on next page



### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>



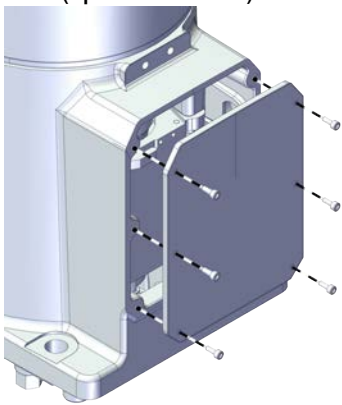
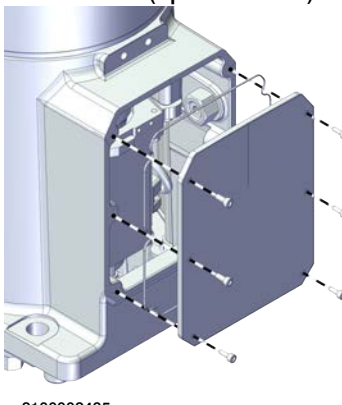
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
7	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
8	<p>Remove the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001202</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>

### Releasing the base bracket

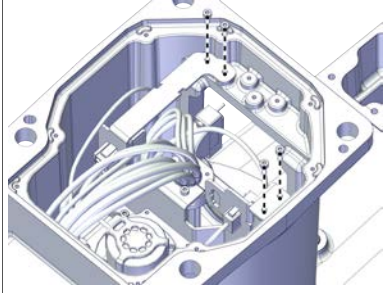
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page



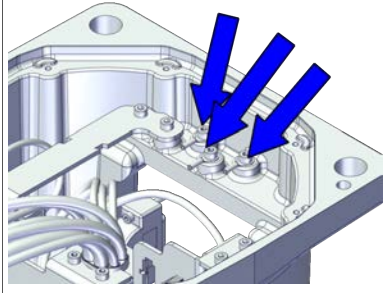


### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base.	 xx2100000948

#### Disconnecting the grounding cable connectors

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the three grounding cables from the bracket by unscrew the screws.	 xx2100000947

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


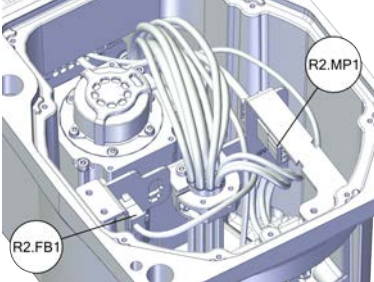

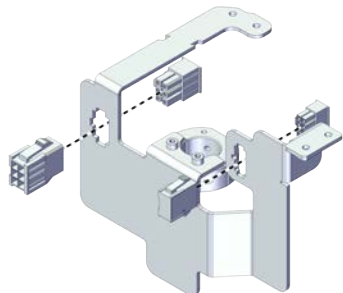
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul>	 xx2100000949
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.   <b>Note</b>  The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100000950

#### Removing the bracket

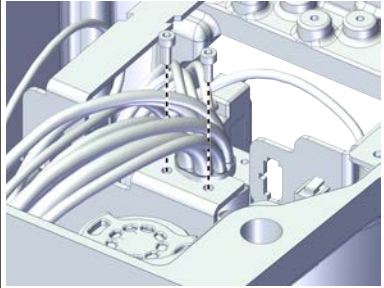
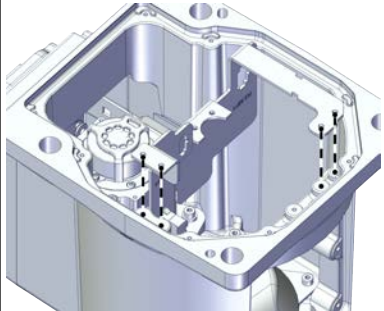
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

Continues on next page





### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Release the cable ferrule from the bracket.	 xx2100000951
4	Remove the bracket.	 xx2100000952

#### Removing the main harness from the axis -2 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	



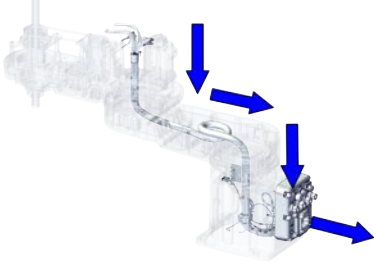
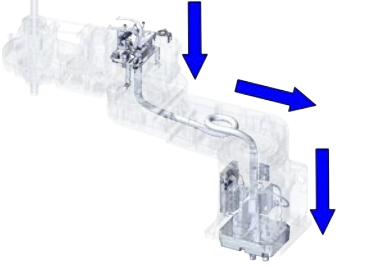
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the outer arm from the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

#### Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position


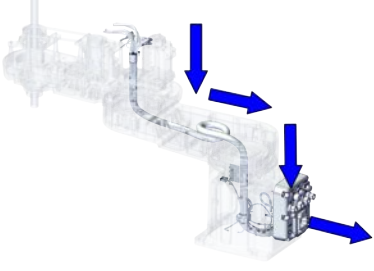
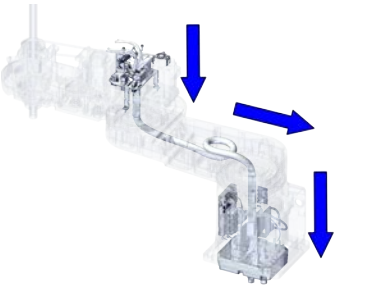
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!</p> <p>See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*





### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Pull the internal harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000954</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001203</p>

#### Removing the main harness



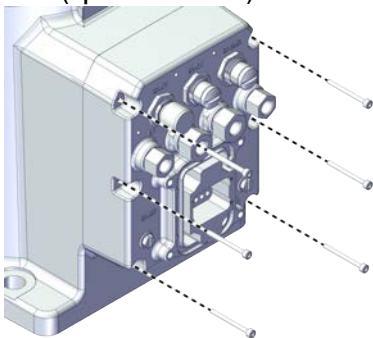
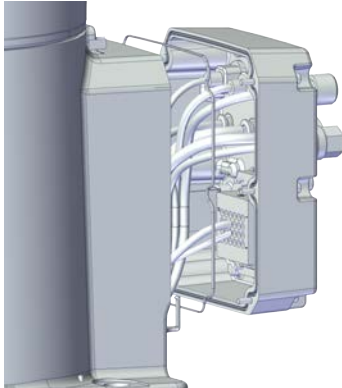
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly  
Continued




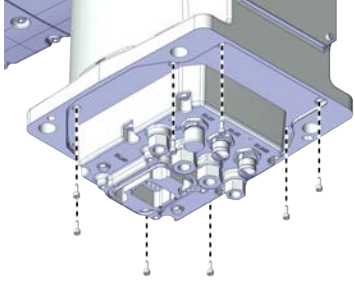
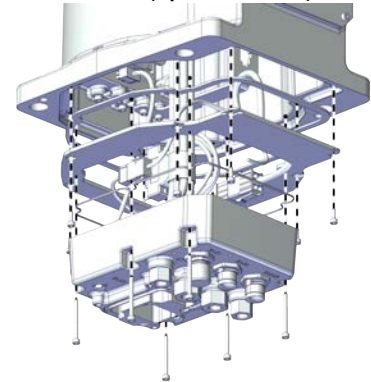
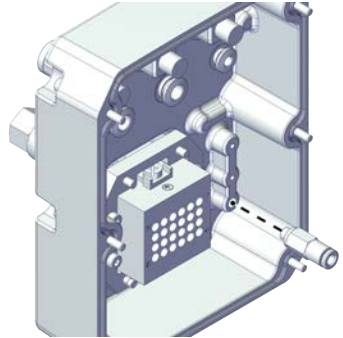
	Action	Note
3	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	<div>Remove the main harness.</div> <div> <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the main harness.</div> <div> <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.</div>	<div> xx2100000953</div> <div>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</div> <div> xx2100002436</div>

Continues on next page




### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
6	<p>Remove the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the main harness assembly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.</p>	 <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002437</p>
7	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the one way valve by unscrewing it.</p>	 <p>xx2200000281</p>

#### Removing the pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


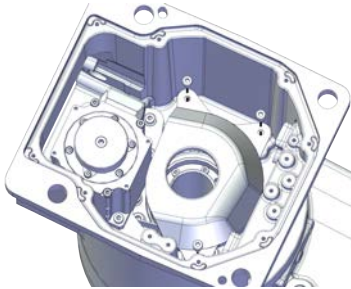
*Continues on next page*





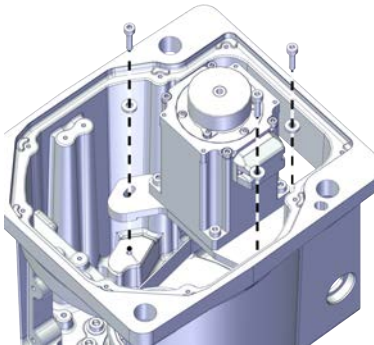
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	 xx2100001037
4	Remove the pulley protection cover.	



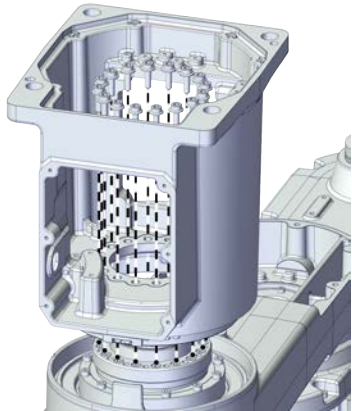
### Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001038
4	Remove the motor.	



*Continues on next page*



## Removing the base from the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers on the base to the axis-1 gear unit.	 xx2100001039
4	Remove the base.	

## Removing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

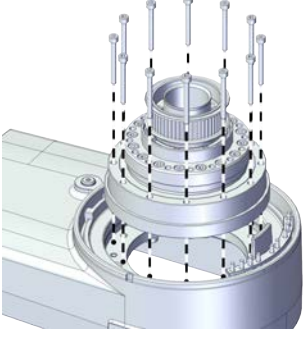


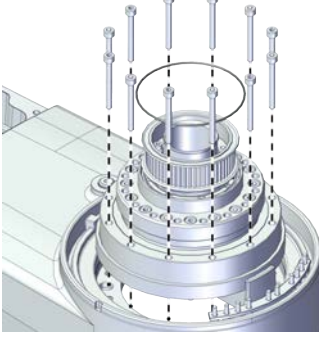
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly



Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the gear to the inner arm.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001130</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the gear unit and the O-ring through the cable slightly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the O-ring and replace it if needed.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>  <p>xx2100002440</p>
4	Remove the gear unit.	

### Refitting the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly





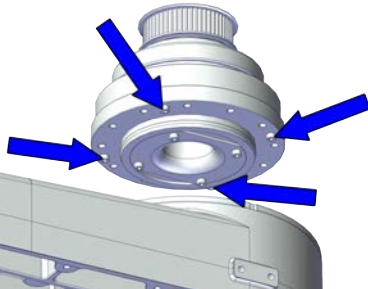
Use these procedures to refit the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly.

#### Refitting the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the gear unit according to the location screws through the cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the gear unit and the O-ring according to the location pin through the cable.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the O-ring and replace it if needed.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	 <p>xx2100001131</p>

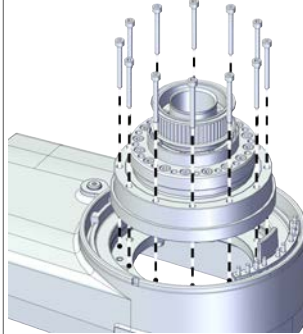
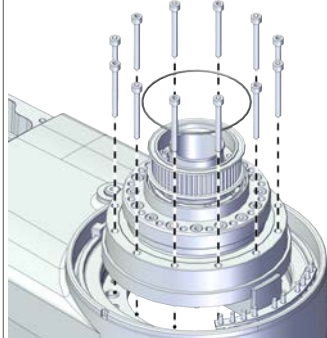
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	Refit the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x35 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001130</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002440</p>

### Refitting the base

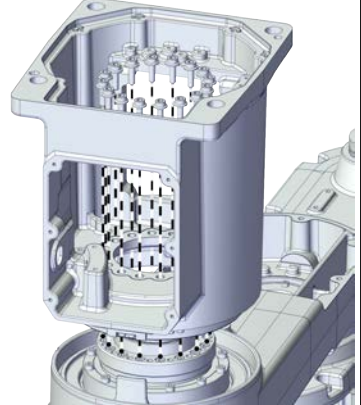
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*


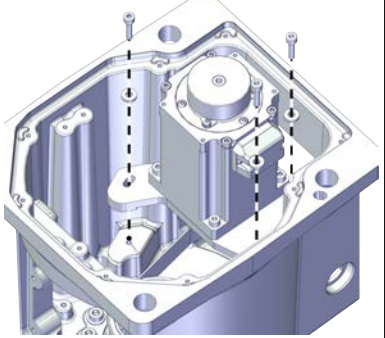


## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Refit the base to the axis-1 gearbox as the illustration.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6.7 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001039</p>
3	Refit the screws.	

## Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Put the timing belt into the pulley on the gear.	
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001038</p> <p>Timing belt A1: 3HAC070449-001</p>
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	


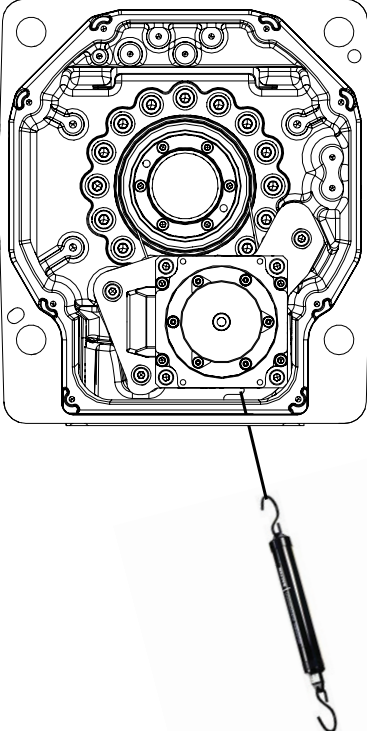
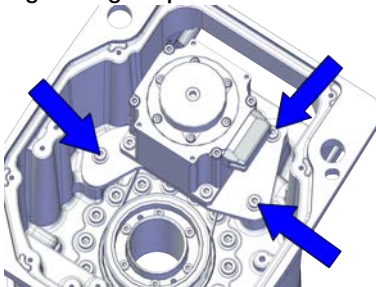
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly



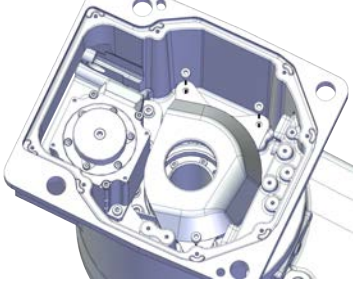
Continued

	Action	Note
5	Hang a strap to the hook on the motor.	
6	<p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p>	<p>Used belt: 63-89 N New belt: 90-130 N</p>  <p>xx2100001043</p>
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	<p>Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001044</p>
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 209-249 Hz New belt: 250-370 Hz</p>
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	


Continues on next page



## Refitting the pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the pulley protection cover.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001037
4	Secure the screws on the pulley protection cover to the base.	

## Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	

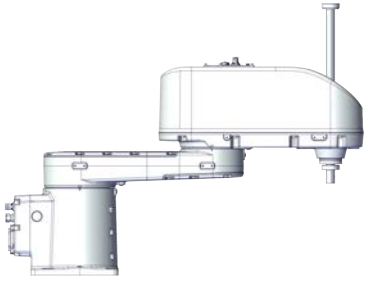



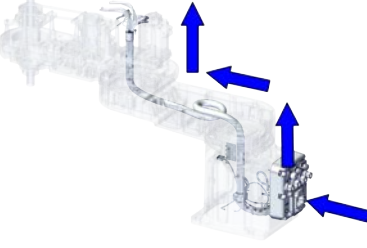
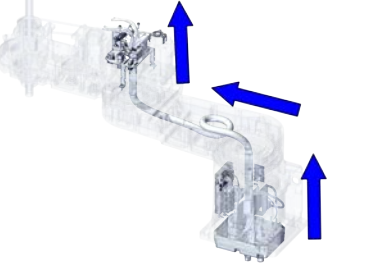
Continues on next page




## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*



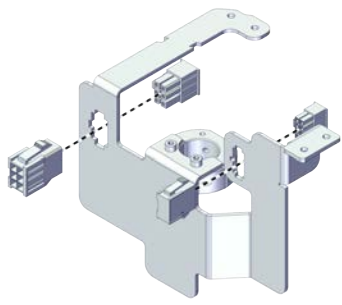

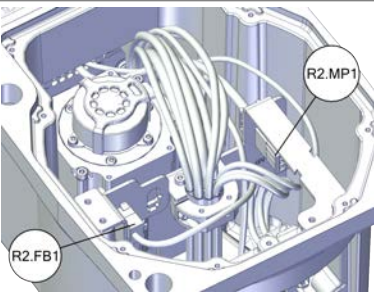

	Action	Note
2	Make sure that the robot is at zero position.	 xx2100000930
3	<p>Insert the internal harness into the inner arm through the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p><b>For rear outlet cable version:</b></p>  xx2100000955 <p><b>For underneath outlet cable version:</b></p>  xx2100001206

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000950</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP1</li> <li>• R2.FB1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000949</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

## Reconnecting the grounding cable connectors

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

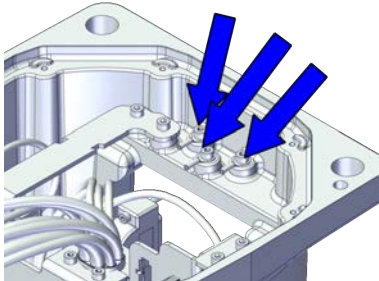

Continues on next page






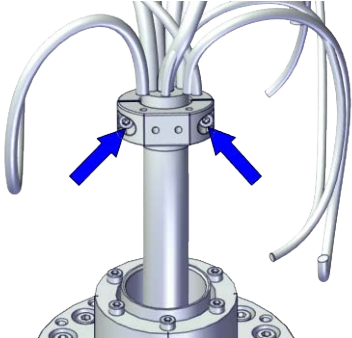
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Secure the three grounding cables to the bracket with the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000947</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	





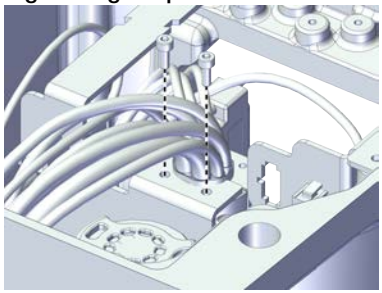
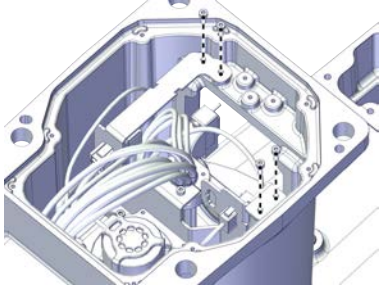
#### Refitting the cable ferrule in the base

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the cable ferrule to the cable and secure it with the screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The cable ferrule should be refitted at the position Where the tape is wrapped.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002900</p>

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.  Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.   <b>Tip</b> Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100000951
4	Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100000948



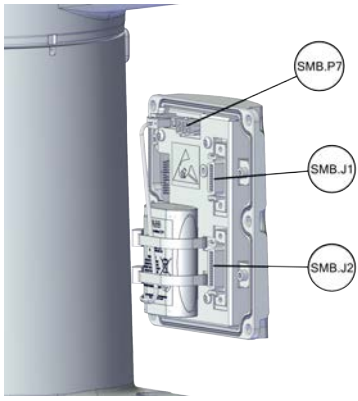
Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly  
Continued

Refitting the SMB cover



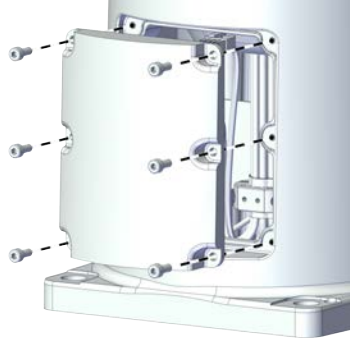
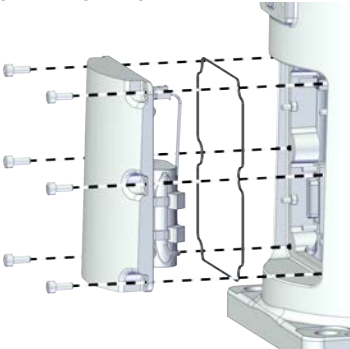
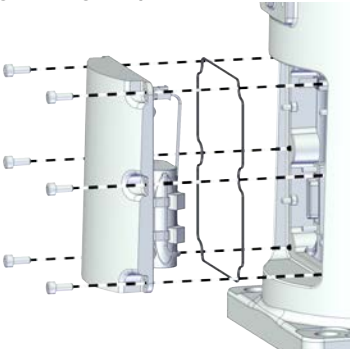
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SMB.P7</li><li>• SMB.J1</li><li>• SMB.J2</li></ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

Continues on next page



## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the SMB cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100000944</p>
4	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Stainless Screw Hexagon Socket Head Cap, Clean Room 3HAC075438-001 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2100002433</p>


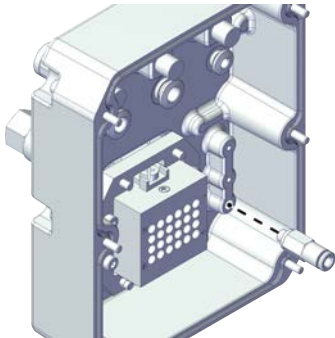
*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly  
Continued

Refitting the main harness

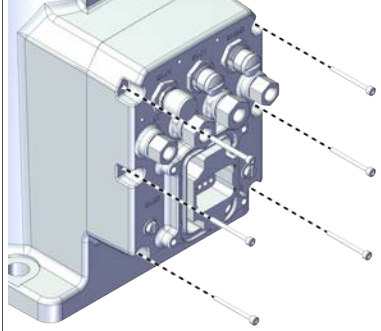
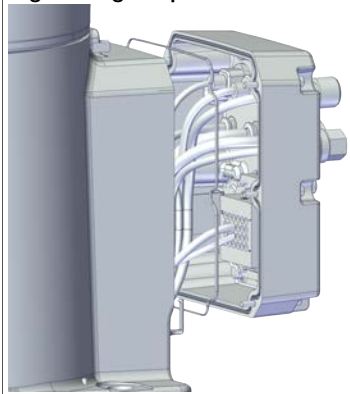
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Refit the one way valve by screwing it into the main harness assembly.</p>	<div> xx2200000281</div>

Continues on next page



## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Secure with the screws.	 <p>xx2100000953</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002436</p>


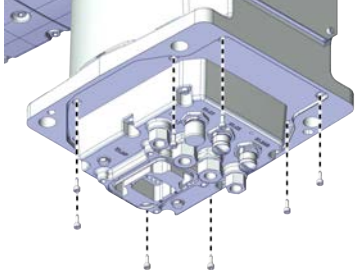
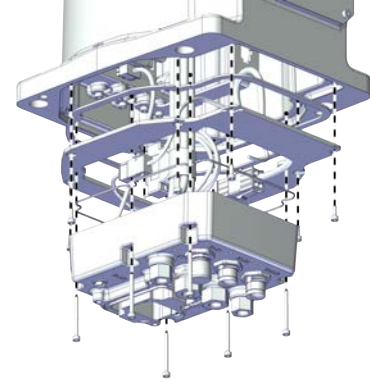
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>
6	Secure with the screws.	<p></p> <p>xx2100001204</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p></p> <p>xx2100002437</p>

#### Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	





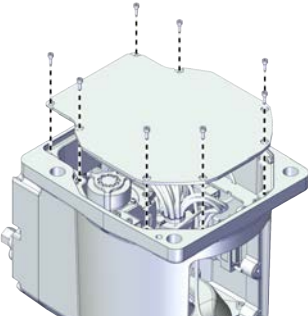
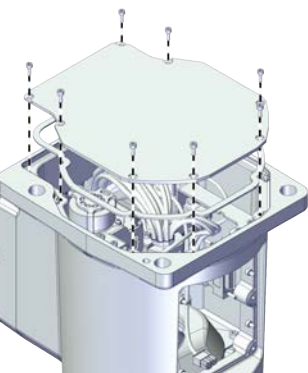
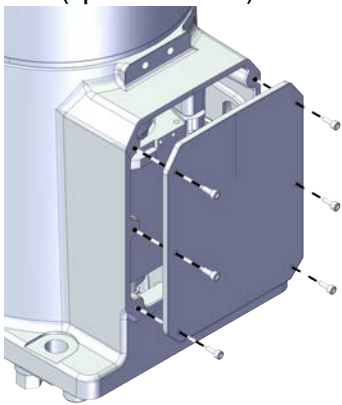
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

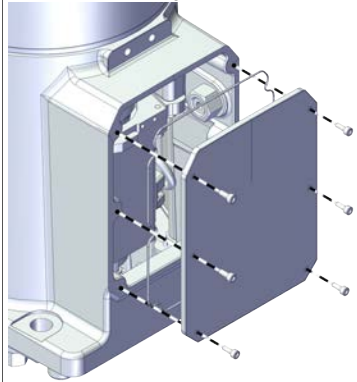
	Action	Note
3	<p>For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the base plate before refitting the base plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the rear plate before refitting the rear plate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For rear outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000946</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002434</p>
4	<p>Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001202</p>

Continues on next page




### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
		<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002435</p>
5	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
6	Secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Steel</p> <p>Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 56 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>

Inserting the main harness through the axis -2 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	


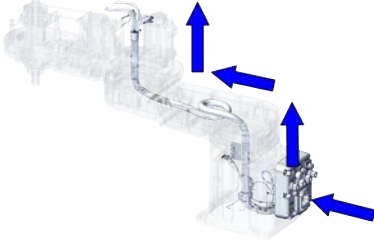
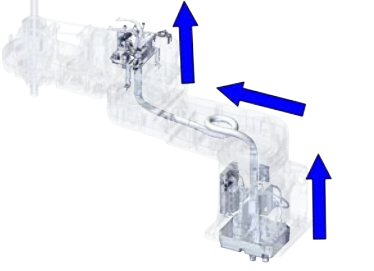
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the internal harness into the outer arm through the plastic protection tube and the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>
3	Secure the R2.MP3 and R2.MP4 with cable straps.	

#### Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm




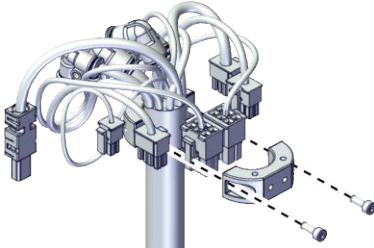


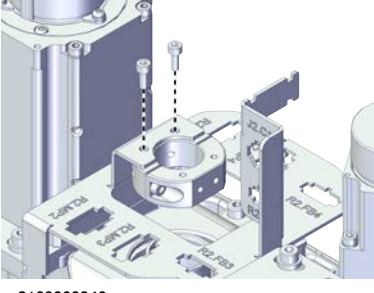


	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	

*Continues on next page*



## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




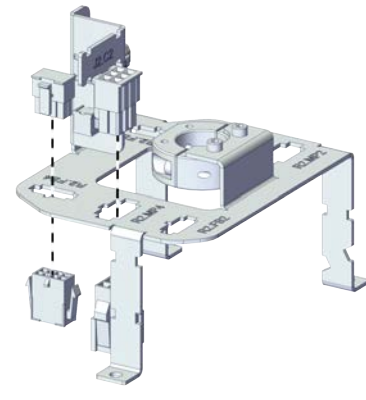

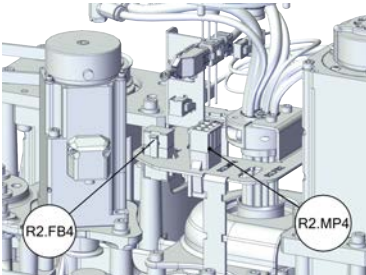



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*




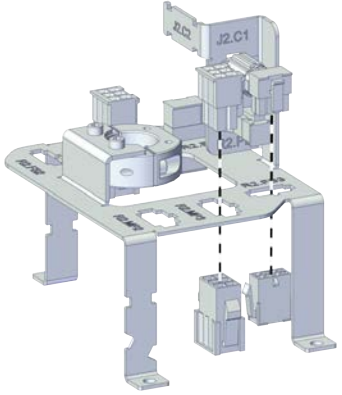

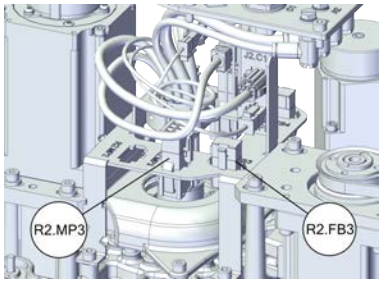

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




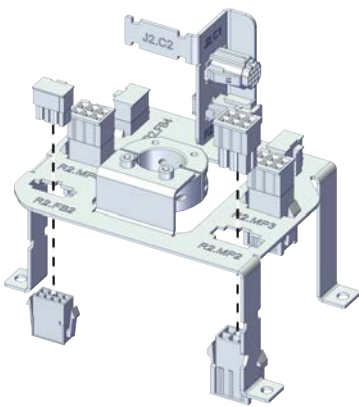

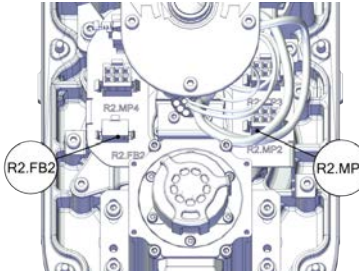



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*




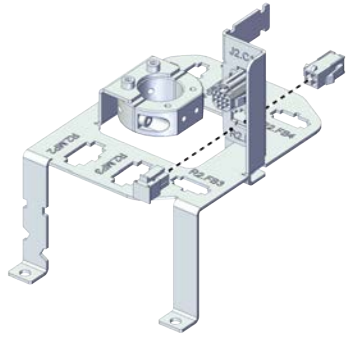

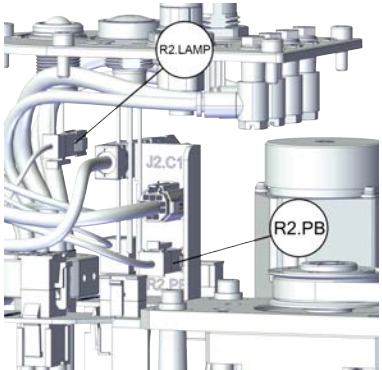

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly



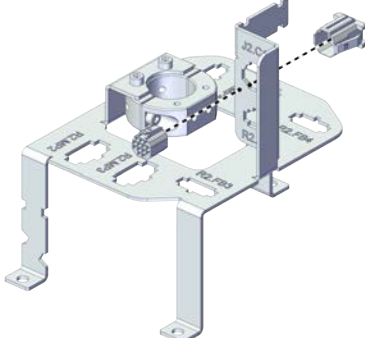

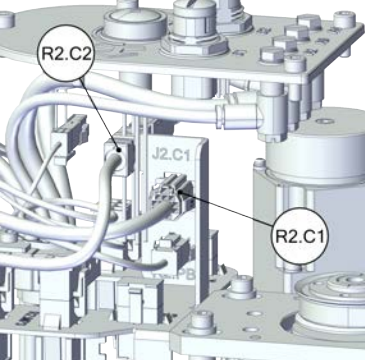


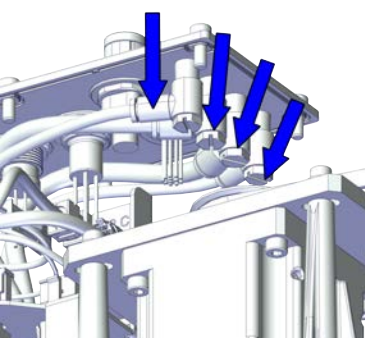
*Continued*

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>


Continues on next page






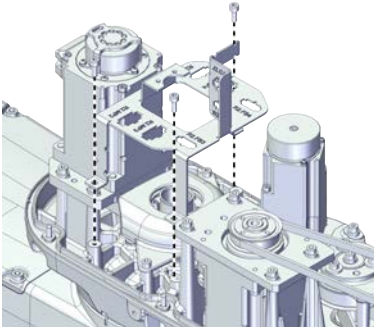
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


*Continued*

	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm




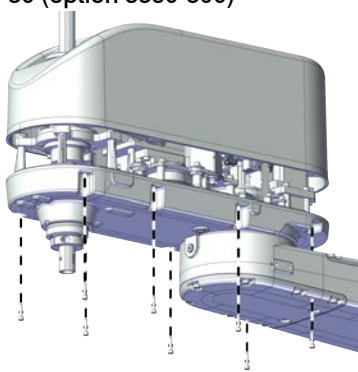
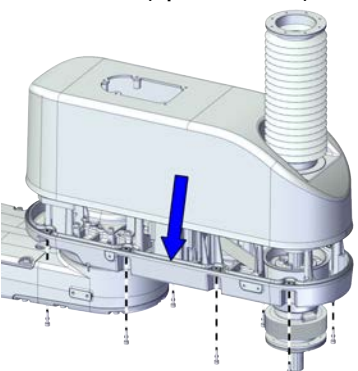
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx210000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

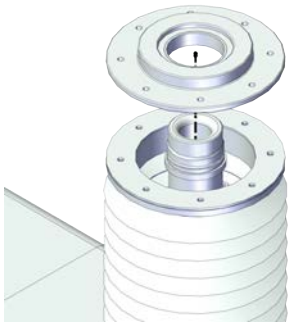
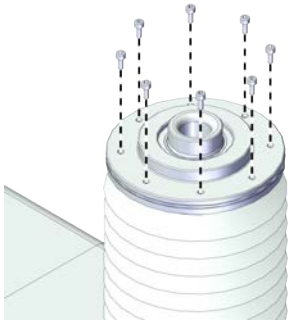


Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

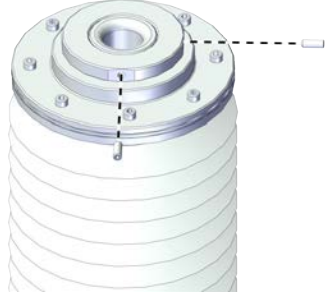
	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*




## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




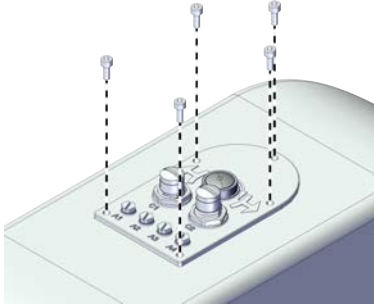
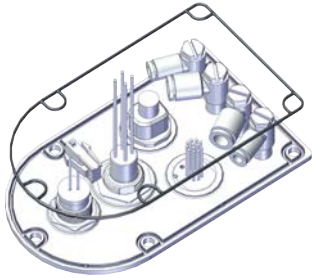
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Refitting the axis-1 cover



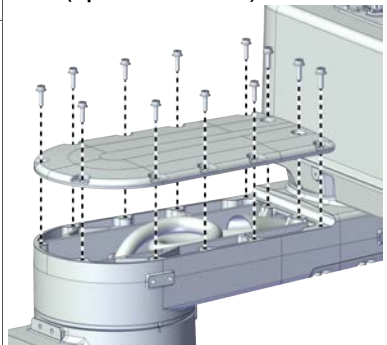
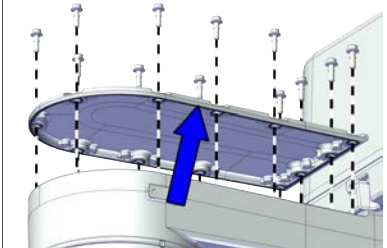
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page




## 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>For 450 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (10 pcs)</p> <p>For 550 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (12 pcs)</p> <p>For 650 mm : Screw: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>
3	Refit the screws.	 <p>xx2100000942</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002428</p>

## Refitting the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	




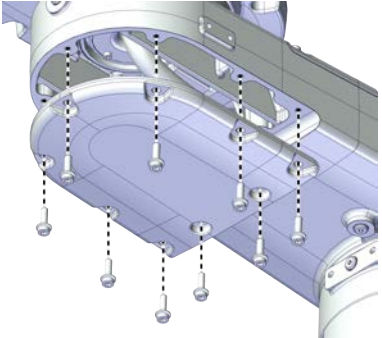
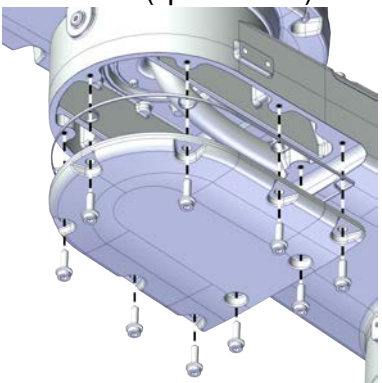
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued



	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b>  <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Refit the cover.   <b>Note</b>  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.   <b>Tip</b>  Replace the gasket if needed.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (9 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm $\pm 3\%$ For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2100000943  For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002451
4	Refit the screws.	

Continues on next page



5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly  
*Continued*

## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .
3	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a>.</p>	



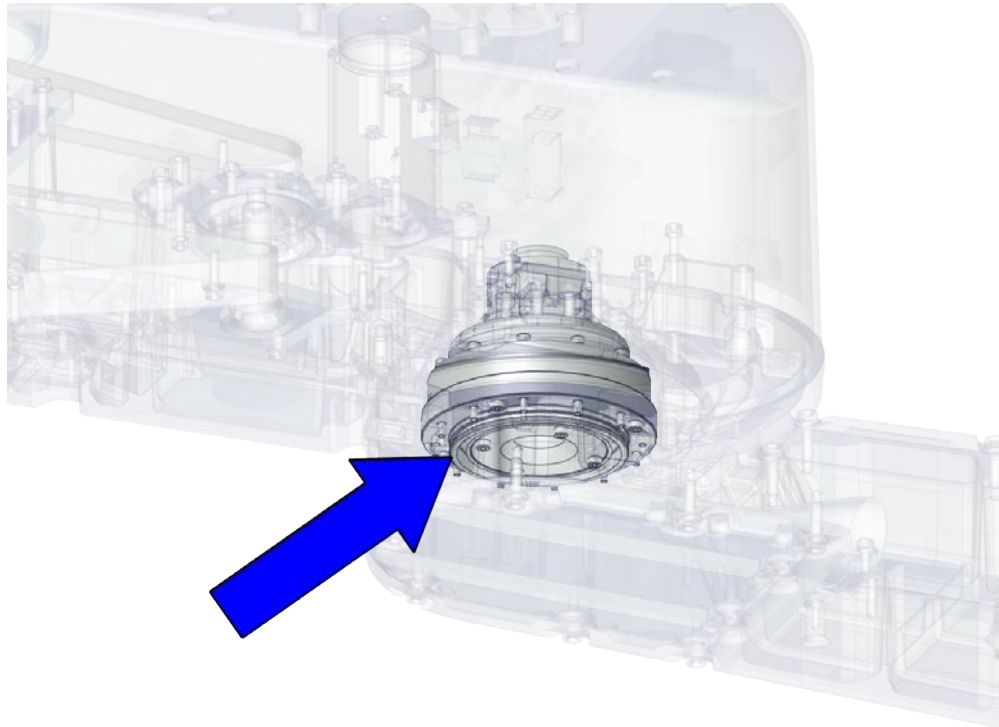
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

#### Location of the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

The axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100001028

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 920 via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly	3HAC076574-001	Without tube&bolt; flange screw. Used for IRB 920T-6/0.45, IRB 920T-6/0.55 and IRB 920T-6/0.65
Axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly	3HAC084966-001	Without tube&bolt; flange screw. Used for IRB 920-6/0.55_0.18 and IRB 920-6/0.65_0.18
Pulley protection cover	3HAC070461-001	Replace if damaged.
O-ring	3HAC061327-017	Replace if damaged.

*Continues on next page*



## Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 1012</a> .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

## Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

## Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>	
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b> Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 966</a> .
	<b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b> Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

## Removing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly.

*Continues on next page*


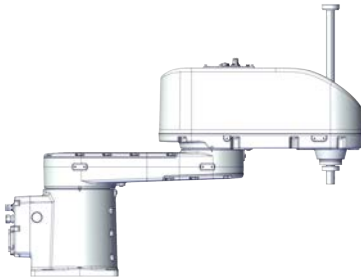




## 5 Repair


### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2100000930</p>
4	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	
5	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

#### Removing the process hub screws




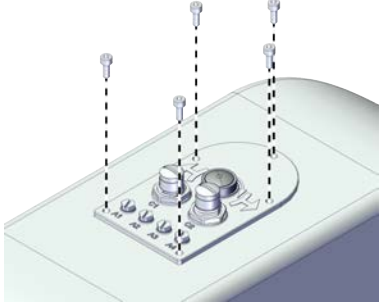
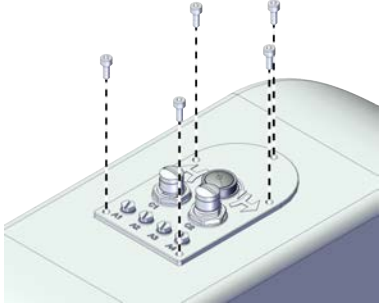
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

*Continues on next page*




## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	Remove the screws on the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the screws on the process hub and take out the gasket.  <b>Tip</b> Check the gasket and replace it if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2100000932 For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100000932
4	Insert the process hub to the outer arm.	

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Removing the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


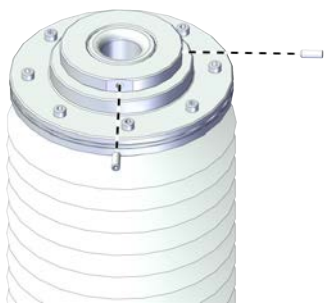

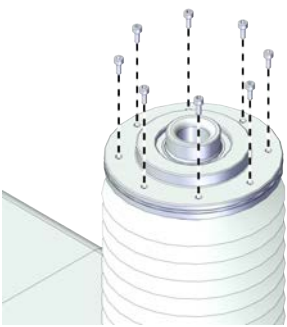
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

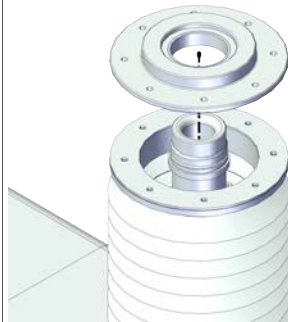
	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <i>Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</i>	
3	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Loose the locking screws.	 xx2100002398
4	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the top cover from the ball screw.	 xx2100002399
5	<b>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</b> Remove the screws on the flange with bearing.	 xx2100002401

*Continues on next page*





## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
6	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the flange with bearing.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>

### Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot!  See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	




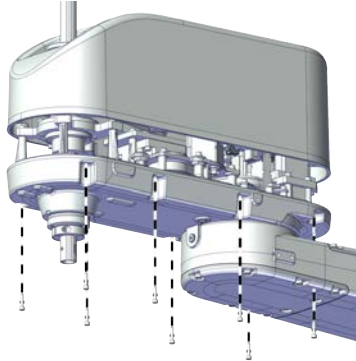
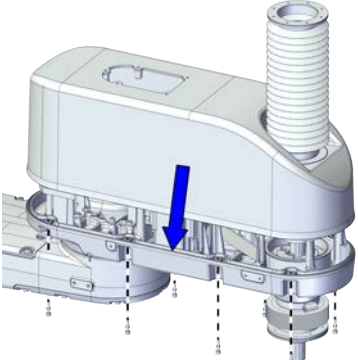
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

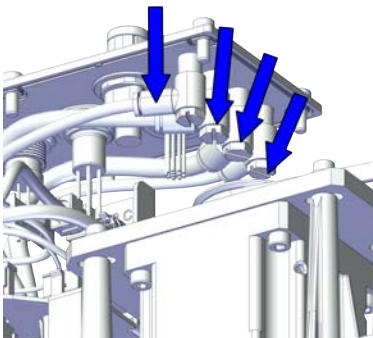
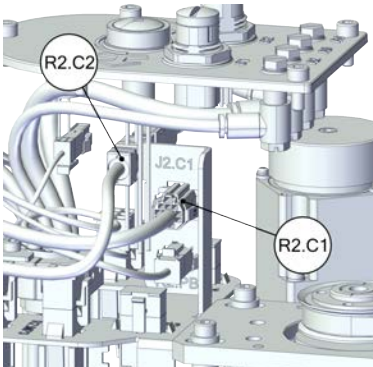



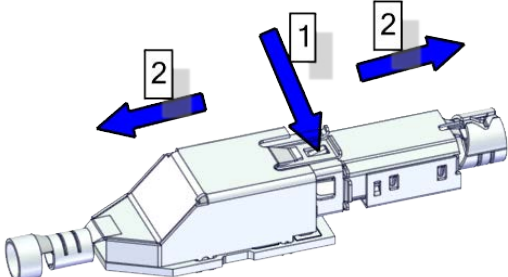
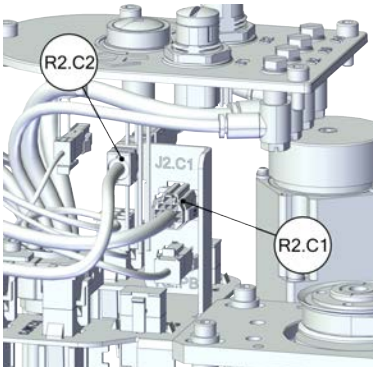
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Remove the cover with bellow and housing.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The bellow does not need to be removed separately.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the gasket and replace it if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

#### Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page



	Action	Note
3	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	 xx2100001032
4	<b>For robots with C1 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul>	 xx2100001033
5	<b>For robots with C2 cabling</b> Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the J2.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  xx1800002943	 xx2100001033


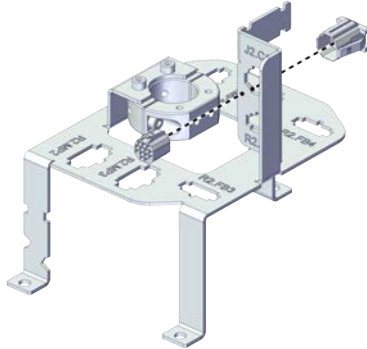
Continues on next page





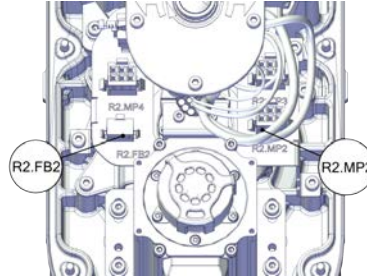
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
6	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor


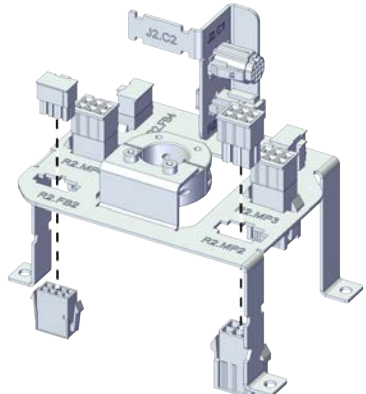
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>

*Continues on next page*



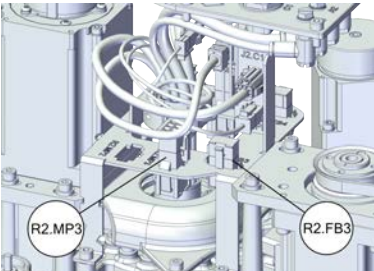


### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>

#### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b></p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	
3	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>


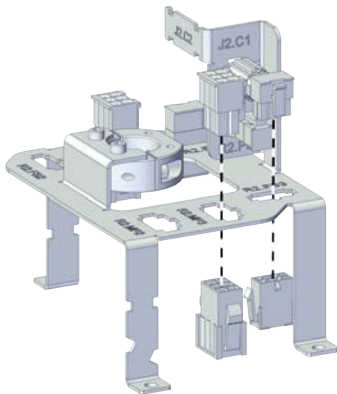
*Continues on next page*




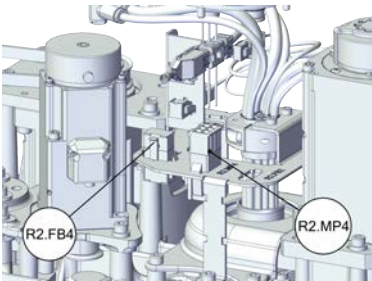

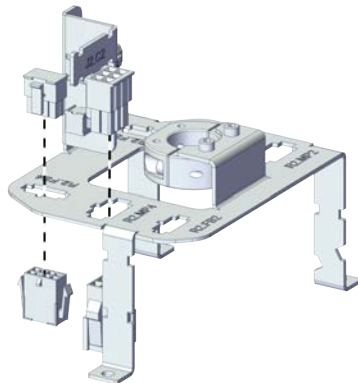
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>



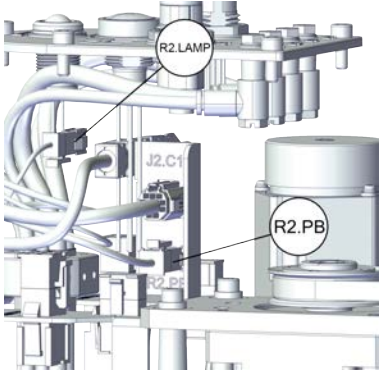

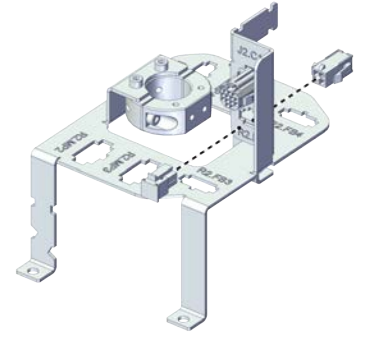
### Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>


Continues on next page



## Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul>	 xx2100001030
4	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.   <b>Note</b> The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2100001031

## Pull out the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	





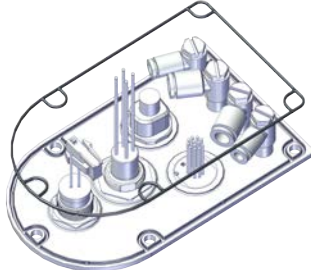
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Take out the process hub.  <b>Note</b> For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1) Check the gasket for the process hub.  <b>Tip</b> Replace the gasket if needed.  <b>CAUTION</b> Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)  xx2100002438

#### Removing the cable ferrule and bracket


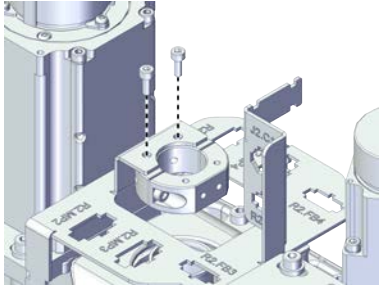

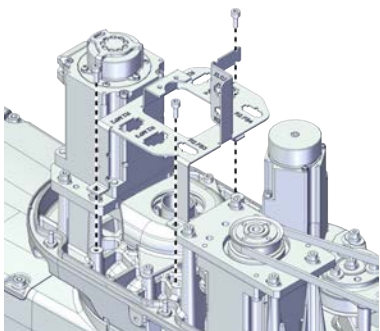
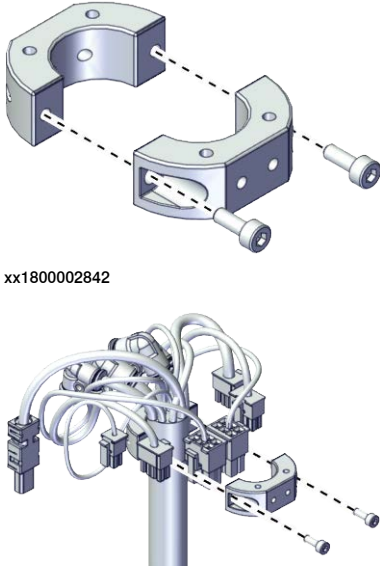
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

Continues on next page




### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000940</p>
4	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000941</p>
5	<p>Remove the screws on the cable ferrule and take the cable ferrule out.</p>	 <p>xx1800002842</p> <p>xx1800002849</p>

#### Removing the gear-2 pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


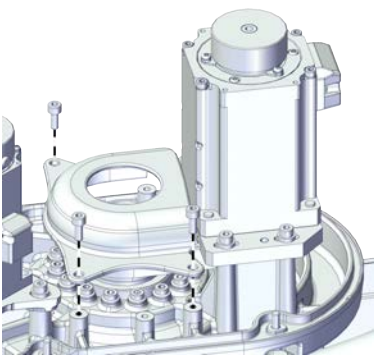
*Continues on next page*





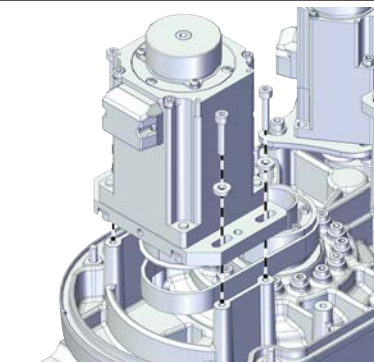

## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws on the pulley protection cover to release the pulley protection cover.	 xx2100001047



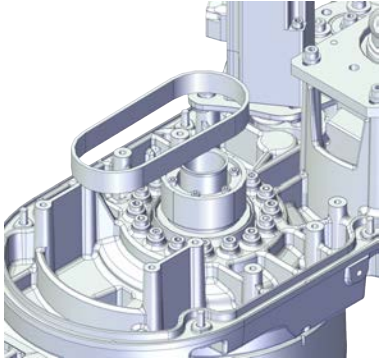
### Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2100001046
4	Remove the motor.  <b>Tip</b> Move the internal harness out of the way.	



Continues on next page



## Removing the axis-2 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Remove the timing belt from the outer arm.	 xx2100001048

## Removing the axis-2 cover

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

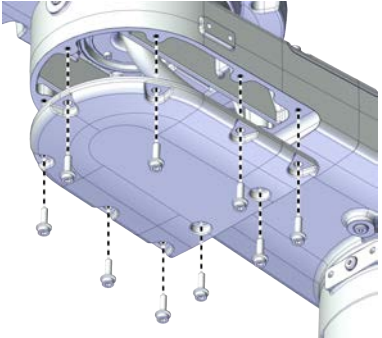
Continues on next page





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly



*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	 xx2100000943
4	Remove the cover.	

Pulling out the internal harness from axis-2 gear unit

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	
3	Pull out the internal harness from the axis-2 gear unit.	

Removing the outer arm assembly

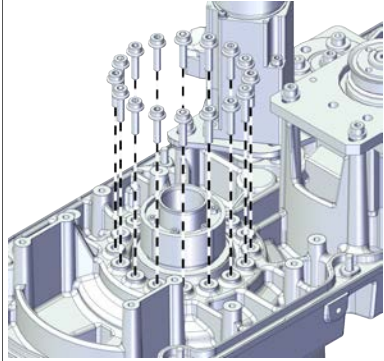
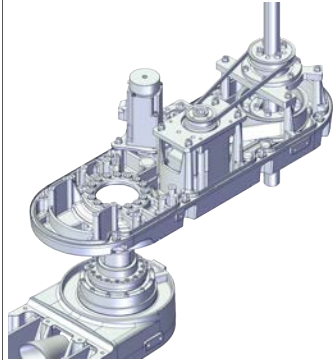
	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a> .	

*Continues on next page*





## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the axis -2 gear inside the outer arm.	 <p>xx2100001049</p>
4	Remove the outer arm assembly slightly.	 <p>xx2100001050</p>

### Removing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 <b>CAUTION</b> <b>For robots with protection type Clean Room</b> Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124.</a>	

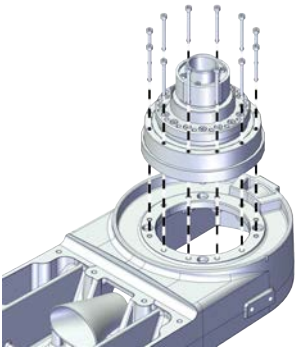
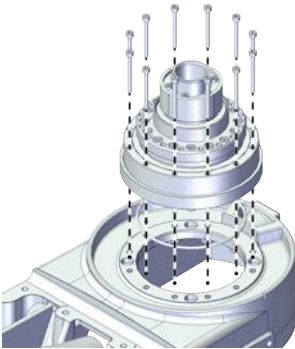



*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly



Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the gear to the inner arm.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001182</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002439</p>
4	<p>Remove the gear unit.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Remove the gear unit and the O-ring through the cable slightly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the O-ring and replace it if needed.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	

#### Refitting the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly.




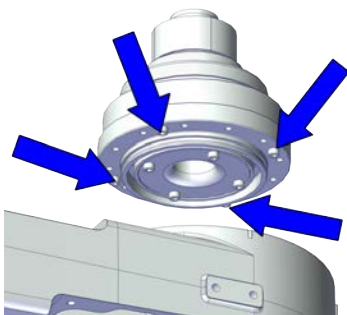
#### Refitting the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>	

Continues on next page



5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly  
*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the gear unit according to the location screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the gear unit and the O-ring according to the location pin.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Check the O-ring and replace it if needed.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".</p>	 <p>xx2100001183</p>

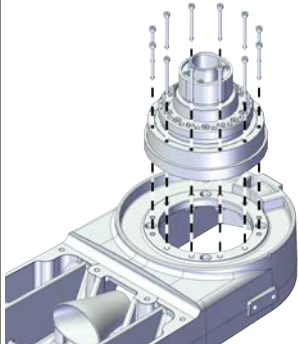
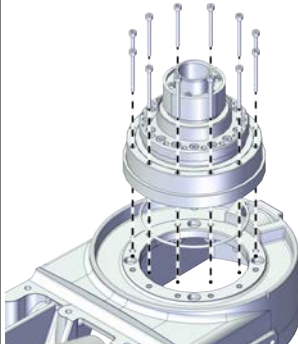
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
4	Refit the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100001182</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540) For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002439</p>

#### Refitting the outer arm to the inner arm


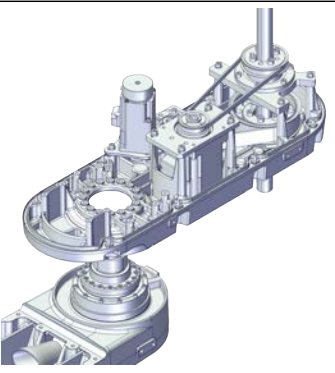

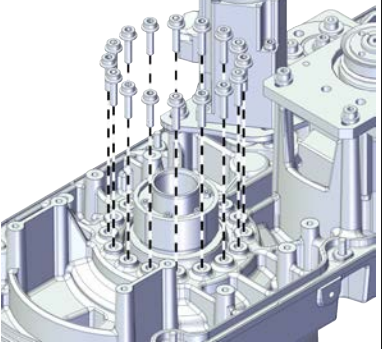
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>	

Continues on next page




### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the outer arm to the axis-2 gear unit on the inner arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".</p>	 <p>xx2100001050</p>
4	<p>Refit the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The two screw holes under the axis-2 belt location are left empty.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100001049</p>

#### Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

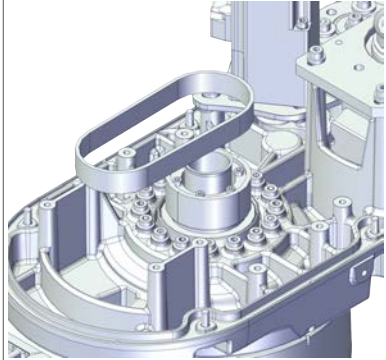
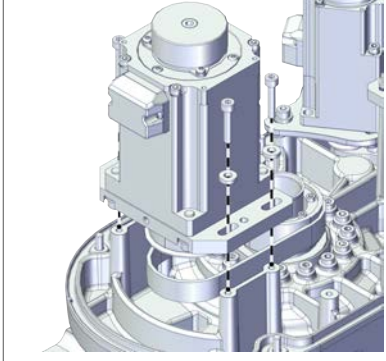
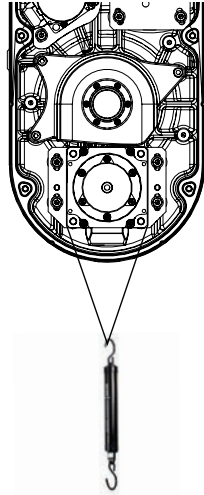
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

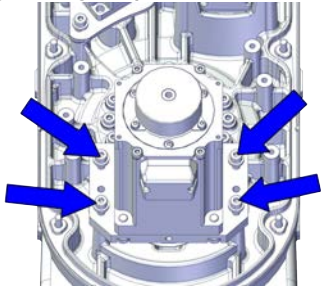
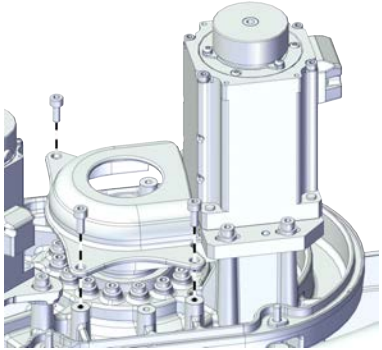
	Action	Note
2	Refit the axis-2 timing belt onto the pulley on the axis-2 gearbox.	 xx2100001048
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x20 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Plain washer machining 4.2x9x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	 xx2100001046 Timing belt A2: 3HAC061861-001
5	Hang a strap to the motor.	
6	Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the strap and pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range. <div></div> <b>Note</b> During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction. <div></div> <b>Tip</b> If the ball screw will interfere with the handheld dynamometer, adjust the ball screw manually.	Used belt: 49-69 N New belt: 70-100 N  xx2100001125

Continues on next page




## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
7	Fasten the screws to the recommended tightening torque.	Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm $\pm$ 10%  xx2100001176
8	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 218-259 Hz New belt: 260-390 Hz
9	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.	
10	Refit the pulley protection cover and secure with screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001047

Inserting the main harness through the axis -2 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>  <b>Note</b> After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.	


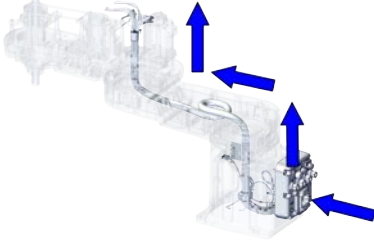
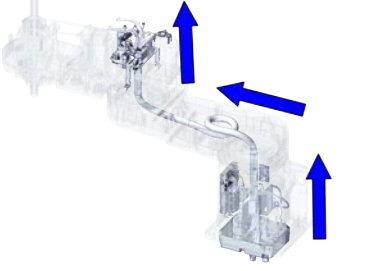
*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*




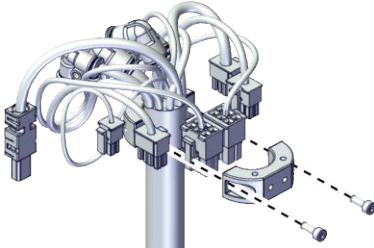


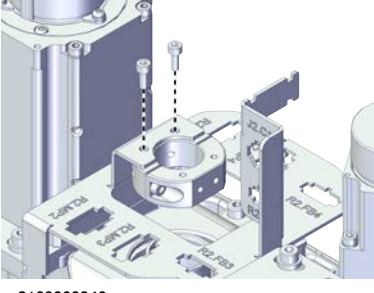


	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the internal harness into the outer arm through the plastic protection tube and the centre of the axis-2 gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100000955</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2100001206</p>
3	Secure the R2.MP3 and R2.MP4 with cable straps.	

#### Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cable ferrule and secure it with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx1800002849</p>
4	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000940</p>
5	<p>Refit the bracket without securing.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	

Continues on next page




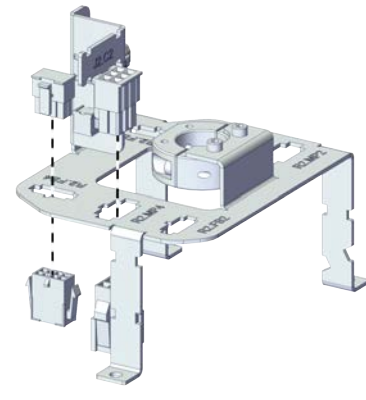

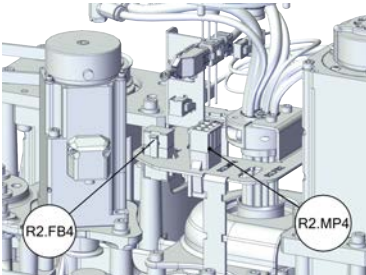



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*




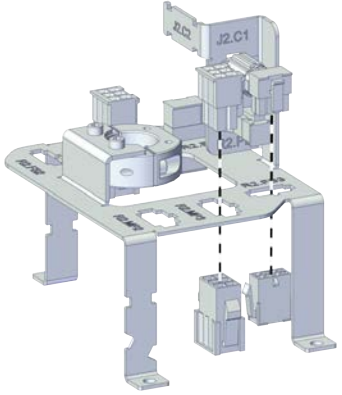

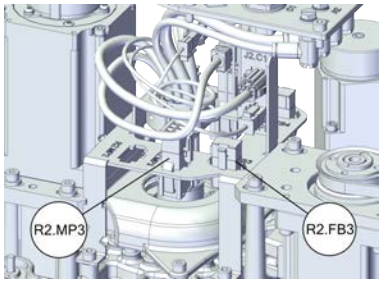

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000939</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP4</li> <li>• R2.FB4</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000938</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000937</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP3</li> <li>• R2.FB3</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000936</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page




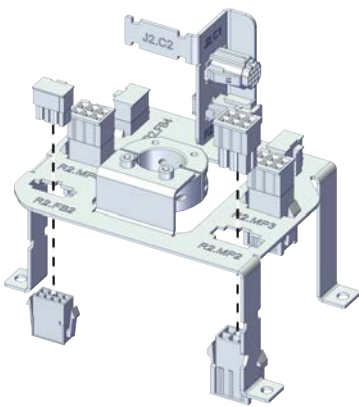

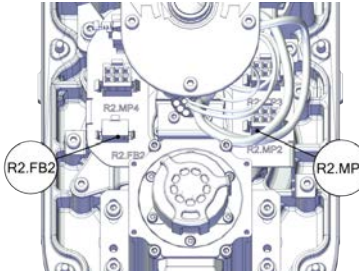



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

#### Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100000935</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R2.MP2</li> <li>• R2.FB2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100000934</p>
4	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	




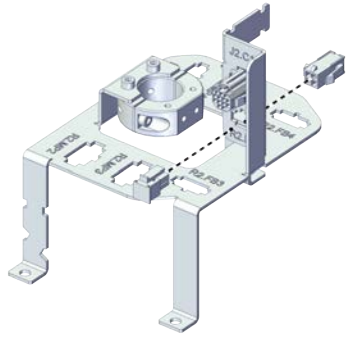

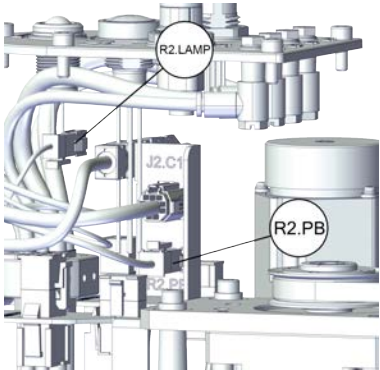

Continues on next page



## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

### Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001031</p>
3	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>R2.PB</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001030</p>
4	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly



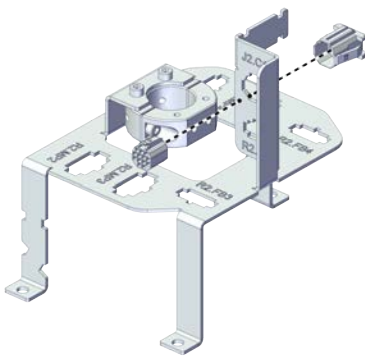

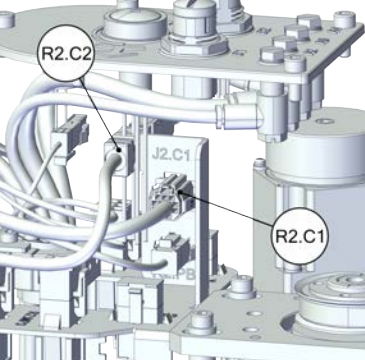


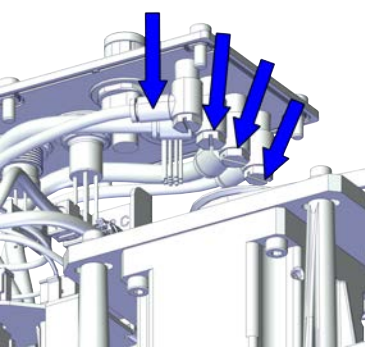
*Continued*

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
3	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2100001034</p>
4	<p><b>For robots with C1 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C1</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001033</p>
5	<p><b>For robots with C2 cabling</b></p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• J2.C2</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
6	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
7	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2100001032</p>


Continues on next page






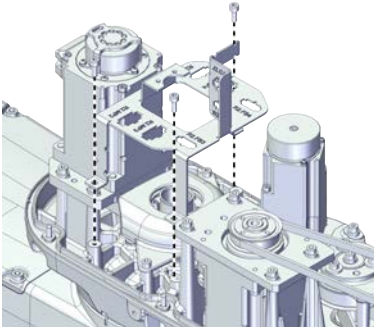
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly


Continued

	Action	Note
8	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

#### Securing the bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100000941</p>

#### Refitting the cover of the outer arm




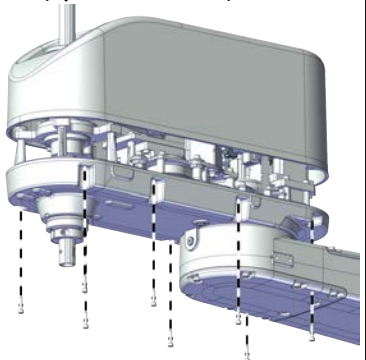
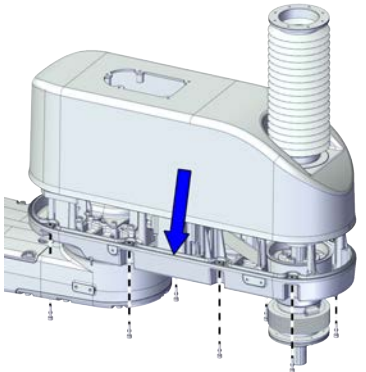
	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room: Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

Continues on next page




## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the cover with bellow.</p> <p>Check the gasket for the outer arm cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The gasket is in the outer arm.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000933</p>
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002427</p>

For Clean Room/ IP54 robots

Refitting the top cover and the flange with bearing

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	

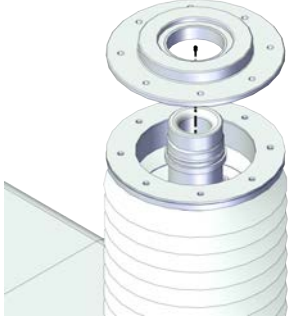
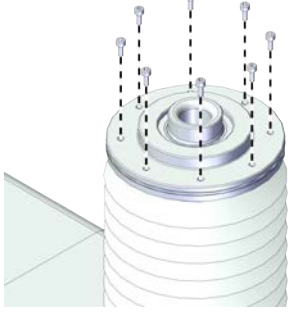


*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

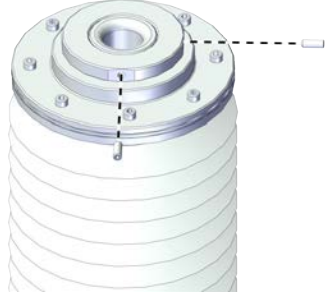
	Action	Note
2	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Install the flange with bearing to the extension shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2100002402</p>
3	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the screws to the flange with bearing.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002401</p>
4	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the top cover to the ball screw.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The top surface of the cover should be flush with the top end of the ball screw.</p>	 <p>xx2100002399</p>

*Continues on next page*




## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
5	<p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Refit the locking screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hexagon socket set screws with flat point, ISO 4026 stainless steel M3x8 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm <math>\pm</math>10%</p>  <p>xx2100002398</p>

## Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Clean the joints that have been opened and wipe the parts free from particles with spirit on a lint free. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Insert the process hub from the outer arm cover.	




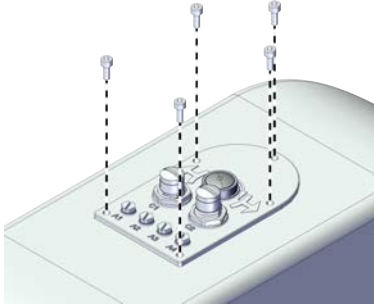
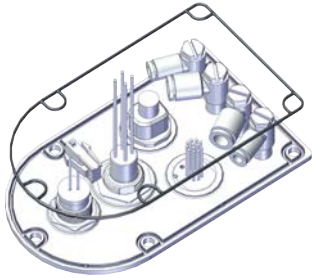
*Continues on next page*





## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the process hub.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000932</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002438</p>

#### Refitting the axis-2 cover



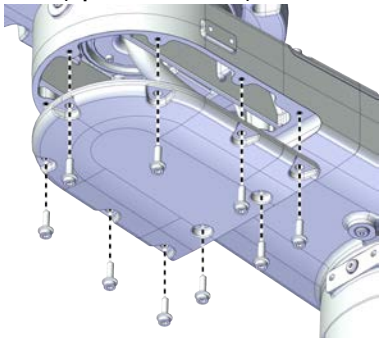
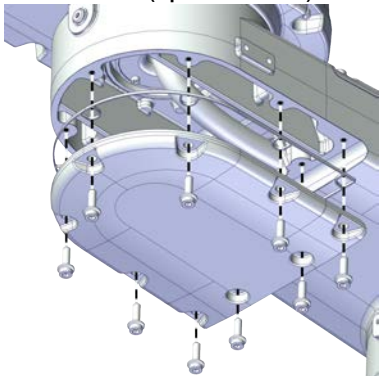
	Action	Note
1	<p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room</p> <p>Always cut the paint with a knife and grind the paint edge when disassembling parts of the robot! See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a>.</p>	

Continues on next page




## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p> <p>Check the gasket for the cover before refitting the cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Replace the gasket if needed.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (9 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm <math>\pm</math>3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2100000943</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP54 (option 3350-540)</p> <p>For robots with protection type Clean Room (option 3351-1)</p>  <p>xx2100002451</p>
4	Refit the screws.	

## Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>For robots with protection type Clean Room:</p> <p>Seal and paint the joints that have been opened. See <a href="#">Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts on page 124</a></p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After all repair work, wipe the Clean Room robot free from particles with spirit on a lint free cloth.</p>	
2	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section <a href="#">Calibration on page 953</a> .

*Continues on next page*




## 5 Repair

---

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

*Continued*

	Action	Note
3	 <b>DANGER</b> Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 57</a> .	



## 6 Calibration

### 6.1 Introduction to calibration

#### 6.1.1 Introduction and calibration terminology

##### Calibration information

This chapter includes general information about the recommended calibration methods and also the detailed procedures for updating the revolution counters, checking the calibration position etc.

Detailed instructions of how to perform Axis Calibration are given on the FlexPendant during the calibration procedure. To prepare calibration with Axis Calibration method, see [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 965](#).

##### Calibration terminology

Term	Definition
Calibration method	A collective term for several methods that might be available for calibrating the ABB robot. Each method contains calibration routines.
Synchronization position	Known position of the complete robot where the angle of each axis can be checked against visual synchronization marks.
Calibration position	Known position of the complete robot that is used for calibration of the robot.
Standard calibration	A generic term for all calibration methods that aim to move the robot to calibration position.
Fine calibration	A calibration routine that generates a new zero position of the robot.
Reference calibration	<p>A calibration routine that in the first step generates a reference to current zero position of the robot. The same calibration routine can later on be used to recalibrate the robot back to the same position as when the reference was stored.</p> <p>This routine is more flexible compared to fine calibration and is used when tools and process equipment are installed.</p> <p>Requires that a reference is created before being used for recalibrating the robot.</p> <p>Requires that the robot is dressed with the same tools and process equipment during calibration as during creation of the reference values.</p>
Update revolution counter	A calibration routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis.
Synchronization mark	Visual marks on the robot axes. When marks are aligned, the robot is in synchronization position.



## 6 Calibration

### 6.1.2 Calibration methods

### 6.1.2 Calibration methods

#### Overview

This section specifies the different types of calibration and the calibration methods that are supplied by ABB.

#### Types of calibration

Type of calibration	Description	Calibration method
Standard calibration	The calibrated robot is positioned at calibration position. Standard calibration data is found on the SMB (serial measurement board) or EIB in the robot.	Axis Calibration <sup>i</sup>
Absolute accuracy calibration (optional)	Based on standard calibration, and besides positioning the robot at synchronization position, the Absolute accuracy calibration also compensates for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Mechanical tolerances in the robot structure</li><li>• Deflection due to load</li></ul> Absolute accuracy calibration focuses on positioning accuracy in the Cartesian coordinate system for the robot. Absolute accuracy calibration data is found on the serial measurement board (SMB) or other robot memory. A robot calibrated with Absolute accuracy has the option information printed on its name plate (OmniCore). To regain 100% Absolute accuracy performance, the robot must be recalibrated for absolute accuracy after repair or maintenance that affects the mechanical structure.	CalibWare

<sup>i</sup> Only axes 1 and 2 can be calibrated using Axis Calibration method.

#### Brief description of calibration methods

##### Axis Calibration method

Axis Calibration is a standard calibration method for calibration of IRB 920. It is the recommended method in order to achieve proper performance.

The following routines are available for the Axis Calibration method:

- Fine calibration
- Update revolution counters
- Reference calibration

The calibration equipment for Axis Calibration is delivered as a toolkit.

An introduction to the calibration method is given in this manual, see [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 965](#).

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

*Continues on next page*



#### CalibWare - Absolute Accuracy calibration

The CalibWare tool guides through the calibration process and calculates new compensation parameters. This is further detailed in the *Application manual - CalibWare Field*.

If a service operation is done to a robot with the option Absolute Accuracy, a new absolute accuracy calibration is required in order to establish full performance. For most cases after replacements that do not include taking apart the robot structure, standard calibration is sufficient.

The Absolute Accuracy option varies according to the robot mounting position. This is printed on the robot name plate for each robot. The robot must be in the correct mounting position when it is recalibrated for absolute accuracy.

---

#### References

Article numbers for the calibration tools are listed in the section [Special tools on page 1013](#).



### 6.1.3 When to calibrate

---

#### When to calibrate

The system must be calibrated if any of the following situations occur.

#### The resolver values are changed

If resolver values are changed, the robot must be re-calibrated using the calibration methods supplied by ABB. Calibrate the robot carefully with standard calibration, according to information in this manual.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it is also recommended, but not always necessary to calibrate for new absolute accuracy.

The resolver values will change when parts affecting the calibration position are replaced on the robot, for example motors or parts of the transmission.

#### The revolution counter memory is lost

If the revolution counter memory is lost, the counters must be updated. See [Updating revolution counters on page 961](#). This will occur when:

- The battery is discharged
- A resolver error occurs
- The signal between a resolver and measurement board is interrupted
- A robot axis is moved with the control system disconnected

The revolution counters must also be updated after the robot and controller are connected at the first installation.

#### The robot is rebuilt

If the robot is rebuilt, for example, after a crash or when the reachability of a robot is changed, it needs to be re-calibrated for new resolver values.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it needs to be calibrated for new absolute accuracy.



## 6.2 Synchronization marks and axis movement directions

### 6.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

---

#### Introduction

This section shows the position of the synchronization marks and the synchronization position for each axis.

*Continues on next page*



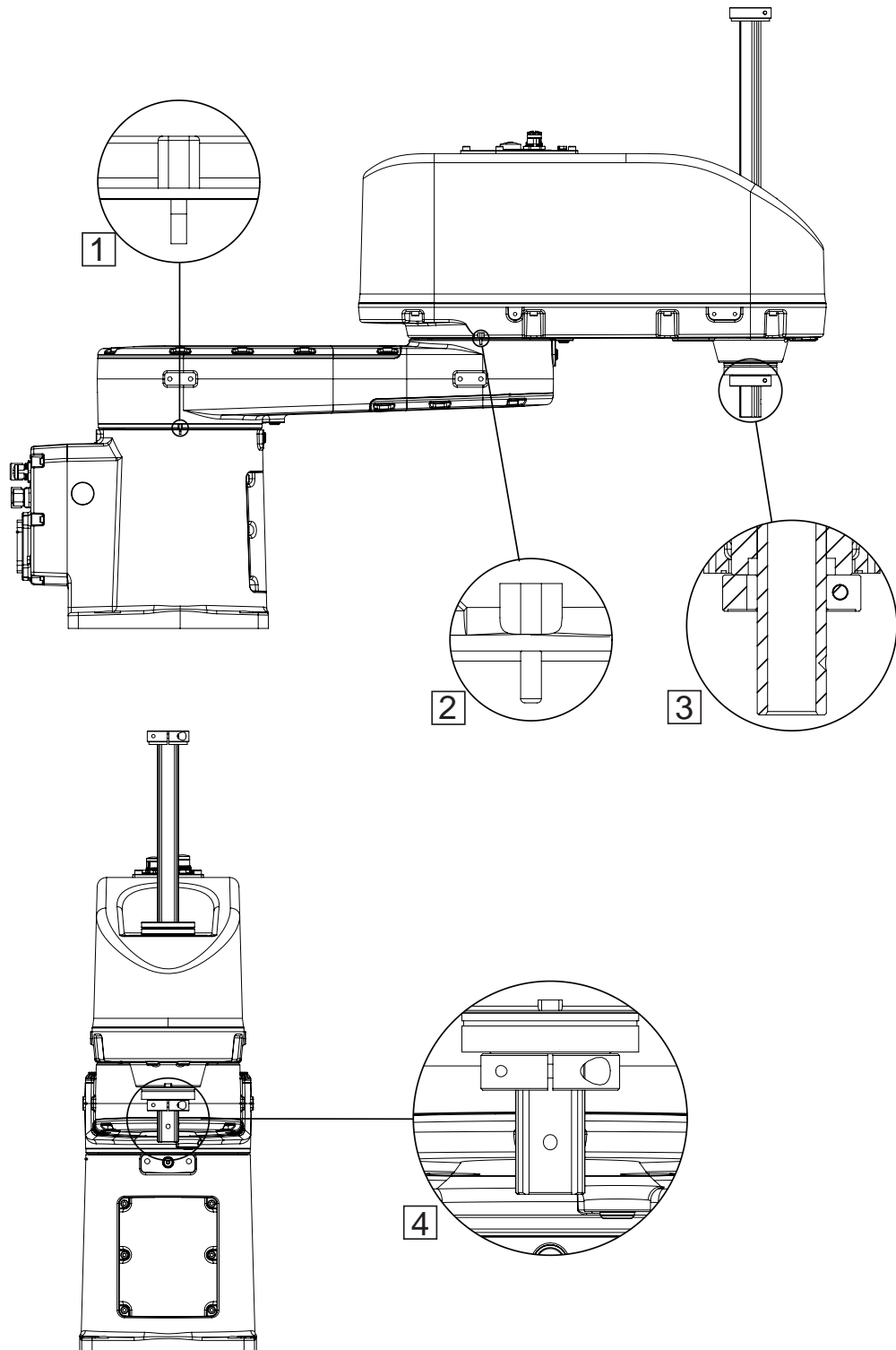
## 6 Calibration

### 6.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

*Continued*

#### Synchronization marks, IRB 920

IP30



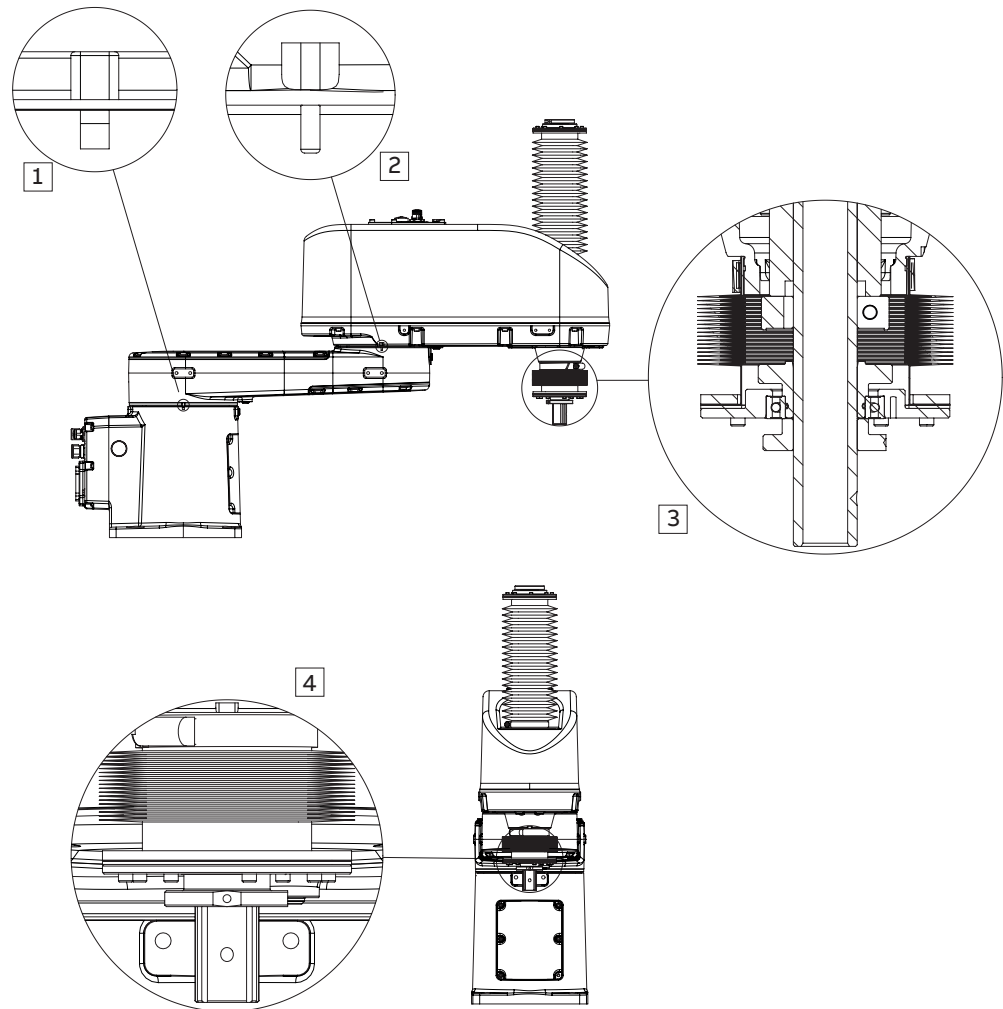
xx2000001163

*Continues on next page*



6.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes  
*Continued*

Clean Room/ IP54



xx2300000725



## 6 Calibration

### 6.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes

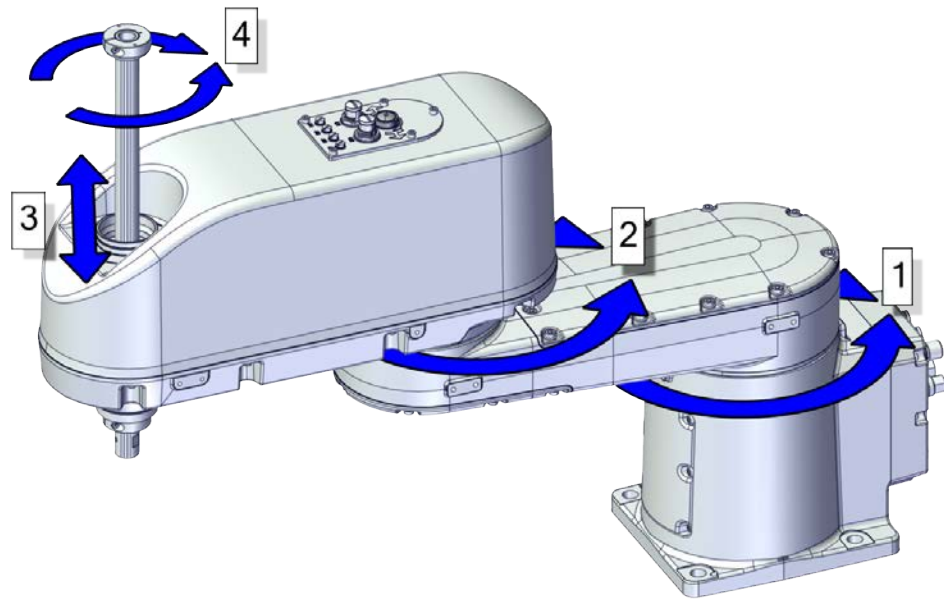
### 6.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes

#### Overview

When calibrating, the axis must consistently be run towards the calibration position in the same direction in order to avoid position errors caused by backlash in gears and so on. Positive directions are shown in the graphic below.

Calibration service routines will handle the calibration movements automatically and these might be different from the positive directions shown below.

#### Manual movement directions



xx2100000931



## 6.3 Updating revolution counters

### 6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

#### Introduction

This section describes how to do a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

#### Coupled axes

When updating the revolution counters for a coupled axis, also the axis it is coupled to needs to be at its synchronization position for the update to be correct; i.e. axis 4 needs to be in synchronization position when updating axis 3.

With reversed coupled joints, the relationship is the opposite, i.e. axis 4 needs to be in synchronization position to update axis 3.

Coupled axes	IRB 920
Axis 4, 3	x

#### Step 1 - Manually running the manipulator to the synchronization position

Use this procedure to manually run the manipulator to the synchronization position.

	Action	Note
1	Select axis-by-axis motion mode.	
2	Jog the manipulator to align the synchronization marks.	See <a href="#">Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 957</a> .
3	When all axes are positioned, update the revolution counter.	<a href="#">Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant on page 963</a> .

#### Correct synchronization position of axes 3 and 4

When jogging the manipulator to synchronization position, it is extremely important to make sure that axes 3 and 4 are positioned correctly.



#### Note

At delivery the manipulator is in the correct position. Do NOT shift axis 3 or rotate axis 4 at power up before the revolution counters are updated.

If axis 4 is rotated one or more turns from its calibration position before updating the revolution counter, the correct calibration position will be lost due to non-integer gear ratio. This will further affect the calibration position of axis 3.

*Continues on next page*

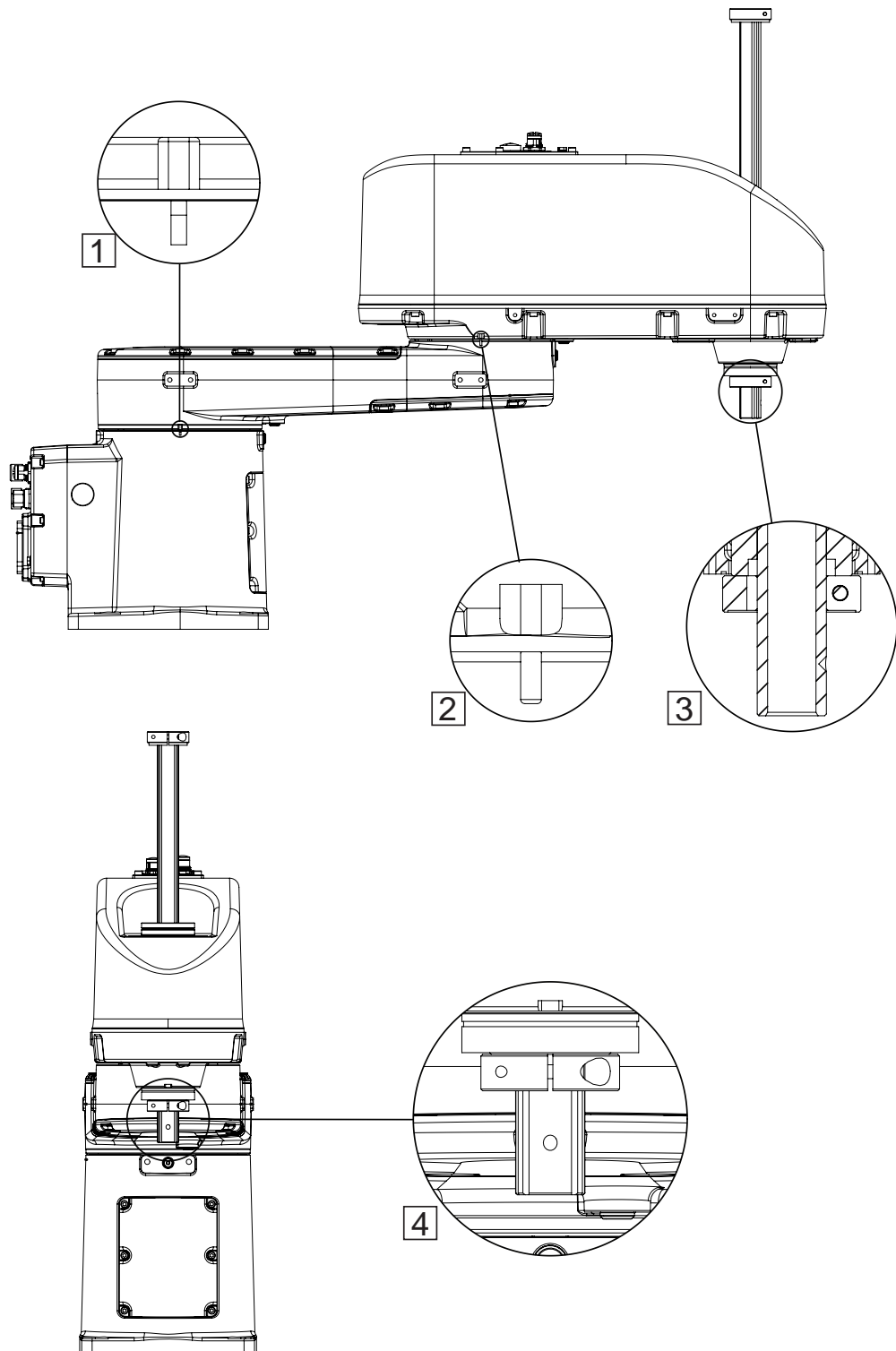


## 6 Calibration

### 6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

*Continued*

IP30

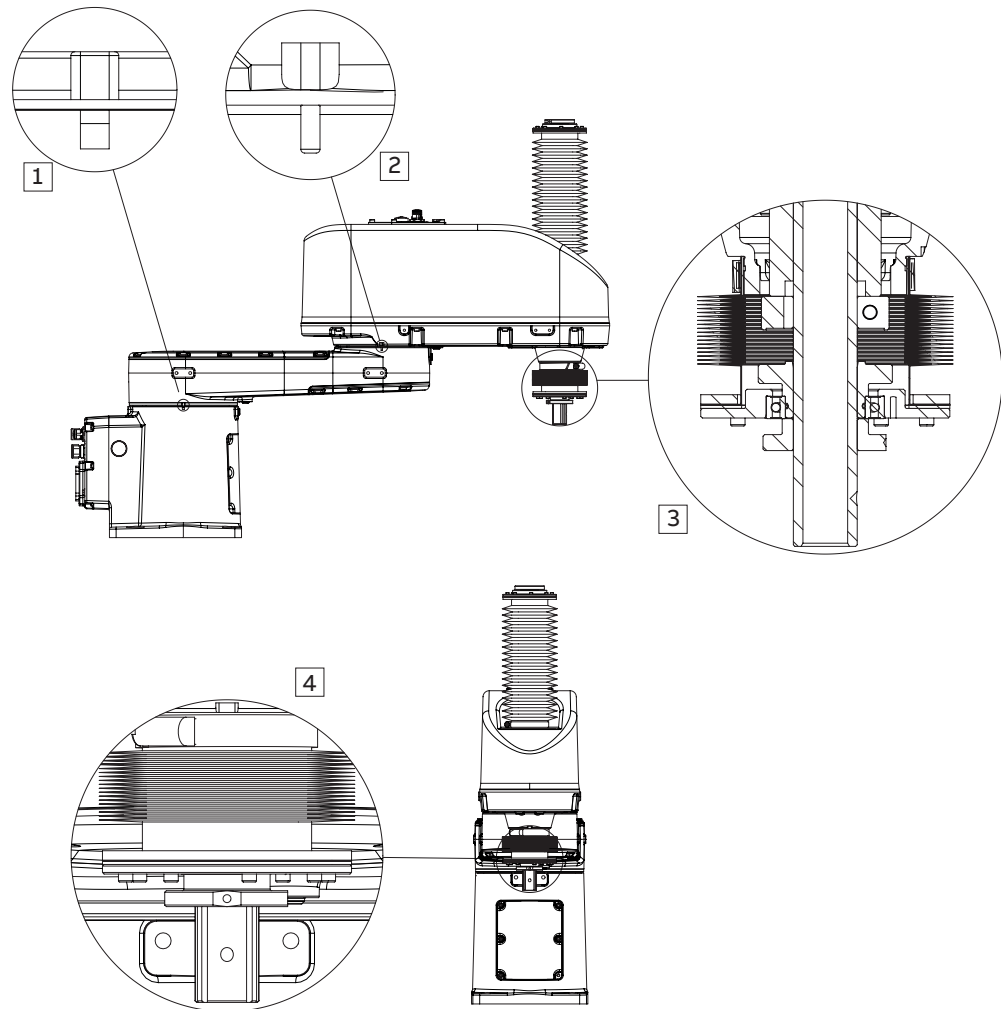


xx2000001163

*Continues on next page*



Clean Room/ IP54



xx2300000725

**For robots with protection class IP54 and protection type Clean Room**

Make sure the opening gap on the lower mechanical stopper is aligned with the notch on the outer arm cover, and the convex edge surface on the mechanical stopper is aligned with the lowest surface on the outer arm cover.

**Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant****Note**

Revolution counters of axes 3 and 4 must be updated together.

Use this procedure to update the revolution counter with the FlexPendant (OmniCore).

	Action
1	On the start screen, tap <b>Calibrate</b> . The calibration summary page for the mechanical unit is displayed.
2	In the <b>Calibration Methods</b> menu, select <b>Revolution Counters</b> .

*Continues on next page*




## 6 Calibration

---

### 6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

*Continued*

	Action
3	In the <b>Selection</b> column select the axes for which revolution counters need to be updated.
4	<b>Tap Update.</b> A dialog box is displayed warning that the updating operation cannot be undone.
5	Tap <b>OK</b> to update the revolution counter.
6	 <b>CAUTION</b>  If a revolution counter is incorrectly updated, it will cause incorrect manipulator positioning, which in turn may cause damage or injury! Check the synchronization position very carefully after each update. See <a href="#">Checking the synchronization position on page 988</a> .



## 6.4 Calibrating with Axis Calibration method

### 6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

#### Instructions for Axis Calibration procedure given on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

This manual contains a brief description of the method, additional information to the information given on the FlexPendant, article number for the tools and images of where to fit the calibration tools on the robot.

#### Overview of the Axis Calibration procedure

The Axis Calibration procedure applies to all axes, and is performed on one axis at the time. The robot axes are both manually and automatically moved into position, as instructed on the FlexPendant.

A fixed calibration pin/bushing is installed on each robot axis at delivery.

The Axis Calibration procedure described roughly:

- 1 A removable calibration tool is inserted by the operator into a calibration bushing on the axis chosen for calibration, according to instructions on the FlexPendant.



#### WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.



#### WARNING

The calibration tool must be fully inserted into the calibration bushing, until the steel spring ring snaps into place.

- 2 During the calibration procedure, RobotWare moves the robot axis chosen for calibration so that the calibration tools get into contact. RobotWare records values of the axis position and repeats the coming-in-contact procedure several times to get an exact value of the axis position.



#### WARNING

Risk of pinching! The contact force for large robots can be up to 150 kg. Keep a safe distance to the robot.

- 3 The axis position is stored in RobotWare with an active choice from the operator.

*Continues on next page*



## 6 Calibration

---

### 6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

*Continued*

---

#### Routines in the calibration procedure

The following routines are available in the Axis Calibration procedure, given at the beginning of the procedure on the FlexPendant.

##### Fine calibration routine

Choose this routine to calibrate the robot when there are no tools, process cabling or equipment fitted to the robot.

##### Reference calibration routine

Choose this routine to create reference values and to calibrate the robot when the robot is dressed with tools, process cabling or other equipment.



#### Note

When calibrating the robot with the reference calibration routine, the robot must be dressed with the same tools, process cabling and any other equipment as when the reference values were created.



#### Note

When using reference calibration with some tools, typically large or flexible tools, oscillations in the robot can cause issues leading to failure of the calibration.

If calibrating the robot with reference calibration there must be reference values created before repair is made to the robot, if values are not already available. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. The reference values contain positions of all axes, torque of axes and technical data about the tool installed. A benefit with reference calibration is that the current state of the robot is stored and not the state when the robot left the ABB factory. The reference value will be named according to tool name, date etc.

Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.

When reference calibration is performed, the robot is restored to the status given by the reference values.

##### Update revolution counters

Choose this routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

##### Validation

In the mentioned routines, it is also possible to validate the calibration data.

---

#### Position of robot axes

The robot axes should be positioned close to 0 degrees before commencing the calibration program. The axis chosen for calibration is then automatically run by the calibration program to its exact calibration position during the calibration procedure.

It is possible to position some of the other axes in positions different from 0 degrees. Information about which axes are allowed to be jogged is given on the FlexPendant.

*Continues on next page*



These axes are marked with **Unrestricted** in the FlexPendant window. Also the following table shows the dependencies between the axes.

Requirements for axis positioning during calibration

Required position of axis	Axis to calibrate					
	Axis 1	Axis 2	Axis 3	Axis 4	Axis 5	Axis 6
Axis 1	-	*				
Axis 2	*	-				
-	Axis to be calibrated					
*	Unrestricted. Axis is allowed to be jogged to other position than 0 degrees.					
0	Axis must be put in position 0 degrees.					

#### System containing SafeMove

SafeMove will lose its synchronization to the controller if a new calibration is done. New calibration values have to be downloaded to SafeMove, and a new SafeMove calibration has to be done. Make sure that the user rights admit to change the safety settings and to synchronize SafeMove.



## 6 Calibration

### 6.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

#### 6.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

##### Calibration tool set

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.

The calibration tool will eventually break from fatigue after longer period of use and then needs to be replaced. There is no risk for bad calibrations as long as the calibration tool is in one piece.



##### **WARNING**

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

##### Examining the calibration tool

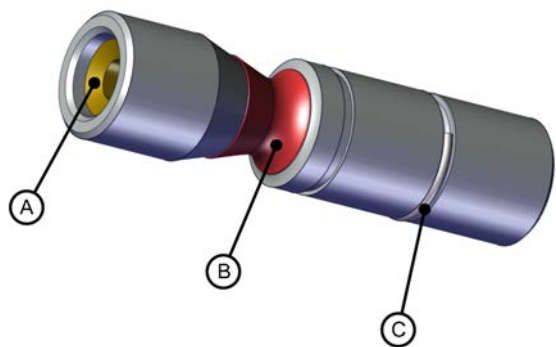
##### Check prior to usage

Before using the calibration tool, make sure that the tube insert, the plastic protection and the steel spring ring are present.



##### **WARNING**

If any part is missing or damaged, the tool must be replaced immediately.



xx1500001914

A	Tube insert
B	Plastic protection
C	Steel spring ring

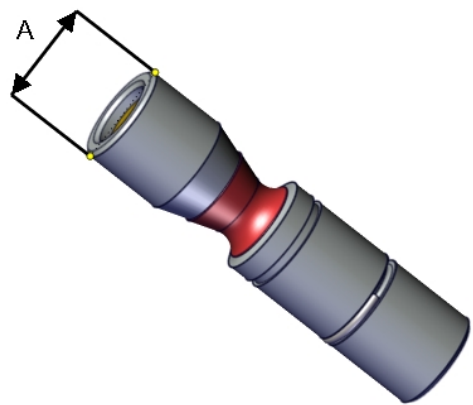
*Continues on next page*



Periodic check of the calibration tool

If including the calibration tool in a local periodic check system, the following measures should be checked.

- Outer diameter within Ø12g4 mm, Ø8g4 mm or Ø6g5 mm (depending on calibration tool size).
- Straightness within 0.005 mm.





xx1500000951

A	Outer diameter
---	----------------

Identifying the calibrating tools

It is possible to make the calibration tool identifiable with, for example, an RFID chip. The procedure of how to install an RFID chip is described below.

<div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The tool identifier is NOT delivered from ABB, it is a customized solution.</p>		
	Action	Note
1	<p>It is possible to use any RFID solution, with the correct dimensions. ABB has verified function on some suppliers fulfilling the requirements of NFC compatible devices (13.56 Mhz) according to ISO 14443 or ISO 15693.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The maximum dimensions on the RFID chip must not exceed Ø7.9 mm x 8.0 mm, Ø5.9 mm x 8.0 mm or Ø3.9 mm x 8.0 mm (depending on calibration tool size).</p>	
2	<p>There is a cavity on one end of the calibration tool in which the RFID chip can be installed.</p> <p>Install the RFID chip according to supplier instructions.</p> <p>Install the chip in flush with the tool end.</p>	



## 6 Calibration

### 6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

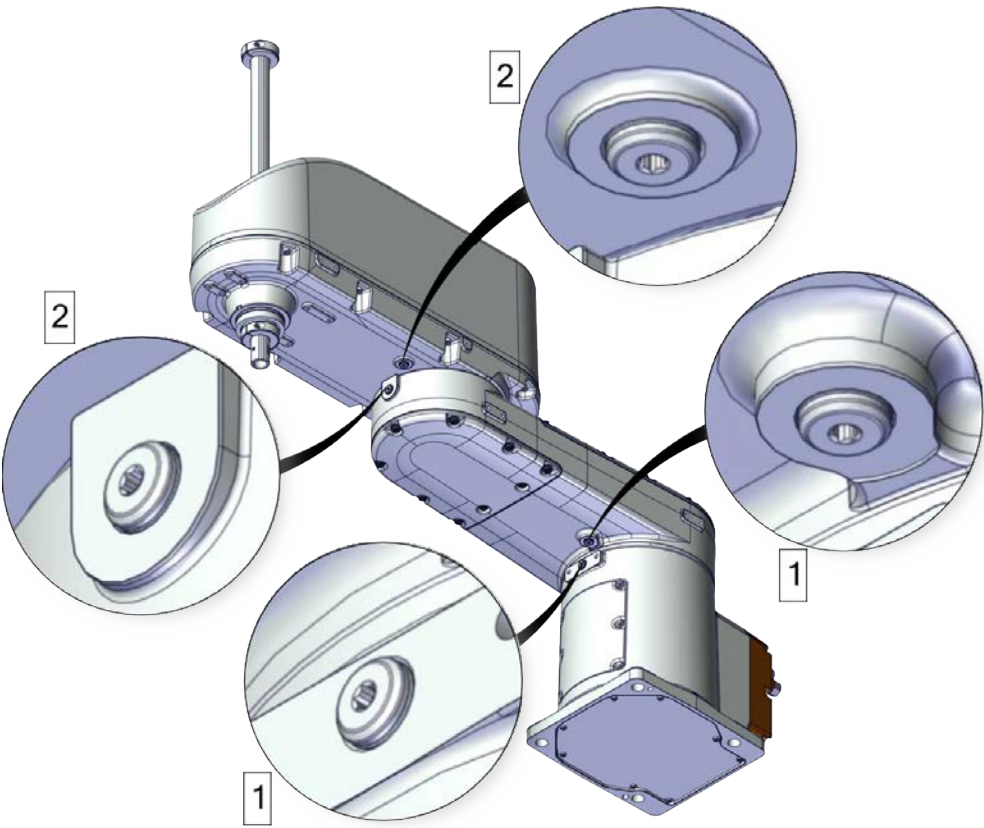
### 6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

#### Location of fixed calibration items

This section shows how the robot is equipped with items for installation of calibration tools for Axis Calibration (fixed calibration pins and/or bushings). Installed calibration tools are not shown.

A fixed calibration pin and a bushing for the movable calibration tool are located on each axis as follows.

If there is not enough space on an axis to install a fixed calibration pin, the axis is equipped with two bushings instead, for installation of two calibration tools when calibration is carried out. This is shown in the figure.



xx2000001164

#### Spare parts

When calibration is not being performed, a protective cover and an o-ring should always be installed on the fixed calibration pin as well as a protective plug, included a sealing, in the bushing. Replace damaged parts with new.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Protective plug for bushing	3HAC054431-005	Replace if damaged or missing.



## 6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

### Required tools

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.



#### WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration holes may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC055412-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

### Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Clean cloth	-	

### Spare parts

Spare part	Article number	Note
Protective plug for bushing	3HAC054431-005	Replace if damaged or missing.

### Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Use the following list to learn about the calibration procedure before running the RobotWare program on the FlexPendant. It gives you a brief overview of the calibration procedure.

After the calibration method has been started on the FlexPendant, the following sequence will be run.

- 1 Choose calibration routine. The routines are described in [Routines in the calibration procedure on page 966](#).
- 2 Choose which axis/axes to calibrate.
- 3 The robot moves to synchronization position.
- 4 Validate the synchronization marks.
- 5 The robot moves to preparation position.
- 6 Remove the protective cover from the fixed pin and the protection plug from the bushing, if any, and install the calibration tool.
- 7 The robot performs a measurement sequence by rotating the axis back and forth.

*Continues on next page*



## 6 Calibration

### 6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure



*Continued*

- 8 Remove the calibration tool and reinstall the protective cover on the fixed pin and the protection plug in the bushing, if any.
- 9 The robot moves to verify that the calibration tool is removed.
- 10 Choose whether to save the calibration data or not.

Calibration of the robot is not finished until the calibration data is saved, as last step of the calibration procedure.


#### Preparation prior to calibration

The calibration procedure is described in the FlexPendant while conducting it.

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  While conducting the calibration, the robot needs to be connected to power.  Make sure that the robot's working area is empty, as the robot can make unpredictable movements.	
2	Wipe the calibration tool clean.   <b>Note</b>  The calibration method is exact. Dust, dirt or color flakes will affect the calibration value.	Use a clean cloth.

#### Starting the calibration procedure

Use this procedure to start the Axis Calibration routine on the FlexPendant.

	Action	Note
1	Tap the calibration icon and enter the calibration main page.	
2	All mechanical units connected to the system are shown with their calibration status. Tap the mechanical unit in question.   <b>Note</b>  For RobotWare 7, the mechanical unit page is displayed only if there is more than one mechanical unit available.	
3	The calibration method used at ABB factory for each axis is shown, as well as calibration method used for the robot during last field calibration.	The FlexPendant will give all information needed to proceed with Axis Calibration.
4	<b>Valid for RobotWare 7</b> Tap <b>Calibration Methods</b> on the right pane and then tap <b>Calibration</b> . The software will automatically call for the procedure for the valid calibration method.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Note
5	Follow the instructions given on the FlexPendant.	A brief overview of the sequence that will be run on the FlexPendant is given in <a href="#">Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant on page 971</a> .

#### Restarting an interrupted calibration procedure

If the Axis Calibration procedure is interrupted before the calibration is finished, the RobotWare program needs to be started again. Use this procedure to take required action.

Situation	Action
The three-position enabling device on the FlexPendant has been released during robot movement.	Press and hold the three-position enabling device and press <b>Play</b> .
The RobotWare program is terminated with <b>PP to Main</b> .	Remove the calibration tool, if it is installed, and restart the calibration procedure from the beginning. See <i>Starting the calibration procedure</i> .  If the calibration tool is in contact the robot axis needs to be jogged in order to release the calibration tool. Jogging the axis in wrong direction will cause the calibration tool to break. Directions of axis movement is shown in <a href="#">Calibration movement directions for all axes on page 960</a>

#### Axis Calibration with SafeMove option

To be able to run Axis Calibration, SafeMove needs to be unsynchronized. The Axis Calibration routine recognizes if the robot is equipped with SafeMove and will force SafeMove to unsynchronize automatically.

However, SafeMove may generate other warning messages anytime during the Axis Calibration routine. When a warning message is displayed, tap **Acknowledge** to confirm the unsynchronized state and continue Axis Calibration procedure.



#### CAUTION

SafeMove must be synchronized after the calibration is completed.

*Continues on next page*

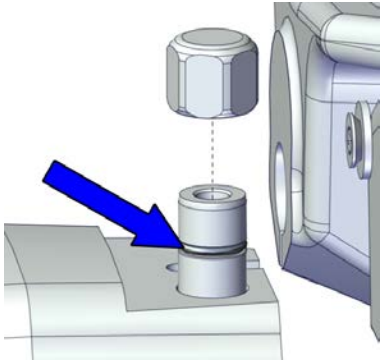
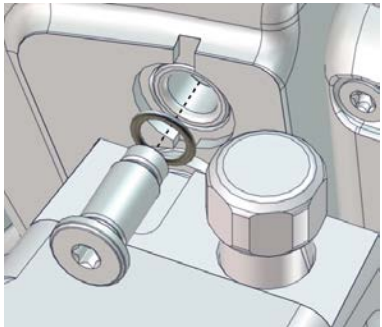


## 6 Calibration

### 6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

*Continued*

#### After calibration

	Action	Note
1	Check the o-ring on the fixed calibration pin. Replace if damaged or missing.	 xx1600002102 O-ring: 3HAC061327-022 Calibration pin cover, 10 mm: 3HAC056253-003
2	Reinstall the protective cover on the fixed calibration pin on each axis, directly after the axis has been calibrated. Replace the cover with new spare part, if missing or damaged.	
3	Reinstall the protective plug and sealing in the bushing on each axis, directly after the axis has been calibrated. Ensure that the sealing is not damaged. Replace the plug and the sealing with new spare part, if missing or damaged.	 xx1500000952 Protective plug for bushing: 3HAC054431-005.



## 6.4.5 Reference calibration

### Brief introduction to Reference Calibration



#### Note

Only axes 1 and 2 of the IRB 920 can be calibrated with the reference calibration routine.

Reference calibration is a faster method compared to Fine calibration, as it refers to a previously made calibration.

- 1 Create a backup of the current robot system.
- 2 Check that the active calibration offset values corresponds to the values on the calibration label (located on the lower arm or the base).
- 3 Jog the manipulator so that all axes are in zero position (ex use `MoveAbsJ` instruction). Check that all axis scales are aligned with calibration marks.
- 4 If the scales differ from calibration marks it might depend on wrong turns of the revolution counters. Make a marker line on the corresponding axis to be able to validate the result of the calibration. If more than one motor revolutions are wrong, the calibration will fail.
- 5 Use a verification position. This is especially recommended if all axes were not aligned with the synchronization marks (step 3). Reuse an existing position that is suitable and accurate so it can be used to validate the repair. Use a position where a deviation in axis calibration gives a big deviation in positioning. Note! Check the position after each repair in one axis.
- 6 Use Reference calibration to save reference values for all axes that is to be replaced. Make sure that the values are saved in RobotStudio or FTP program. The files are located in "Active system folder name/HOME/RefCalibFiles".
- 7 Perform the repair.
- 8 Make sure that the tooling and process equipment are the same as when creating the reference. Use Reference calibration to update the system with new calibration offset value for the repaired axis.
- 9 Check the position against the verification position (step 5).
- 10 Proceed with the repair of the next axis, if necessary, and repeat (step 8-9) for every axis.
- 11 (For system containing SafeMove) Download new calibration values to SafeMove. Use Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio.
- 12 (For system containing SafeMove) Synchronize SafeMove to activate SafeMove.
- 13 Perform test run.
- 14 Update the calibration label with new resolver values (calibration values).

*Continues on next page*



## 6 Calibration

---

### 6.4.5 Reference calibration

*Continued*

#### Manual tuning of calibration offset

Manual tuning of calibration offset is normally not needed, but can be useful in some situations. The requirement to do manual tuning is that there is a known accurate position, that worked accurately before the repair (step 5, see [Brief introduction to Reference Calibration on page 975](#)).



## 6.5 Calibrating the robot

### 6.5.1 Calibration position

#### Calibration position

The table below specifies the axis positions.

Axis	
3	2 mm
4	0°



## 6 Calibration

---

### 6.5.2 Calibrating axis 1 and axis 2

### 6.5.2 Calibrating axis 1 and axis 2

---

#### Calibrating axis 1 and axis 2

Axes 1 and 2 of the IRB 920 are calibrated using the Axis Calibration method. See [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 965](#).



### 6.5.3 Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4

---

#### Calibration position of axis 3 and axis 4

The figure shows axis 3 and axis 4 in calibration position. The axes 3 and 4 are calibrated together.

*Continues on next page*

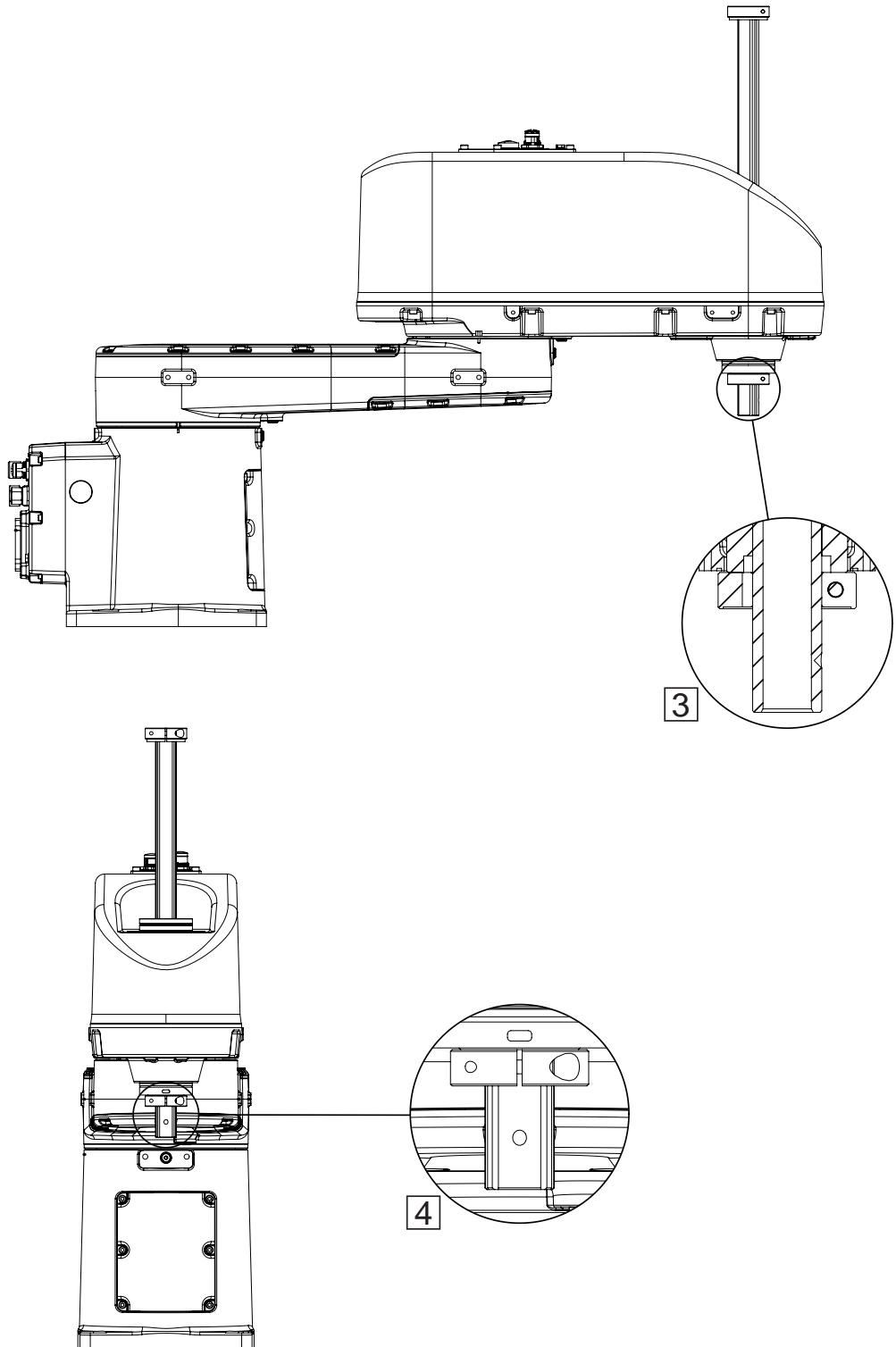


## 6 Calibration

### 6.5.3 Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4

*Continued*

IP30

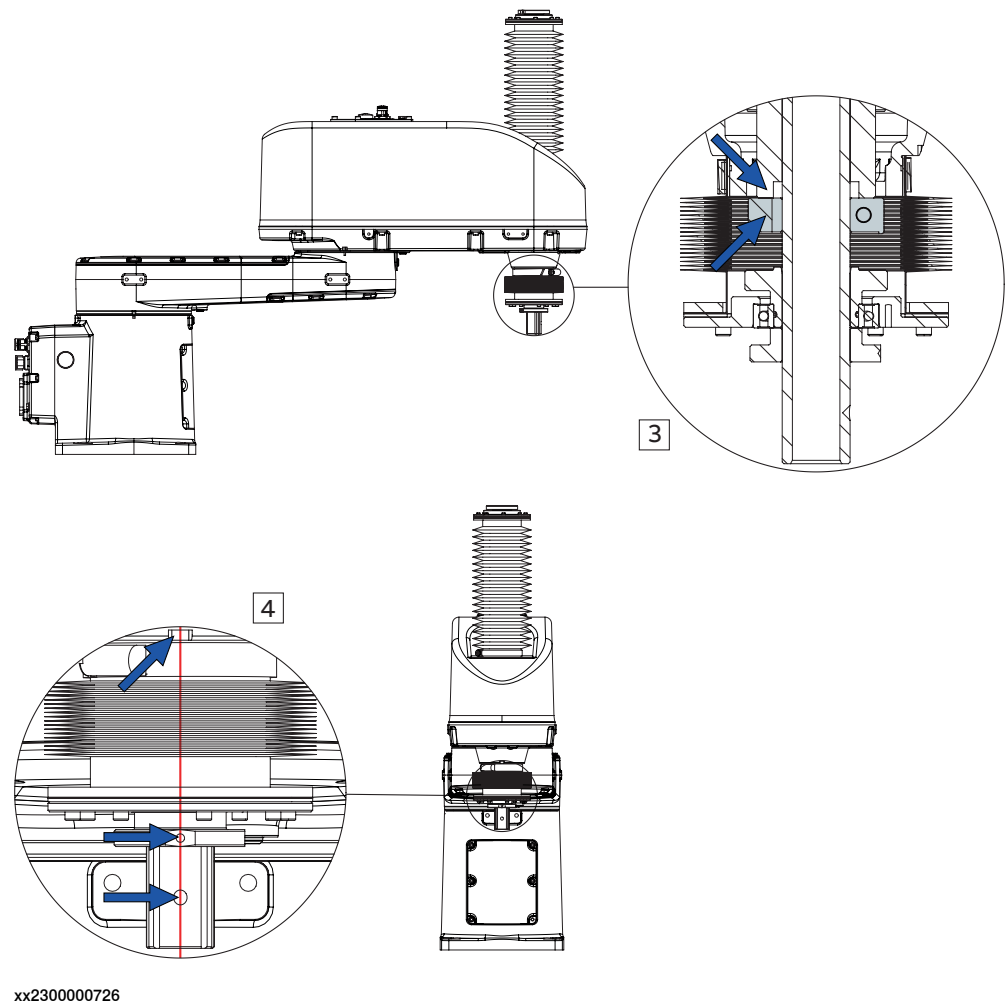


xx2000001165

*Continues on next page*



Clean Room/ IP54



Required equipment

Axes 3 and 4 are calibrated together.

The axis-3 calibration is done by moving the ball screw spline unit so that the upper surface of the lower mechanical stopper and the lower surface of the ball screw lower nut touch each other gently.

The axis-4 calibration is done by rotating the ball screw spline unit so that the opening gap on the lower mechanical stopper or the ball screw origin point is aligned with the notch on the outer arm cover.

Required consumables

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Isopropanol





## 6 Calibration

### 6.5.3 Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4

*Continued*

#### Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4

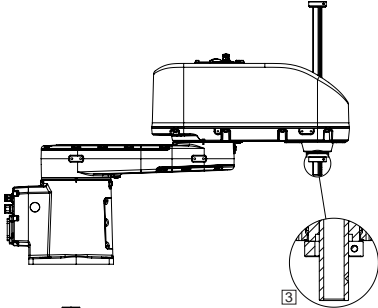
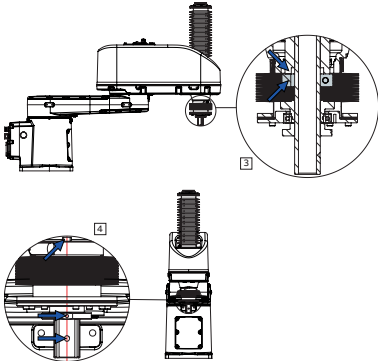
Moving the robot to calibration position

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b>  Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	Remove the fitted extra equipment on the robot if it may cause a collision to the arm when push the ball screw to the calibration position.	
3	Turn on the electric power to the robot.	
4	 <b>DANGER</b>  When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways!  Make sure the payload is disassembled or tooling is properly supported; otherwise, fast downward movements of axis 3 may cause severe hits.	

*Continues on next page*



6.5.3 Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4  
Continued

	Action	Note
5	Release the brakes and manually push axis 3 until the upper surface of the lower mechanical stopper touches the lower surface of the ball screw lower nut gently. There should be no pressing force between them. When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision.	<p>How to release the brakes is detailed in <a href="#">Manually releasing the brakes on page 64</a>.</p> <p>IP30</p>  <p>xx2000001165</p> <p>Clean Room/ IP54</p>  <p>xx2300000726</p>
6	Release the brakes and manually rotate axis 4 until the opening gap on the lower mechanical stopper or the ball screw origin point is aligned with the notch on the outer arm cover. When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision.	
7	When the axes are in position, release the brake release button to activate the brakes again.	

Performing the fine calibration procedure

	Action	Note
1	On the start screen, tap <b>Calibrate</b> .	



Continues on next page



## 6 Calibration

### 6.5.3 Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4


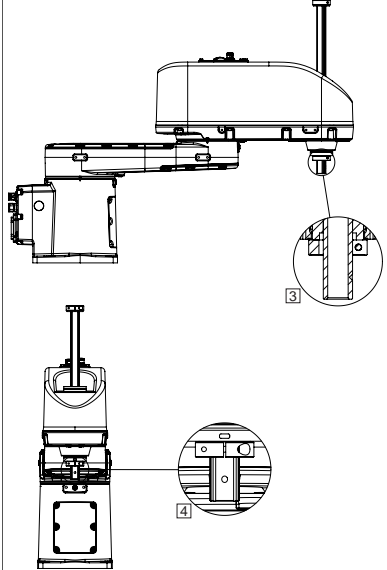
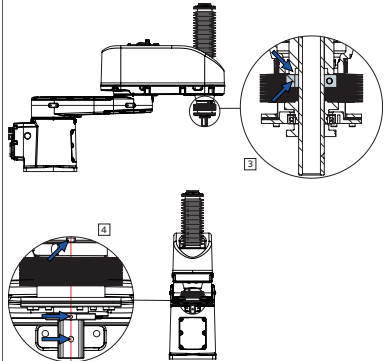
*Continued*

	Action	Note
2	<p>Select <b>Calibration</b> from the menu.</p> <p>The <b>Mechanical Units</b> page displays a list of available mechanical units.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>This step is required only if you are not already in the <b>Mechanical Unit</b> page when you open <b>Calibrate</b>.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The <b>Mechanical Unit</b> page is displayed only if there are more than one mechanical unit available. Otherwise, the calibration summary page for the available mechanical unit is displayed.</p>	
3	<p>Select the unit that needs to be calibrated from the <b>Mechanical Unit</b> list.</p> <p>The calibration summary for the selected mechanical unit is displayed.</p>	
4	<p>On the right pane tap <b>Calibration Methods</b>.</p>	
5	<p>Tap <b>Calibration Parameters</b>.</p> <p>The calibration parameters are displayed.</p>	
6	<p>Tap <b>Fine Calibration</b>.</p> <p>A dialog box is displayed, urging you to use external equipment to perform the actual calibration. Make sure all necessary calibration equipment is fitted for the axis to be calibrated.</p> <p>A warning that performing fine calibration can change programmed robot positions is also displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tap <b>Yes</b> to proceed.</li><li>• Tap <b>No</b> to cancel.</li></ul>	
7	<p>Select the check-box for the current axis/axes to be calibrated.</p>	
8	<p>Tap <b>Calibrate</b>.</p> <p>A dialog box is displayed, warning that calibration of the selected axes will be changed, which cannot be undone:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tap <b>Calibrate</b> to proceed.</li><li>• Tap <b>Cancel</b> to cancel.</li></ul> <p>Tapping <b>Calibrate</b> results in briefly displaying a dialog box, announcing that the calibration process has started.</p> <p>The axis is calibrated and the system returns to the list of available mechanical units.</p>	
9	<p>Tap <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>The fine calibration process is complete.</p>	

*Continues on next page*



## Checking and finalizing the calibration

	Action	Note
1	 <b>DANGER</b> Always remember to remove the calibration tools from the robot before jogging axes to zero position during calibration.	
2	Release the brakes and manually rotate the axis to apart the calibration pins from each other. This is done to avoid damage on the pins if incorrect operation should occur during next step of jogging.	
3	Jog axes 3 and 4 to zero degree using the Flex-Pendant.	
4	Check that the synchronization marks on axes 3 and 4 are aligned with each other. Are they aligned within the tolerances? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If yes, the calibration is verified OK.</li> <li>• If no, redo the fine calibration procedure.</li> </ul>	<p><b>IP30</b></p>  <p>xx2000001165</p> <p><b>Clean Room/ IP54</b></p>  <p>xx2300000726</p>
5	Update the revolution counters of axes 3 and 4.	See <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 961</a> .

Continues on next page



## 6 Calibration

---

### 6.5.3 Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4

*Continued*

After calibration

	Action	Note
1	Write down the new system parameters on a new label and stick on top of the calibration label on the robot.	



#### Note

The calibration status of axis 3 may be changed to **Not updated** after a system reinstallation or warm restart. In this case, update the revolution counters for axis 3 and axis 4 (axis 4 is coupled with axis 3). See [Updating revolution counters on page 961](#).



## 6.6 Verifying the calibration

### Introduction

Always verify the results after calibrating *any* robot axis to verify that all calibration positions are correct.

### Verifying the calibration

Use this procedure to verify the calibration result.

	Action	Note
1	Run the calibration home position program twice. Do not change the position of the robot axes after running the program!	See <a href="#">Checking the synchronization position on page 988</a> .
2	Adjust the <i>synchronization marks</i> when the calibration is done, if necessary.	This is detailed in section <a href="#">Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 957</a> .
3	Write down the values on a new label and stick it on top of the calibration label. The label is located on the base.	



## 6 Calibration

---

### 6.7 Checking the synchronization position

### 6.7 Checking the synchronization position

---

#### Introduction

Check the synchronization position of the robot before beginning any programming of the robot system. This may be done:

- Using a `MoveAbsJ` instruction with argument zero on all axes.
- Using the **Jog** window on the FlexPendant.

*Continues on next page*



## 6.7.1 Checking the synchronization position on OmniCore robots

## 6.7.1 Checking the synchronization position on OmniCore robots

## Using a MoveAbsJ instruction

Use this procedure to create a program that runs all the robot axes to their synchronization position.

	Action	Note
1	Tap <b>Code</b> .	
2	Create a new program.	
3	Use <b>MoveAbsJ</b> in the <b>Add Instruction</b> menu.	
4	Create the following program: <pre>MoveAbsJ [[0,0,0,0,0,0],           [9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9]] \NoEOffs, v1000, fine, tool0</pre>	
5	Run the program in manual mode.	
6	Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolution counters.	See <a href="#">Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 957</a> and <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 961</a> .

## Using the jogging window

Use this procedure to jog the robot to the synchronization position of all axes.

	Action	Note
1	Tap <b>Jog</b> .	
2	From the <b>Mechanical unit</b> list select a mechanical unit.	
3	From the <b>Motion mode</b> section, select an axis-set that need to be jogged. For example, to jog axis 2, select the axis set <b>Axis 1-3</b> .	
4	Follow the screen instruction on joystick movements to understand the direction of the axis that you want to move and move the joystick.	
5	Manually run the robots axes to a position where the axis position value read on the FlexPendant, is equal to zero.	
6	Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolution counters.	See <a href="#">Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 957</a> and <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 961</a> .



**This page is intentionally left blank**



## 7 Troubleshooting

### 7.1 Introduction to troubleshooting

#### Introduction

The product manual and the circuit diagram contains information that can be good when troubleshooting.

For OmniCore, all event logs from the software can be seen on the FlexPendant, or in *Technical reference manual - Event logs for RobotWare 7*.

Make sure to read through the section [Safety on page 15](#) before starting.

#### Troubleshooting strategies

- 1 Isolate the fault to pinpoint the cause of the problem from consequential problems.
- 2 Divide the fault chain in two.
- 3 Check communication parameters and cables.
- 4 Check that the software version is compatible with the hardware.

#### Work systematically

- 1 Take a look around to make sure that all screws, connectors, and cables are secured, and that the robot and other parts are clean, not damaged, and correctly fitted.
- 2 Replace one thing at a time.
- 3 Do not replace units randomly.
- 4 Make sure that there are no loose screws, turnings, or other unexpected parts remaining after work has been performed.
- 5 When the work is completed, verify that the safety functions are working as intended.

#### Keep a track of history

- Make a historical fault log to keep track of problems over time.
- Consult those working with the robot when the problem occurred.

#### Basic scenarios

What to look for during troubleshooting depends on when the fault occurred. Was the robot recently installed or was it recently repaired? The following table gives hints on what to look for in specific situations.

The robot has recently been installed	Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• the configuration files</li><li>• connectors</li><li>• options and their configuration</li><li>• changes in the robot working space/movements.</li></ul>
---------------------------------------	---

*Continues on next page*



## 7 Troubleshooting

---

### 7.1 Introduction to troubleshooting

*Continued*

The robot has recently been repaired	Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• all connections to the replaced part</li><li>• power supplies</li><li>• that the correct part has been fitted</li><li>• the last repair documents.</li></ul>
The robot recently had a software upgrade	Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• software versions</li><li>• compatibilities between hardware and software</li><li>• options and their configuration</li></ul>
The robot has recently been moved from one site to another (an already working robot)	Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• connections</li><li>• software versions</li></ul>



## 7.2 Oil and grease stains on motors and gearboxes

### Description

The area surrounding the motor, gearbox or seal lip shows signs of oil leaks. This can be at the base, closest to the mating surface, at the furthest end of the motor at the resolver, or around the joints of the covers (closest to the edge) on the robot surface.

### Consequences

Besides the dirty appearance, in most cases there are no serious consequences if the leaked amount of oil is very small.


### Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- Leakage of rust preventives or mounting grease. This should be wiped off.
- Leaking sealing between gearbox and motor.
- Gearbox overfilled with oil.
- Gearbox oil too hot.

### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

	Action	Information
1	 <b>CAUTION</b> Allow hot parts to cool down.	
2	Wipe off the oil or grease, see <a href="#">Cleaning the IRB 920 on page 113</a> . Monitor the robot over time to see if new oil or grease occurs.	If the oil spill is small, this step is sufficient.
3	Check the gearbox oil level.	
4	Too hot gearbox oil may be caused by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Incorrect oil quality or level.</li> <li>• The robot work cycle runs a specific axis too hard. Investigate whether it is possible to program small "cooling periods" into the application.</li> <li>• Overpressure created inside gearbox.</li> </ul>	Robots performing certain, extremely heavy duty work cycles may be fitted with vented oil plugs. These are not fitted to normal duty robots, but can be purchased from your local ABB representative.
5	Inspect all sealings and gaskets between motor and gearbox. Replace broken parts.	



## 7 Troubleshooting

### 7.3 Mechanical noise or dissonance

### 7.3 Mechanical noise or dissonance

#### Description

Mechanical noise or dissonance that has not been observed before can indicate problems in bearings, motors, gearboxes, or similar. Be observant of changes over time.

A faulty bearing often emits scraping, grinding, or clicking noises shortly before failing.

A humming resonance sound can occur without being an error. Mechanical resonance sound is a physical phenomenon in mechanical structures. It has no impact on product performance or lifetime. Adjusting the robot movement speed out of the range that causes the resonance will eliminate the sound.

#### Consequences

Failing bearings cause the path accuracy to become inconsistent, and in severe cases, the joint can seize completely.

#### Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:


- Worn bearings.
- Contaminations have entered the bearing grooves.
- Loss of lubrication in bearings.
- Loss of lubrication in ball screw.
- Loose heat sinks, fans, or metal parts.

If the noise is emitted from a gearbox, the following can also apply:

- Overheating.

#### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

	Action	Information
1	 <b>CAUTION</b> Allow hot parts to cool down.	
2	Verify that the service is done according to the maintenance schedule.	
3	If a bearing is emitting the noise, determine which one and make sure that it has sufficient lubrication.	
4	If possible, disassemble the joint and measure the clearance.	
5	Bearings inside motors are not to be replaced individually, but the complete motor is replaced.	
6	Make sure the bearings are fitted correctly.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Information
7	Tighten the screws if a heat sink, fan, or metal sheet is loose.	



## 7 Troubleshooting

---

### 7.4 Manipulator collapses on power down

### 7.4 Manipulator collapses on power down

---

#### Description

The manipulator is able to work correctly while Motors ON is active, but when Motors OFF is active, one or more axes drops or collapses under its own weight. The holding brakes (normally one in each motor), is not able to hold the weight of the manipulator arm.

---

#### Consequences

For a heavy robot, the collapse can cause severe injury to personnel working in the area or severe damage to the robot and/or surrounding equipment.  
For a small robot, the collapse can cause injury to personnel working close to the robot or damage to the robot and/or surrounding equipment.

---

#### Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- Faulty brake.
- Faulty power supply to the brake.

---

#### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

	Action	Information
1	Determine which motor(s) causes the robot to collapse.	
2	Check the brake power supply to the collapsing motor during the Motors OFF state.	See the circuit diagram.
3	Remove the resolver or resolver cover of the motor to see if there are any signs of oil leaks.	If found faulty, the motor must be replaced as a complete unit.
4	Remove the motor from the gearbox to inspect it from the drive side.	If found faulty, the motor must be replaced as a complete unit.



## 7.5 Motor temperature too high

### Description

The robot stops and the motor temperature for joint arg is too high.

### Consequences

It is not possible to continue until the motor has cooled down. The system goes to Motors Off.


### Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- The values for payload and arm load are not consistent with the actual ones.
- The value for ambient temperature setting in the controller is not consistent with the actual operating temperature environment.
- The user program may contain too much high acceleration and deceleration of the joint.
- Gravity torque or external forces for the joint can also be too high.

### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

	Action	Information
1	 <b>CAUTION</b> Allow hot parts to cool down.	
2	Verify that the values for payload and arm load are set correctly.	
3	Verify that the value for ambient temperature setting in the controller is consistent with the actual operating temperature environment.	
4	Rewrite the user program to reduce the motor utilization.	The ways could be but not limited to optimizing robot movement cycle, adjusting acc, dec as well as external force, adding wait time, and introducing alternative path/RAPID, etc.



## 7 Troubleshooting

### 7.6 Robot vibration during low speed movement

### 7.6 Robot vibration during low speed movement

#### Description

Robot vibration, especially at the wrist, can be observed when the robot moves at a low speed.

#### Consequences

Slight vibration that is invisible will not affect the use of the robot. However, a clear robot vibration will decrease path accuracy and affect user applications.

#### Possible causes

Vibration might be caused by external factors:

- Incorrect robot installation
- Insufficient stiffness of robot pedestal
- Resonance with nearby moving machines
- Incorrect definition of payloads and tools
- Part malfunction, such as motor, gearbox, timing belt or main cable harness

Vibration might also happen when the robot moves at a low speed or in some specific poses. This is generally caused by mechanical resonance between servo system, gearbox and robot body, which is considered as an internal factor. Such vibration is a normal physical phenomenon, which is not a quality-related issue.

#### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

	Action	Information
1	Verify that the robot is firmly secured to the foundation.	The attachment screws used for securing the robot to the foundation must be tightened with correct tightening torque. See <a href="#">Orienting and securing the robot on page 66</a> .
2	Verify that the stiffness of robot pedestal meets the requirement.	
3	Turn off all the moving machines near to the robot and then check robot vibration again. If no vibration can be observed any more, move either the machines or the robot to another place to remove the external resonance source.	
4	Verify the payload and tools are correctly defined. If not correctly defined, redefine them.	
5	Jog the robot joint by joint to verify the functionality of each joint. If anything abnormal is found on a joint, locate the possible malfunction part with other measurements such as noise, warnings on the FlexPendant, and then replace it.	

*Continues on next page*



	Action	Information
6	<p>Make sure all the external factors have been checked and excluded.</p> <p>If vibration remains, it might be caused by the internal factor. Contact ABB for further assistance.</p>	



**This page is intentionally left blank**



## 8 Decommissioning

### 8.1 Introduction to decommissioning

---

#### Introduction

This section contains information to consider when taking a product, robot or controller, out of operation.

It deals with how to handle potentially dangerous components and potentially hazardous materials.



#### Note

The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

---

#### Disposal of materials used in the robot

All used grease/oils and dead batteries **must** be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and the control unit are installed.

If the robot or the control unit is partially or completely disposed of, the various parts **must** be grouped together according to their nature (which is all iron together and all plastic together), and disposed of accordingly. These parts **must** also be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and control unit are installed.

See also [Environmental information on page 1002](#).

---

#### Transportation

Prepare the robot or parts before transport, this to avoid hazards.



# 8 Decommissioning

## 8.2 Environmental information

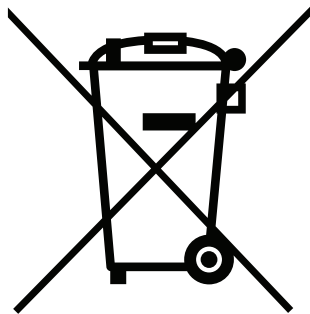
### 8.2 Environmental information

#### Introduction

ABB robots contain components in different materials. During decommissioning, all materials shall be dismantled, recycled, or reused responsibly, according to the relevant laws and industrial standards. Robots or parts that can be reused or upcycled helps to reduce the usage of natural resources.

#### Disposal symbol

The following symbol indicates that the product must not be disposed of as common garbage. Handle each product according to local regulations for the respective content (see table below).



xx1800000058

#### Materials used in the product

The table specifies some of the materials in the product and their respective use throughout the product.

Dispose components properly according to local regulations to prevent health or environmental hazards.

Material	Example application
Aluminium	Structural parts, motors, covers
Batteries, Lithium	Battery unit
Copper	Cables, motors
Magnesium	Cover
Neodymium	Brakes, motors
Oil, grease	Drive units, ball screw spline unit, cables
Plastic/rubber	Mechanical stop rubber, seals, cables, pulley protection cover, resolver cover, VK cover, and etc
Stainless steel	Sheet metal
Steel	Drive units, ball screw spline unit, screws, and etc

Continues on next page



#### China RoHS symbol

The following symbol shows the information to hazardous substances and the environmental protection use period of IRB 920 according to "Management Methods for the Restriction of the Use of Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Products (SJ/T 11364-2014) ".

---

#### Oil and grease

Where possible, arrange for oil and grease to be recycled. Dispose of via an authorized person/contractor in accordance with local regulations. Do not dispose of oil and grease near lakes, ponds, ditches, down drains, or onto soil. Incineration must be carried out under controlled conditions in accordance with local regulations.

Also note that:

- Spills can form a film on water surfaces causing damage to organisms. Oxygen transfer could also be impaired.
- Spillage can penetrate the soil causing ground water contamination.



## 8 Decommissioning

---

### 8.3 Scrapping of robot

### 8.3 Scrapping of robot



#### Note

The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

---

#### Important when scrapping the robot



#### DANGER

The risk assessment should consider hazards arising in the decommissioning, such as, but not limited to:

- Always remove all batteries. If a battery is exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, it will explode.
- Always remove all oil/grease in gearboxes. If exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, the oil/grease will catch fire.
- When motors are removed from the robot, the robot will collapse if it is not properly supported before the motor is removed.
- A used robot does not have the same performance as on delivery. Springs, brakes, bearings, and other parts might be worn or broken.



## 9 Reference information

### 9.1 Introduction

---

**General**

This chapter includes general information, complementing the more specific information in the different procedures in the manual.



## 9 Reference information

### 9.2 Applicable standards

### 9.2 Applicable standards

#### General

The product is compliant with ISO 10218-1:2011, *Robots for industrial environments - Safety requirements - Part 1 Robots*, and applicable parts in the normative references, as referred to from ISO 10218-1:2011. In case of deviation from ISO 10218-1:2011, these are listed in the declaration of incorporation. The declaration of incorporation is part of the delivery.

#### Robot standards

Standard	Description
ISO 9283	Manipulating industrial robots – Performance criteria and related test methods
ISO 9787	Robots and robotic devices – Coordinate systems and motion nomenclatures
ISO 9946	Manipulating industrial robots – Presentation of characteristics

#### Other standards used in design

Standard	Description
IEC 60204-1	Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1: General requirements, normative reference from ISO 10218-1
IEC 61000-6-2	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-2: Generic standards – Immunity standard for industrial environments
IEC 61000-6-4	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-4: Generic standards – Emission standard for industrial environments
ISO 13849-1:2006	Safety of machinery - Safety related parts of control systems - Part 1: General principles for design, normative reference from ISO 10218-1
IEC 61340-5-1	Protection of electronic devices from electrostatic phenomena - General requirements
UL 1740 (option) CSA Z434 (option)	Standards For Safety - Robots and Robotic Equipment Industrial robots and robot Systems - General safety requirements Valid for USA and Canada.



9.3 Unit conversion

Converter table

Use the following table to convert units used in this manual.

Quantity	Units		
Length	1 m	3.28 ft.	39.37 in
Weight	1 kg	2.21 lb.	
Weight	1 g	0.035 ounces	
Pressure	1 bar	100 kPa	14.5 psi
Force	1 N	0.225 lbf	
Moment	1 Nm	0.738 lbf-ft	
Volume	1 L	0.264 US gal	



## 9 Reference information

### 9.4 Screw joints

### 9.4 Screw joints

#### General

This section describes how to tighten the various types of screw joints on ABB robots.

The instructions and torque values are valid for screw joints comprised of metallic materials and do *not* apply to soft or brittle materials.

#### UNBRAKO screws

UNBRAKO is a special type of screw recommended by ABB for certain screw joints. It features special surface treatment (Gleitmo as described below) and is extremely resistant to fatigue.

Whenever used, this is specified in the instructions, and in such cases, *no other type of replacement screw* is allowed. Using other types of screws will void any warranty and may potentially cause serious damage or injury.

#### Gleitmo treated screws

Gleitmo is a special surface treatment to reduce the friction when tightening the screw joint. It is recommended by ABB for M6-M20 screw joints. Screws treated with Gleitmo may be reused 3-4 times before the coating disappears. After this the screw must be discarded and replaced with a new one.

When handling screws treated with Gleitmo, protective gloves of nitrile rubber type should be used.

Generally, screws are lubricated with *Gleitmo 603* mixed with *Geomet 500* or *Geomet 702* in proportion 1:3. *Geomet* thickness varies according to screw dimensions, refer to the following.

Dimension	Lubricant	Geomet thickness
M6-M20 (any length except M20x60)	<i>Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 500</i>	3-5 µm
M6-M20 (any length except M20x60)	<i>Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 720</i>	3-5 µm
M20x60	<i>Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 500</i>	8-12 µm
M20x60	<i>Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 720</i>	6-10 µm

#### Screws lubricated in other ways

Screws lubricated with Molykote 1000 or Molykote P1900 should *only* be used when specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions.

In such cases, proceed as follows:

- 1 Apply lubricant to the screw thread.
- 2 Apply lubricant between the plain washer and screw head.
- 3 Screw dimensions of M8 or larger must be tightened with a torque wrench. Screw dimensions of M6 or smaller may be tightened without a torque wrench *if* this is done by trained and qualified personnel.

*Continues on next page*



Lubricant	Article number
Molykote 1000 (molybdenum disulphide grease)	3HAC042472-001
Molykote P1900 (molybdenum disulphide grease)	3HAC070875-001

**Tightening torque**

Before tightening any screw, note the following:

- Determine whether a **standard** tightening torque or **special** torque is to be applied. The **standard torques** are specified in the following tables. Any **special torques** are specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions. **Any special torque specified overrides the standard torque!**
- Use the *correct tightening torque* for each type of screw joint.
- Only use *correctly calibrated* torque keys.
- *Always tighten the joint by hand*, and never use pneumatic tools.
- Use the *correct tightening technique*, that is *do not* jerk. Tighten the screw in a slow, flowing motion.
- Maximum allowed total deviation from the specified value is **10%!**

**Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws**

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws*.

**Note**

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

**Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws**

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws*.

**Note**

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Dimension	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 8.8, oil-lubricated	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, oil-lubricated	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, oil-lubricated
M5	6	-	-
M6	10	-	-
M8	24	34	40
M10	47	67	80
M12	82	115	140
M16	200	290	340
M20	400	560	670

Continues on next page



## 9 Reference information

### 9.4 Screw joints

*Continued*

Dimension	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 8.8, oil-lubricated	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, oil-lubricated	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, oil-lubricated
M24	680	960	1150

Tightening torque for lubricated screws (Molykote, Gleitmo or equivalent) with allen head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *screws lubricated with Molykote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent with allen head screws*.



#### Note

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Dimension	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, lubricated <sup>i</sup>	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, lubricated <sup>i</sup>
M5		8
M6		14
M8	28	35
M10	55	70
M12	96	120
M16	235	300
M20	460	550
M24	790	950

<sup>i</sup> Lubricated with Molykote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent



9.5 Weight specifications


Definition

In installation, repair, and maintenance procedures, weights of the components handled are sometimes specified. All components exceeding 22 kg (50 lbs) are highlighted in this way.

To avoid injury, ABB recommends the use of a lifting accessory when handling components with a weight exceeding 22 kg. A wide range of lifting accessories and devices are available for each manipulator model.

Example

Following is an example of a weight specification in a procedure:

Action	Note
<div> <b>CAUTION</b></div> <p>The arm weighs 25 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>	



## 9 Reference information

---

### 9.6 Standard toolkit

### 9.6 Standard toolkit

---

#### General

All service (repairs, maintenance, and installation) procedures contains lists of tools required to perform the specified activity.

All special tools required are listed directly in the procedures while all the tools that are considered standard are gathered in the standard toolkit and defined in the following table.

This way, the tools required are the sum of the standard toolkit and any tools listed in the instruction.

---

#### Contents, standard toolkit

Qty	Tool	Rem.
1	Socket head cap 2-17 mm	
1	Torque wrench 0.3-45 Nm	
1	Torque wrench 56 Nm $\pm$ 5.6 Nm	For securing robot to foundation.
1	Small screwdriver	
1	T-handle with ball head	
1	Small cutting plier	
1	Plastic mallet	




9.7 Special tools

General

All service instructions contain lists of tools required to perform the specified activity. The required tools are a sum of standard tools, defined in the section [Standard toolkit on page 1012](#), and of special tools, listed directly in the instructions and also gathered in this section.

Special tools

**Note**

If the replacing procedure is not listed in the table below, only standard tools are needed for the procedure.



9.7 Special tools

Tools and equipment with spare part number: (These tools can be ordered from ABB)	
-	24 VDC power supply
3HAC055412-001	Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
-	Sonic tension meter Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
-	Dynamometer Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
3HAC077249-001	IRB 920 special tool Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2



## 9.8 Lifting accessories and lifting instructions

---

### General

Many repair and maintenance activities require different pieces of lifting accessories, which are specified in each procedure.

The use of each piece of lifting accessories is *not* detailed in the activity procedure, but in the instruction delivered with each piece of lifting accessories.

The instructions delivered with the lifting accessories should be stored for later reference.



**This page is intentionally left blank**



## 10 Spare parts

### 10.1 Spare part lists and illustrations

---

**Location**

Spare parts and exploded views are not included in the manual but delivered as a separate document for registered users on myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).

**Tip**

All documents can be found via myABB Business Portal, [www.abb.com/myABB](http://www.abb.com/myABB).



**This page is intentionally left blank**



# Index

## A

Absolute Accuracy, calibration, 955  
 allergenic material, 26  
 aluminum  
   disposal, 1002  
 ambient humidity  
   operation, 41  
   storage, 40  
 ambient temperature  
   operation, 41  
   storage, 40  
 assembly instructions, 51  
 assessment of hazards and risks, 26  
 Axis Calibration, 965  
   calibration tool  
     article number, 968, 971  
     examining, 968  
     installation position, 970  
   overview of method, 965  
   procedure on FlexPendant, 971  
   protective cover and protection plug, 970–971

## B

ball screw spline unit  
   lubrication, 111  
 batteries  
   disposal, 1002  
 Brake power supply, faulty, 996  
 brake releasing, 64  
 brakes  
   testing function, 34

## C

cabinet lock, 27  
 cabling between robot and controller, 80  
 calibrating  
   robot, 965  
   roughly, 961  
 calibrating robot, 965  
 calibration  
   Absolute Accuracy type, 954  
   rough, 961  
   standard type, 954  
   verification, 987  
   when to calibrate, 956  
 calibration, Absolute Accuracy, 955  
 calibration manuals, 955  
 calibration marks, 957  
 calibration position  
   jogging to, 989  
   scales, 957  
 calibration scales, 957  
 CalibWare, 954  
 carbon dioxide extinguisher, 27  
 cleaning, 113  
 climbing on robot, 30  
 Cold environments, 86  
 connecting the robot and controller, cabling, 80  
 copper  
   disposal, 1002

## D

damaged bearings, 994  
 dimensions

robot, 70  
 direction of axes, 960

## E

environmental information, 1002  
 equipment, robot, 70  
 ESD  
   damage elimination, 49  
   sensitive equipment, 49  
 expected life, 94  
 extra equipment, 70

## F

faulty brake, 996  
 fire extinguishing, 27  
 fitting, equipment, 70  
 FlexPendant  
   jogging to calibration position, 989  
   MoveAbsJ instruction, 989  
   updating revolution counters, 963  
 foundation  
   requirements, 40

## G

grease, 30  
   disposal, 1002

## H

hanging  
   installed hanging, 26  
 hazard levels, 17  
 hazardous material, 1002  
 height  
   installed at a height, 26  
 hot gearbox oil, 993–994  
 hot surfaces, 30  
 HRA, 26  
 humidity  
   operation, 41  
   storage, 40

## I

information labels location, 95  
 inspecting  
   information labels, 95  
   robot cabling, 99  
   timing belts, 106  
 installation  
   equipment, 70  
 installation procedure, 56  
 instructions for assembly, 51  
 integrator responsibility, 26  
 intervals for maintenance, 92

## L

labels  
   robot, 19  
 leaking sealing, 993  
 lifting  
   robot, 58  
 lifting accessory, 1011  
 limitation of liability, 15  
 Lithium  
   disposal, 1002  
 loads on foundation, 39  
 lock and tag, 27  
 lubricants, 30



lubrication  
ball screw spline unit, 111

## M

magnesium  
disposal, 1002  
main harness  
replacing, 126  
maintenance intervals, 92  
maintenance schedule, 92  
mechanical stop  
axis 1, 78  
mechanical stop location, 78–79  
mounting, equipment, 70  
MoveAbsJ instruction, 989

## N

national regulations, 26  
negative directions, axes, 960  
neodymium  
disposal, 1002  
noise, 994

## O

oil, 30  
disposal, 1002  
oil leaks, 993  
operating conditions, 41  
original spare parts, 15  
overfilled gearbox, 993

## P

pedestal  
installed on pedestal, 26  
personnel  
requirements, 16  
plastic  
disposal, 1002  
positive directions, axes, 960  
PPE, 16  
product standards, 1006  
protection classes, 41  
protection type, 41  
protective equipment, 16  
protective wear, 16

## R

recycling, 1002  
regional regulations, 26  
release brakes, 33  
replacements, report, 117  
replacing  
mechanical stop  
axis 1, 78  
xx, 181, 199, 209, 403, 442, 462, 496, 609, 634  
report replacements, 117  
requirements on foundation, 40  
responsibility and validity, 15  
revolution counters  
storing on FlexPendant, 963  
updating, 961  
risk of burns, 30  
risk of tipping, 53  
robot  
dimensions, 70  
equipment, fitting, 70  
labels, 19

lifting, 58  
protection class, 41  
protection types, 41  
symbols, 19  
technical data, 38  
working range, 45  
robot cabling  
inspecting, 99  
rubber  
disposal, 1002

## S

safety  
brake testing, 34  
ESD, 49  
fire extinguishing, 27  
release robot axes, 33  
signals, 17  
signals in manual, 17  
symbols, 17  
symbols on robot, 19  
test run, 57, 87  
safety devices, 27  
safety hazard  
hydraulic system, 28  
pneumatic system, 28  
safety signals  
in manual, 17  
safety standards, 1006  
scales on robot, 957  
schedule of maintenance, 92  
screw joints, 1008  
securing, robot, 66  
securing the robot to foundation, attachment screws, 66  
shipping, 1001  
signals  
safety, 17  
speed  
adjusting, 86  
stability, 53  
stainless steel  
disposal, 1002  
standards, 1006  
start of robot in cold environments, 86  
steel  
disposal, 1002  
storage conditions, 40  
symbols  
safety, 17  
synchronization position, 961  
sync marks, 957  
system integrator requirements, 26

## T

technical data  
robot, 38  
temperatures  
operation, 41  
storage, 40  
testing  
brakes, 34  
timing belts  
inspecting, 106  
torques on foundation, 39  
transportation, 1001  
troubleshooting  
safety, 35



**U**

upcycling, 1002  
updating revolution counters, 961  
users  
    requirements, 16

**V**

validity and responsibility, 15  
velocity  
    adjusting, 86  
verifying calibration, 987

**W**

weight, 38

robot, 61, 66  
working range, 48  
    robot, 45

**X**

xx  
    replacing, 181, 199, 209, 403, 442, 462, 496, 609,  
    634

**Z**

zero position  
    checking, 988











**ABB AB****Robotics & Discrete Automation**

S-721 68 VÄSTERÅS, Sweden

Telephone +46 10-732 50 00

**ABB AS****Robotics & Discrete Automation**

Nordlysvegen 7, N-4340 BRYNE, Norway

Box 265, N-4349 BRYNE, Norway

Telephone: +47 22 87 2000

**ABB Engineering (Shanghai) Ltd.**

Robotics & Discrete Automation

No. 4528 Kangxin Highway

PuDong New District

SHANGHAI 201315, China

Telephone: +86 21 6105 6666

**ABB Inc.****Robotics & Discrete Automation**

1250 Brown Road

Auburn Hills, MI 48326

USA

Telephone: +1 248 391 9000

**[abb.com/robotics](http://abb.com/robotics)**